This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

600047924W

3027 d. 26

Edward B. Nicholson

Trin. Coll. Oxon

A COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR

OF THE

ANGLO-SAXON LANGUAGE;

IN WHICH

ITS FORMS ARE ILLUSTRATED

BY THOSE OF THE

SANSKRIT, GREEK, LATIN, GOTHIC, OLD SAXON, OLD FRIESIC, OLD NORSE, AND OLD HIGH-GERMAN.

By FRANCIS A. MARCH, LL.D.,

PROFESSOR OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE AND COMPARATIVE PHILOLOGY IN LAFAYETTE COLLEGE, AUTHOR OF "METHOD OF PHILOLOGICAL STUDY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE," "AN ANGLO-SAXON READER," ETC.

NEW YORK:

HARPER & BROTHERS, PUBLISHERS,

FRANKLIN SQUARE.

1871.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1869, by

FRANCIS A. MARCH,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Eastern District of Pennsylvania.

E.W.B. Nicholson
1912

PREFACE.

THE Anglo-Saxon language has been studied at Lafayette College for many years in the light of modern philology. It seemed necessary to print, for the use of its students, general laws of phonology and syntax, with tables of analogous paradigms, prefixes, suffixes, and idioms. In preparing this outline for the press, love of the work has led me to fill it up into a Comparative Grammar. Other Comparative Grammars have discussed several languages, each for the illustration of all, and of language in general; this book is an Anglo-Saxon Grammar, and uses forms of other tongues and general laws of language only so far as they illustrate the Anglo-Saxon.

The hope has, however, been cherished that the methods of Comparative Grammar might be exemplified more fully than they have yet been for our students, in connection with the early forms of our mother tongue, and that in this way the Anglo-Saxon might be associated with the modern Science of Language, and share its honors.

If this hope should be answered, the book may serve as an introduction to the masters in whose light it has grown up—to JACOB GRIMM, the greatest genius among the grammarians, whose imagination and heart are as quick as his reason and industry, and make his histories of speech as inspiring as poetry—to FRANCIS BOPP, impersonation of pure science, who never spreads his wings, but who pursues his thread of thought with unfailing sagacity till he loses it in the islands of the Pacific —to GEORGE CURTIUS, master of the new and the old, surest and safest of guides—to POTT—to KUHN and his collaborators. Special students of Anglo-Saxon must spend their days and nights with GREIN, whose Glossary of Anglo-Saxon Poetry first made possible a thorough treatment of its grammar, and to whom this work is everywhere indebted. MAETZNER, and KOCH, and HEYNE have also been my constant companions.

SCHLEICHER, RUMPELT, and HOLTZMAN I have used most in phonology and etymology, BECKER in syntax.

There are a good many Anglo-Saxon Grammars. The Latin Grammar of ÆLFRIC, written in Anglo-Saxon, is a valuable Anglo-Saxon Grammar. Other grammars, to the time of RASK, are mainly arrangements of the declensions and inflections on the ground of external resemblances, with outlines of syntax. Some of them are learned works. RASK classified on the basis of the supposed stems, but with mistaken views. The real relations of the Anglo-Saxon inflections were fixed by Bopp in fixing those of the Gothic. In German, Anglo-Saxon has a place in the Comparative Grammars of Grimm, Heyne, and others, and in the great English Grammars of Maetzner and Koch. The English still use Rask; Hadley, in Webster's Dictionary, goes with Grimm. It is pleasant to remember that Jefferson, who started this study in our colleges in his University of Virginia, made an Anglo-Saxon Grammar.

Labor has not been spared to fit this book for use. The examples have been translated; the citations made easy to verify; leading rules and groups of facts have been brought together; indexes have been made; the resources of the printer freely used to make every thing distinct. Paradigms and the historical discussion of them are kept on opposite pages, so that they may lie before the eye together. The type has sometimes been varied for that purpose, and spaces filled with matter not strictly in the plan, such as the changes from Anglo-Saxon to English.

I wish to thank WILLIAM G. MEDLICOTT, Esq., of Longmeadow, Massachusetts; he let me take from his precious collection, and use at my own home, Anglo-Saxon texts not elsewhere to be had for love or money. And, finally, all those who find this book of value should join me in thanks to the Trustees and Faculty of LAFAYETTE COLLEGE, who were the first to unite in one Professorship the study of the English language and Comparative Philology, and who have set apart time for these studies, and funds for the necessary apparatus to pursue them.

FRANCIS A. MARCH.

EASTON, *October* 25, 1869.

CONTENTS.

Section — Page

1. INTRODUCTION—Historical 1

PART I.

PHONOLOGY.

Section — Page

General View.

10. Alphabet 4
13. Punctuation 5
14. Sounds 5
15. Accent 6
16. Classes of Vowels 6
17. Classes of Consonants 7
18. Indo-European Vowel System 8
19. Consonant System 8
20. Changes of Sound 9
20. Laws of Letter Change 10

Special Discussions.

21. Classic Anglo-Saxon 11
22. Voice 11
23. Vowels—Anglo-Saxon 11
26. Northumbrian 14
27. Consonants—Anglo-Saxon 15
31. Northumbrian 18

VARIATION.

32. Euphonic Changes 19
32. Umlaut 19
33. Breaking 20
34. Assibilation 20
35. Assimilation 22
36. Dissimilation 24
37. Compensation 25

Accentual Changes.

38. Gravitation 26
38. Progression 26
38. Precession 26
39. Ablaut 28
40. Mimetic Changes 28

Etymologic Changes.

41. Shifting 28

FIGURATION.

43. Aphæresis 30
44. Apocope 31
45. Elision 31
46. Syncope 31
47. Ecthlipsis 31
48. Prothesis 31
49. Epithesis 31
50. Epenthesis 31
51. Metathesis 32

CONTRACTION.

52. Synæresis 32

PART II.

ETYMOLOGY.

53. Definitions 33
59. Classification 34

NOUNS.

60. Case Endings 34
64. Declension 36
67. Gender 37

Strong Nouns.

69. Declension 1 38

Section		Page
88.	Declension 2	44
92.	Declension 3	48
94.	Northumbrian	49
	Weak Nouns.	
95.	Declension 4	50
	Northumbrian	51
100.	Irregular Nouns	52
101.	Proper Names	54
102.	Decay of Case Endings	55
	ADJECTIVES.	
104.	Declension Indefinite	56
105.	Declension Definite	58
106.	Varying Forms	58
119.	Participles	61
121.	Northumbrian	61
122	Comparison	62
130.	PRONOUNS	66
138.	NUMERALS	73
	VERB.	
149.	Definitions	77
157.	Conjugations:	78
158.	From Ablaut	79
159.	From Contraction	80
160.	From Composition	81
161.	Tense Stems	82
162.	Mode Suffixes	82
163.	Personal Endings	82
	Paradigms.	
	Strong Verb.	
164.	Indicative Tenses	82
169.	Subjunctive Tenses	86
172.	Imperative	88
173.	Infinitive	88
173.	Participle	88
176.	Potential	88
177.	Other Periphrastic	89
178.	Passive Voice	90
	Weak Verb.	
183.	Active Voice	92
187.	Passive Voice	94
188.	Varying Presents	94
189.	Syncopated Imperfects	95
190.	Syncopated Participle	95
	Weak and Strong.	
191.	Umlaut in the Present	96
192.	Assimilation	96
197.	Varying Imperfects	98
198.	Summary of Variations	98
199.	*Table of Varying Verbs*	99
212.	Irregular Verbs	112
225.	Northumbrian	117
226.	Weathering of Endings	118
	DERIVATION.	
227.	Definitions	118
228.	Suffixes	119
230.	Stems by Variation	122
231.	Formation of Substantives	123
240.	Adjectives	125
246.	Verb	126
251.	Adverb	128
253.	Preposition	130
253.	Prefixes	130
260.	Particles	132
262.	Conjunctions	133
263.	Interjections	133
264.	Composition	134
268.	Forms to express Gender	135

PART III.

SYNTAX.

272.	Simple Combinations	137
278.	Sentences, Clauses	139
285.	Figures of Syntax	141
	NOUNS.	
	Uses of Case Endings.	
286.	Agreement	142
288.	Nominative	144
289.	Vocative	144
	Accusative:	
290.	In Objective Combinations	145
293.	In Quasi-predicative	147
295.	In Adverbial	148
	Dative:	
297.	In Objective Combinations	148
302.	In Adverbial Combinations	151
304.	In Quasi-predicative	152

Section		Page
306.	Instrumental	153
	Genitive:	
310.	In Attributive Combinations..	153
314.	In Predicative Combinations..	155
315.	In Objective Combinations.....	155
322.	In Adverbial Combinations...	158
	Uses of Prepositions.	
327.	Rules	158
330.	Table of	159
	ADJECTIVES.	
361.	Agreement	172
362.	Strong or Weak	173
	PRONOUNS.	
366.	Personal	174
367.	Possessive	175
368.	Article	175
374.	Demonstratives	177
377.	Interrogative	178
379.	Relative	178
386.	Indefinite	180
393.	NUMERALS	181
395.	ADVERBS	182
399.	PARTICLES	184
	VERBS.	
	Uses of the Verb Forms.	
401.	Agreement	185
406.	Kinds of Verbs	186
407.	Voice	187
411.	Tense	187
	Mode:	
420.	Indicative	190
421.	Subjunctive	191
	In Subordinate Clauses,	
422.	By Attraction	191
423.	In Substantive Clauses	192
427.	In Adjective Clauses	193
428.	In Adverbial Clauses	193
435.	Potential	195
444.	Imperative	196
445.	Infinitive	197
450.	Gerund	198
455.	Participles	200
460.	Verbals	201
461.	INTERJECTIONS	202
	CONJUNCTIONS.	
462.	Co-ordinate	202
467.	Subordinate:	205
468.	In Substantive Clauses	206
470.	In Adjective Clauses	207
471.	In Adverbial Clauses	207
478.	Conjunctions omitted	208
482.	*Principal Rules of Syntax*	209

ARRANGEMENT.

483.	General Laws	214
484.	Predicative Combinations	214
487.	Attributive Combinations	216
491.	Objective Combinations	218
493.	Adverbial Combinations	219
	Clauses:	
495.	Co-ordinate	220
495.	Subordinate	220

PART IV.

PROSODY.

496.	Rhythm	222
498.	Feet	222
499.	Verse	222
501.	Cæsura	223
502.	Rime	223
503.	Alliteration	223
509.	Common Narrative Verse	225
511.	Riming Verses	226
512.	Long Narrative Verse	227
514.	Alliterative Prose	228

Indexes of Words and Subjects 229

ANGLO-SAXON TEXTS

CITED IN THIS WORK, WITH THE LESS OBVIOUS ABBREVIATIONS.

Adrianus and Ritheus, Ettmüller, 39.
Ædelbirht, Ædelrêd, Ædelstân, Ælfrêd, LL., Laws in Schmid.
Ædelstân, Ælfrêd, verses about, Grein, i., 352, 357.
Ælfric, Grammar, in Somner's Dictionary.
Ælfric, Colloquy, in Thorpe's Analecta.
Almosen, Grein, ii., 350=Religious Poem, Ex. 467.
Analecta Anglo-Saxonica. B. Thorpe. London, 1846.
Andrêas, Grein, ii., 9; Verc., i., 1.
Apollonius of Tyre. B. Thorpe. London, 1834.
Azarias, Grein, i., 115; Ex. 185.

St. B. = *St. Basil*, Hexameron. Rev. H. W. Norman. London, 1849.
Bêd. = *Bêda*, Historiæ ecclesiast. Anglorum. Smith. Cantab., 1722.
Bêd. = *Bêda*, Historiæ ecclesiast. Anglorum. Whelocus. Cantab., 1644.
B.=*Beowulf*, Grein, i., 255.
Boet.=*Boethius* de Consolatione Philosophiæ. Cardale. London, 1829. *Met.* = Metra in Grein.
Botschaft des Gemahls, Grein, i., 246 = Fragments, Ex. 472–475.
Byrhtnoth, Grein, i., 343.

C.=*Caedmon*. One figure denotes the line in Grein; two, the page and line in Thorpe. London, 1832.
Ch.=*Chaucer*. Wright. Percy Society. London, 1847.
Christ (Cynewulf's), Grein, 149 = To Jesus Christ, Ex. 1–103.
Chr. = Chronicle, Anglo-Saxon. B. Thorpe. London, 1861.
Cnut, LL. Laws in Schmid.
Codex Diplomaticus Ang.-Sax. J. M. Kemble, for the English Historical Society. 6 vols. Londini, 1839–1848.
Codex Exoniensis. B. Thorpe, for the Society of Antiquaries of London. London, 1842.
Codex Vercellensis. J. M. Kemble, for the Ælfric Society. London, 1843–56.
Colloquium. Ælfric, in Thorpe's Analecta.
Cræftâs mannâ, Grein, i., 204 = On the Endowments and Pursuits of men, Ex. 293.
Cûthbert, Thorpe's Analecta, 52; Hom., ii., 132.
Cyrus, Thorpe's Analecta, 88; Oros., i., 4, 5.

Daniel, Grein, i., 94.
Deôrs Klage, Grein, i., 249=Deor the Scald's Complaint, Ex. 377.
Deuteronomy, Thwaites.
Dômes dæg, Grein, i., 195=The Day of Judgment, Ex. 445.
Durham Book. See *Northumbrian*.

Eâdgâr, Eâdmund, Eâdwine, LL. Laws in Schmid.
Eâdgâr, Eâdmund, Poems, Grein, i., 355.
Ecgbert, Confessionale et Pœnitentiale, in Laws of England. B. Thorpe, for the Record Commission, 1840.
Elene, Grein, ii., 105; Verc., ii., 1.
Ettmüller, Ang.-Sax. poëtæ atque scriptores prosaici. Quedl. et Lipsiæ, 1850.
Ex.=*Codex Exoniensis*, page and line.
Exod.=*Exodus*, Thwaites.

Fæder lârcpidâs, Grein, ii., 347=A Father's Instruction, Ex. 300.
Fata Apostolorum, Grein, ii., 7: Verc., ii., 94.
De Fide Catholica, Thorpe's Analecta, 63; Hom., i., 274.
Finnsburg Ueberfall in, Grein, i., 341.

Genesis, Thwaites.
Gnomici versus, Grein, ii., 339, 346.
Grein, Bibliothek der angelsächsischen poesie in kritisch bearbeiteten Texten und mit vollständigem Glossar herausgegeben von C. W. M. Grein, Dr. Phil. Cassel and Goettingen, 1857–1864.
Graff, E. G., Althochdeutscher Sprachschatz, etymol. und grammatisch bearbeitet. Berlin, 1834–.
St. Gregorius, Thorpe's Analecta, 44; Hom., ii., 116.
Gûd.=*Gûdlâc*, Grein, ii., 71=The Legend of St. Guthlac, Ex. 104, 107.
St. G.=Life of Guthlac. Goodwin. London, 1848.

Heptateuch, Thwaites.
Hickes, Ling. Vett. Septentrionalium Thesaurus. Oxon., 1703–1705.
Hlôdare, LL. Laws in Schmid.
Höllenfahrt, Christi, Grein, i., 191=The Harrowing of Hell, Ex. 459.
Hom.=Homilies of Ælfric. B. Thorpe, for the Ælfric Society. London, 1844.
Hymns, Grein, ii., 280.

Ine, LL. Laws in Schmid.

Job, Thwaites; Hom., ii., 446.
John, Thorpe or Northumbrian.
Josue, Thwaites.
Judith, Grein, i., 120; Thwaites; Thorpe's Analecta, 141; Ettmüller, 140.
Juliana, Grein, ii., 52; Ex. 242.

Klage der Frau, Grein, i., 245=The Exile's Complaint, Ex. 441.
Klipstein, L. F., Analecta Ang.-Sax. 2 vols. New York, 1856.
Kreuz, Das heilige, Grein, ii., 143=The Holy Rood, Verc., ii., 83.

Layamon, Brut. Madden. 3 vols. London, 1847.
LL.=Laws in *Schmid*, q. v., or *Thorpe*. Ancient Laws and Institutes of England, etc. 2 vols. For the Record Commission, 1840.
Leechdoms, etc., Rev. O. Cockayne. 3 vols. London, 1864–66.
Bi mannâ *lease*, Grein, ii., 142=A Fragment, moral and religious, Verc., ii., 79.
Leo, H., Alt- und Angelsächsische Sprachproben. Halle, 1838.
Luc=*Lc.*=Luke. Thorpe or Northumbrian.

Mrc.=Marc. Thorpe or Northumbrian.
Matthew. Thorpe, North., or Kemble. Cambridge, 1858.
Menologium, Grein, ii., 1, or Hickes.
Met.=Alfred's Meters of Boethius, Grein, ii., 295.
Môd mannâ, Grein, i., 210=Monitory Poem, Ex. 313.

Neot, St., Life of, in the Hist. and Antiq. of Eynesbury and St. Neot's. G. C. Gorham, London, 1820.
Nicodemus, Gospel of, Thwaites's Heptateuch.
Northumbrian Gospels. C. G. Bouterwek. Gütersloh, 1857. Surtees, 1854–1863.
Numbers, Thwaites.

Orm.=*Ormulum*, R. M. White. 2 vols. Oxford, 1852.
Oros.=*Orosius*, Bosworth. London, 1859.

Panther, Grein, i., 233; Ex. 355.
Pharao, Grein, ii., 350=A Fragment, Ex. 468.
Phœnix, Grein, i., 215; Ex. 197.
Psalms, Grein, ii., 147.
Thorpe. Oxonii, 1835.
Spelman. Londini, 1640.
Surtees Society. London, 1843–44.
P. T. S.=Popular Treatises of Science. T. Wright. London, 1841.

R. G.=Robert of Gloucester. Th. Hearne. London, 1810.
Rebhuhn, Grein, i., 237=A Fragment, Ex. 365.
Reimlied, Grein, ii., 137=Riming Poem, Ex. 352.
Richthofen, K. von., Altfriesisches Wörterbuch. Goettingen, 1840.
Riddles=Raetsel, Grein, ii., 369; Ex. 470, etc.
Rieger, Alt- und angelsächsisches Lesebuch. Giessen, 1861.
Ruine, Grein, i., 248=The Ruin, Ex. 476.
Runenlied, Grein, ii., 351.

Salomon und Saturn, Grein, ii, 354; J. M. Kemble, for the Ælfric Society. London, 1848.
Satan (Crist und Satan), Grein, i., 129.
Schmid, Die Gesetze der Angelsachsen. Leipzig, 1858.
Screadunga Ang.-Sax., K. G. Bouterwek. Elberfeldæ, 1858.
Seafarer (Seefahrer), Grein, i., 241, Ex. 306.
Seelen, Reden der, Grein, i., 198=A departed Soul's address to the Body, Ex. 367.
Somner, Dictionarium Sax.-Lat.-Angl. Accesserunt *Ælfrici* abbatis *grammatica* Lat.-Sax. Oxonii, 1659.
St. B.=St. Basil. See *Basil.*
St. G. See *Gûthlâc.*

Thorpe, B., The Anglo-Saxon version of the Holy Gospels. London, 1842. See also *Analecta* and *LL.*
Thwaites, Edw., Heptateuchus, Liber Job, et evangelium Nicodemi, Historiæ Judith fragmentum. Oxoniæ, 1698.
Traveler's Song=*Vîdsîd*=The Scop's Tale, Grein, i., 251, Ex. 318.

Vercellensis Codex. See *Codex Verc.*

Mannâ *pyrde*, Grein, i., 207=On the various Fortunes of Men, Ex. 327.

Walfisch, Grein, i., 235=Whale, Ex. 360.
Wanderer, Grein, i., 238; Ex. 286.
Wid=*Vîdsîd.* See Traveler's Song.
Wunder der schöpfung, Grein, i., 213=The Wonders of the Creation, Ex. 346.

√ prefixed, marks a root; — prefixed, marks a suffix; - suffixed, marks a prefix or stem; + suffixed to the number of a page or section means *and the following*, elsewhere + means *together with*; < or > is placed between two words when one is derived from the other, the angle pointing to the derived word; < may be read *from*, > *whence*; = means *equivalent to*; : means *akin to*; ¯ over words indicates that they are to be treated in some respect as one.

LANGUAGES OFTENEST MENTIONED. See page 3.

A.-S.=Anglo-Saxon.	Irish.	*O. N.*=Old Norse.
Celtic.	Italian.	*O. S.*=Old Saxon.
Danish.	*L.*=Low.	*P. S.*=Parent Speech.
Dutch.	Latin.	Romaic.
English.	Lettic.	Romanic.
French.	Lithuanic.	Sanskrit.
Friesic.	*M.*=Middle.	Saxon.
German.	Norman.	Scandinavian.
Gothic.	Norse.	Semi-Saxon.
Greek.	*O.*=Old.	Slavonic.
H.=High.	*O. Fries.*=Old Friesic.	Swedish.
Indo-European.	*O. H. G.*=Old High German.	Welsh.

GRAMMATICAL HELPS.

Ælfric.—Grammar, in Somner's Dictionary.
Becker, K. F.—Organism. Frankf. a. M., 1841.
Benfey, Th.—Griechisches Wurzellexikon. Berlin, 1839, 1842.
Benfey, Th.—Sanskrit Grammar. London and Berlin, 1863.
Bopp, F.—Vergleichende Grammatik. 2 Ausgabe. Berlin, 1857–61.
Bopp, F.—Glossarium Sanscritum. Ed. tertia. Berlin, 1867.
Bosworth, J.—The Elements of the Anglo-Saxon Grammar. London, 1823.
Bosworth, J.—A Dictionary of the Ang.-Sax. Language, etc., etc., with the Essentials of Anglo-Saxon Grammar. London, 1838.
Bouterwek, K. W.—Die Vier Evangelien in alt-nordhumbrischer Sprache. Gütersloh, 1857. The Introduction has a learned discussion of the *Northumbrian dialect.*
Child, F. G.—Observations on the Language of Chaucer and Gower. Mem. Amer. Acad., 1862, 1866, and in Ellis's Early English Pronunciation. London, 1869.
Corssen, W.—Kritische Beiträge zur lat. Formenlehre. Leipzig, 1863.
Corssen, W.—Ueber Aussprache, Vokalismus und Betonung der lat. Sprache. Leipzig, 1859.
Crosby, A.—Greek Grammar. 4th edition. Boston, 1848.
Curtius, Georg.—Grundzüge der griechischen Etymologie. 2 Auflage. Leipzig, 1866.
Curtius, Georg.—De Nominum Græcorum formatione. Berlin, 1842.
Curtius, Georg.—Griechische Schulgrammatik. 7 Auflage. Prague, 1866.
De Vere, M. Schele.—Outlines of Comp. Phil. N.Y., 1853. Studies in English. N.Y., 1866.
Diefenbach, L.—Vergleichendes Wörterbuch der gothischen Sprache. Frankfurt a. M., 1851.
Dietrich, Prof. Fr., in Haupt's Zeitschrift.
Diez, F.—Grammatik der Romanischen Sprachen. Bonn, 1856–1860.
Elstob, Elizabeth.—The Rudiments of Grammar for the English-Saxon Tongue, first given in English, etc., etc. London, 1715.
Ettmüller, L.—Lexicon Anglosaxonicum cum SYNOPSI GRAMMATICA. Quedlinb. et Lips., 1851.
Fowler, W. C.—The English Language. N. Y., 1864.
Grein, C. W. M.—Sprachschatz der angelsächsischen Dichter. Cassel and Göttingen, 1861–1864.
Grein, C. W. M.—Ablaut, Reduplication, etc. Cassel and Göttingen, 1862.
Grimm, J.—Deutsche Grammatik. Göttingen, 1819–1840.
Grimm, J.—Gesch. der deutschen Sprache, Leipzig, 1853.
Guest, E.—English Rhythms. Lond., 1838.
Hadley, J.—A Greek Grammar for Schools and Colleges. New York, 1864.
Hadley, J.—A brief History of the English Language, in Webster's Dictionary, edition of 1865.
Haldeman, S. S.—Analytic Orthography. Philadelphia, 1860.
Harkness, A.—A Latin Grammar for Schools and Colleges. New York, 1865.
Haupt, M.—Zeitschrift für deutsches Alterthum. Leipzig, 1841+.
Heyne, M.—Kurtze Laut- und Flexionslehre der altgermanischen Sprachstämme. Paderborn, 1862.
Hickes, G.—Institutiones Grammaticæ Anglo-Saxonicæ et Mœso-Gothicæ. Oxoniæ, 1688.
Holtzman, A.—Ueber den Umlaut. Carlsruhe, 1843.
Holtzman, A.—Ueber den Ablaut. Carlsruhe, 1844.
Klipstein, L. F.—A Grammar of the Anglo-Saxon Language. New York, 1853.
Koch, C. F.—Historische Grammatik der englischen Sprache. Weimar, 1863; Cassel and Götting., 1865; and is still unfinished.
Kuhn, Adalb.—Zeitschrift für vergleichende Sprachforschung auf dem Gebiete des Deutschen, Griechischen und Lateinischen. Berlin, 1852+.
Kuhn, Adalb.—Beiträge zur vergleichenden Sprachforschung auf dem Gebiete der arischen, celtischen, und slawischen Sprachen, herausgegeben von Kuhn und Schleicher. Berlin, 1858+.
Latham, R. G.—The English Language. 4th edition. London, 1855.
Lüning, H.—Die Edda. Mit altnordischer Grammatik, etc. Zurich, 1859.
Maetzner, Ed.—Englische Grammatik. Berlin, 1860–1865.
Marsh, G. P.—The English Language and its early Literature. New York, 1862.
Massmann, H. F.—Ulfilas. Mit *sprachlehre*, etc. Stuttgardt, 1857.
Meyer, Leo.—Vergleichende Grammatik der griechischen und lateinischen Sprache. Berlin, 1861–1865.
Müller, Max.—Lectures on the Science of Language. London, 1861.
Müller, Max.—Second Series. London, 1864.
" " A Sanskrit Grammar for Beginners. London, 1866.
Pott, A. F.—Etymologische Forschungen auf dem Gebiete der Indo-Germanischen Sprachen. Lemgo, 1833+.
Rask, Erasmus.—A Grammar of the Anglo-Saxon Tongue, etc. Transl. from the Danish by B. Thorpe. Copenhag., 1830; London, 1865.
Rumpelt, H. B.—Deutsche Grammatik. Mit Rücksicht auf vergleichende Sprachforschung. Erster Theil. Berlin, 1860.
Schleicher, Aug.—Compendium der vergleichenden Grammatik der Indo-Germanischen Sprachen. Weimar, 1862; 2d ed., 1866.
Schmeller, J. A.—Heliand oder die altsächsische Evangelien-Harmonie. Mit Wörterbuch und *Grammatik.* Mon., Stuttg., et Tubingæ, 1840.
Schubert, H.—A.-S. Arte Met. Berlin, 1870.
Somner. See Anglo-Saxon Texts.
Whitney, W. D.—Language and the Study of Language. New York, 1867.
Wilson, H. H.—Sanskrit Grammar for early Students. London, 1841.

INTRODUCTION.

1. During the fifth and sixth centuries, England was conquered and peopled by pagans (Saxons, Angles, Jutes, etc.) from the shores of the North Sea; the center of emigration was near the mouth of the Elbe. The conquerors spoke many dialects, but most of them were Low German. Missionaries were sent from Rome (A.D. 597) to convert them to Christianity. The Roman alphabetic writing was thus introduced, and, under the influence of learned native ecclesiastics, a single tongue gradually came into use as a literary language through the whole nation. The chief seat of learning down to the middle of the eighth century was among the Angles of Northumberland. The language was long called Englisc (English), but is now called Anglo-Saxon. Its Augustan age was the reign of Alfred the Great, king of the West Saxons (A.D. 871–901). It continued to be written till the colloquial dialects, through the influence of the Anglo-Norman, had diverged so far from it as to make it unintelligible to the people; then, under the cultivation of the Wycliffite translators of the Bible, and of Chaucer and his fellows, there grew out of these dialects a new classic language—the English.

2. The spelling in the manuscripts is irregular, but the Northumbrian is the only well-marked dialect of the Anglo-Saxon, as old as its classic period (10th century), which has yet been explored. The Gospels and some other works have been printed in it. The common Anglo-Saxon is sometimes called West-Saxon.

3. After the period of pure Anglo-Saxon, there was written an irregular dialect called Semi-Saxon. It has few strange words, but the inflections and syntax are broken up (12th century).

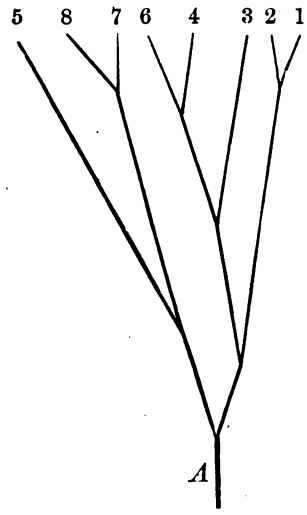
4. The former inhabitants of Britain were Celts, so unlike the invaders in race and speech, and so despised and hated, that they did not mix. There are in the Anglo-Saxon a handful of Celtic common names, and a good many geographical names: the relation of the Celtic language to the Anglo-Saxon is like that of the languages of the aborigines of America to our present English.

5. The Anglo-Saxon was shaped to literary use by men who wrote and spoke Latin, and thought it an ideal language; and a large part of the literature is translated or imitated from Latin authors. It is not to be doubted, therefore, that the Latin exercised a great influence on the Anglo-Saxon: if it did not lead to the introduction of wholly new forms, either of etymology or syntax, it led to the extended and uniform use of those forms which are like the Latin, and to the disuse of others, so as to draw the grammars near each other. There are a considerable number of words from the Latin, mostly connected with the Church; three or four through the Celts from the elder Romans.

6. There are many words in Anglo-Saxon more like the words of the same sense in Scandinavian than like any words which we find in the Germanic languages; but the remains of the early dialects are so scant that it is hard to tell how far such words were borrowed from or modified by the Scandinavians. Before A.D. 900 many Danes had settled in England. Danish kings afterward ruled it (A.D. 1013–1042). Their laws, however, are in Anglo-Saxon. The Danes were illiterate, and learned the Anglo-Saxon. Of course their pronunciation was peculiar, and they quickened and modified phonetic decay. It is probable that they affected the spoken dialects which have come up as English more than the written literary language which we call Anglo-Saxon.

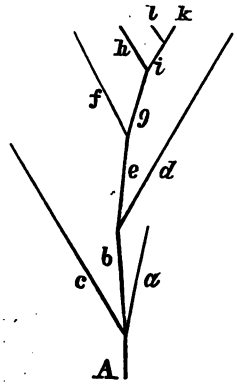
7. The other languages sprung from the dialects of Low German tribes are Friesic, Old Saxon, and, later, Dutch (and Flemish), and Platt Deutsch. The talk in the harbors of Antwerp, Bremen, and Hamburg is said to be often mistaken by English sailors for corrupt English. These Low German languages are akin to the High German on one side, and to the Scandinavian on the other. These all, with the Mœso-Gothic, constitute the Teutonic class of languages. This stands parallel with the Lithuanic, the Slavonic, and the Celtic, and with the Italic, the Hellenic, the Iranic, and the Indic, all of which belong to the Indo-European family of languages. The parent speech of this family is lost, and has left no literary monuments. Its seat has been supposed to have been on the heights of Central Asia. The Sanskrit, an ancient language of India, takes its place at the head of the family. Theoretical roots and forms of inflection are given by grammarians as those of the Parent Speech, on the ground that they are such as might have produced the surviving roots and forms by known laws of change.

8. The following stem shows the order in which these classes branched, and their relative age and remoteness from each other. At the right is given the approximate date of the oldest literary remains. The languages earlier than these remains are made out like the Parent Speech; that is, roots and forms are taken for the language at each period, which will give the roots and forms of all the languages which branch from it, but not those peculiar to the other languages.



A. Indo-European. Parent Speech.
1. Indic. B.C. 1500. Sanskrit Vedas.
2. Iranic. B.C. 1000. Bactrian Avesta.
3. Hellenic. Before B.C. 800. Greek.
4. Italic. B.C. 200. Latin.
5. Teutonic. 4th Century. Mœso-Gothic Bible.
6. Celtic. 8th Century.
7. Slavonic. 9th Century. Bulgarian Bible.
8. Lithuanic. 16th Century.

9. The following stem shows the manner in which the languages of the Teutonic class branch after separating from the Slavonic. The Gothic (Mœso-Gothic) died without issue; the Low German is nearer akin to it than the High German is. The branches of the Scandinavian (Swedish, Danish, Norwegian) are not represented.



A. Teutonic. Theoretic.
a. Gothic. 4th Century.
b. Germanic. Theoretic.
c. Scandinavian. 13th Century.
d. High German. 8th Century.
e. Low German. Theoretic.
f. Friesic. 14th Century.
g. Saxon. Theoretic.
h. Anglo-Saxon. 8th Century.
i. Old Saxon. 9th Century.
k. Platt Deutsch. 14th Century.
l. Dutch. 13th Century.

PART I.

PHONOLOGY.

10. **Alphabet.**—The Anglo-Saxon alphabet has twenty-four letters. All but three are Roman characters: the variations from the common form are cacographic fancies. Ƿ þ (thorn), and Ƿ ƿ (wên), are runes. Ð đ (edh) is a crossed d, used for the older þ, oftenest in the middle and at the end of words.

Old Forms.		Simple Forms.		Roman.		Names.
Ꞁ	a	A	a	A	a	ah
Æ	æ	Æ	æ	Æ	æ	ă
B	b	B	b	B	b	bay
C	c	C	c	C	c	cay
D	ꝺ	D	d	D	d	day
Ð	ð	Ð	đ	DH	dh	edh
Є	e	E	e	E	e	ay
F	ꝼ	F	f	F	f	ef
G	ꝿ	G	g	G	g	gay
Þ Ƿ	h	H	h	H	h	hah
I	ı	I	i	I	i	ee
L	l	L	l	L	l	el
M	m	M	m	M	m	em
N	n	N	n	N	n	en
O	o	O	o	O	o	o
P	p	P	p	P	p	pay
R	ꞃ	R	r	R	r	er
S	ꞅ	S	s	S	s	es
T	ꞇ	T	t	T	t	tay
Ƿ Þ	þ	P	þ	TH	th	thorn
U	u	U	u	U	u	oo
Ƿ	ƿ	Ƿ	p	{ VV (W)	vv (w) }	wên
X	x	X	x	X	x	ex
Y	ẏ	Y	y	Y	y	ypsilon

Some of the German editors use ä for æ, æ for ǣ, ë for e derived from i, ö for œ, œ for œ̂, j for i when a semi-vowel, and v for p. Now and then k, q, v, z get into the manuscripts, mostly in foreign words, and uu or u for p. The Semi-Saxon has a peculiar character for j (ȝ).

11. **Abbreviations.**—The most common are ⁊ = and, ꝥ = þæt (*that*), ꝛ = ođđe (*or*), and ¯ for an omitted m or n; as, þā = þam.

12. An **Accent** (⁄) is found in Anglo-Saxon manuscripts, but in none so regularly used as to make it an objective part of an Anglo-Saxon text. It is found oftenest over a long vowel; sometimes over a vowel of peculiar sound, not long; seldom, except over syllables having stress of voice. Sometimes it seems to mark nothing but stress. Most of the English editors represent it by an acute accent; the Germans generally print Anglo-Saxon with a circumflex over all single long vowels in the stem of words, and an acute over the diphthongs, as brôđer, freónd. In this book, to guide the studies of beginners, a circumflex is used over all long vowels and diphthongs, and the acute accent (′) over vowels only to denote stress. For accented consonants, see § 19.

13. **Punctuation.**—The Anglo-Saxons used one dot (.) at the end of each clause, or each hemistich of a poem, and sometimes three dots (:·) at the end of a sentence. Modern pointing is generally used in printed text.

14. **Sounds of Letters.**—*Vowels:*

a like *a* in *far.*
â " *a* " *fall.*
æ " *a* " *glad.*
ǣ " *a* " *dare* in New England.
e " *e* " *let.*
e in the breakings (not diphthongs) ea, eo, eâ, eô, very light.
ê like *e* in *they.*
i like *i* in *dim.*
î " *ee* " *deem.*
o " *o* " *wholly.*
ô " *o* " *holy.*
u " *u* " *full.*
û " *oo* " *fool.*
y " *i* " *dim*, but with the lips thrust out and rounded. (French u.)
ŷ same sound prolonged.

Unaccented vowels are like accented in kind, but obscure.

The *consonants* have their common English sounds; but note

c like *k*, always.
ch " *kh* in *work-house.*
cp " *qu.*
d " *d* in *do.*
đ " *th* " *other, smooth.*
g " *g* " *go*, always.
h very distinct.
hp like *wh* in New England.
i (=j) before a vowel, like *y.*
s like *s* in *so.*
t " *t* " *to.*
þ " *th* " *thin.*
p " *w.*
pl, pr, and final p nearly close the lips. (German w.)
x like *ks.*

15. **Accent.**—The primary accent in pronunciation is on the first syllable of every word: brôđ'-er, *brother;* un'-cûđ, *uncouth.*

The first syllable is mostly the root, or a prefix defining it: but prefixes of verbs and particles are relational. See § 41, 4.

Proof of accent comes from alliteration, rhyme, the mark (§ 12), progression, and other phonetic changes.

Exception 1. Proper prefixes in verbs and particles take no primary accent; such are á, an, and, æt, be, bi, ed, for, ful, ge, geond, in, mis, ôđ, of, ofer, on, or, tô, þurh, un, under, piđ, piđer, ymb, ymbe: an-gin'nan, *begin;* æt-gad'ere, *together;* on-geân', *again.* So some parasyntheta; onsæg'ednes, *sacrifice.*

(*a.*) But parasyntheta from nouns, pronouns, or adjectives, retain their accent: and'-sparian < and'sparu, *answer;* in'-peardlîce < in'-peard, adj., *inward;* ed'nipian < ed'nipe, *renewed.* Such are all verbs in *and-*, *ed-*, *or-*, found in Anglo-Saxon poetry; many adverbs in *un-*, etc.

(*b.*) Many editors print as compounds adverbs + verbs, both of which retain their accent. Such are those with æfter, bî, bîg, efen, eft, fore, forđ, from, fram, hider, mid, niđer, gegn, geân, gên, tô, up, ût, *pel.*

Exception 2. The inseparable prefixes á-, be-(bi-), for-, ge-, are unaccented: á-lŷs'-ing, *redemption;* be-gang', *course.* (Parasyntheta from verbs.)

A secondary accent may fall on the tone syllable of the lighter part of a compound or on a suffix: o'-fer-cum'-an, *overcome;* heof'-on-steor'-ra, *star of heaven;* *hŷr'end'e*, hearing; *leđs'ung'*, lying.

16. **Phonology.**—*Classes of Vowels.*

PRIMARY VOWELS:—a (guttural), i (palatal), u (labial).

SHORT VOWELS:—a, æ, e, i, o, u, y. (*Open*, a, æ, e, o; *close*, i, u, y.)

LONG VOWELS:—â, æ̂, ê, î, ô, û, ŷ.

DIPHTHONGS:—eâ (iâ), eô (iô), iê. (*Dialectic*, ai, ei, eu, oe, ôe, oi.)

BREAKINGS:—(*g-sc-row*), ea (ia), eo (io), ie, eâ (iâ), eô (iô), iê. (*h-l-r-row*), ea (ia) < a, eo (io) < i, ie.

	a-umlaut.		i-umlaut.						u-umlaut.	
UMLAUT:—from	i, u,	a,	u,	ea,	eo,	â,	ô,	û,	eâ,	eô,	a,	i,
to	e, o.	e,	y,	y,	y,	æ̂,	ê,	ŷ,	ŷ,	ŷ.	(o)ea,	eo.

PROGRESSION:—*Precession*—

	Descending.		1st term.	Ascending.	
a-series:—e	i, u		**a**, æ, o	â, æ̂, ê	ô
i-series:—	e		**i**	î	â
u-series:—e	o		**u**	eô, û	eâ

CONTRACTION:—(*Reduplication*, § 52.)

from â+a,	ea+a,	ea+u,	eo+a,	eo+e,	eo+u,	
to ô,	â,	eâ,	eô,	eô,	eô,	
from î+a,	u+a,	u+â,	u+i,	u+o,	u+ô,	
to eô,	o,	ô,	u,	o,	ô.	

Summary of Phonetic Groups.

A-Group. Weaker.			Stronger.	I-Group. Weaker.		Stronger.		U-Group. Weaker.		Stronger.	
i			ê		**i**	î				ŷ	
	e			e							
	æ		æ̂				æ̂, â	e			
e	y			e	y				y	eô	eâ, ê
	ea	**a**	â		eo				o		
u	o		ô							**u**	û

ABLAUT:—

	Present.	Preterit Sing.	Plural.	Participle.
Root **a**:—	i, e, eo.	**a**, æ, ea.	â, æ̂, ê.	e; u, o.
" **a**:—	i, e, eo.	**a**, æ, ea.	u.	u, o.
" **i**:—	î.	â.	**i**.	i.
" **u**:—	eô, û.	eâ.	**u**.	o.
" **a**:—	**a**, ea.	ô.	ô.	a.

17. *Classes of Consonants.*

	Mutes (Explosive). Smooth. Surd.	Middle. Sonant.	Rough. Surd.	Sonant.	Continuous Consonants. Spirant. Surd.	Sonant.	Nasal. Sonant.	Liquid. Sonant.
Gutturals..	c	g	kh	gh	h		n *g*	
Palatals....						i		
Linguals...								l, r
Dentals....	t	d	th	dh	s, þ	z, đ	n	(n)
Labials....	p	b	ph	bh	f, hp	v, p	m	(m)

Notable Consonant Combinations.

Guttural:—cl, cn, cr, cp, gl, gn, gr, hl, hn, hr, hp. x=cs, gs, hs; cg=gg; ht>ct, gt.

Dental:—tr, tp, dr, dp, þr, þp, sc, scr, sl, sm, sn, sp, spr, st, str, sp.

Labial:—pl, pr, bl, br, fl, fr, pl, pr, mb, bb.

Gemination from i:—bb<bi, cc<ci, dd<di, bb<fi, cg<gi, ll<li, mm<mi, nn<ni, ss<si.

ASSIMILATION:—đđ, ff, ss, ss, ss, tt, from đþ, bf, ds, đs, sr, td, | þt, ht, ht, mn, ntst, st, st, pd, cd, hd, fn, ndst, sd, sđ.

COMMON CHANGES:—d, f, g, g, h, h, r, r, t, t, p, p, p, x, x, from đ, b, i, h, g, c, s, l, d, đ, g, h, u, gs, hs.

Parent Speech	a	i	u	ai	au
	â	î	û	âi	âu
Sanskrit	a	i	u	ê	ô
	â	î	û	âi	âu
Hellenic	ă, ε, o	ĭ	ŭ	αι, ει, οι	αυ, ευ, ου
	ᾱ, η, ω	ī	ῡ	ᾳ, ῃ, ῳ	αυ, ηυ
Italic	a, e, o / i, u	i / e	u / o	ai, æ / ei, î, ê	au, ô / û
	â, ê, ô	i	u	oi, oe, û	û
Gothic	a, i, u / ai, au	i, ai	u, au	ei	iu
	ê, ô	ei	û?	âi	âu
Anglo-Saxon	For short vowels, see *Summary of Phonetic Groups*, p. 7. For long vowels, see next table.				

Teutonic Long Vowels. (*Short vowels unshifted.*)

Gothic	ê	ô	âi	âu	ei	iu, û?
Old Saxon	â	ô	ê	ô	î	iu, ie, û
Friesic	ê	ô	ê, â	â	î	ia, û
Anglo-Saxon	æ̂	ô	â	eâ	î	eô, ŷ, û
English	ee	oo	ô, oa	ea	î	ee, ou
Old Norse	â	ô	ei	au	î	io, ŷ, û
Old H. German	â	uo	ê, ei	ô, ou	î	iu, io, û
German	a	u	ê, ei	o, au	ei	eu, ie, au

19. *Indo-European Consonant System.*

Parent Speech	k	g	gh	t	d	dh	p	b	bh
Sanskrit	k, kh, k′, ç	g, g′	gh, h	t, th	d	dh	p, ph	b	bh
Hellenic	κ	γ	χ	τ	δ	ϑ	π	β	φ
Italic	c, q	g	h(g)	t	d	d(f, b)	p	b	f(b)
Goth. & A.-S.	h(g)	k(c)	g	þ(d), đ	t	d	f	p	b
O. H. German	h(g)	k(ch)	g(k)	d	z	t	f(v, b)	f	b(p)

P. Speech	ñ	n	m	r	l	j	s	v
Sanskrit	ṅ, ñ	n, ṇ	m	r	l	j	s, sh=s′(s′)	v
Hellenic	γ	ν	μ	ρ	λ	ζ,	σ	f
Italic	n	n	m	r	l	j	s, r	v
G. & A.-S.	n(g)	n	m	r	l	i, j, g	s(z), r	u, v, p
O. H. G.	n	n	m	r	l	j, g	s(r)	w

Grimm's Law.

1. *From Parent Speech to Anglo-Saxon, or from Anglo-Saxon to Old H. German, or from Old H. German to Parent Speech.*—Change each smooth mute to its rough, rough to middle, middle to smooth.

2. *From Anglo-Saxon to Parent Speech, or from Parent Speech to Old H. German, or from Old H. German to Anglo-Saxon.*—Change each smooth mute to its middle, middle to rough, rough to smooth.

20. *Changes of Sound.*

I. VARIATION: exchange of one sound with another.

1. *Euphonic:* through the influence of other sounds in the same word or phrase:
   - (a) Qualitative: through influence of the kind of sound which follows or precedes. . . . . **Assimilation. Dissimilation.**
     - (*a*) Change of vowel through influence of *i*, *u*, or *a* in the following syllable . . . **Umlaut.**
     - (*b*) Change of vowel through influence of consonants . . . . . **Breaking.**
     - (*c*) Change of consonant through influence of *i*, *y* . . . . . **Assibilation.**
     - (*d*) Change of consonant through influence of other consonants.
   - (b) Quantitative: through the weight of sound which follows or precedes. . . . . **Compensation.**
     - (*a*) Change of quantity or quality.
     - (*b*) Change of accent.
2. *Accentual:* through influence of accent. . . . . **Gravitation.**
   - (a) Strengthening accented syllables in a certain way . . . . . **Progression.**
   - (b) Weakening unaccented syllables . . . . . **Precession.**

   Here also may be placed as appendix.

   Changes in root vowels which, in the Teutonic languages, have come to distinguish tenses of the verb . . . . . **Ablaut.**
3. *Mimetic:* through influence of other like words:
   - (a) Conforming to other words, in declension, conjugation, etc. . . . . **Conformation.**
   - (b) Simulating etymological relations. . . . . **Simulation.**
   - (c) Sundering, bifurcation, dimorphism.
4. *Etymologic:* uninfluenced by other sounds in the same language . . . . . *Lautverschiebung.* **Shifting.**

II. FIGURATION: change of form without change of sense, by dropping, adding, or changing the order of sounds.

1. *Dropping:* . . . . . **Apothesis.**
   - (a) Beginning a word. . . . . **Aphæresis.**
   - (b) Ending . . . . . **Apocope.**
   - (c) Within:
     - (*a*) Vowel before a vowel . . . . . **Elision.**
     - (*b*) Vowel before a consonant . . . . . **Syncope.**
     - (*c*) Consonant or syllable. . . . . **Ecthlipsis.**
2. *Adding:* . . . . . **Prosthesis.**
   - (a) Beginning a word . . . . . **Prothesis.**
   - (b) Ending . . . . . *Paragoge.* **Epithesis.**
   - (c) Within . . . . . **Epenthesis.**
3. *Changing the order of letters* . . . . . **Metathesis.**

III. CONTRACTION: drawing together vowel sounds to avoid the hiatus.

1. *Complete:*
   (a) Within a word . . . . . **Synæresis.**
   (b) Between words . . . . . **Crasis.**
2. *Incomplete:* a partial rhythmic union, so that the two vowels serve as one syllable in poetry:
   (a) Within a word . . . . . **Synizesis.**
   (b) Between words . . . . . **Synalœpha.**

Laws of Letter Change.

1. A vowel may assimilate a vowel by **umlaut.** § 32.
2. A vowel may change to its **breaking** before *l*, *r*, *h*, or *p*, *m*, *f*, and after *c* (*sc*), *g*, or *p*. § 33.
3. Between two vowels a **surd** may change to a **sonant** or a **mute** to a **continuous.** § 35, 3.
4. If a **surd** follows a **sonant,** *gemination* of the **surd** is produced. § 35, *A*.
5. If a **surd** precedes a **sonant,** the **sonant** is changed to a **surd** of the same organ. § 35, *B*.
6. A **mute** before another consonant may change to a **continuous** of the same organ. § 35, 4, *b*.
7. Before *n* a **surd** or *mute* may change to its cognate nasal. § 35, 4, *c*.
8. A **vowel** may change to a **consonant** of the same organ to avoid the hiatus. § 36.
9. Between two vowels a **continuous** may change to a **mute.** § 36, 2.
10. One of two contiguous **mutes** may change to a **continuous,** one of two **continuous** to a **mute.** § 36, 3, 4.
11. A consonant may be dropped and the preceding vowel lengthened by **compensation.** § 37.
12. A vowel may be dropped and the preceding consonant doubled by **compensation.** § 37, 2.
13. **Gemination,** when final or next to a consonant, is simplified or dissimilated. § 27, 5.
14. **Apothesis** is found of a syllable of inflection, and of an unaccented stem vowel final; before a vowel; before *l*, *n*, *r*; *d*, *ð*, *st*; *c*, *g*, *m*, *p*, and other consonants. § 44–46.
15. **Ecthlipsis** is found of *d*, *ð*, *s*, *st*, before *st*; of *n* before *ð*, *f*, *s*; of *d*, *g*, *h*, *i*, *p*, mostly between vowels or before a liquid. § 47.

16. **Epithesis, epenthesis,** and **metathesis** are used for euphony. § 49–61.

17. **Synæresis** may occur after *ecthlipsis* of *g* or *h*, or the change of *p* to *u*. § 52.

---

21. Every classic speech is an ideal; the folks at home do not speak it. We have no direct description of the pronunciation of Anglo-Saxon; but we have Greek text written phonetically with Anglo-Saxon characters (Hickes, Pref., xii.+), and know that they were sounded nearly like the corresponding letters in the Latin of the missionaries. These characters represent only the most striking varieties of sound, and those vaguely. There must have been very great diversity in the folkspeech. The view given in § 14 is general or ideal, as seems suited to a practical manual. An examination of the laws of the language, and its relations to other languages, will suggest further remarks.

22. **Voice.**—Breath is made sonant by vibrations of the vocal chords—ligaments which may be stretched across the wind-pipe. The quality of a vowel depends on the general shape of the cavity containing the vibrating column of air. For **a**, the tongue lies flat; for **i**, we breathe or blow into a narrow-necked bottle; for **u**, into a bottle without a neck.

23. **Short Vowels.**—The simple vowels are *a*, *i*, *u*. Pure *a* may be gradually changed to *i*, if the tongue be slowly raised toward the palate; to *u*, if the lips be slowly closed. Between *a* and *i* are *æ*, *e*; between *a* and *u* is *o*; between *i* and *u* is *y*. The vowel sounds shade into each other like colors.

In any word or stem the same short vowel is found in all the Teutonic tongues, and any changes are explained by umlaut, breaking, or other phonetic laws working within the language.

a, æ.—In Anglo-Saxon *a* is found before a single consonant followed by *a*, *o*, *u*, *e*<*a*; before *m*, *n*, and in some foreign words. Before *m*, *n*, it also suffers assimilation to *o*: *man*>*mon*; before a consonant combination beginning with *l*, *r*, *h*, it breaks to *ea*: *sealm*, psalm; before a syllable containing *i* or *e*<*i*, i-umlaut changes it to *e*: *hladan hle(de)st*, to load; u-umlaut changes it to *ea*: *bealu*, bale; in other situations, words having *a* in other languages show a regular shifting of *a* to *æ*; thus, in monosyllables ending in a single consonant: *bæc*, back; in polysyllables before a single consonant followed by *e*: *bæcere*, baker; before

consonant combinations, especially those beginning with *f* or *s*: *cræft*, craft. In the folkspeech the sound of *a* must have varied through the shades of sound from *a* in *father* nearly to *a* in *hat* on the one side, and to *o* in *hot* on the other. Accented *ă* often changes in English to the sound of *a* in *name*, through progression; i-umlaut, or shifting: *macian* > *mâken* > make.

e.—This is i-umlaut of *a*: *temian*, tame; a-umlaut of *i*: *helpan*<root *hilp*, help; or a light toneless sound which may be the ghost of any sound out of which the blood has ebbed through gravitation: *gife*, Gothic *gibôs*, *gibâi*, *giba*, gift. The same word is sometimes written with *æ* and *e*, or *ea* and *e*: *dæg*, *deg*, day; *seah*, *seh*, saw. In the folkspeech the sounds varied from nearly a drawling *ăă* (as in *ăărth*, earth), through *e* in *met*, to the light sound of German final *e*, French mute *e*.

i.—This simple sound holds its ground well; but a-umlaut sometimes changes it to *e*: *pifeđ*, weaves, pl. *pefađ*; u-umlaut and breaking both change it to *eo*: *lim*, limb, pl. *leomu*; *feohte*, fight. It exchanges in writing with *y*, and sometimes with *ea*: *miht*, *myht*, *meaht*, might. Perhaps an a-element was in some words creeping in, as in English long *i* (=*â*+*i*), *cniht*, Northumbrian *cnaiht*, knight.

o.—This is treated as u-umlaut of *a*, or a-umlaut of *u*, or an assimilation of *a* by *m* or *n*: *rodor*, Old Saxon *radur*, heaven; *curon*, *coren*<*coran*, chose, chosen; *comb*, comb. In folkspeech it varied from *o* in *not* to nearly *u* in *full*.

u, y.—Like *i*, *u* holds its ground. It changes in writing with *o* on one side, and *y* on the other; and probably varied in folkspeech from *u* in *nut* to nearly the French *u*. **y** is i-umlaut of *u* and *ea*, sometimes u-umlaut of *i*, exchanging with *eo*. It was a favorite letter with the penmen, and is often found for *i*, and sometimes for *e*, *æ*: *cyning*, king; *eald*, *yldest*, old, oldest; *ceorl* > *cyrlisc*, churlish; *lyden*, *leden*, Latin; *gyst-sele*, *gæst-sele*, guest-hall.

24. **Long Vowels.**—Two like short vowels uttered as one sound make a long vowel: aa = â, ii = î, uu = û.

Long vowels are produced by compensation, progression, and contraction.

A long sound is, however, different in quality as well as quantity from its short. The anticipation of the double utterance affects the position of the organs. A given long vowel may, in fact, arise from the coming together of unlike vowels: τιμῶμεν from τιμάομεν; nor do two like vowels always

give their long: Greek εε give ει, οο give ου. The Anglo-Saxon long vowels vary in kind (quality) from their short; *a* prolonged is not exactly *â*, nor *e* prolonged exactly *ê*. We give the long mark, therefore, whenever the quality of sound is that of the long letter, though the vowel may be unaccented, and the sound obscure.

Proof of length is found in accent (§ 12) and gemination in the manuscripts; presumptive evidence is also found in the origin and relations of vowels, and the analogy of other languages.

That a letter is not accented is no proof that it is not long; but when one is abundantly marked in good manuscripts, it must be held long. The pronouns mê, þê, hê are abundantly marked, and therefore we give them as long, though analogy is perhaps against it. These words, however alliterate in poetry, fall in with a general law as to accented open syllables which has a plain physiological basis, and the corresponding words are long in English, and were long in Latin.

Monosyllables ending in a vowel are long, except enclitics and proclitics, which are really affixes or prefixes to other words.

â corresponds in part to Gothic *ê*, in part to Gothic *ái*, and has oftenest passed into English *ó*: Gothic *hâim-*, Anglo-Saxon *hâm*, home, Germ. *heim;* in *þâ*, *â*, etc., it is progression of *a*. It varied through *â* in *far*, *wall*, Ger. *mahnen*, nearly to *ô* in *home*.

æ̂ corresponds to the same Gothic letters as *â*, but comes into English with the sound of *ee*: Gothic *sâi-*, Anglo-Saxon *sæ̂*, sea, German *see*. It is i-umlaut of *â*, and simple shifting also, which may be stopped by a following *m*, *n*: *hâte*, *hæ̂t(e)st*, *hæ̂t(eð)*, call, callest, calleth.

ê is i-umlaut of *ô*: *fôt*, *fêt(e)*, foot, feet; simple shifting of *eâ*>*êa*: *hêran*, hear. It springs also from contraction of old reduplications, from lengthening of open monosyllables: *mê*, me; *hê*, he; *þê*, thee; and from compensation: *þên*<*þegn*, thane: perhaps here also *gê*<*ger*, ye; *þê*<*þec*, thee; and other such pronouns. It likes *m* or *n* after it, and in such cases may stand for an original *â* or *æ̂*. It varied in folkspeech from nearly *e* in *there* to *ey* in *they*, with the final *y*-sound (*ee*) pretty plain. It goes over to *ee* completely in English. (Progression.)

î corresponds to the *î* of other languages. It has risen in English under the accent to the sound of *â*+*i* (§ 38, 1): *bîtan*, bite; *drîfan*, drive. It exchanges in the writing with *ý*, and must have sounded much like it.

ô corresponds to Gothic *ô*. It springs from contraction of three *a*-elements, or two *a*-elements and a *u*-element: *fâ-*

han > *fôn*, catch; *gefeohan* > *gefeôn*, rejoice; from progression: *môna*, Old H. German *mâno*, moon; *sôna*, Mid. H. German *sân*, soon. It had the sound of *o* in *tone*, with a tendency in a labial direction, which has brought it to English *oo*. § 38, 1.

û corresponds to *ū* in other dialects. It is often strengthened from *u* under the accent: *þû*, thou; *nû*, now; sometimes springs from compensation: *mûð*, Gothic *munþs*, mouth. It changes in English under the accent to *ou*: *hûs*, house. (Progression.)

ŷ is i-umlaut of *ū*, of *eô*, and of *eâ*: *mûs*, *mŷs*(*e*), mouse, mice; *lŷge* < root *leôg*, lie; *hŷr*(*i*)*an* < root *heâr*, hear. § 38, 1.

25. **Diphthongs.**—Two unlike vowels heard in one syllable make a diphthong. The forms *ea* (*ia*), *eo* (*io*), *ie*, are generally called breakings; *eâ*, *iâ*, *eô*, *iô*, *iê*, are often true diphthongs, and then they differ etymologically from breakings. For Breakings, see § 33.

eâ, iâ = Gothic *âu* > *âᵘ* > *ⁱâ* > *eâ*. It is found in many positions: final; before *r*, *h*, *m*, *n*, *p*: *freâ*, lord; *teâr*, tear; *heâh*, high; *dreâm*, dream; *leân*, loan; *breâp*, brow. It is also found as a *g-sc*-breaking of *â*: *geâfon*, gave; *sceân*, shone. It is an unstable combination, tending to *â* > English *ô* or to *ê* > English *ee*, as more or less of the *e*-sound works in. The prevailing set is, on the whole, to *ê*: *steâp*, *stêp*-an, steep.

eô, iô = Gothic *iu*. It is also an assimilation of *i*, *î*, by *p* or *l*: *treôp*, Gothic *triva*, tree; *feôl*, Old H. German *fîla*, mud; apparently also by *h*, *g*; but in these cases a change of *h*, *g*, to *p* may be supposed: *þîhan* > *þeôn*, depart; *frig*, *freô*, free. It is a peculiar progression from *î* final (perhaps here also a labial sound is to be added): *beô*, Old H. German *bî*, bee. It often also springs from contraction, especially of the reduplication, exchanging with *ê*. It exchanges in writing with *iô*. It is found often for *eâ*. It changes to *û*: *sûpan*, sup; *sûcan*, suck. It must have had a peculiar sound or sounds—an unstable combination, tending to *u* > English *u* in *sup* on the one side, and to *ê* > English *ee* on the other. The prevailing set is, on the whole, to *ê*. A similar sound is produced by *g-sc*-breaking from *ô*: *sceô*, shoe; but the *e* is lighter.

iê is used for *eâ*, *eô*.

26. **Northumbrian Vowels.**—**a** is often used where Anglo-Saxon has *ea*, sometimes where it has *e*, *i*, *eo*, *u*.

æ interchanges with *ea*: *æl*, *eall*, *all*, all; *æ* for *e* is abundant; **e** for *æ* frequent; **oe** for *e* frequent. Assimilation of *wo* < *we*,

ɯu < *wi*, is found: *wosa*, Anglo-Saxon *pesan*, to be; *wutta*, Anglo-Saxon *pitan*, to know; also *ul* < *il*: *sulf*, Anglo-Saxon *silf*, self; *sulfer*, Anglo-Saxon *seolfor*, Gothic *silubr*, silver.

â is often written *aa;* it exchanges with *æ̂;* is a progression of *a*, *ea*, before liquids. **æ̂** is found written *aae*. **ê** is seldom i-umlaut of *ó*, is used sometimes for *eó* (lautverschiebung), oftener for *æ̂*, Gothic *ê*, oftenest for *eâ*. **ôe** is i-umlaut of *ó*, or represents Anglo-Saxon *ê* not umlaut.

ea interchanges with *eo*, a favorite sound which displaces sometimes Anglo-Saxon *e*, *i*. **eâ** interchanges with *eó*. **iô** for *eó* is frequent; **eâ** for *æ̂*. There are found *ai* for *i*, *ei* for *ê* or *æ̂*, *eu* for *eóþ*, and *oi*.

27. **Consonants.**—The stream of breath is stopped in speech in three main ways: by contact between the root of the tongue and the palate (a round surface against a hollow one), the tip of the tongue and the teeth (a sharp against a flat surface), and the upper and lower lips (two flat surfaces). If a sonant breath be stopped, the sonant letters, *g* guttural, *d* dental, *b* labial, are produced. If we blow instead of breathe, a slight change is made throughout the vocal organs: viz., the glottis is thrown open, the chords no longer sound, and the shape which the organs take at the places where they meet and part is varied: hence the smooth, surd letters, *c*(*k*) guttural, *t* dental, *p* labial. These are *mutes*. If the breath be not wholly stopped, *continuous* letters, *i* guttural (palatal), *đ* and English *z* dental, (English *v*) and *þ* labial, are made; or, if the stream be blown, *h* guttural, *þ*, *s*, dental, *f*, *hþ*, labial. If, when the breath is stopped, the veil be raised which separates the nose from the pharynx, the resonance of the nasal cavity gives *n* in *ng* guttural, *n* dental, *m* labial; *l* and *r* are trills. Each consonant stands for two sounds: viz., the closing of the organs, *ap;* and the opening of the organs, *pa*. For a fourth kind of stop, see Assibilation, § 34.

1. A stop of the first kind, which will pass for a *g*, may be made anywhere from the very root of the tongue forward to the middle of the mouth. Some nations make their *g* in one place, some in another. Further forward it becomes impossible to stop with a humped tongue, and the tip comes into play. This may be touched, so as to make a *d*, any where from the front *g*-stop, or even further back, to the meeting of the teeth. Just where *g* and *d* run into each other is *i* consonant (English *y*). Some tribes count gutturals and dentals as all one. The Sandwich Islanders have to be taught to tell *c* from *t*, and possibly the Roman populace may have had a similar habit. See Assibilation, § 34.

2. *h, þ, đ, f*, are pronounced as spirants, but are, historically, representatives of *ch, th, dh, ph*, which were once pronounced as separate letters (e. g., *ch* as *kh* in *work-house*), and hence are called rough or aspirate mutes, a name retained in historical grammar by their representatives. See Table, § 17.

3. **r** is described as a trill of the uvula in the Northumberland burr, and of the tip of the tongue in English and German; *l* as a trill of the side edges of the tongue. No trill is heard in English in America. In *r* the tip of the tongue is raised and moved slightly while the breath is poured over it. In *l* the tip is raised to the dental stop, and the breath issues freely between its sides and the cheeks.

4. *Gemination* is the doubling of a consonant. *Physiologically* it arises from an analysis of a consonant by which the sound made in closing the stop is united with the foregoing vowel, and that made by opening is united with the following vowel. Or it arises from combining two complete consonants, i. e., shutting and opening the organs twice: ba*ck-k*itchen. The last is seldom heard in English. *Historically* it springs from gravitation (§ 38) or assimilation (§ 35). It is most common with liquids and *s*. A real gemination can not occur at the beginning or the end of a word, nor before a second mute, nor is it easy after a long vowel. For the orthographic rule in Anglo-Saxon, see § 20, Rule 13. Double *g* is written *cg*, double *f*, *bb*.

5. *Dissimilated Gemination.*—When gemination of a nasal (*m, n*) would occur before *l* or *r*, the trill calls for so much breath that we drop the nasal veil, and that changes the latter half of *m* into *b*, of *n* into *d*. In some other cases a continuous consonant or vowel is dissimilated for force of utterance: *ss*>*st*, *mm*>*mp*, *nn*>*nt*, *i*>*ig*, *u* or *p*>*up*, are found; *spindel* <*spinl*; *timber*<*timr*, Goth. *timrjan*. §§ 28, 36, 81.

28. **Gutturals** (*Palatals*): *c, g, h, i, n*. **c** has given place in English before *e, i, y*, to *k* (a graphic change merely) or to *ch* (Assibilation, § 34). This *ch* appears in late manuscripts, and the assibilation was doubtless begun in the folkspeech earlier; but the new sound does not show in the alliteration, and should not be given for Anglo-Saxon *c*. The assibilation of *sc*>English *sh*, is excluded for similar reasons. *ct*>*ht*, § 36; *ci*>*cc*, § 37; *cg*=*gg*, § 37; *sc*=*x*, § 51.

g comes into English as *g* in *go, give;* as *dg* in *edge* (Assibilation, § 34); as *y* in *youth*. It stands in the place of *j* (=English *y*) of other languages in three places: (1.) Beginning the following words: *gê*, ye; *geâr, gêr*, year; *geâra*, yore; *geóc*, yoke; *geógud*, youth; *geól*, yule; *geond*, yond; *geong*, young; *gesc*, yes; *gist*, yeast; *git*, yet. Compare Sanskrit *juvan*, Latin *juvenis*, Gothic *jugg*, German *jung*, Norse *ungr*, Anglo-Saxon *geong, iung*, English *young*.

(2.) Within words in the place of *i* (=*j*) before a vowel in inflection: *nerian* = *nergan*, to save; inserted: *lufie* = *lufige*, love; *ge* inserted: *eardian* = *eardigean*, to till.

(3.) Final for *i*: *hii* = *hig*, they.

All these changes seem natural if *g* in these words be pronounced as the English *y*. It is certain that these words were at all times often so pronounced: we find *iung* in Anglo-Saxon as well as *geong*, *nerian* as well as *nergan*. But words like *geong* alliterate abundantly in Anglo-Saxon poetry with words beginning with *g* hard, and not with other kinds of words beginning with *io*, *ia*, or another vowel; while in Norse the words beginning with *i*, *j*, alliterate only with vowels. It seems certain, therefore, that this *ge* sounded more like a hard *g* than like *e* or *i* before a vowel, which was nearly the English *y*. It is better to accept the fact that a guttural breathing was inserted between the vowels of *lufie* by those who wrote *lufige*, than to soften out the *g* to try to simplify the phonology; *g* and *j* run into each other. Words in *g* hard in Anglo-Saxon run into *y* in Old English, and return to *g* in English: *forgitan*, *foryeten*, forget; *gifan*, *yeven*, give; *geat*, *yate*, gate, etc. These are dialectical variations, but real differences of sound. In Anglo-Saxon *g* had such sounds as in modern German.

h represents the guttural rough (*ch*) and the simple breathing. They were both in the folkspeech originally; both are now given in the dialects of England. The guttural is not, however, recognized as separate in alliteration or otherwise in the literature of the Anglo-Saxons any more than in the English, and may be omitted from the literary, though not from the comparative grammar of both. It is sounded in initial *hl*, *hn*, *hr*. *h* > *g*, *h* > *p*, § 35, 3; *h* < *g*, § 35, 4, *b*; *ht* < *ct*, § 36, 3; *h* dropped, Apocope, § 44; Ecthlipsis, § 47. *x* producing breaking = *hs*.

i consonant goes into *g*, from the most forward utterances of which it is distinguished by being not so tight a stop. It is found sometimes, especially in foreign proper names, alliterating with *g*, and should then be pronounced like *g*.

n in *nc*, *ng* (Goth. Greek *gg*), is the English guttural nasal.

29. **Dentals** (*Linguals*): *t*, *d*, *þ*, *đ*, *s*, *l*, *r*, *n*. **t** < *dđ*, § 36, 5; < *tđ*, § 35, *B*; *st* < *sđ*; *t* < *d*, Assimilation, § 35.

d for *đ* between two vowels seems to indicate a disinclination to begin a syllable with *đ*: *ld* < *lđ*; *dd* < *di*, § 37: *đ* and *þ* are not uniformly used in any of the manuscripts; there were certainly two sounds, as in English. The uniform use of *þ* beginning words and *đ* elsewhere is calligraphic, not orthographic. The real sounds may yet be made out; compare §§ 194, *a*; 41, (3). English surds indicate A.-Sax. surds, unless they spring from other

dialects than those which had most influenced the Anglo-Saxon. Assimilation by *l*, § 35; breaking by *l, r*, § 32.

r < *s*, § 41; apocope of *r*, § 44; metathesis of *r*, § 51.

s and *z* undistinguished, but see § 189, *b*. **n**, Ecthlipsis, § 47.

30. **Labials:** *p, b, f, þ, m.* **p** begins only words of foreign origin. **b** changes to *f* in the middle and end of words, except *mb* and *bb* < *bi*. The Old Saxon, Friesic, and Norse have the same tendency to change the middle mute labial *b* to the continuous *f* in the middle of words, i. e., not to close the mouth tightly between two vowels. The Old Saxon and Friesic have both surd and sonant continuous forms, *f* and English *v*. This Anglo-Saxon *f* is written *u* (*v*) sometimes (*hliuade*, B., 1799), and it has changed in English to *v*: *heauod, heafod*, head; *heofon*, heaven; *pulf, pulfâs*, wolf, wolves. The folkspeech had a sonant continuous labial, and it may be distinguished in the weak verbs. See § 189, *b*. The runic *þ* is like the English *w*, but must have varied in the dialects as it does now in England. In initial *pl, pr* (often parasitic), and at the end of words, it must have been spoken with a nearer approach to closing the mouth. Bede represents it in Latin by *vu*, the Normans by *gu*; the parasitic *v*, *g* plainly indicate a vigorous utterance. It changes to *u* when final and preceded by a consonant: *bealu*, genitive *bealpes*, bale. Latin *u* and *v* were the same letter; the present separation of them was completed only in the 18th century. *w* is of German origin; it had come into common use in Semi-Saxon. Assimilation of *þ* and *m*, § 35, 2; *mm* < *mi*, § 37, 2.

31. **Northumbrian Consonants:**

(1.) Gutturals.—**c** and *g* interchange: *finger, fincer*, finger; *dringes*, he drinks; *cc* and *þ*: *getreuaƈ* = *getryccaƈ*; *c* > *h*, *c* > *ch*, see *h*. **g** assimilates a preceding *e* or *ê* to *ei*: *ƈeign*, Anglo-Saxon *þegn*, thane; *weig*, Anglo-Saxon *þeg*, way; in such cases there may be ecthlipsis of *g*: *maiden*, Anglo-Saxon *mægden*, maiden; or *g* > *h*: *fifteih*, Anglo-Saxon *fiftig*, fifty; *g* < *þ*: *ƈrîga*, Anglo-Saxon *þrîþa*, three; *g* and **i** consonant have the same relations as in Anglo-Saxon. **h.**—Prothesis of *h* is found in *heald*, old, etc.; often before *l* and *r*: *hlâdia*, to lead; *hroue*, row; apothesis in *lâfe*, Anglo-Saxon *hlâf*, loaf, etc. Ecthlipsis between vowels is the rule, and occurs elsewhere. *c* > *h* and *g* > *h*, with a change of the *h* to *ch*, are common at the end of words: Anglo-Saxon *mec* > *meh, mech*, me; occasional within words: *micil, mihil, michil*, much. Beda uses *ct* for *ht*.

(2.) DENTALS.—**t** for *d* is found: *heafot*, head; apocope in second singular of verbs: *slæpes đû*, sleepst thou. Apocope of **d** is common: *hælen* < *hælend*, savior; assimilation of *ld*: *manigfallice*, manifold. There is no *þ*; *đ* and *d* interchange: *đagâs*, *dagâs*, days; *brôdor*, *brôđor*, brother. Ecthlipsis of *đ* occurs when the pronoun *đû*, thou, agglutinates with its verb: *sprecestu* for *sprecest đû*, thou speakest. *đ* final changes to *s*: *cuoedas* < *cuoedađ*, they say. *đ* > *z*: *bezere*, baptist. *Liquids.*— Apocope of **n** is the rule in the infinitive, and frequent elsewhere; ecthlipsis before *đ*, *f*, *s*, as in Anglo-Saxon. Metathesis of **r** is more common than in Anglo-Saxon; ecthlipsis occurs in *bygen* < *byrgen*, tomb; epenthesis in *efern*, evening, and its compounds. Metathesis of **l** and of **n** occurs. **s** < *đ*, see over.

(3.) LABIALS.—**b** suffers apocope: *dum*, dumb, etc.; *b* < *f*: *feber*, Anglo-Saxon *fefor*, fever. **f** > *u* and *ub*: *dioul*, *dioubol*, Anglo-Saxon *deofol*, devil, where *u* is perhaps English *v*. For *p* are written *u*, *uu*, *w*. Initial *p* before *u*, and sometimes *oe*, is left unwritten: *ulf* = *uulf*, wolf; *oeg* = *woeg*, way. Prothesis is found: *woxo*, ox; and epenthesis: *suunder*, sunder. Initial *hu*, *su*, do not contract with a following vowel, as in Anglo-Saxon, except the parts of *cuma*, *cuman*, come. Ecthlipsis of *w* occurs before *oe*: *coeđ*, quoth; and between two vowels; final it becomes a vowel, or drops, or changes to *g*.

The manuscripts are late, and the whole aspect of the dialect indicates a revolutionary period of speech.

EUPHONIC CHANGES.

VARIATION.

32. **Umlaut** is a change of vowel through the influence of *a*, *i* > *e*, OR *u*, in the following syllable.

The conception of a sound tends to put the vocal organs in a position to utter it. We conceive the later sounds in a word while yet speaking the former; hence the tendency to utter a sound between the two. No umlaut shows in Gothic. Old H. German has most a-umlaut; Norse, u-umlaut.

(1.) **a**-*umlaut.*—The conception of a coming *a* affects the utterance of *i*, so as to produce the intermediate sound *e*; so it changes *u* to *o*: *helpan* < root *hilp*, help; *boga* < root *bug*, bow. It sometimes changes *i* to *eo*: *nid*, *neođan*, neath; *leofađ*, live.

i-*umlaut* changes	a,	â,	ô,	u,	ea,	eo,	û,	eâ,	eô,
to	e,	æ,	ê,	y,	y,	y,	ŷ,	ŷ,	ŷ.

æ, *e*, are between *a* and *i*; *ô* is from *a* (§ 38); *y* is between *u* and *i*; *ea*, *eo* have parasitic *u* (§ 33); *eâ*, *eô* have radical *u* (§ 38); and when the umlaut was established *u* was the effective sound in all. For examples, see §§ 207, 211, 208, 204, 208 (2), 208 (6), 206, 208 (3), 206. When an old *i* is lost, its *umlaut* is called *concealed*: *fôt*, *fêt*(*i*), foot, feet, § 84. Umlaut stopped in secondary forms, whose primary have it, is *rückumlaut*, § 189, *d*.

(3.) **u-*umlaut*.**—A coming *u* often changes *a* to *ea* (*ia*) (nearly *o* in sound), *i* to *eo* (*io*) for *iu*: *bealu*, Old H. German *balo*, bale; *beadu*, O. H. German *Badu-*, battle; *meoluc*, O. H. German *miluc*, milk; *seofun*, Gothic *sibun*, seven.

33. **Breaking** is the change of one vowel to two by a consonant.

The consonants most difficult to make, the trills *l*, *r*, and the gutturals *c*, *g*, *h*, are often accompanied by an involuntary sympathetic movement of other parts of the organs, which produces what may be called a parasitic sound—the lip semi-vowel *u*, *p*, or the palatal *i*. Americans hear the parasitic *i* in the Southern *cear* for *car*, *gearden* for *garden*; the *u* in *hear*, *leer*. The *g-sc*-breakings are produced by a parasitic *i*>*e*, the *h-l-r*-breakings by a *u*>*o*, *a*. The *h-l-r*-breaking *ea* oftenest stands where there should be umlaut *e*<*a*, or shifting *æ*<*a*, and the *a* of *ea* represents the parasitic sound. Labial assimilation has the effect of *u*; sometimes of *i* by conformation. Analogous effects are traced here and there through all languages. Compare §§ 34, 35, 2, *b*, 50.

(1.) **l, r, h,** oftenest before a consonant, break foregoing *a* to *ea* (*ia*), *i* to *eo* (*io*): *sealm*, psalm; *earm*, arm; *hleahtor*, laughter; (second consonant dropped), *eal*<*eall*, all; *mear*<*mearh*, mare; (single *h* dropped), *sleân*<*sleahan*, slay; *meolc*, milk; *eorl*, earl; *leoht*, light. For *ea*, *eo*, sometimes *ie* occurs.

(2.) **m**, *f*, *p*, and *u*-umlaut have the same effect, § 35, 2, *a*; § 32.

(3.) **g-sc**-breaking has a slight *i*-sound between *c* (*sc*), *g*, or *p*, and a vowel after it: *ceaster*<Latin *castrum*, camp; *sceô*, shoe; *geador*, together; (*peota*<*pita*, wise man). It may be found before *a*, *o*, *e*, *â*, *ô*, *ê*.

34. **Assibilation** is the assimilation of a dental or guttural with a following *i*-sound. It gives rise, among many striking facts, to a fourth set of letters, made by turning the inverted tip of the tongue up to the hard palate, § 27. Such a stop, when blowing, produces **tsh** (*tch* in *fetch*); when breathing, **dzh** (*dg* in *edge*); if the stop be not complete, it produces, when blowing, **sh** in *shall*; when breathing, **zh** (*zi* in *glazier*).

1. HISTORICAL.—These sounds are not recognized in the Parent Speech, Latin, Greek, Gothic, or other most ancient alphabets; and hence, though they are now found almost all the world over, they are generally represented by combinations of the earlier letters, and treated as compound consonants. They seem as a matter of fact to have been contrivances to take the place of certain difficult combinations of the simpler sounds. Among the Indo-European languages, the Slavonic have most assibilation; the descendants of the Latin come next.

It was common in the folkspeech of Rome; *ci* interchanges with *ti* before *a*, *o*, *u*, in the oldest remains of Latin. It is not certain whether this springs from a dialectic adoption of the imperfect articulation common every where among children, or from some peculiarity of the Roman populace, *e.g.*, one like that of the Sandwich Islanders (§ 27, 1). When the Germans were sifted over the Romanic regions, the chaos of language favored the assibilations, and they spread in various modifications over Europe, as far as the Romanic speech had influence.

The English has the following:

Dentals.—**ti** > *tsh:* Anglo-Saxon *fetian* > English *fetch*; Latin *questionis* > English *question*.

Latin *natura* > English *nature*. (English *u* = *i* + *u*.)

ti > *sh*: Latin *nationis* > English *nation*.

di > *dzh:* Latin *solidarius* > English *soldier*; Latin *modulationis* > English *modulation*.

si > *sh:* Latin *pensionis* > English *pension*; Latin *securus* > English *sure*.

si (= *zy*) > *zh:* Latin *thesaurus* > English *treasure*.

zi > *zh:* Anglo-Saxon *grasian* > English *graze* > *grazier*.

Gutturals.—**ci** > *tsh:* Latin *castrum* > Anglo-Saxon *ceaster* > English *chester* (*Win-chester*); Anglo-Saxon *fecian*, *fetian* > English *fetch*.

ci > *sh:* Latin *oceanus* > English *ocean*. **c** > *s:* Latin *civilis* > English *civil*.

sce > *sh:* Anglo-Saxon *scacan* > *sceacan* > English *shake*.

sci > *s:* Latin *scientia* > English *science*.

gi > *dzh:* Anglo-Saxon **ecg** (stem *egi*) > English *edge*; Latin *generis* > English *gender*.

gi > *y:* Gothic *gards:* Anglo-Saxon *geard* > English *yard*.

i > *dzh:* Latin *iocus* > Italian *gioco* > English *joke*.

The beginnings of the following are in Anglo-Saxon: **sc** before *a* and *o* has often changed to *sce* in the oldest manuscripts: *sceacan* for *scacan*, shake. The sound of *sh* for *sc* in O. H. German first appears in the eleventh century, and afterward rules in High German. As for the Low German, *sh* is

not yet in Dutch, but in Platt-Deutsch it has become common as in English. There is no indication in the alliteration that *sce* is pronounced *sh*, nor can it be received as current literary speech. In the Anglo-Saxon of the eleventh century, *ch* for *c* begins to appear: *child* < *cild*, child. This is also outside of the literary speech, and springs from foreign (French) influence. The other changes are still later, and more purely Romanic in their source. The only German assibilation is *sh*, and that is later than classic Anglo-Saxon.

2. PHYSIOLOGICAL.—(*a.*) *Assibilation of Dentals.*—t+1: *tion* in *question*. Trying to sound *io* as one syllable tends to change *i* to *y*. In *t* the tip of the tongue is pressed to the upper gum, and the voice blown; in *y* the tip of the tongue is dropped to the lower gum, and the middle is humped up toward the palate, and the voice breathed. In **tsh** the tip is inverted and turned up to the hard palate, and the voice blown. This is a compromise in two points of view,—as to the place of the stop (between the *t*-stop and the *y*-stop), and as to the kind of stop (inverted tongue against hard palate—a roundish against a flatish surface; see § 27); but it is not a mechanical result of an attempt to go rapidly through *t*+*y*: it is a quite new way to make a sound which the ear will accept as a substitute for the two. The explanation of *d*+*i* (*soldier*) is the same, except that the voice in *d* and in *dzh* is breathed instead of blown. The explanation of *s*+*i* (*pension*), and of *z*+*i* (*grazier*), is the same as that of *t*+*i* and *d*+*i*, except that in these last the stop is not complete either in blowing *s* and *sh*, or breathing *z* and *zh*. In the change of *sce* to *sh*, the *c* goes to *h*, and only gives strength to the compromise of *s*+*y*.

(*b.*) *The English Assibilation of Gutturals*, as though dentals, springs from defective articulation. The root of the tongue never works as easily as the more flexible tip. Children say, and Anglo-Saxon children said, *tan* for *can*, *tin* for *cin*; and *chin* (*tshin*) is a not unnatural compromise between *tin* and *cin*. When the organs are placed for *y*, or *i*, or *e*, the back of the mouth makes the narrow neck of a bottle, § 22, and it is hard to raise the root to make a *c* (*k*) stop. Hence *c* (*k*) before *y*, *i*, *e*, is always unstable; and hence a child will learn to say *can* before *cin*, and will be more likely to compromise on *chin* than *chan*. The most natural result, however, of the difficulty of making this stop is to make an imperfect stop, and give the aspirate *h*, *ch*, instead of *c* (*k*), and this tendency has prevailed in the Germanic tongues. From this aspirate a foreign influence easily leads to the assibilated palatals *sh*, *zh*, etc. Aphæresis of *g* takes place in *geard* > *yard*, compare § 28; a parasitic *d* (dj) precedes *i*, *j* in Latin words: possibly a guttural *g* preceded in Italian the present sound of *gi* as *dzh*, in *gioco* < Latin *iocus*, joke; *Giove* < Latin *Iove*, Jove. Latin proper names of this sort alliterate abundantly in Anglo-Saxon poetry with words in *g* hard. § 28.

35. **Assimilation** is the act by which letters make each other alike. It includes breaking and umlaut, as well as assibilation. Other changes of this kind are called assimilation in a narrower sense.

(1.) A vowel may assimilate with a vowel. (*a.*) Umlaut, § 32.

(*b.*) The vowels become the same: *peorod*, *pered*, crowd; *pudupe*, *vidua*, widow; *pelerâs*, *peolorâs*, Gothic *vairilo*, lips; *nallas*, *nællæs* < *nealles* < *ne* + *ealles*, not at all.

(2.) A consonant assimilates a vowel. Consonants of each organ tend to change adjacent vowels to the vowel of that organ.

(*a.*) *Labials* put the mouth in such a position that it turns vowel sound to or toward *u*. The strongest is *p*. It produces

a change of	pa,	pâ,	(pe),	pi,	pi,	ap,	ip,
to	o;	ô;	(po, u);	peo;	pu, u;	eâp;	eôp:

cpam, *cpâmon* > *com*, *cômon*, came; Northumbrian *posa*, Anglo-Saxon *pesan*, to be; *pita* > *peota*, wise man; *piht* > *puht*, whit; *deâp*, dew; *treôp*, Gothic *triva*, tree. Compare § 52. Before *m* (*n*), sometimes *a* > *o*, *i* > *eo*; before *f* (*p*, *b*), *a* > *ea*, *i* > *eo*: *camb* > *comb*; *him* > *heom*; *eafor* > Latin *aper*, boar; *gifa* > *geofa*, giver; compare § 32; *-am* > *-um*, § 71, *b*. Note also the diphthongs, § 25.

The gutturals **c** (**sc**), **g**, place the organs so as to call out a parasitic *i*-sound (breaking, § 33), while **h**, and the *linguals* **l** and **r**, especially when followed by another consonant, had a burr (*ŭ*-sound), which brought a preceding *i* to *eo* (§ 23), Northumbrian *u*: *silf* > *sulf*, § 26. For *î* > *eô* before *h*, *g*, see § 25.

In Latin *l* brings in *u* most,—*m*, *b*, *p*, *f*, sometimes: *nebula*, *νεφέλη*; *spatula*, *σπατάλη*; *Hecuba*, Ἑκάβη. The dentals bring in *i*: *machina*, *μηχανή*; *Masinissa*, Μασανάσσης. The *r* likes *e* before it: *camera*, *καμάρα*; *cineris* < *cinis*.

(3.) A vowel assimilates a consonant. (*a.*) Assibilation, § 34.

(*b.*) Between two vowels a surd may change to a sonant, or a mute to a continuous; *h* > *g*, *s* > *r*, *ć* = *þ* > *d*, *g* > *þ*, *hþ* > *þ*, *b* > *f*: *slôh*, *slôgon*, I slew, they slew; *ceâs*, *curon*, chose; *cpæd*, *cpædon*, quoth; *bûgian*, *bûþian*, to dwell; *habban*, *hafaþ*, have, haveth; for *seah*, *sêge*, *sâþe*, saw, § 197.

(4.) A consonant assimilates a consonant. This occurs in Anglo-Saxon mainly when, by composition, inflection, or apothesis, two consonants are brought together which can not be easily pronounced in the same syllable. The most common case is the coming together of a surd and sonant. One can not breathe and blow at once.

(*a.*) When surd and sonant letters are brought together, the surd assimilates the sonant.

A. If the surd follows the sonant, a gemination of the surd is produced. In this way *ff*, *ss*, *ss*, are sometimes produced from *bf*, *ds*, *ds*: *offrian* < Latin *ob* + *fero*, offer; *bliss* < *blīds*, *blīds*, bliss. And by simplifying gemination (§ 27, 5), *dst* > *st*, *dst* > *st*: *cpidst* > *cpist*, quothest; *hledst* > *hlest*, loadest.

Exception (1). *dþ* is often written *dd*, according to the orthographic rule that *d* is always to be used for *þ* within a word: *ód þe*, *óþþe*, *óddе*, or. (2). *ndst* changes to *ntst*, according to the analogy of case *B*, through the influence of the *n*, which supports the *d*; *gs* > *cs*=*x*, a favorite letter; *ms* > *ns*, § 130, *c*.

B. If the surd precedes the sonant, the sonant is changed to the nearest surd of its own organ. Thus,

cd, *hd*, *pd*, *fd*, *sr*, *sd*, *sd*, *td*,

to *ct*, *ht*, *pt*, *ft*, *ss*, *st*, *st*, *tt*: *sócde* > *sócte* > *sóhte* (§ 36), sought; *stēpde* > *stēpte*, erected; *drīf(e)d* > *drīft*, driveth, § 194; *þisre* > *þisse*, of this; *cysde* > *cyste*, kissed; *cȳsd* > *cȳst*, chooseth; *grētde* > *grētte*, greeted. After this analogy, *gs* > *cs* = *x*, *ndst* > *ntst*: *agse* > *axe*, ashes; *stendst* > *stentst*, standest.

And by simplifying gemination (§ 27, 5), final *td* > *t*, *std* > *st*: *blētd* > *blēt*, sacrificeth; *birstd* > *birst*, bursteth; and after a consonant: *ēhtde* > *ēhte*, persecuted. In *st* > *ss* in *þiste* > *þisse*, wist, the *s* is strong enough to take an explosive over to its continuous.

(*b*.) An explosive consonant before another consonant may change to a continuous of the same organ.

1. The explosive is a complete stop, and hence it is not easy to make any sound but *s* after it in the same syllable.

2. This fact may work Assimilation or Dissimilation, § 36, 3.

gd > *hd*; *gst* > *hst*: *belge*, *bilhst*, *bilhd*, to be angry; *ng* stands. *cs* < *hs*: *âcsie* > *âhsie*, ask; *cd* > *hd*: *sēcd* > *sēhd*, seeks, Rask.

(*c*.) Before *n* a surd or an explosive may change to its cognate nasal; *fn* > *mn*, *gn* > *ng*: *nefne* > *nemne*, unless; *stefn* > *stemn*, stem; *gefrignan* > *gefringan*, to inquire. Compare (*a*) and (*b*) above. The veil is raised for the *n* an instant too soon, §§ 27, 28.

36. **Dissimilation.**—(1.) A vowel may change to a consonant to avoid the hiatus with another vowel; *i* > *g*, *u* > *þ*: *nerian* > *nergan*, to save; *lufian* > *lufigan*, *lufigean*, to love; *bealu*, genitive *bealpes*, *bealupes*, baleful. Compare § 27, 5.

(2.) Between two vowels a continuous sometimes changes to a mute; *d* > *d*: *prâd*, *pridon*, I writhed, they writhed, ? § 35, 3, *b*.

(3.) The former explosive sometimes changes to a continuous of the same organ. § 35, 4, *b*, 2. *bd*>*fd*, *ct*>*ht*, *gt*>*ht*, *tt*>*st*: *habban*, *hæfde*, have, had; *sôcte*>*sôhte*, sought; *âgan*, *âhte*, own, owned; *môtde*>*môtte*>*môste*, must; *pitte*>*piste*, wist.

(4.) One of two continuous may become explosive; *hs*>*x*=*cs*? (§ 28, **h**): *feax*, Old H. German *fahs*, hair; *ld*>*ld*: *beald*, Gothic *balþs*, bold; *ld* seldom occurs: *feld*, falleth; *sæld*, house.

(5.) The former sonant becomes a surd in *dd*>(*td*>)*t* (§ 35, *B*) in the third singular of verbs (Conformation): *stendd*>*stent*, standeth.

(6.) *Successive syllables.*—In Latin and English, *-al* and *-ar* interchange to keep *l* or *r* from successive syllables: *stellar*, *solar*, *liberal*, *literal*; so *cœrulean*<*cœlum*. The former assibilation is often smoothed in America: *pronunciation*, § 34. The former aspirate is not smoothed in Teutonic as it is in Greek.

37. **Compensation.**—(1.) A consonant is dropped and the preceding vowel lengthened at the same time. 1. Before *d*, *f*, *s*, with ecthlipsis of *n*, a change of *a*, *e*, *i*, *u*, *y*, to *ô*, *ê*, *î*, *û*, *ŷ*: *tôđ*, Old H. German *zand*, Latin *dent*-is, tooth; *sôft*, Old H. German *senfti*, soft; *gôs*, Old H. German *kans*, goose; *ôđer*, other; *sôđ*, sooth; *hôsu*, company; so *genêdan*, *spîđ*, *sîđ*, *fîf*, *ûser*, *cûđe*, *ûđe*, *mûđ*, *hûsl*, *ŷđ*. 2. With ecthlipsis of *g*, mostly before *n*: *pægn*>*pân*, wain; *þegn*>*þên*, thane; *regnig*>*rênig*, rainy; *þign*>*þîn*, food; *fægr*>*fâr*, fair; *sægde*>*sâde*, said; *ligđ*>*lîđ*, lieth; see *idde*>*eôde*, went. 3. With apocope of *c*, *g*, *h*, *r*: *mec*>*mê*, me; *þec*>*þê*, thee; *hig*>*heô* (?), they; *feoh*>*feô*, fee; *gê* (<*ger*), ye; *mê* (<*mer*), to me; *þê* (<*þer*), to thee; *pê* (<*per*), we.

(2.) A consonant is doubled and a following vowel dropped at the same time; *i* is dropped with gemination of a preceding *b*, *c*, *d*, *f*, *g*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *s*: *habian*>*habban*, have; *recian*>*reccan*, to rule; *bidian*>*biddan*, to bid; *spefian*>*spebban*, to sleep; *ligian*>*licgan*, to lie; *telian*>*tellan*, to tell; *fremian*>*fremman*, to frame; *clynian*>*clynnan*, to clang; *cnysian*>*cnyssan*, to knock.

(3.) After a long root syllable neuter *-u* drops, and *i* of stem *-ia* weakens to *e*, or drops: *sêcian*>*sêcean*, *sêcan*, to seek.

1. Speech naturally runs in pulses; a certain length of time and a certain volume of sound is pleasantest between the pauses or accentual beats. The tendency of speech to preserve this rhythm by lengthening the remaining letters when one is dropped, or shortening all letters when a new letter is added, is called COMPENSATION, and the name is extended to all adjustments of quantity and accent which restore the rhythm after the adding or dropping of letters.

2. In the pronunciation of Latin according to the English method, an ac-

cented vowel in any syllable before the penult is shortened in sound, no matter what may have been its original quantity; while such a vowel in the penult has the long sound. The same law prevails in the Romanic portion of English: *brief, briefer, brĕv'-ity; admire, admī'-rer, mīr'-acle, mirăc'-ulous.* The whole body of words conform to what was the fact in the larger number of Latin words. It shows that a long accented syllable followed by two unaccented is more than the natural length of the rhythm. This force of compensation is not so plain in the Anglo-Saxon portion of English, and we do not know enough of the pronunciation of Anglo-Saxon to trace its effects with accuracy. A word with an affix sometimes has a lighter vowel than the kindred word without one: *þegn*, servant, *þignen*, maid-servant; *bera*, bear, *biren*, bearish; but the change may be (almost) always explained from assimilation of some kind. Unaccented syllables show compensation. § 46.

3. When more voice than two short syllables follows an accented syllable, the old accent often moves forward, or a second accent is given: *admire, admirā'-tion; mir'-acle, mirăc'-ulous; leg'-ible, leg'-ıbil'-ıty.* This law is to be seen most clearly in the Romanic portion of English.

4. Compensation acts in connection with Gravitation. § 38.

38. **Gravitation** is the tendency of sounds to accentual centers. It is seen in the lengthening of accented syllables, and the lightening and final disappearance of unaccented syllables. It goes on in all languages.

A. **Vowels.**—Rule I. *Progression.*—Under the accent the simple vowels *a, i, u*, lengthen by prefixing *a* and *â*.

Mixed vowels and breakings move to their latter element; diphthongs *eâ, eô*, and all whose former vowel is long, move to their former vowel: *e* (*a*+*i*), >*i*; *o* (*a*+*u*)>*û*; *y* (*u*+*i*)>*i*; *ea, eâ*>*â, ô*; *eo, eô*>*u, ô*; diphth. *eâ*>*ê*, etc.; *eo*<*i, ea*<*au*, often go to *e*, §§ 203, 204, 41, 33.

(*a.*) Accentual effort opens to the *a*-shape the neck of the bottle shaped for *i* or *u*, § 22; too much *a* weakens to *u* or *i*; *aaa*>*aau, ô*, etc.; *eo*<*i, ea*, are in unstable equilibrium.

Rule II. *Precession.*—In an unaccented syllable the progression of simple vowels is reversed; also *a* goes to *o, u*, or *i*, then to *ĕ; i* goes to *ĕ; u* to *o* and *ĕ; ĕ* disappears.

(1.) In the Parent Speech were the following series:

a, *a*+*a*=*â*, *â*+*a*=*âa*. **i**, *ai, âi*. **u**, *au, âu*.

In Anglo-Saxon the following series are found:

	Descending.		1st term.	Ascending.	
a-series:	ĕ	i, u	a, æ, o	â, æ̂, ê	ô
i-series:		ĕ	i	î	û
u-series:	ĕ	o	u	eô, û	eâ

Ascending: √*nam*>*nâmon*, they took; *brôðer* (Sanskrit *bhrâtâ*, Latin *frâter*), brother; √*læg*>*lâgon, lægon*, they lay;

scân>shone; √*scin*>*scînan*, *scân*, shine, shone; √*lug*>*leôgan*, *leâg*, lie, lied; √*suc*>*sûcan*, *seâc*, suck, sucked; *scîn*>shine (English *î*=*â*+*i*); *mûs*>mouse (English *ou*=*â*+*u*); *têð*>teeth (*ee*=*ê*); *tôð*>tooth (*oo*=*û*); *hȳran*>hear (*ea*=*ê*); *mȳs*>mice (*ȳ*>*î*>*â*+*i*); *beald*>bôld; *eal*>all; *sceôtan*>shoot; *beâm*>beam; *beô*>bee.

DESCENDING: √*luf*>*luf'ôde*, *luf'âde*, *luf'ude*, *luf'ede*, loved; *pîdgal*>*pîdgil*, *pîdgel*, wide spread; *landsceap*, *landscipe*, landscape; *Apri'lis*>*A'prelis*, April; (Gothic *marei*, Old H. German *marî*) *mere*, mere (sea); (Sanskrit *madhu*) *meodu*>*meodo*>Old English *mêdĕ*>mead. Here also belong many forms of verbs now accented, but formerly unaccented: *binde*, *bunden*<√*band*, bind, bound; for a fuller explanation of which, see *Ablaut*, 158; also nearly all the affixes of declension and conjugation, for which see Etymology, as referred to in the Index.

(2.) The changes in the Anglo-Saxon series may be compared with Rules I. and II. and changes in other languages given on page 8, § 18: *a*>*æ*, *o*, lautverschiebung as in Greek and Latin; *â*>*æ̂*, *ê*, same; *âa*>*âu* (Rule I.) >*ô* (Greek and Latin); *ai*>*î*, Rule I. (Latin); *âi*>*â*, Rule I. (Greek); *au*>*û* (Rule I., Latin); *au*>*iu* (Rule I. Greek *ευ*)>*eô* by *a*-umlaut in stems of verbs and nouns, and by conformation elsewhere (§ 32, 40), Sanskrit has *ô*, Friesic *ia*; *âu*>*âᵘ*>*âⁱ*>*ⁱâ* metathesis to breaking to conform with *eô* (Friesic *â*). The descending series already shows itself in Sanskrit in changing *a* to *u* and *i*; *i* and *u* to *ĕ* was not yet in Gothic. See § 23, e. In Latin and the Romanic part of English, *a* in open syllables goes to *i*; before *r*, to *e*; in close syllables, to *e*; before *l*, to *u*; *e* often goes to *i*, but before *r* or in close syllables it remains; *facio*, *efficio*, efficient; *pater*, Jupiter; *pario*, *aperio*, aperient; *damno*, *condemno*, condemn; *salto*, *exsulto*, exult; *lego*, *diligo*, diligent; *infero*, infer; *correctum*, correct. (Latin accent originally on the prefix. § 41, 4.)

(3.) The changes from Anglo-Saxon to English take a new start, and are wholly analogous to the original series of the Parent Speech.

(4.) The first lengthening of *i* and *u* by progression is called *guna* (masculine strength), a term of Sanskrit grammar; the second is called *vriddhi* feminine increment).

(5.) The various kinds of assimilation and sound-shifting work together with progression; the result of the whole upon the vowel system of the Anglo-Saxon is shown in the summary on page 7.

B. From Gravitation also springs (*a*) the gemination of a consonant ending an accented syllable: the common cases have been mentioned under Compensation (§ 37); (*b*) also the dropping of consonants in unaccented syllables, and some weakenings, § 41, *b*.

39. **Ablaut.**—See Etymology.

40. **Mimetic Changes** are those occurring through the influence of other words. § 158.

1. *Conformation.*—The words of all languages show a disposition to conform in inflection to the majority. The Anglo-Saxon nouns have gone over to a single declension in English; and the strong verbs, one after another, go over to the inflection of the weak.

2. *Simulation.*—The feigning a connection with words of similar sound is an important fact in English and other modern languages: *asparagus* > *sparrow grass.* It probably had just as full play in ancient speech, but its effects can not be so surely traced. See *carc-ern*, § 229; *frǽ*, § 254.

3. *Bifurcation* is the separation of a word into two: *borne, born; truth, troth; wake, watch; flour, flower; balsam, balm.* There are hundreds of words in English produced by this kind of fissiparous generation. Where it is produced by a foreign word coming into English in different ways, it has been called DIMORPHISM: *ration, reason.*

4. The law of contrast also operates to sunder different words of similar sound, especially if one of the words have odious associations: *grocer* < *grosser; cucumber* < *cowcumber; boil* < *bile.*

41. **Shifting** (*Lautverschiebung*) is a change of sound not due to other sounds in the language. Changes in climate or modes of life, mixing nations of different stocks, ease of utterance, and more obscure causes, affect the adjustment of the vocal organs to the mind, and so shift the speech of nations. The current corresponding sounds in several of the Indo-European languages are given on page 8.

(1.) VOWELS.—There was a gradual weakening of the vowels in the ancient languages. The Sanskrit *a* shifts to *a*, *ε*, *o*, in Greek, and to *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, in Latin; *u* shifts to *o*; *i* to *ĕ*. Ease of utterance and consonant assimilation work together for close vowels.

This movement is modified by assimilation, compensation, and gravitation, but in long periods the shifting is plain; a weakened vowel can seldom be found in Sanskrit where the full form is in Greek or Latin. The short vowels are not found to shift in comparing one Teutonic tongue with another. The movement of the long vowels is found on page 8. Within the Anglo-Saxon we have referred to this shifting in speaking of $a > æ$, $a > o$, $â > ǽ$, $ǽ > ǣ$, $eâ > ǣ$, $eô > ē$, $ea > e$, $eo > e$.

(2.) CONSONANTS TO VOWELS.—In the table, $j > i$, $v > u$, are noted in Anglo-Saxon; they occur also in Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, etc.; $l > u$ and $l > i$ are common in the Romanic languages: Latin *collum* > French *col* > *cou*, neck; Latin *planus* > Italian *piano*, plane. Compare § 35, 2, *b*. The movement is sometimes reversed, as when a nation moves northward, or northern peoples mix with a vowel-speaking race: Anglo-Saxon $g < i$. § 34.

(3.) CONSONANTS TO CONSONANTS.—Regular shifting is to weaker consonants: gutturals to palatals, labials, dentals; smooth to middle; rough to middle. Surd to sonant, mute to continuous, § 35, 3, *b*.

A. Shifting to a co-ordinate consonant.—(*a.*) One smooth mute to another: λύκος, Latin *lupus*, wolf. (*b.*) One middle to another: γλυκύς (metathesis), Latin *dulcis*, sweet. (*c.*) Rough to rough. (*d.*) Spirant to spirant: *geseah, gesepen*, saw, seen (§ 35, 3, *b*); ἡμι, Latin *semi*. (*e.*) Liquid to liquid: Latin *asinus*, Gothic *asilus*, Anglo-Saxon *esol*, ass; German *kind*, Anglo-Saxon *cild*, child; Latin *prunum*, Anglo-Saxon *pluma*, plum. These shiftings are occasional, or dialectic.

B. Shifting to another consonant of the same class:

(*a.*) Grimm's Law, lautverschiebung by eminence (see § 19). With the progress of the Teutonic tribes northwestward they came to use for each smooth mute the corresponding rough, for a rough the corresponding middle, for a middle the corresponding smooth. This first shift is believed to have been completed during the third century; and here the Gothic, the Anglo-Saxon and other Low Germanic, and the Scandinavian languages rested.

The High German went on, and shifted in the same way a second time; so that since the seventh century it stands in the same relation to the other Teutonic languages that they do to the rest of the Indo-European family.

GUTTURALS: **k (c) > ch (h) > g ? (h)**: Lat. *caput*, A.-Sax. *heafod*, head, O. H. Ger. *houpit;* **ch (h) > g > k**: Lat. *homo*, A.-Sax. *guma*, man, O. H. Ger. *komo;* **g > k (c) > ch (h)**: Lat. *ego*, A.-Sax. *ic*, I, O. H. Ger. *ih*. — DENTALS: **t > th, dh > d**: Lat. *tres*, A.-Sax. *þrî*, three, O. H. Ger. *drî;* **d > t > th ? (z)**: Lat. *dentis*, A.-Sax. *tôð*, tooth, O. H. Ger. *zand;* **th (Lat. f) > d > t**: θήρ, Lat. *fera*, A.-Sax. *deôr*, deer > O. H. Ger. *tior*. — LABIALS: **p > f > b ? (f)**: Lat. *pedis*, A.-Sax. *fôt*, foot, O. H. Ger. *fuoz;* **b > p > f**: Lat. *cannabis*, A.-Sax. *henep*, hemp, O. H. Ger. *hanaf;* **f > b > p**: Lat. *frater*, A.-Sax. *brôðer*, brother, O. H. Ger. *pruodar*.

(*a.*) The change of *rough* mutes to *middle* is a regular weakening in Bactrian, Slavonic, Lithuanic, Celtic, and not infrequent in Greek and Latin. That of *smooth* to *rough* (the use of parasitic *h*) is occasional in Sanskrit, Persian, Greek, Latin, and abundant in Old Irish. That of *middle* to *smooth* is a strengthening peculiar to the Teutonic, and an enigma. Americans seem to hear foreigners use it freely in talking English. Germans and Celts use more surd breath and less sonant than we. Their *g, b, d* are heard as *k, p, t*, their *k, p, t* as aspirates. "K(h)ill the poys," says Fluellen (Hen. V., iv., 7). This suggests the hypothesis that Celts adopted the speech of invading Teutons, that their Celtic pronunciation of it as heard by the Teutons became current, and that climatic influences and al-

literation made the change thorough. The Teutonic instinct for preserving distinctions helped, since, when the rough weakened to middle, they would incline to change the old middles to preserve the correlation. There are many exceptions to Grimm's Law: 1. A letter is often fixed by combination with another: *d* in *nd, ld; t* in *st, ht, ft.* 2. Rough *kh, ph*, often early changed to continuous *h, f*, and rested, § 27, 2. The whole shifting of the High German gutturals and labials is thus disturbed. The corresponding letters, as oftenest found, may be seen in § 19.

(*b.*) Other cases of shifting may be **i > g, h > g,** strengthenings in Anglo-Saxon and elsewhere; **g > h, đ > s, s > r, d > l, b > f > v,** common weakenings. Most of the cases in Anglo-Saxon have been referred to in §§ 35, 36.

(4.) ACCENT.—There are three systems of accentuation: 1st, the *grammatical*, in which the accent is given to that syllable which last modifies the general notion, i. e., to the affixes and prefixes of inflection; 2d, the *rhythmical*, in which the accented syllable is determined by the number and quantity of the syllables in the word; 3d, the *logical*, in which the accented syllable is the first of those expressing the main notion, i. e., the root syllable or a prefix of composition defining it. The earliest Indo-European languages are least straitened by any one system; but the first is in its greatest vigor; the Sanskrit acute may be given to any part of a word. The Greek and Latin came under the rhythmical influence, and in the classical time used the acute only on one of the three last syllables. The Teutonic languages became altogether logical, § 15. This shifting of accent is a fundamental fact in the explanation of ABLAUT and many other phonetic facts in Anglo-Saxon and all other Indo-European languages.

FIGURATION.

42. The dropping of sounds is mostly connected with gravitation (§ 38). Adding of sounds without change of sense is rare; but the shifting of accent (§ 41, 4), or the handing over a word to a race with different habits of speech, or even the bringing together by syncope or ecthlipsis of difficult combinations of letters occasionally calls for euphonic additions. Prosthesis is mostly gemination (§ 27, 4), or parasitic (§ 33), or conformation with similar words in which the added letter is significant. Metathesis is mostly euphonic and dialectic.

43. **Aphæresis** is found of unaccented *e, ge;* of *c* in *cn;* of *h* in *hl, hn, hr*, and elsewhere; of *p* in *pl, pr, pu: bisceop* < Lat. *episcopus*, bishop; *pistol* < Lat. *epistola*, epistle; *gelîc* > like; *geclâđôd* > *yclad* > clad; *cneô* > knee; *hlâf* > loaf; *hnappung*

> napping; *hræfn* > raven (§ 31); *ymn* < Lat. *hymnus*, hymn; *plisp* > lisp; *prôtan*, root.

44. **Apocope** is found of all syllables of inflection. The vowels go to *ĕ* and drop; *c* and *r* in the pronouns, and *g*, *h*, *m*, *n*, *s*, may drop. See Declension and Conjugation.

45. **Elision** is found of the stem vowel *e*, *i*, and of final *e* when two words are drawn together: *sêcean* > *sêcan*, seek; *pergian* > *pergan*, damn; *clynian* > *clynnan*, clang; *bûtan* < *be* + *ûtan*, but; *nân* < *ne* + *ân*, none; *nabban* < *ne* + *habban*, not have; *næs* < *ne* + *pæs*, was not.

46. **Syncope** is found of an unaccented stem vowel before *l*, *n*, *r*; less often before *d*, *ð*, *st*; sometimes before *c*, *g*, *m*, *p*, and other consonants; oftenest when the consonant is followed by a syllable of inflection: *engel*, *englâs*, angel, angels; *heofon*, *heofnes*, heaven, heaven's; *pinter*, *pintres*, winter, winter's; *dêm(e)de*, deemed; *hæf(e)st*, *hæf(e)ð*, hast, hath; *munec* > *munc*, monk; *hâlig*, *hâlges*, holy; *mâð(u)m*, gem; *pid(e)pe*, widow; *cpic* > *cuc*, quick (?). *Syncope often brings on ecthlipsis.*

47. **Ecthlipsis** is found of *d*, *ð*, *s*, *st*, before *st*; of *n* before *ð*, *f*, *s*; of *d*, *g*, *h*, *i*, *p*, mostly between vowels or before a liquid: *hle(d)st*, loadest; *cpi(ð)st*, quothest; *cy(s)st*, choosest; *bir(st)st*, burstest; for *n*, *g*, § 37; *feôper* (Gothic *fidvor*), four; *pegn* > *pên*, thane; *freôgan* > *freôn*, to love; *teôhan* > *teôn*, tug; *ner(i)est*, savest; *nillan* > *ne* + *pillan*, to be unwilling. *Mostly assimilation and gemination.*

48. **Prothesis** is found of *h*, *i* consonant (*y*), and *p* by blunder (§ 31). Apparent prothesis of *b*, *g*, *ge*, *n*, *s*, is found in Anglo-Saxon or English, but probably springs from conformation with the many words beginning with *be-*, by, *ge-*, together, *ân*, an, *ût*, out: *meltan*, *smeltan*, melt, smelt; nadder, adder; Ned, Edward; Nanny, Anna. So in the French: *espace* < Lat. *spatium*, space; conforming with words beginning with Latin *ex-*: *éclore*, *exclure* < Lat. *exclaudo*, *excludo*, exclude. Real prothesis is pretty common in Greek: ὀφρύς (Sanskrit *bhrû*), brow; ἀστήρ, star.

49. **Epithesis** is found of *ĕ*; of *b* after *m*; of *d*, *t*, after *n*, *l*, *r*; of *t* after *s*, and *n* after a vowel. Those of *ĕ* and *n* are conformations of declension and inflection, which see: *lam(b)*, lamb; tyran(t); len(d); moul(d); affor(d); mids(t); *betpux(t)*, betwixt; *-s(t)* second singular of verbs. See § 27, 5.

50. **Epenthesis** is found of a vowel between two consonants, e. g., *e* before *r*; *e*, *o*, *u*, before *m*, *n*, *p*; of *g*, *n*, *p*, between

vowels; of *d* after *n*, *l* (especially followed by *l* or *r*); of *t* after *s*; of *n* before *g*, *s*, *d*; of *l* between a consonant and following *ĕ*; of *r* before *s*, *th*, *p*, and after *t*, *d*, *g*; of *b* between *m* and *l*, *r*, or a short vowel; of *p* between *m* and *n*, *s*, or *t*: *meter* < Lat. *metrum*, meter; *bôsom* < *bôsm*, bosom; *glisnian* > glisten; *beal(o)pes*, bale's; *meoluc* < *meolc*, milk (Latin *mulgeo*, Greek ἀμέλγω, Sanskrit *mṛg'*); *lufi(g)an*, love; *gife(n)â*, gifts'; *bûan* > *bûgan*, *bûpan*, inhabit (§§ 221, 224, *e*); *punor* > *punder*, thunder; *bal(d)sam*, balsam; *glisnian* > glisten; *nihtegale*, nightingale; e(n)sample; *Sarmende* < Lat. *Sarmatæ*; myrt(l)e; *cûđe* > could; *hâs*, hoarse; *spađu* > swarth; co(r)poral < French *caporal* < *cap*, chief; cart(r)idge; part(r)idge; chal(d)ron; *brŷdguma* > bridegroom; *timber* (Gothic *timrjan*), timber; *nêmol* > nimble; *scolimbos* < Lat. *scolymos*, a thistle; *nemne* > *nempne* (Chaucer), name; glim(p)se; *emetig* > empty. § 27, 5, 33.

51. **Metathesis** is found of *hp* > *wh*, *sp* > *ps*, *gn* > *ng*, *ns* > *sn*, *sc* > *x*, *sg* > *x*; of a vowel with a following *l* or *r* when a mute precedes; of a vowel with a preceding *l* or *r* when a mute precedes: *hpît*, white (graphic only); *pæspe*, *pæpse*, wasp; *þegn*, *þeng*, thane; *clêensian*, *clêsnian*, cleanse; *fisc* > *fix*, fish; *âscian*, *âxian*, ask; *axe* (Gothic *azgô*), ashes; *beorht*, *bryht*, bright; *îdel*, idle (graphic); *græs*, *gærs*, grass; *ôsle*, ousel (rare); so *irnan*, *rinnan*, run.

CONTRACTION.

52. In the Teutonic languages the hiatus is not generally avoided by contraction, but by elision or epenthesis; or it stands.

(1.) Synæresis is found in Anglo-Saxon after ecthlipsis of *g* or *h*, and the assimilation of *p* to *u*.

When unlike vowels meet, a mixed sound is produced in which the open vowel predominates: *â*, *o*, *ô*, with another vowel become *ô*; *u*, *e*, lengthen the preceding vowel; *i* drops; *a*+*a*=*â*; *u*+*a*=*o*; *i*+*a*=*eô* (*i* breaks): *fâhan* > *fôn*, take; *gefeohan* > *gefeôn*, rejoice; *gefeohe* > *gefeô*; *teôhan* > *teôn*, tug; *freôgan* > *freôn*, love; *cpâmon* > *cuâmon* > *cômon*, come; *fæger* > *fêr*, fair; *sâpl* > *sâul*, soul; *cpic* > *cuic* > *cuc*, quick; *sleahan* > *sleân*, slay; *cpam* > *com* > *côm*, come; *þîhan* > *þeôn*, grow.

(2.) The reduplication contracts with the root of verbs; *ê*+*â*, *ê*+*eâ*, *ê*+*ô*, give *eô*, which shifts to *ê*; *ê*+*a*, *ê*+*ea*, *ê*+*ê*, conform. See Inflection, § 159.

(3.) For traces of synizesis, synalœpha, and other contractions in Anglo-Saxon poetry, see §§ 509, 510.

PART II.

ETYMOLOGY.

I. DEFINITIONS.

53. **Etymology** treats of the structure and history of words. It includes classification, inflection, and derivation.

54. **A Word** is an elementary integer of speech. It has a mixed nature: it is thought on one side, and sound on the other.

55. **Notional and Relational.**—An analysis of the words of the Indo-European languages gives two kinds of significant sounds: (1) those *connoting qualities:* e. g., of acts, as *eat, sit, go, know, love;* of substances, as *wet, red, quick;* (2) those *connoting relations:* e. g., of space, time, subject, object; as *here, there, then, me, he.* The first are called *notional;* the second, *relational.*

56. **Radicles** are elementary relational parts of words. They are generally single sounds—oftenest a consonant sound. The labials connote subjective relations oftenest; the dentals, objective and demonstrative; the gutturals, interrogative; the nasals often connote negation; the vowels, oftenest simple limitation. Radicles are found (1) as the essential part of words which denote relation (prepositions and adverbs): *u-***p**, up; **b**-*î*, by; *o-***f**, of; **m**-*id*, with; *æ-***t**, at; **t**-*ó*, to; þ-*êr*, there; þ-*ænne*, then; sp-*â*, so; hp-*êr*, where; hp-*ænne*, when; (2) of words which denote persons or things directly as having the relation connoted by the radicle (substantive pronouns): **m**-*ê*, me; þ-*û*, thou; h-*ê*, he; s-*eó*, she; (3) of words which define, as having certain relations, objects denoted by other words (adjective pronouns): **m**-*în*, mine; þ-*în*, thine; þ-*æt*, that; sp-*ilc*, such; hp-*æt*, what; (4) united to roots to form stems, see § 58; (5) united to stems of nouns or pronouns as factors of relation (case-endings or adverbial affixes): *smidæ***s**, smith's; *leafâ***s**, leaves; *hi***m**, him; *þ***ær**, there; *þannа***n**, thence; see § 60; (6) united to stems of verbs as factors of relation (inflection endings): *eo***m**, am; *lufia***st**, lovest; *lufia-***đ**, loveth.

57. **A Root** is an elementary notional syllable. A few are

formed by onomatope from noises; *hring*, ring; *hâs*, hoarse; a few from sounds naturally expressive of feeling: *hleah-tor*, laughter; *pôp*, whoop; or vocal gesture: *st*, whist; *sta*-nd; some are a growth from the radicles, and descriptive primarily of being or motion in the direction or mode connoted by the radicle: *in*nian, to go in; *ût*ian, to put out; *yp*-pan, to *open* (=raise *up*); *far*an, to fare (=go *forth*); most roots are the expression of an adjustment of the mind and vocal organs to each other, according to which the mind in a certain state tends to put the vocal organs in a given state.

The diffusion of the roots and radicles through all the Indo-European languages, and their perpetuation from the earliest ages through such complete changes of the superficial appearance of these languages, shows that there must be some stable adjustment of mind to organs in this family of nations. A comparison with other races shows that it is an extension and modification of a less definite adjustment belonging to the original constitution of man.

58. **A Stem** is that part of a noun to which the historical case-endings, or of a verb to which the personal endings and tense signs were affixed. Sometimes it is a root, but generally it is formed from the root by one or more relational suffixes: √*man*, think>stem *man*, man; √*su*, bear>stem *su-nu*, son; √*luf*, stem *lufia* > *lufian*, to love, *lufigende*, lover. For case-endings, see § 60.

II. CLASSIFICATION.

59. The parts of speech are the Noun (Adjective), Pronoun (Article, Numeral), Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection.

III. NOUNS.

DECLENSION.

60. A noun has different forms (cases) in different relations in the sentence. The variable final letters of a noun are its case-endings; the rest is its theme.

61. The case-endings in Anglo-Saxon mark the relations of

(1.) Six **cases**: *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, *vocative*, *instrumental*.

(2.) Three **numbers**: *singular* (one object), *plural* (more than one), *dual* (two).

(3.) Three **genders**: *masculine, feminine, neuter.*

62. In the Parent Speech there is only one set of case-endings, as follows:

	Singular.	Plural.	Dual.	English Equivalent.
Nominative....	**s**	**sas**	**sâs**	—Nominative (no sign).
Vocative.....	(Stem)			—Nominative Independent.
Accusative.....	**am**	**ams**		—Objective (no sign).
Genitive.....	**as**	**sâms**	**aus**	—Possessive **'s**, or **of** with the objective.
Locative.....	**i**	**svas**		—**in** with the objective.
Dative	**ai**	**bhjams**	**bhjâms**	—**to** or **for** with the objective.
Ablative.....	**at**			—**from** or **out** *of* with objective.
Instrumental (1)	**â**	**bhis**		**by** or **with** with objective.
Instrumental (2)	**bhi**			

63. The endings are formed from the radicles (§ 56), and are plainly connected with pronouns and prepositions in Sanskrit and other languages.

(*a.*) The nominative *s* is connected with the demonstrative and article: Sanskrit *sa, sâ, tat;* Greek *ὁ, ἡ, τό;* Anglo-Saxon *se, seô, þæt.* It is used only with masculine and feminine nouns, and is a quasi article, as if, in Anglo-Saxon, *se cyning* (the king) were written *cyning-se* > *cynings.* (For the use of the article to mark a subject, see Greek Grammars: Crosby, § 487, 4; Hadley, § 535.) A neuter *t* (*tat*) is early found.

(*b.*) The accusative *m* appears in the Sanskrit *mâm, mâ,* me; *ama,* this, etc.; a vivid conception of any suffering object is expressed by the same sound which is used for one's self as suffering object.

(*c.*) The genitive *s* is connected with the demonstrative *sa,* Anglo-Saxon *se,* and marks personality like the *s* of the nominative. The prepositions and adverbs of this radicle oftenest mean *with, together:* Sanskrit *sahá, sam, sa,* etc., corresponding in use with Greek *σύν,* Latin *con,* Anglo-Saxon *ge.* So the genitive *s* marks a personal adjunct, then any adjunct. The original form was perhaps *sam,* which shows in the plural.

(*d.*) The locative *i* appears as *in* in the pronoun (Sanskrit *tasm-in,* in that), and is connected with the preposition *in;* the plural *svas* is formed on another pronoun: Sanskrit *sva,* Latin *sê,* Greek *ἑ,* self.

(*e.*) The dative *ai* is connected with *abhi,* by, as appears from the pronoun, Sanskrit *tu-bhjam,* Latin *ti-bi,* to thee, and from the plural *bhjams.*

(*f.*) The ablative *t* is connected with the demonstrative *ta,* the, and its force in prepositions and adverbs may be seen in Sanskrit, Gothic, Anglo-

Saxon *ût*, out of; the Umbrian *tu*, *to*, out of; Latin *-tus* (*cælitus*, from heaven). Variations of the dental radicle are also found in Latin *-de*, *unde*, whence; *inde*, thence; Greek *-θεν*, from, etc.

(*g.*) The instrumental *â* is from the demonstrative radicle *a*, and *bhi* from the labial radicle: Sanskrit *bhi*; Greek *-φι*; Anglo-Saxon *bi*, by (§ 63, *e*).

(*h.*) The plural sign is *s*, and is to be connected in sense with the preposition *sam*, *together with*, mentioned in connection with the genitive. This is strengthened by insertion of the pronominal *am* in the genitive *sâms*, and the dative and ablative *bhjâms*. The dual is a lengthening of the plural.

(*i.*) The genitive singular and nominative plural are head-cases.

64. **Phonetic Decay.**—Sounds whose meaning is not vividly felt come under the influence of gravitation (§ 38): they weaken, blend, and at last slough away. When tribes speaking different dialects mix, the case-endings are half caught, and decay is quickened. By this process the Indo-European languages have been losing their inflections. As it goes on, diversity of declension arises, two causes of which may be mentioned:

(1.) *Different Endings of the Stem.*—Some stems end in a vowel, others in a consonant. Under the operation of euphonic laws each stem has its own effect on the endings. The Comparative Grammars discuss the effect of many different stems (Schleicher gives fifteen sets of paradigms). In the Teutonic languages the vowel stems have held the original case-endings most firmly, and are called **strong**; the stems in *n* are called **weak**; other consonant stems conform (§ 40), or are irregular.

(2.) *Gender.*—(*a.*) Names applied to *females* use long vowels and liquids; they melt away the strong consonant endings, and attain vowel or liquid endings. Again, all words having such endings tend to assume the habits of feminine names throughout, and become grammatically of the feminine gender.

(*b.*) The separation of *neuter* from masculine is not so thorough-going. No special form is needed to distinguish inanimate things as acting, or as addressed; hence the nominative and vocative are not distinguished from the accusative. We take inanimate things in the lump; hence neuters tend to use no plural sign, or to use an ending like the feminine singular, as an abstract or collective form: Greek, Latin, *-a*; Anglo-Saxon, *-u*, etc. Latin neuters plural frequently become feminine singular in the Romance languages; Greek neuters plural take a singular verb. The neuter is a masculine with the activity out; the Sanskrit grammarians call it *klîva*, eunuch.

(*c.*) Gender has two aspects: (1) it represents a tendency to use different sounds for relations to males from those used for similar relations to females, or to inanimate things; (2) it represents the tendency to couple together words (nouns, adjectives, and pronouns) agreeing in their terminations. From the first point of view there can be but three genders; many languages have but two; some have none. From the second point of view there may be as many genders as there are sets of terminations; some languages have none; some, e. g., the Congoes and Caffirs, have many.

(*d.*) There was originally no sound as a sign of gender in the Indo-European Parent Speech. It is denoted, however, in the earliest remains by long

vowels, especially *â, jâ>î*, for feminine nouns; by *-t* in the nominative for some neuters, and indirectly by other case-endings. It has been a constant force, showing itself more and more through all the changes of the language, and in the Anglo-Saxon affords a natural subdivision of the case-endings.

65. There are two classes of Declensions of Anglo-Saxon nouns:

(1.) **Strong**: those which have sprung from vowel stems.

(2.) **Weak**: that which has sprung from stems in **an.**

There are four declensions distinguished by the endings of the Genitive Singular:

Declension 1.	Declension 2.	Declension 3.	Declension 4.
es	**e**	**a**	**an**

66. SUMMARY OF CASE-ENDINGS.

	Strong.							Weak.		
	Decl. I.				Decl. II.		Decl. III.	Decl. IV.		
	Masc.	Neut.	Masc.	Neut.	Feminine.		Masc. Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Stem.....	a	a	ia	ia	â	i	u	an	an	an
Singular.—										
N. & V......	–	–	e	e	u	–	u	a	e	e
Gen.	es	es	es	es	e	e	â	an	an	an
Dat.	e	e	e	e	e	e	â	an	an	an
Acc.	–	–	e	e	u, e	e, –	u	an	an	e
Inst......	ê	ê	ê	ê	e	e	â	an	an	an
Plural.—										
N., A., & V.	âs	u	îs	u	â, e	e, â	u, o, â	an		
Gen.	â	â	â	â	â, enâ		â, enâ	enâ		
D. & Inst....	um	um	um	um	um		um	um		

A few masculines of Decl. 1st have some forms from i-stems or u-stems, §§ 86, 93.

67. **Gender.** General rules. For particulars, see §§ 268–270.

1. **Strong nouns.** All masculines are of the first or third declension; all feminines of the second or third; all neuters of the first.

2. *Abstract Nouns* have their gender governed by the terminations. In derivatives the feminine gender prevails.

3. *Compound Nouns* follow the gender of the last part.

4. Masculine are names of males; of the moon; of many weeds, flowers, winds; *man, guma*, man; *dêland; mônа*, moon; *mear*, horse; *þorn*, thorn; *blôstma*, blossom; *þind*, wind.

5. Feminine are names of females; of the sun; of many trees, rivers, soft and low musical instruments: *cpên*, queen; *cû*, cow; *Ælf-pryde; sunnu, sunne*, sun; *âc*, oak; *Danubie*, Danube; *hpistle*, whistle; *hearpe*, harp.

6. Neuter are names of wife, child; diminutives; many general names; and words made an object of thought: *pif*, wife; *bearn, cild*, child; *mægden*, maiden; *græs*, grass; *ofet*, fruit; *corn*, corn; *gold*, gold.

7. *Epicene Nouns* have one grammatical gender, but are used for both sexes. Such names of mammalia are masculine, except of a few little timid ones: *mûs*, mouse (feminine); large and fierce birds are masculine; others feminine, especially singing birds: *nihtegale*, nightingale; large fishes are masculine, small feminine; insects are feminine.

68. **Cases alike.**—(1.) The nominative and vocative are always alike.

(2.) The nominative, accusative, and vocative are alike in all plurals, and in the singular of all neuters and strong masculines.

(3.) The genitive plural ends always in **â** or **enâ**.

(4). The dative and instrumental plural end always in **um** (*on*). The instrumentals are etymologically datives, except *-e, -ȳ*.

DECLENSION I.

Stem in **a.** Genitive singular in **es.**

69. Here belong **Masculines,**—monosyllables, derivatives in *l, m, n, r, p>u>o, els, rd, d, ð, t, nd, st, oc, h, ng, e, ere;* **Neuters,**—monosyllables, often with *be-* or *ge-* prefixed, derivatives in *l, n, r, p>u>o, d, t, h, e, incle.*

70.—I. Case-endings from stem **a**+relational suffixes. Nominative in —.

	Masculine.		Neuter.
Stem.....	pulfa, *wolf.*		scipa, *ship.*
Theme	pulf.		scip.
Singular.—			
Nominative ..	pulf,	*a wolf.*	scip.
Genitive.....	pulf*es*,	*of a wolf, wolf's.*	scip*es.*
Dative.....	pulf*e*,	*to* or *for a wolf.*	scip*e.*
Accusative....	pulf,	*a wolf.*	scip.
Vocative.....	pulf,	*O, wolf.*	scip.
Instrumental..	pulf*e*,	*by* or *with a wolf.*	scip*e.*
Plural.—			
Nominative ..	pulf*as*,	*wolves.*	scip*u.*
Genitive.....	pulf*a*,	*of wolves.*	scip*a.*
Dative.....	pulf*um*,	*to* or *for wolves.*	scip*um.*
Accusative ...	pulf*as*,	*wolves.*	scip*u.*
Vocative.....	pulf*as*,	*O, wolves.*	scip*u.*
Instrumental..	pulf*um*,	*by* or *with wolves.*	scip*um.*

	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	Old Saxon.	Old Norse.
Stem.....	áçva, *horse.*	ἵππο, *horse.*	equo, *horse.*	vulfa, *wolf.*	wulfa, *wolf.*	ûlfa, *wolf.*
SINGULAR.—						
Nominative..	áçva-s	ἵππο-ς	equu-s	vulf-s	wulf	ûlf-r
Genitive.....	áçva-sja	ἵππο-ιο / ἵππου	equî	vulfi-s	wulba-s / wulbe-s	ûlf-s
Dative.....	áçvâ-j-a	ἵππῳ	equô	vulfa	wulba, e	ûlfi
Accusative...	áçva-m	ἵππο-ν	equu-m	vulf	wulf	ûlf
Vocative.....	áçva	ἵππε	eque	vulf	(*Nomin.*)	(*Nomin.*)
Instrumental	áçvâ	ἱππό-φι	(*Ablat.*)	(*Dative.*)	wulbu	(*Dative.*)
PLURAL.—						
Nomihative..	áçvâ-sas	ἵππο-ι	equ (e-i-s), î	vulfô-s	wulbô-s, â-s	ûlfa-r
Genitive.....	áçvâ-n-âm	ἵππων	equu-m / equô-rum	vulfê	wulbô, â	ûlfa
Dative.....	áçvê-bhjas	(*Locat.*)	equî-s	vulfa-m	wulbo-n, u-n	ûlfu-m / o-m
Accusative...	áçvâ-n(s)	ἵππο-νς	equôs	vulfa-ns	wulfô-s, â-s	ûlfa

The Old High German has *wulf, wulfes, wulfa, wulf, wulfu; wulfâ, wulfô, wulfum, wulfâ.* The Old Friesic has *fisk, fisk-is* (*-es*), *fisk-a* (*-i, -e*), *fisk; fisk-ar* (*-a*), *fiska, fisk-um* (*-on, -em*), *fisk-ar* (*-a*).

For Parent speech, add the endings in § 62 to the stem.

71. **Changes in Endings,** §§ 38, 64. (*a.*) The **stem-vowel** *-a* in Gothic and Anglo-Saxon does not blend with the terminations as in Latin and Greek, but drops. This declension is thus become analogous to the Latin and Greek consonant declension (Third); compare the singular genitive and plural nominative, and see ποιμεν, *homen*, § 95, *a*, and proper names, § 101, *b*.

(*b.*) **Case-endings.** For original forms, see § 62.

Singular.—Nominative *-s* is weathered, §§ 62, 64. Genitive *-as*> *-es*, precession, § 38. Dative *-ai*> *-a*> *-e*, precession, § 38; sometimes *-e*> —; *hâm*, home; *dæg*, day. Accusative *-am*> —, §§ 62, 64. Instrumental *-â*> *ê*, § 18, or *a-bhi*> Lithuanic, Slavonic *-a-mi*> O. H. G. *-û*, Goth. *ê* (in *hvê, svê, þê, hvadrê*, etc.)> A. S. *-e*, §§ 62, 63, 251, II., *b*.

Plural.—Nominative *a-s(a)s*> *-âs* has farther precession to *-as*> *-es*> *-s* in late A.-Saxon and English. Genitive *-(s)âm(s)*> *-â*, § 64. Dative *-bhja(m)s*> *-mjas*> *-mus*> *-mr*> *-m; bh*>*m* nasalizing the labial as in Lith. and Slav. *-mus, -mu; -am*> *-um*, labial assimilation, § 35, 2, *a*; precession to *-on, -en* is found. Accusative *-ans*> *-âs*, compensation, § 37.

(*c.*) This declension has best preserved the original case-endings, and has transmitted to English the possessive and plural signs.

72. **Neuters** differ from masculines in this declension in having no proper plural sign, § 64. Their plural ending is *-a* in Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, and Gothic; *-u* in O. Sax., O. Fries., and A.-Sax.; — in O. H. Ger. and O. Nor.

(*a.*) The earlier *-a* is sometimes found in A.-Sax. (North.); *-o* is common; sometimes the *-u* drops, precession, § 38; *fiđera* (*u*), wings; *brimo* (*u*), waters; *gebedu, gebed*, prayers. For *-ra, -ru*, in *ægra*, eggs, see § 82.

73. STRONG NOUNS.—DECLENSION I.

	2. Long monosyllables.	3. Shifting.		4. U-umlaut.	5. Gemination.	
Stem	*porda*, n.	*daga*, m.	*fata*, n.	*hliđa*, n.	*torra*, m.	*spella*, n.
	word.	day.	vat.	slope.	tower.	speech.
Theme...	*pord*	*dæg*	*fæt*	*hliđ*	*tor*	*spel*
SINGULAR.—						
N., A., & V.	*pord*	*dæg*	*fæt*	*hliđ*	*tor*	*spel*
Gen.	*pordes*	*dæges*	*fætes*	*hliđes*	*torres*	*spelles*
Dat.	*porde*	*dæge*	*fæte*	*hliđe*	*torre*	*spelle*
Inst.	*pordè*	*dægè*	*fætè*	*hliđè*	*torrè*	*spellè*
PLURAL.—						
N., A., & V.	*pord*	*dagâs*	*fatu*	*hleođu* (-u-)	*torrâs*	*spel*
Gen.	*pordâ*	*dagâ*	*fatâ*	*hleođâ* (-i-)	*torrâ*	*spellâ*
D. & Inst.	*pordum*	*dagum*	*fatum*	*hleođum* (-i-)	*torrum*	*spellum*

	6. Syncope.		7. Stem in -ga.	8. Stem in -ha.	
Stem....	*tungola*, m.	*tungola*, n.	*beâga*, m.	*mearha*, m.	*hôha*, m.
	star.	star.	ring.	horse.	hough.
Theme...	*tungol*	*tungol*	*beâg*	*mearh*	*hôh*
SINGULAR.—					
N., A., & V.	*tung-ol, -ul, -el, -l*		*beâ(g), h*	*mear(h),g,-*	*hôh, hô*
Gen.	*tung-oles, -ules, -eles, -les*		*beâges*	*meares*	*hôs*
Dat.	*tung-ole, -ule, -ele, -le*		*beâge*	*meare*	*hô*
Inst.	*tung-olè, -ulè, -elè, -lè*		*beâgè*	*mearè*	*hô*
PLURAL.—					
N., A., & V.	m. *tung-olâs, -ulâs, -elâs, -lâs* n. *tung-olu, -ol, -ul, -el, -l*		*beâgâs*	*mearâs*	*hôs*
Gen.	*tung-olâ, -ulâ, -elâ, -lâ*		*beâgâ*	*mearâ*	*hôâ*
D. & I.	*tung-olum, -ulum, -elum, -lum*		*beâgum*	*mearum*	*hôum*

	9. Stem in -pa.		10. Stem+er.
Stem	*bearpa*, m., grove.	*cneôpa*, n., knee.	*æga*, egg.
Theme...	*bearu*	*cneôp*	*æg*, plur. *æger*
SINGULAR.—			
N., A., & V.	*bear-u, -o*	*cneôp, cneô*	*æg*
Gen.	*bear-pes, -upes, -opes, -epes*	*cneô-pes, -s*	*æges*
Dat.	*bear-pe, -upe, -ope, -epe*	*cneô-pe, –*	*æge*
Inst.	*bear-pè, -upè, -opè, -epè*	*cneô-pè, –*	*ægè*
PLURAL.—			
N., A., & V.	*bear-pâs, -upâs, -opâs, -epâs*	*cneô-pu, -p, –*	*æg*-er-u, -ru
Gen.	*bear-pâ, -upâ, -opâ, -epâ*	*cneô-pâ, cneâ*	*æg*-er-â, -râ
D. & I.	*bear-pum, -upum, -opum, -epum*	*cneô-pum, -um, -m*	*æg*-er-um, -rum

74. (1. **Common forms.**) Like *pulf* decline strong masculines not hereafter otherwise described: *âd*, oath; *dêl*, part; *stân*, stone; *cyning*, king; *rêcels*, frankincense; *hlâford*, lord; *snâp*, snow, etc. Like *scip* decline strong neuters not hereafter otherwise described: *col*, coal; *dor*, door; *geat*, gate; *gebod*, *bebod*, bidding; *gebed*, prayer; *gebrec*, crash; *gemet*, measure; *gefeoht*, fight, etc.

(*a*.) Derivatives in *-að*, *-eð*, *-els* sometimes drop plural *-as*: *mônað*, months; *hæleð*, heroes; *fætels*, bags; so those in *-r* and *-nd*, §§ 87, 100.

(*b*.) For datives in *-ê*, genitives in *-end*, see §§ 93, 94, 88, *c*.

(*c*.) Stem *-e-* is sometimes inserted conforming with stems in *-ia*: *fiscêas*<*fiscas*, fishes, § 85.

(*d*.) Themes in *-sc* may suffer metathesis, especially in the plural: *fisc*, *fiscâs*>*fixâs*, fishes; *tusc*, *tuxâs*, tusks, § 51.

75. (2. **Long monosyllables, neuter,** § 37, 3.) Like *pord* decline neuter monosyllables long by nature or position: *bân*, bone; *bearn*, infant; *fŷr*, fire; *gôd*, good; *hors*, horse; *leâf*, leaf; *leóð*, song; *speord*, sword; *pîf*, wife, etc.

76. (3. **Shifting,** §§ 23, 41.) Like *dæg* or *fæt* decline monosyllables with root *æ*<*a*:—masculine *cræft*, craft; *gæst*, guest; *hpæl*, whale; *mæg*, son; *pæð*, path; *stæf*, staff;—neuter *bæc*, back; *bæð*, bath; *fæc*, space; *fræd*, fringe; *blæd*, blade; *cræt*, cart.

(*a*.) The shifting of *a* to *æ* is stopped in the plural by the assimilating force of the *â* or *u* of the ending, § 85, 1.

77. (4. **U-umlaut,** § 32, 3). Like *hlið* decline *brim*, water; *gehlid*, inclosure; *lim*, limb, etc. This umlaut is only occasional.

78. (5. **Gemination,** § 27, 5.) Stems having gemination simplify it according to Rule 13, § 20; *bil*, *billes*, ax, etc.

79. (6. **Syncope,** § 46, 37.) Syncopated may be words ending in an unaccented short vowel before a single consonant:—masculine *engel*, angel; *ealdor*, elder; *dryhten*, lord; *mônað*, month; *heorot*, stag, etc.;—neuter *setel*, throne; *yfel*, evil; *beâcen*, sign; *tâcen*, token; *leðer*, leather; *pundor*, wonder, etc.;—masc. and neut. *heafod*, head; *segen*, sign, etc.

80. (7–8. **Stems in -ga and -ha.**) For *g*>*h* and *h*>*g*, see §§ 41, 3, *b*, 118. For ecthlipsis of *h*, see § 47. For contraction *hôâs*>*hôs*, see § 52. Like *mearh* decline *feorh*, plur. neut. *feorh*, beings, etc. Like *hôh* decline *feôh*, n. fee, pl. n. *feô*; *hreôh*, *pleôh*, etc.; and with a similar contraction, **stems in a long vowel**: *eâ*, *eâs*, river; *sæ*, *sæs*, sea, etc. See § 100.

81. (9. **Stems in -pa.**) Like *bearu* decline *ealu*, n., ale; *mealu*, n., meal; etc. Like *cneôp* decline *treôp*, n., tree; *þeôp*, m., servant, etc.

(*a*). After a consonant *p* final shifts to *u*>*o*; and before a vowel may have quasi-gemination in *up*; this *u* may then have precession to *o*>*e*. Similar are Sanskrit *sunaves*<*sunu*, son; O. H. Ger. *palawes*<*palu*, bale.

82. (10.) **Stems strengthened by -er,** § 228.) Like *æg* decline *cealf*, calf; *cild*, child; *lamb*, lamb.

(*a*.) A similar interchange of stem *-a* with *-era* is found in O. H. Ger. *-ira*, *kelb*, *kelbir*, calf, O. Fris. *kind-er-a*, children, *horn-ar*, horns. The *-er* sometimes comes into the singular: *lamber*, a lamb.

83.—II. Case-endings from stem **-ia**+relational suffixes.

Stem .	hirdia, m., *shepherd.*	rîcia, n., *realm.*
Theme	hird.	rîc.
SINGULAR.—		
Nom.	hirde	rîce
Gen...	hirdes	rîces
Dat...	hirde	rîce
Acc...	hirde	rîce
Voc...	hirde	rîce
Inst...	hirdê	ricê
PLURAL.—		
Nom.	hirdâs	rîcu
Gen...	hirdâ	rîcâ
Dat...	hirdum	rîcum
Acc...	hirdâs	rîcu
Voc...	hirdâs	rîcu
Inst...	hirdum	rîcum

84.—III. Case-endings from stem **-i**+relational suffixes.

byri, m., *son.*	fôti, m., *foot.*	mani, m., *man.*
byr	fôt	man
byre	fôt	man
byres	fôtes	mannes
byre	fêt, fôte	men
byre	fôt	man
byre	fôt	man
byrê	fêt, fôtê	men.
byre, -âs	fêt, fôtâs	men
byrâ	fôtâ	mannâ
byrum	fôtum	mannum
byre, -âs	fêt, fôtâs	men
byre, -âs	fêt, fôtâs	men
byrum	fôtum	mannum

83, *a.* Latin, O. Lat. Stem filio, m., *son.*	Gothic. harja, m., *army.*	Gothic. hairdja, m., *shepherd.*	Gothic. kunja, n., *kind.*	O. Sax. hirdja, m., *shepherd.*	O. Norse. herja, m., *army.*
SING.—					
Nom.... filiu-s, fili (s)	harji-s	haírdei-s	kuni	hirdi	her-r
Gen. ... filii, filî	harji-s	haírdei-s	kunji-s	hird-je-s, -eas	her-s
Dat..... filiô	harja	haírdja	kunja	hird-je, -ea	her-i
Acc..... fili-um, fili-m	hari	haírdi	kuni	hirdi	her
Voc..... fili	hari	haírdi	kuni	hirdi	——
Inst..... ——	——	——	——	hirdju	——
PLURAL.—					
N. & V. filii	harjô-s	haírjô-s	kunja	hird-jô-s (neut. -i)	herja-r
Gen..... filiorum, filium	harjê	haírdjê	kunjô	hird-jô, -eô	herja
D. & I.. filiis	harja-m	haírdja-m	kunja-m	hird-ju-n	herju-m
Acc..... filiôs	harja-ns	haírdja-ns	kunja	hird-jô-s (neut. -i)	herja

When a single short syllable precedes the stem *-ja*, Gothic masculines follow *harja*, otherwise *haírdja*. The O. H. German has *hirti, hirtes, hirta, hirti, hirtu; hirtâ, hirtô, hirtum, hirtâ;* neuter *kunni, kunnies* (*kunnes*), *kunnje* (*kunne*), *kunni, kunnju* (*kunnu*); *kunni, kunnjô* (*kunneô, kunno*), *kunnjum* (*kunnum*), *kunni.* The O. Friesic retains of this declension only a nominative *e*<*ja.* For changes in endings, see §§ 71, 72, 85.

84, *a.* The comparative grammar of the i-stems is reserved for the feminine forms, §§ 88, 89. The plural **-âs** conforms with the a-stems.

85. (*Stem in* **ia.**)—Like *hirde* decline masculines in *-e* and *-ere: bere*, barley; *ele*, oil; *ege*, awe; *ende*, end; *mêce*, sword; *spenge*, sponge; *freond-scipe*, friendship; *fiscere*, fisher; *huntere*, hunter.

Like *rîce* decline strong neuters in *-e* and diminutives in *-incle: pîte*, punishment; *yrfe*, heritage; *lidincle*, a little joint; *râpincle*, a little rope, etc. Most neuters originally in *ia* conform with *pord*, or are now masculine.

(*a.*) The *-e* of the singular nominative, accusative, and vocative is by precession from *-ia*. In the earlier forms a stem *-e*<*-i* is occasionally found elsewhere: *hirdeâs*>*hirdâs*, *hirdeâ*>*hirdâ*, *hirdeum*>*hirdum*; *mêceâ*>*mêcâ*, etc. The *i* has sometimes a quasi-gemination to *ig*, *ige*, the *g* or *ge* representing an opening of the organs from the *i*-position (§ 28, 2; 27, 5): *here* (Gothic *harjis*), *herigâs*, *herigeâs*, *hergâs*, etc., hosts.

(*b.*) Many words originally in *-ia*, which have dropped the nominative *-e*, and are declined like *pulf*, are seen to have i-umlaut or other assimilation when compared with other languages: *rêc*<*rêce* (Old H. German *rouch*), smoke; so some *i*-stems: *gæst*, *gest*, *gyst*, *gist*; plur. *gystâs*, *giestâs*, etc.; *gastâ*, etc., guest (Gothic *gasts*; plur. *gasteis*, § 89).

86. (*Stem in* **i.** §§ 89–91.)—Few remains are found of masculines in *-i*. *Byre*; *bite*, bite; *dryre*, fall; *hete*, hate; *sele*, hall, occur; *cyme*, coming, has a plural; some *ia*-stems conform: *pine*, friend; *hæle*, man; *hyge*, mind; *mere*, sea. Like *byre* decline *leôde*, men, and compounds of *-pare* (called by Grein fem. plur. of *leôd*, people, *paru*, state, but which seem quasi-adjectives like Latin *Romani*): *burh-pare*, citizens; *Cant-pare*, Kentish folks; names of peoples: *Dene*, Danes; *Rômâne*, Romans.

Umlaut.—Like *fôt* decline *tôð*, tooth; and see § 91.

87. (*Stems in* **-r** *and* **-nd.**)

	r-stem.	nd-stem.
SINGULAR.—		
Nom., A., & V.	brôðor.	feônd.
Gen.	brôðor.	feôndes.
Dat. & Inst.	brêðer.	feônde.
PLURAL.—		
Nom., A., & V.	brôðru, brôðor.	fŷnd, feônd, -âs.
Gen.	brôðrâ.	feôndâ.
Dat. & Inst.	brôðrum.	feôndum.

The changes *ô* to *ê*, *a* to *e*, and *eô* to *ŷ*, are i-umlaut concealed. § 32, 2. These irregulars conform to the *i*-stems. § 91, 4, 5. For others, see § 100.

The Gothic has *brôþar*, *brôþr-s*, *brôþr*, *brôþar*; plur. (like *u*-stems) *brôþ-ju-s*, *brôþr-ê*, *brôþr-u-m*, *brôþr-u-ns*. The other Teutonic tongues show peculiar forms (often undeclined) in their *r*- and *nd*-stems. See § 100, *f*.

Stem in **â** or **i**. Genitive singular in **e**.

88. — I. Case-endings from stem **â**+relational suffixes.

Stem....	gifâ, *gift.*
Theme...	gif.
SINGULAR.—	
Nominative..	gif*u.*
Genitive.....	gif*e.*
Dative.....	gif*e.*
Accusative...	gif*u*, gif*e.*
Vocative.....	gif*u.*
Instrumental..	gif*e.*
PLURAL.—	
Nominative..	gif*â*, gif*e.*
Genitive..	gif*â*, gif*enâ.*
Dative....	gif*um.*
Accusative...	gif*â*, gif*e.*
Vocative.....	gif*â*, gif*e.*
Instrumental..	gif*um.*

II.—Case-endings from stem **i**+relational suffixes.

dæ̂di, *deed.*
dæ̂d.
dæ̂d.
dæ̂d*e.*
dæ̂d*e.*
dæ̂d, dæ̂d*e.*
dæ̂d.
dæ̂d*e.*
dæ̂d*e*, dæ̂d*â.*
dæ̂d*â.*
dæ̂d*um.*
dæ̂d*e*, dæ̂d*â.*
dæ̂d*e*, dæ̂d*â.*
dæ̂d*um.*

88.—1 (*a*).	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	Old Saxon.	Old Norse.
Stem.....	áçva, *mare.*	χῶρα, *room.*	equa, *mare.*	giba, *gift.*	gëba, *gift.*	giafa, *gift.*
SINGULAR.—						
Nominative..	áçvâ	χώρα	equa	giba	gëba	giõf
Genitive.....	áçvâ-j-âs	χώρα-ς	equa-es, equa-i, equæ	gibô-s	gëbô, gëbâ	giafa-r
Dative.....	áçvâi, áçvâ-j-âi	χώρᾳ	equâi, equæ	gibai	gëbô, gëbu	giõf (u)
Accusative...	áçvâ-m	χώρα-ν	equa-m	giba	gëba	giõf
Vocative.....	áçvê	χώρα	equa	giba	(*Nomin.*)	(*Nomin.*)
Instrumental	áçva-j-â	(*Dat.*)	(*Ablat.*)	(*Dat.*)	(*Dative.*)	(*Dative.*)
PLURAL.—						
Nominative..	áçvâ-sas, áçvâ-s	χῶραι	equæ, equâ-s	gibõ-s	gëbâ	giafa-r
Genitive.....	áçvâ-m, áçvâ-n-âm	χωρῶν	equâ-rum	gibô	gëbô-n-ô	giafa
Dative.....	áçvâ-bhjas	(*Locat.*)	equâ-bus, equis	gibô-m	gëbu-n, gëbo-n	giõfu-m, giõfo-m
Accusative...	áçvâ-s	χώρα-ς	equâ-s	gibô-s	gëbâ	giafa-r

The Old High German has *gëba, gëbô* (*â*), *gëbô* (*u*), *gëba, gëba*; *gëbô* (*â*), *gëbônô, gëbôm, gëbô* (*â*). The O. Friesic has sing. *jeve*; plur. *jeva, jevenâ* (*jevâ*), *jevum* (*on*), *jeva.*

(*b.*) To the 1st class belong all feminines in *u*. They are few: *faru*, journey; *lufu*, love; *sceamu*, shame; *scôlu*, school; *pracu*, revenge; compounds in *-paru* (*burh-paru*, state, etc.).

(*c.*) For the Parent Speech, add the endings in § 62 to the stem. Gravitation has carried away all the consonants from the Anglo-Saxon case-endings except the *m* of the dative plural, which is a nasalizing of the original *bh* (§ 71, *b*); *n* in *gifenâ* is euphonic epenthesis (§ 50), as in Sanskrit, a conformation with the weak form in *an*; *m* in *gifum* (*gifâm*) assimilates the *a* (§ 35, 2, *a*). The plural *-â* suffered precession in late Anglo-Saxon to *-a*, then to *-e*, which in English drops. The original *-â* is retained in the paradigms as the classic sound.

(*d.*) Plural *-e* is a conformation with the *i*-stems, influenced also perhaps by the Latin. In the sixth century, Latin *æ=e*; *-m*, *-s* were silent.

(*e.*) Root *a* sometimes suffers shifting to *æ*, or even i-umlaut to *e*, before *-e*: *sacu*, strife, genitive *sæce*; *pracu*, revenge, dative *prace*, *præce*, *prece*, etc. §§ 41, 32.

(*f.*) Here also are placed nouns in *-o*<*-u* undeclinable in the singular, from adjectives: *yld-u*, *-o*, *-e* (eld, age), plur. *yldu*, *-o*, *-e*, *yldâ*, *yldum*; plural nom. and acc. in *â* is found: *yldâ* (Grein), *yrmdâ*, miseries. So *æðelo*, nobility; *brâdo*, breadth, etc. The plural is rare. Similar words in Gothic are weak: *manag-eins* (multitude), *-ein*, *-ein*, *-ei*, plur. *manag-eins*, *-einô*, *-eim*, *-eins*. O. H. German has *-în* for *-ein*; O. Saxon has strong forms. The A.-Saxon words conform with the *â*-stems. § 40, 1.

(*g.*) For *duru*, door; *æ*, law; *beô*, bee; *eâ*, river; *sæ*, sea; forms from *ia*-stems, etc., see § 100; for Northumbrian forms, see page 49.

89.—(88, II.) Stem in i.

	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	Old Saxon.	Old Norse.
Stem.....	ávi, *sheep.*	ὄϝι, *sheep.*	ovi, *sheep.*	anstai, *love.*	ansti, *love.*	ânsti, *love.*
SINGULAR.—						
Nom.....	ávi-s	ὄϝι-ς	ovi-s	anst-s	anst	ânst
Gen.....	ávj-âs	ὄϝι-ος	ovi-s	anstai-s	ansti, ensti	ânst-ar
Dat.....	ávj-âi	*Loc.* ὄϝε-ι	*Loc.* ovî	anstai	ansti, ensti	ânst-u
Acc.....	ávi-m	ὄϝι-ν	ove-m	anst	anst	ânst
Voc.....	ávê	ὄϝι	(*Nom*)	ansts	(*Nom.*)	(*Nom.*)
Inst.....	ávj-â	(*Dative.*)	*Abl.* ovê(d)	(*Dative.*)	(*Dative.*)	(*Dative.*)
PLURAL.—						
Nom. & Voc.	ávaj-as	ὄϝι-ες	ovê-s	anstei-s	anstî, enstî	ânsti-r
Gen.....	ávi-n-âm	ὀϝί-ων	ovi-um	anstê	anstjô, enste-ô	ânst-a
Dat.....	ávi-bhjas	*Loc.* ὄϝι-σι	ovi-bus	ansti-m	anstju-n, enstju-n	ânst-um
Acc.....	ávî-s	ὄϝι-ας	ovê-s	ansti-ns	anstî, enstî	ânsti

The O. High German has *anst*, *ensti anst*, *ensti anst*, *anst*; *enstî*, *enstj-ô ensteô*, *ensti-m*, *ensti*. The Old Friesic has *nêd*, *nêde*, *nêde*, *nêde*; *nêda*, *nêda*, *nêd-â*, *nêdi-m*<*nêdem*, *-um*, *-on*, *nêda*. Masc. and neut. *i*-stems were common in the older tongues; but few masc. survive in A.-Sax. §§ 64, *d*; 86.

90.—II. Case-endings < stem i + rel. suffixes. Nominative in —.

Stem..	1. dǽdi, *deed.*	2. pynni, *fun.*	3. beadpi, *battle.*
Theme	dǽd.	pynn.	beadp (u, o), beadup.
SINGULAR.—			
Nom. . .	dǽd.	pyn.	beadu (o).
Gen. . . .	dǽde.	pynne.	beadpe, beadupe.
Dat. . . .	dǽde.	pynne.	beadpe, beadupe.
Acc. . . .	dǽd, dǽde.	pyn, pynne.	beadu (o), beadpe, beadupe.
Voc. . . .	dǽd.	pyn.	beadu (o).
Inst. . . .	dǽde.	pynne.	beadpe, beadupe.
PLURAL.—			
Nom. . .	dǽde (á).	pynne (á).	beadpe (á), beadupe (á).
Gen. . . .	dǽdá.	pynná.	beadpá, beadupá.
Dat. . . .	dǽdum.	pynnum.	beadpum, beadupum.
Acc. . . .	dǽde (á).	pynne (á).	beadpe (á), beadupe (á).
Voc. . . .	dǽde (á).	pynne (á).	beadpe (á), beadupe (á).
Inst. . . .	dǽdum.	pynnum.	beadpum, beadupum.

Stem..	4. bôci, *book.*	5. mûsi, *mouse.*	6. ceasteri, *city.*
Theme	bôc.	mûs.	ceaster, ceastr.
SINGULAR.—			
Nom. . .	bôc.	mûs.	ceaster.
Gen. . . .	bôce.	muse.	ceastre.
Dat. . . .	bêc.	mŷs.	ceastre.
Acc. . . .	bôc	mûs.	ceaster. ceastre.
Voc. . . .	bôc.	mûs.	ceaster.
Inst. . . .	bêc.	mŷs.	ceastre.
PLURAL.—			
Nom. . .	bêc.	mŷs.	ceastre (á).
Gen. . . .	bôcá.	mûsá.	ceastrá.
Dat. . . .	bôcum.	mûsum.	ceastrum.
Acc. . . .	bêc.	mŷs.	ceastre (á).
Voc. . . .	bêc.	mŷs.	ceastre (á).
Inst. . . .	bôcum.	mûsum.	ceastrum.

91. To the 2d class belong all feminines ending in a consonant: they are simple monosyllables; derivatives in *-el, -en, -er; -ung;*

-nis, -nes; -es; -oc; -oð, -uð, ð; þ-; nearly all strong feminines conform.

(*a.*) The feminines of the first Sanskrit declension are *â*-stems and *i*-stems.

(*b.*) The apocope of stem *i* in the singular nominative, accusative, and vocative, is the effect of gravitation (§ 38). That short roots retain the stem vowel (*gifu*, etc.), while long roots drop it (*dæd*, etc.), shows compensation (§ 37). Compare the feminine of the strong adjectives.

(*c.*) The singular accusative *-e*, the plural nominative, accusative, and vocative *-â*, and dative *-um*<*-im*, are conformations with the 1st class. § 40, 1.

A. (1. *Common Form.*)—Like *dæd* decline words of this declension ending in a syllable long by nature or position: *âr*, honor; *bên*, prayer; *lâr*, lore; *rôd*, cross; *pund*, wound; *pyrd*, fate; *gesamnung*, assembly; so also *ides*, woman, and some other words in a short syllable.

(*a.*) Except words like *bôc* and *mûs* (4, 5), and like *clâ*, *cleó* (§ 100).

(*b.*) Many have sometimes *-â* in the dative: some originally *-u* stems retaining it, others conforming—words in *-ung* oftenest. § 93, *i.*

B. (2. *Gemination.*)—Like *pyn* decline words of this declension ending short in a consonant: *ben*, wound; *blis*, bliss; *hen*, hen; *byrgen*, sepulcher; *gȳmen*, care; *þrînis*, trinity, etc.

(3. *Semivowel Gemination.*)—Like *beadu* decline feminines in *þ*>*u* (§ 30): *gearu*, gear; *sceadu*, shadow, but *sceade*, *sceadâ* are found; *râ̂su*, providence; *seonu*, sinew.

(*a.*) Except syncopated forms like *ceaster*, and a few like *dæd*.

(*b.*) For the simplification of gemination *pynn*>*pyn*, see § 20, Rule 13.

(*c.*) The *u* of *up* is made in closing the organs to *þ* (§ 27, 5). It may suffer precession to *o*>*e* (§ 38). Final *þ*>*u* is shifting (§ 30; 41, 2).

C. (4, 5. *Umlaut.*)—Like *bôc* decline *brôc*, breeches; *gôs*, goose. Like *mûs* decline *lûs*, louse; for *cû*, cow; *burh*, borough; *turf*, turf, see § 100. Note also *dôhtor*, *speoster*, *môder*.

(*a.*) The changes in the roots of *bôc*, *mûs*, etc., are i-umlaut concealed: *bêc*<*bôci* (Old Saxon *bôci*), § 32, 2.

D. (6. *Syncope.*)—Like *ceaster* decline syncopated words of this declension: they end in an unaccented vowel before *l*, *n*, *r*, or sometimes other single consonants (§ 46): *sapel*, soul; *stefen*, voice; *lifer*, liver; *meoluc*, milk. Unsyncopated forms occur.

E. For forms from *ia*-stems; *hand*, hand; *niht*, night; *þiht*, whit, see § 100. For Northumbrian forms, see page 49.

92. STRONG NOUNS (MASCULINES).

I. *Head-cases in a Vowel.*—Genitive in **a**. (DECLENSION III.)

Case-endings < stem **u** + relational suffixes. Nominative in **u**. Feminine *hand* (hand) is added.

Stem.....	1. sunu, *son.*	2. handu, *hand.*
Theme....	sun.	hand.
SINGULAR.—		
Nominative..	sun*u.*	hand.
Genitive.....	sun*á.*	hand*á.*
Dative.....	sun*á*, sun*u.*	hand*á*, hand.
Accusative...	sun*u.*	hand.
Vocative.....	sun*u.*	hand.
Instrumental.	sun*á.*	hand*á*, hand.
PLURAL.—		
Nominative..	sun*u* (*o*), sun*á.*	hand*á.*
Genitive.....	sun*á*, sune*ná.*	hand*á.*
Dative.....	sun*um.*	hand*um.*
Accusative...	sun*u* (*o*), sun*á.*	hand*á.*
Vocative.....	sun*u* (*o*), sun*á.*	hand*á.*
Instrumental.	sun*um.*	hand*um.*

93. To the third declension belong *sunu; pudu*, wood; *magu*, servant: and *bregu*, prince; *headu-*, fight; *heoru*, sword; *lagu*, lake; *meodu*, mead; *salu*, hall; *sidu*, custom, and a few others, found mostly in the singular nominative and accusative, and in composition.

(*a.*) This declension corresponds to the Latin second in so far as it contains those masculine nouns which have their head-cases in a vowel, and so is a complement of declension second. In its original stem it corresponds to the Latin fourth. § 101, *b.*

	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	Old Saxon.	Old Norse.
Stem.....	sunu, *son.*	νέκυ, *corpse.*	fructu, *fruit.*	sunu, *son.*	sunu, *son.*	sonu, *son.*
SINGULAR.—						
Nominative..	sûnú-s	νέκυ-ς	fructu-s	sunu-s	sunu, -o	son-r
Genitive	sûnv-ás	νέκυ-ος	fructû-s	sunau-s	sun(u)-o, sunje-s	sona-r
Dative from Locative...	sûnâú, sûnáv-i	νέκυ-ι	fructu-i, fructu	sunau	sunu, -o, sunje	syni
Accusative...	sûnú-m	νέκυ-ν	fructu-m	sunu	sunu, -o	son
Vocative	sû'nô	νέκυ (*Nomin.*)	(*Nomin.*)	sunau, -u (*Nomin.*)	(*Nomin.*)	(*Nomin.*)
Instrumental.	sûnú-n-â	(*Dat.*)	(*Ablat.*)	(*Dative.*)	sunju	(*Dative.*)

	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	Old Saxon.	Old Norse.
Stem.....	sunu, *son.*	*νέκυ, corpse.*	fructu, *fruit.*	sunu, *son.*	sunu, *son.*	sonu. *son.*
PLURAL.—						
Nominative.	sûnáv-as, sûnv-ás	*νέκυ-ες,*	fructû-s	sunju-s	sunî	syni-r
Genitive.....	sûnû'-n-âm	*νεκύ-ων*	fructu-um	suniv-ê	sunj-ô, -eô	son-a
Dative.....	sûnú-bhjas	(*Locat.*)	fructi-bus	sunu-m	sunu-n	sonu-m
Accusative..	sûnû'-n, sûnv-ás	*νέκυ-ας*	fructû-s	sunu-ns	sunî	sonu

The Old High German has *sunu* (*o*), *sunes*, *sunju* (*sunu*), *sunu* (*o*), *sunju* (*sunu*); *sunî*, *sunjô*, *sunim* (*sunum*), *sunî* (*u*). *The u*-declension is nearly extinct. O. Fries. *sun-u* (*o*), *-a -a*, *-u*; *-ar* (*-a*), *-a*, *-um*, *-ar* (*-a*).

(*b.*) Gravitation has carried away all the consonants from the Anglo-Saxon case-endings, except the *-m* of the dative plural, which is a nasalizing of the original *bh*. § 38.

(*c.*) The Gothic *âu* of the genitive and dative singular is a progression from *u* (*sunu-as*>*sunâu-as*>*sunâus*), § 38, 1. The Anglo-Saxon *â* nearly resembles it, and is retained in the paradigms as the classic sound, though it suffered precession in later times.

(*d.*) The instrumental *sunâ*, *handâ* are dative forms.

(*e.*) The plural *-u*>*-o* is precession: it is found also in the singular. § 38, 1.

(*f.*) The plural *-â* and *-enâ* conform to the second declension.

(*g.*) Note the umlaut and shifting in the Old Norse: *s*>*r*, *u*>*o*, *u*>*y*.

(*h.*) *Hand* conforms almost wholly to the first declension.

(*i.*) Some words originally *u*-stems retain the forms of this declension in single cases, especially in the singular dative *-â*, and plural nominative, accusative, and vocative *-u*: *feldâ*, field; *fordâ*, ford; *sumorâ*, summer; *pintrâ*, *pintru*, winter; *durâ*, door. Some words of other stems conform in the same cases: *peoruldâ*, world; *gebrôðru*, brothers; *dôhtru*, daughters; *môdru*, mothers; *gespeostru*, sisters; feminines in *-ung*.

(*k.*) For irregular forms of *pudu*, *magu*, *hand*, etc., see § 100.

94. NORTHUMBRIAN.

Feminines, Declension II.—In words of the First Class *-a* is found for Common Anglo-Saxon *-u* or *-e*. Feminines sometimes have *-es* in the genitive singular and *-âs* in the plural, and then may pass for masculines.

SINGULAR.—*Nom.*	gefa.	PLURAL.—*Nom.*	gefâs.
Gen..	gefes (*aes*).	*Gen..*	gefenâ.
Dat..	gefa.	*Dat..*	gefum.

Masculines, Declen. I. and III.—Here *a* for *u* is found: *suna* for *sunu*; also the complete descending series of *u*: *suno*, *sune*, *sun*, sun. § 38, 1.

Nouns strong in Common Anglo-Saxon often have weak forms or mixed strong and weak forms in Northumbrian. The genitive *-enâ* abounds.

95. WEAK NOUNS.

Case-endings < stem an + relational suffixes.—Genitive in an.

(DECLENSION IV.)

	1. MASCULINES.	2. FEMININES.	3. NEUTERS.	CONTRACTS.
Stem..	hanan, *cock.*	tungan, *tongue.*	eâgan, *eye.*	tâan, *toe.*
Theme	han.	tung.	eâg.	tâ.
SINGULAR.—				
Nom. ..	han*a*.	tung*e*.	eâg*e*.	tâ*e*, tâ.
Gen. ...	han*an*.	tung*an*.	eâg*an*.	tâ*an*, tân.
Dat. ...	han*an*.	tung*an*.	eâg*an*.	tâ*an*, tân.
Acc. ...	han*an*.	tung*an*.	eâg*e*.	tâ*an*, tân.
Voc. ...	han*a*.	tung*e*.	eâg*e*.	tâ*e*, tâ.
Inst. ...	han*an*.	tung*an*.	eâg*an*.	tâ*an*, tân.
PLURAL.—				
Nom. ..	han*an*.	tung*an*.	eâg*an*.	tâ*an*, tân.
Gen. ...	han*enâ*.	tung*enâ*.	eâg*enâ*.	tâ*enâ*, tânâ.
Dat. ...	han*um*.	tung*um*.	eâg*um*.	tâ*um*.
Acc. ...	han*an*.	tung*an*.	eâg*an*.	tâ*an*, tân.
Voc. ...	han*an*.	tung*an*.	eâg*an*.	tâ*an*, tân.
Inst. ...	han*um*.	tung*um*.	eâg*um*.	tâ*um*.

To the weak declension belong certain monosyllable themes, and derivative themes in *-ig*, *-l*, *-m*, *-n*, *-r*, *-s*, *-p*, all adding *-a* or *-e* in the nominative.

(*a*.) Stems in *-an* are of the third declension in Latin and Greek.

	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	Old Sax.	Old Norse.
Stem.....	áçman, *stone.*	ποιμέν, *shepherd.*	homen, -i, *man.*	hanan, *cock.*	hanan, *cock.*	hanan, *cock.*
SINGULAR.—						
Nominative.	áçmâ	ποιμήν	homô	hana	hano	hani
Genitive....	áçman-as	ποιμέν-ος	homin-is	hanin-s	hanun	hana
Dat. < Loc.	áçman-i	ποιμέν-ι	hominî	hanin	hanun	hana
Accusative..	áçmân-am	ποιμέν-α	homin-em	hanan	hanun	hana
Vocative....	áçman	(*Nomin.*)	(*Nomin.*)	hana	(*Nom.*)	(*Nom.*)
Instrument.	áçman-â	(*Dative.*)	(*Ablat.*)	(*Dat.*)	(*Dat.*)	(*Dat.*)
PLURAL.—						
Nominative.	áçmân-as	ποιμέν-ες	homin-ês	hanan-s	hanun	hana-r
Genitive.....	áçman-âm	ποιμέν-ων	homin-um	hanan-ê	hanôn-ô	hana
Dative.....	áçma-bhjas	(*Locat.*)	homini-bus	hana-m	hanun	hönu-m
Accusative.	áçman-as	ποιμέν-ας	homin-es	hanan-s	hanun	hana

The Old High German has *hano*, *hanin*, *hanın*, *hanun*; *hanun*, *hanôn-ô*, *hanô-m*. O. Fries. sing. *hona*; plur. *hon-a*, *-ana*(*-ona*), *-um*, *-a*.

(*b.*) The singular case-endings are sloughed off; and, in the nominative, *n* of the stem. In the genitive plural, *â* has held its ground, and gravitation has modified the stem: *a* > *e* > —: *ârenâ*, *ârnâ*, honor. The dative has ecthlipsis of *n* (§ 47), and assimilative precession of *am* to *um* (§ 35, 2, *a*).

(*c.*) Feminines in Gothic strengthen to *ô* the *a* of the stem *-an* throughout, and the *â* of the case-ending of the genitive plural. In Anglo-Saxon all genders agree; but feminines in the nominative, and neuters in the nominative, accusative, and vocative, for final *a* take *e* (Precession, § 38).

(*d.*) The stem in *an* was mostly masculine, but has been going over to the feminines in the Teutonic tongues (§ 67, 2).

(*e.*) The same peculiar gravitation which has brought the short *a*-stems to the form of consonant stems in declension first, has here produced a new declension by sloughing away the endings and stem. This new declension has been adopted by the Teutonic nations as their favorite for secondary formations having the force of an adjective used as a noun, and for definite adjectives; and it has in the Teutonic tongues a historical and logical importance coordinate with the strong forms. In English the Norman *-s* joined with *-s* of the Anglo-Saxon first to kill it, and *oxen*, with the irregular *children*, *brethren*, is almost its only memorial in current speech.

96. Like *hana* decline all weak nouns in *-a*: *bana*, death; *cempa*, soldier; *dropa*, drop; *guma*, man; *hunta*, hunter; *mônа*, moon; *oxa*, ox; *prœcca*, exile; *nafela*, navel; *hoďma*, covering; *geongra*, disciple; *egesa*, awe; *rǽspa*, general; *gemaca*, mate. Some remains of stems in *-ian* are found: *preccea* = *precca*, *aglǽcea*, monster, etc.

97. Like *tunge* decline all weak nouns in *-e*: *byrne*, mail; *eorďe*, earth; *heorte*, heart; *sunne*, sun; *syrce*, sark; *puce*, week; *hlǽfdige*, lady; *fǽmne*, woman; *nædre*, snake; *pudupe*, widow.

(*a.*) Except the four neuters (§ 98).

(*b.*) Now and then forms are found in *-ean* for *-an*, either remains of stems in *-ian*, or conforming to such stems: *cyrice*, *cyricean*, church.

98. Like *eâge* decline *eâre*, ear; *lunge*, lungs; *clype*, clew.

99. Like *tâ* decline *beô*, bee, *beôn*, etc.; and masculine *freaa* > *freâ*, *freaan* > *freďn*, lord; *tpeoa* > *tpeô*, *tpeoan* > *tpeôn*, doubt.

NORTHUMBRIAN.—(*Weak Nouns.*)

Final *-n* and *-m* drop. The *a* of *-an* often suffers precession in the masculines to *o* or *e*, in the feminines and neuters to *u*, *o*, or *e*. Nouns weak in Common Anglo-Saxon have often strong forms, or mixed strong and weak in Northumbrian: *noma* (*nama*), name, genitive *noma*, *nomes*. By comparing pages 49, 61, it will be seen that the Northumbrian forms vary irregularly between forms older than the Common Anglo-Saxon and others modified by gravitation and conformation almost as much as the English. See page 19.

100. IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Such are without case-endings (INDECLINABLE), or without certain cases (DEFECTIVE); or they vary in gender (HETEROGENEOUS), in stem (METAPLASTS), in case-endings (HETEROCLITES); or they are remains of dead declensions (*Reliquiæ*, RELICS); or are disguised by phonetic changes (CRYPTOCLITES). The same noun may belong to several of these classes.

(*a.*) **Indeclinable** are many nouns in *-u*>*o* (§ 88, *f*): *æðelu*, f. nobility; *hætu*, f. heat; *heâhðu*, f. highth, etc.; and *â*, f. law; *beó*, *bi*, f. bee, pl. declined.

(*b.*) **Defective.**—Without the plural are most proper, abstract, and material names: *Ælfrêd*; *strengðu*, f. strength; *gold*, n. gold. Sometimes the plural has a change of meaning: *â*, rites; *giftâ* (*u*), nuptials; *leôde*, men? *-pare*, men? Without the singular are *fideru*, n. wings; *firâs*, m. men; *frætpe*, f. ornaments; *gearpe*, f. trappings; *geatpe*, f. equipment; *gebrôðor* (*u*), m. brothers; *gespeostor*, f. sisters; *gespeoru*, n. hills; *getimbru*, n. building; *lendenu*, n. loins; *niððâs*, men; *-paran*, *-parâs*, *-pare*, m. citizens; *pelerâs* (*-â*), m. f. lips.

(*c.*) **Heterogeneous.**—Masculine and Neuter are *deôfol*, devil; *dógor*, day; *feorh*, life; *frið*, peace; *geþanc*, mind; *God*, m., plur. *godâs*, m., *godu*, n. God, idols; *gyrn*, distress; *heafod*, n. head, plur. sometimes *heafdâs*, m.; *heâp*, heap; *hilt*, hilt; *holt*, holt; *ræced*, house; *tungol*, star; *pêl*, weel; *pêsten*, waste; *pam*, spot; *polcen*, cloud; *brim*, sea; *cealf*, calf.

Feminine and Neuter are *âbylgð*, offense; *æðelu*, sing. f., plur. n. nobility; *âfest*, envy; *geþeaht*, counsel; *gift*, dower; *grin*, snare; *liget*, lightning; *þeóstor*, n., *þeostru*, f. darkness; *pêd*, *pêde*, weeds; *piht*, whit.

Masculine and Feminine are *ârist*, resurrection; *bend*, bond; *hearg*, grove; *list*, art; *neâhpest*, f. m. vicinage; *sâ*, sea; *sâl*, luck; *strêl*, arrow; *sper*, column; *peard*, watch; *pelerâs* (*-â*), lips; *leôd*, f. a people, plur. m.? *leôde*, men; *paru*, f. state, plur. *-pare*, m.? citizens (§ 86); *êst*, love.

Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter are *þreâ*, throe; *pæstm*, growth.

(*d.*) **Metaplasts.**—Forms from stems in *-ia*, *-ian*, mix with others: *plencu*, f. pomp, plur. gen. *plenceâ*; *cæg*, f. key, plur. nom. *cægiâ*; *fisc*, m. fish, plur. nom. *fisceâs*; *lâce*, m. leech, plur. nom. *lâceâs*; *cirice*, f. church, plur. nom. *ciricean*. From *u*-stems: *duru*, *pudu*, *magu*, like *sunu* (§ 92), also gen. *dure*? *pudes*, plur. nom. *pudâs*, *magâs*; *hand*, etc. (§ 93, *i*). To some stems *-er* is added: *æg*, egg; *cealf*, calf; *cild*, child (§ 82). Stems with and without quasi-gemination (§§ 81, 91): *sceadu*, f. shadow, dat. *sceadupe*, *sceade*; *frî*, *freó*, m. freeman, plur. nom. *frige*, *freô*. Metathesis: *fisc*, m. fish, plur. nom. *fixâs*. Many conforming regulars, and heteroclites, are metaplastic

(*e.*) **Heteroclites.**—Many heterogeneous strong nouns (1) with Masculine and Neuter endings: *God*, m. God, plur. m. *Godâs*, n. *Godu*; *heafod*, n. head, plur. n. *heafodu*, plur. m. *heafdâs*. (2) With Feminine and Neu-

ter endings: *æfest*, envy, gen. n. *æfestes*, pl. nom. f. *æfeste; gift*, f. dower, plur. nom. f. *giftâ*, n. *giftu; grin*, snare, inst. *grine, grinê*, plur. nom. *grinâ, grinu.* (3) With Masculine and Feminine: *bend*, bond, plur. nom. *bendâs, -â, -e; sæ*, sea, gen. *sæs, sæ; pelerâs, -â*, lips. Many themes have both weak and strong forms: *heofon, heofon-e*, heaven; *sunn-u, sunn-e*, sun; *-par-âs, -par-an*, men; but such are given as different words. Some mix: *cæg*, f. key, gen. *cægan*, dat. *cæge*, plur. nom. *cægiâ*, dat. *cægum.*

(*f.*) **Relics** of the *r*-stem are *brôđor*, brother (§ 87); *môdor*, mother; *dôhtor*, daughter; *speostor*, sister; *gebrôđor, gebrôđru* (dual?), brothers; *gespeostor*, sisters; *fæder*, father, sing. indecl. has also gen. and pl. forms of Declension Third; of the *nd*-stem are *feônd*, fiend (§ 87); *freônd*, friend; and (compound) participial nouns: *ymb-sittend*, neighbors, plur. nom.; *fold-buend*, farmers; plur. nom. sometimes in *-âs*, gen. *-râ*, like adjectives; of other consonant stems: *neaht*, f. night, gen. *nihte, nihtes*, generally adverbial, plur. nom. *niht; piht*, f. whit, plur. nom. (*piht*, Grimm) *pihtâ, pihtu, pihte; burg*, f. borough, gen. *byrg, byrig; man*, man (§ 84).

(*g.*) **Cryptoclites.**—The most common obscure forms spring from

1. Concealed umlaut. See, for paradigms, *bôc*, book; *mûs*, mouse (§ 90); *fôt*, foot; *man*, man (§ 84); *brôđer*, brother; *feônd*, fiend (§ 87); like are *bróc*, breeches; *gôs*, goose; *tôđ*, tooth; *lûs*, louse; *mûs*, mouse; *cû*, f. cow, gen. *cûs* (Rask), dat. *cŷ*, acc. *cû*, plur. nom. *cŷ, cye* (*cûs*, Rask), gen. *cûnâ*, dat. *cûm; burg, burh*, f. borough, gen. *byrig, burge*, dat. *byrig, byrg*, plur. nom. *byrig*, gen. *burgâ*, dat. *burgum; turf*, f. turf, dat. *tyrf; môdor, dôhtor, speostor; freônd*, friend.

2. Quasi-gemination of semi-vowels: paradigms of *beadu*, battle (§ 90, 3); *here*, host (§ 85, *a*). Like are *frætupe* (*â*), *frætpe* (*â*), f. plur. ornament; *gearpe*, f. plur. trappings; *geatpe*, f. plur. equipment; *nearu*, f. narrowness; *rædsu*, f. providence; *seonu*, f. sinew; *melu*, n. meal; *ealu*, n. ale, etc.; and *frî, freô*, m. freeman, plur. n. *frige, freô; pine*, m. friend, plur. nom. *pinâs, pine*, gen. *pinâ, piniâ, pinigâ, pinigeâ*, dat. *pinum*, acc. *pinâs, pine.*

3. Apothesis and Contraction—words in *u* > *o* indeclinable (§ 100, *a*).

bî, beô, f. bee, sing. indeclinable, plur. nom. *beôn*, gen. *beônâ*, dat. *beôum*,
clâ, f. claw, plur. nom. *clâpe*, dat. *clâm*. [*beôm.*
drŷ, m. magician, dat. *drŷ*, plur. nom. *drŷâs*, gen. *dryrâ.*
eâ, f. river, gen. *eâ, æ, eâs* (m.), dat. *eâ* (*iê*, Rask), plur. nom. *eâ, eâs* (m.), dat. *eâm.*
feôh, feô, n. fee, gen. *feôs*, dat. *feô*; plur. nom. *feô*, gen. *feôna, feâ* (<*feôhâ*): so *hreôh, pleôh, peôh*, etc.
hôh, hô, m. hough, gen. *hôs*, dat. *hô*, plur. nom. *hôs*, gen. *hôâ*, etc.
hrâp, hræp, hreâp, hrâ, hreâ, n. sing. and plur. nom. acc. voc. body, corpse, gen. *hræs* (<*hræpes*), plur. nom. *hræpâs*, dat. *hræpum.*
morgen, m. morning, plur. gen. *morgenâ, morgnâ, mornâ.*
sæ, m. f. sea, gen. *sæs, sæpe, sæ*, dat. *sæ, sæpe*, plur. nom. *sæs, sæ*, dat. *seô*, f. pupil, gen. *seôn, seân. sugu, sû*, f. sow, d. *sûe.* [*sæm, sæpum.*
treôp, treô, n. tree, gen. *treopes*, plur. nom. *treopu, tripu, treôp, treô.*
preâ, f. m. n. throe, indeclinable, plur. dat. *preâum, preâm.*

101. PROPER NAMES.

(1.) PERSONS.—*Names of women in* -u *or a consonant are strong, those in* -e *or* -a *are weak. Declension II., ô-stem:* Begu, Freâparu; *i-stem:* Beadohild, Hygd, *and most others. Declension IV.:* Elene, Eve, Ada, Maria, *etc., from foreign names;* Dealhþeô(p), *dat.* Dealhþeôn (§ 99).

Names of men in -u, -e, *or a consonant are strong, those in* -a *are weak. Declension III., u-stem:* Leôfsunu? *Declension I., a-stem:* Ælfrêd, Beôpulf, Eâdmund, Sigemund (*gen. also* Sigemunde<mund, *f. Rask*)? Dêland, *and most other strong names; syncopated:* Ecgþeô(p), *gen.* Ecgþeôpes, Ecgþeôes, *etc.;* Ongenþeô(p); Grendel, *gen.* Grendeles, Grendles, *etc.;* Hrêđel; *ia-stem:* Ine, Hedde, Gîslhere, Dulfhere, Eâdpine, Godpine, *and others from* -here *and* -pine; *umlaut not found:* Hereman, *dat.* Heremanne. *Declension IV.:* Ætla, Becca, *and many others.*

(*a.*) *Foreign names sometimes retain foreign declension, or are undeclined, but are generally declined as above; those in* -as, -es, -us *do not often increase in the genitive. Those from Latin* -us, *Greek* -oς, *of the second declension, sometimes drop their endings and take those of the Anglo-Saxon first:* Crist (<Christus), Cristes, Criste, *etc. In less familiar words* -us *oftenest stands in the nom. and gen., but sometimes the Latin and Anglo-Saxon forms mix throughout:* Petrus, *gen.* Petrus, Petres, Petri, *dat.* Petro, Petre, *acc.* Petrus, Petrum; *so* -as *and* -es: Andreâs, *gen.* Andreâs, *dat.* Andreâ, *acc.* Andreâs, Andream; Hêrôdês, Hêrôdes, Hêrôde, Hêrôd-em, -ês, *or* -e.

(*b.*) *In Gothic these Latin and Greek names of the second declension are regularly given in the u-declension:* Paitrus, *gen.* Paitraus, *dat.* Paitrau, *acc.* Paitru (§ 93, *a*). *The Anglo-Saxon genitive* Petrus *may be a relic of the u-declension.*

(2.) PEOPLES.—*Plurals in* -âs *and* -e *are strong, in* -an *weak. Declension I., a-stem:* Brittâs, Scottâs, *etc.; ia-stem and i-stem:* Dene, *gen.* Den-â, -iâ, -igâ, -geâ (§ 85, *a*); Românê, *etc. Declension IV.:* Gotan, Seaxan, *etc.*

The singular is oftenest an adjective in -isc *regularly declined:* Egyptisc man, *Egyptian man;* Egyptisc ides, *Egyptian woman;* þâ Egyptiscan, *the Egyptians, etc. Sometimes* ân Brit, *a Briton.*

Often is found a collective with a genitive, or with an adjective, or compounded: Seaxnâ þeôd; Filistêâ folc; Caldêâ cyn; Ebrêâ perâs; Sodomisc cyn; Rôm-pare (§ 86); Nord-men (§ 84, 3), *etc. Foreign names are treated as are names of persons.*

(3.) COUNTRIES.—*A few feminine names are found:* Engel, *England;* Bryten, *Britannia. Oftenest is found the people's*

name in the genitive with land, rîce, êðel, *etc., or in an oblique case with a preposition:* Englâ land; Sodomâ rîce; on Eâst-Englum; of Seaxum; on Egyptum. *Foreign names are treated as are names of persons.*

(4.) CITIES.—*Names found alone are regularly declined according to gender and endings:* Rôm, *f.* Rôme; Babylon, *n.* Babylones; Sodoma, *m.* Sodoman. *Oftenest they are prefixed undeclined to* burg, ceaster, pîc, dûn, hâm, *etc.:* Lunden-pîc, Rôma-burg, *etc.; or the folk's name in the genitive followed by* burg, ceaster, *etc., is used:* Caldêâ burg. *Foreign names treated as names of persons.*

102. WEATHERING OF CASE-ENDINGS.

(1.) ANGLO-SAXON:

	STRONG.								WEAK.		
	MASCULINE. DECL. I. Head-cases in a consonant.			NEUTER. DECL. I. Head-cases in a consonant.		FEM. DECL. II. Head-cases in a vowel.		MASC. DECL. III, Head-cases in a vowel.	MASC. FEM. NEUT. DECL. IV. Head-cases in -an.		
Stem.....	a	ia	i	a	ia	â	i	u	an	an	an
SINGULAR.—											
N. & *V.*.....	–	e	e	–	e	u	–	u	a	e	e
Gen......	es	es	es	es	es	e	e	â	an	an	an
Dat......	e	e	e	e	e	e	e	â	an	an	an
Acc......	–	e	e	–	e	u, e	e, –	u	an	an	e
Inst......	â	â	â	â	â	e	e	â	an	an	an
PLURAL.—											
N., *A.*, & *V.*	âs	âs	e, âs	u, –	u	â, e	e, â	u, o, â	an		
Gen......	â	â	â	â	â	â, enâ		â, enâ	enâ		
D. & *Inst.*..	um	um	um	um	um	um		um	um		
(2.) LAYAMON:											
SINGULAR.—											
N., *A.*, & *V.*	–	e, en		–	e	e, –, en		e	e, en		
Gen......	es	es		es	es	e, –, en, es		e, es	en, e, es		
D. & *Inst.*..	e, en	e, en		e, en	e, en	e, –, en		e	en, e		
PLURAL.—											
N., *A.*, & *V.*	es, en, e			e, –, es, en		e, en, es		e, en, es	en, e, es		
Gen......	e, ene, en, es			e, en, es		e, en, ene, es		en, es	en, ene, enen		
D. & *Inst.*...	en, e, es			en, e, es		en, es		en, es	en, e		

Here is precession of all the vowels to *e* (§ 38) (*a* is found here and there); (2), shifting of *m* to *n* (§ 41, *b*); (3), a conflict everywhere between *s* and *n*, the weak and strong form. In the earlier manuscript *n* most abounds, in the later *s*. Norman influence, § 95, *e*.

(3.) ORMULUM.—*Singular, N., A., V., D., I. alike; Genitive* -ess. *Plural, all cases alike in* -ess. Singular dative *-e* is found with prepositions in a few phrases, and Plural genitive *-e* (Northern dialect).

(4.) CHAUCER *instead of* -ess *has* -es *or* -s: king, kinges; lover, lovers. The last form brings us to Modern English. Irregular forms having umlaut (§ 100, *g*), or plural *-en* (§ 95, *e*), or indeclinable from *r*-stems or neuters plural (§ 100, *f*), are found in Chaucer, and a few still survive.

IV. ADJECTIVES.

INDEFINITE AND DEFINITE DECLENSIONS.

103. An adjective in Anglo-Saxon has one set of strong and one of weak endings for each gender. The latter are used when the adjective is preceded by the definite article or some word like it. Hence there are two declensions, the indefinite and the definite.

104.—I. *The Indefinite Declension.*

Case-endings < stem **a**, **â**, or **i** + relational suffixes.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Stem...	blinda, *blind.*	blindâ, blindi, *blind.*	blinda, *blind.*
Theme.	blind.	blind.	blind.
Singular.—			
Nom.....	blind	blind(*u*)	blind
Gen......	blind*es*	blind*re*	blind*es*
Dat......	blind*um*	blind*re*	blind*um*
Acc......	blind*ne*	blind*e*	blind
Voc......	blind	blind(*u*)	blind
Inst......	blind*ê*	blind*re*	blind*ê*
Plural.—			
Nom.....	blind*e.*	blind*e*	blind*u*
Gen......	blind*râ*	blind*râ*	blind*râ*
Dat......	blind*um*	blind*um*	blind*um*
Acc......	blind*e*	blind*e*	blind*u*
Voc......	blind*e*	blind*e*	blind*u*
Inst......	blind*um*	blind*um*	blind*um*

(*a.*) In other Indo-European languages the adjective is declined like the substantive; in the Teutonic it follows the pronominal declension. This has been explained by supposing a composition in the Teutonic between the adjective stem and a pronoun (in Sanskrit *jas, jâ, jad*, a relative) which it is suggested must have been in the Teutonic Parent Speech *jis, ja, jata; jis, jizôs, jis; jamma, jizai, jamma; jana, ja, jata; jê, jizai, jê;* plural, *jai, jôs, ja; jizê, jizô, jizê; jaim; jans, jôs, ja*, and have had a demonstrative sense. Whether there has been a composition with a particular pronoun, or a conformation to the pronominal declension, must, in the absence of decisive phonetic demonstration, be decided from the meaning; and the fact that this is the indefinite form, and is not used where the sense calls for a demonstrative, weighs heavily against composition with a demonstrative.

(*b.*) We give the demonstrative pronoun from which comes the definite article:

Stem,	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	A.-Sax.	O. H. Ger.
Masculine . . .	sa, ta	τό, ὁ, ὅ	to (is-to)	sa, þa, þi	sa, þa	dë, di
Feminine . . .	sa, ta	ἁ, τα	ta	sa, þa, þi	sa, þa	di, dë
Neuter	ta	τό, ὅ	to	þa, þi	þa	da, dë
SINGULAR.—						
Nominative,						
Masculine . . .	sa	ὁ, ὅ-ς	te (iste)	sa	se	dë-r
Feminine . . .	sâ	ἡ	ta	sô	seô	di-u
Neuter	ta-t	τό, ὅ	tu-d	þa-t-a	þæ-t	da-z
Genitive,						
Masc. & Neut.	ta'-sja	το-ῖο, τοῦ	tîus	þi-s	þæ-s	dë-s
Feminine . . .	ta'-sj-âs	τῆ-ς	tîus	þi-zôs	þǣ-re	dë-ra
Dative,						
Masc. & Neut.	ta'-smâi	τῳ̃	tî	þa-mma	þa-m	dë-mu
Feminine . . .	ta'-sj-âi	τῇ	tî	þi-zai	þǣ-re	dë-ru
Accusative,						
Masculine . . .	ta-m	τό-ν	tu-m	þa-n-a	þo-ne	dë-n
Feminine . . .	tâ-m	τή-ν	ta-m	þô	þâ	di-a
Neuter	ta-t	τό, ὅ	tu-d	þa-t-a	þæ-t	da-z
Instrumental,						
Masc. & Neut.	tê'n-a	(*Dat.*)	(*Ablat.*)	þê	þê, þŷ	du, di-u
Feminine . . .	ta'-j-â	(*Dat.*)	(*Ablat.*)	(*Dat.*)	(*Dat.*)	(*Dat.*)
PLURAL.—						
Nominative,						
Masculine . . .	tê	τοί, οἱ	tî	þai	þâ	di-ê
Feminine . . .	tâ-s	ταί, αἱ	tæ	þôs	þâ	di-ô
Neuter	tê	τά	ta	þô	þâ	di-u
Genitive,						
Masc. & Neut.	tê'-s'âm	τῶν	tô-rûm	þi-zê	þâ-râ	dë-rô
Feminine . . .	tâ'-sâm	τά-ων, τῶν	tâ-rum	þi-zô	þâ-râ	dë-rô
Dative,						
Masc. & Neut.	tê'-bhjas	(*Locat.*)	tîs	þai-m	þâ-m	di-êm, dêm
Feminine . . .	tâ'-bhjas	(*Locat.*)	tîs	þai-m	þâ-m	di-êm, dêm

(*c.*) PECULIAR FORMS.—*Nominative singular* neuter *t*, a radicle, having the same relation to *ta* which masculine *s* has to *sa* (§ 63, *a*). *Genitive* feminine singular *-re*<*sjâs*: *r*<*s* (§ 41, 3, *b*); *e*<*jâs* (§ 70, *b*): the inserted *sj*<*smi*<*sma*<*sa-ma*, this-here. *Dative m*<*mma*<*smâi* shows ecthlipsis of *s*, gemination, apocope (§ 38, *B*; § 44): the inserted *sm*<*sma*, as before. Dative *-re*<*sjâi*; *r*<*s*, etc., as in Genitive. *Accusative -ne* <*na*, precession; *n*<*m* (§ 41, 3); *a*, euphonic epithesis, which prevailed as a law in Gothic. *Plural nominative þâ*, Gothic *þê*<*tai*<*ta-i-sas* (emphatic *i* inserted); compare Greek and Latin nouns in § 70. *Genitive þâ-râ* has *r*<*s* (§ 41, 3, *b*), and *-â* (Gothic *ê*, *ô*) as in nouns. The Old Sax. endings are like the O. H. Ger., the Norse like the adjective (§ 107).

(*d.*) As compared with the article, the Anglo-Saxon adjective has apocope of neuter *-t*; has feminine singular *-u*, neuter plural *-u*, plural *-e*, like strong nouns; euphonic epenthesis of *u* in dative *-um*. §§ 44, 40, 50.

105.—II. *The Definite Declension.*

Case-endings < stem **an** + relational suffixes.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Stem..	blindan, *blind.*	blindan,	blindan,
Theme	blind.	blind.	blind.
Singular.—			
Nom....	se blind*a.*	seô blind*e.*	þæt blind*e.*
Gen.....	þæs blind*an.*	þâre blind*an.*	þæs blind*an.*
Dat.....	þam blind*an.*	þâre blind*an.*	þam blind*an.*
Acc.....	þone blind*an.*	þâ blind*an.*	þæt blind*e.*
Voc.....	se blind*a.*	seô blind*e.*	þæt blind*e.*
Inst.....	þŷ blind*an.*	þâre blind*an.*	þŷ blind*an.*
Plural.—			
Nom....		þâ blind*an.*	
Gen.....		þârâ blind*end.*	
Dat.....		þâm blind*um.*	
Acc.....		þâ blind*an.*	
Voc.....		þâ blind*an.*	
Inst.....		þâm blind*um.*	

106.—*Theme ending Short* (*Root Shifting*).

Stem..	glada, *glad.*	gladâ, gladi.	glada.
Theme	glad > glæd.	glad > glæd.	glad > glæd.
Singular.—			
Nom....	glæd.	glad*u.*	glæd.
Gen.....	glad*es.*	glædr*e.*	glad*es.*
Dat.....	glad*um.*	glædr*e.*	glad*um.*
Acc.....	glædn*e.*	glad*e.*	glæd.
Voc.....	glæd.	glad*u.*	glæd.
Inst.....	glad*e.*	glædr*e.*	glad*e.*
Plural.—			
Nom....	glad*e.*	glad*e.*	glad*u.*
Gen.....	glædr*d.*	glædr*d.*	glædr*d.*
Dat.....	glad*um.*	glad*um.*	glad*um.*
Acc.....	glad*e.*	glad*e.*	glad*u.*
Voc.....	glad*e.*	glad*e.*	glad*u.*
Inst.....	glad*um.*	glad*um.*	glad*um.*

In the Definite Declension it has $\sqrt{glad}$ throughout, and agrees wholly with *blind.*

107.—STRONG:

SINGULAR.—	MASCULINE.			FEMININE.			NEUTER.		
	Gothic.	O. Sax.	O. Norse.	Goth.	O. Sax.	O. Norse.	Goth.	O. Sax.	O. Norse.
Nom...	blind-*s*,	—,	*-r*;	*-a*,	—,	—;	(*-ata*),	—,	*-t*.
Gen....	blind-*is*,	*-as*,	*-s*;	*-aizôs*,	*-aro*,	*-rar*;	*-is*,	*-as*,	*-s*.
Dat....	blind-*amma*,	*-umu*,	*-um*;	*-ai*,	*-aro*,	*-ri*;	*-amma*,	*-umu*,	*-u*.
Acc....	blind-*ana*,	*-an*(*a*),	*-an*;	*-a*,	*-a*,	*-a*;	(*-ata*),	—,	*-t*.
Inst. ..	blind-(*Dat.*)	*-û*,	(*Dat.*);	(*Dat.*)	(*Dat.*)	(*Dat.*);	(*Dat.*)	*-û*,	*-u*.
PLURAL.—									
Nom...	blind-*ai*,	*-a*(*-e*),	*-ir*;	*-ôs*,	*-a*(*-e*),	*-ar*;	*-a*,	(*-u*),	—.
Gen. ..	blind-*aizê*,	*-arô*,	*-râ*;	*-aizô*,	*-arô*,	*-râ*;	*-aizê*,	*-ârô*,	*-râ*.
D. & I.	blind-*aim*,	*-un*,	*-um*;	*-aim*,	*-un*,	*-um*;	*-aim*,	*-un*,	*-um*.
Acc....	blind-*ans*,	*-a*(*-e*),	*-a*;	*-ôs*,	*-a*(*-e*),	*-ar*;	*-a*,	(*-u*),	—.

WEAK:

SINGULAR.—									
Nom...	blind-*a*,	*-o*(*-a*),	*-i*;	*-ô*,	*-a*,	*-a*;	*-ô*,	*-a*,	*-a*.
Gen....	blind-*ins*,	*-un*,	*-a*;	*-ôns*,	*-un*,	*-u*;	*-ins*,	*-un*,	*-a*.
Dat....	blind-*in*,	*-un*,	*-a*;	*-ôn*,	*-un*,	*-u*;	*-in*,	*-un*,	*-a*.
Acc....	blind-*an*,	*-un*,	*-a*;	*-ôn*,	*-un*,	*-u*;	*-ô*,	*-a*,	*-a*.
Inst....	blind-(*Dat.*)	(*Dat.*)	(*Dat.*);	(*Dat.*)	(*Dat.*)	(*Dat.*);	(*Dat.*)	(*Dat.*)	(*Dat.*)
PLURAL.—									
Nom...	blind-*ans*,	*-un*,	*-u*;	*-ôns*,	*-un*,	*-u*;	*-ôna*,	*-un*,	*-u*.
Gen....	blind-*anê*,	*-ônô*,	*-u*;	*-ônô*,	*-ônô*,	*-u*;	*-anê*,	*-ônô*,	*-u*.
D. & I.	blind-*am*,	*-un*,	*-u*;	*-ôm*,	*-un*,	*-u*;	*-am*,	*-un*,	*-u*.
Acc....	blind-*ans*.	*-un*,	*-u*;	*-ôns*,	*-un*,	*-u*;	*-ôna*,	*-un*,	*-u*.

In Old High German the adjective has the same strong endings as the definite article (§ 104, *b*). The weak form has Masculine plinto, *-in*, *-in*, *-un*; plur. *-un*, *-ônô*, *-ôm*, *-un*: Feminine plinta, *-ûn*, *-ún*, *-ûn*; plur. *-ûn*, *-ônô*, *-ôm*, *-ûn*: Neuter plinta, *-in*, *-in*, *-a*; pl. *-ûn*, *-ônô*, *-ôm*, *-ún*. O. Fries. has strong endings like A.-Sax., but dat. *-a*(*-e*); weak forms like its noun. § 95.

(*a*.) The Indo-European languages generally have no separate forms for the definite adjective; but the Slavonic and Lithuanic have. In them it springs from composition between the adjective and demonstrative *ja* (§ 104, *a*):

Slavonic *dobryj* (good), *dobraja*, *dobroje*,
from *dobras*+*jas*, *dobrâ*+*jâ*, *dobrat*+*jat*;
Ang.-Sax. *góda*+*se*, *góde*+*seô*, *góde*+*þæt*.

Grimm suggests that the Teutonic adjective is compounded in a similar way with the demonstrative *jâin* (that), English *yon*. Heyse suggests a composition with *ân*, one. The Teutonic weak declensions form one whole with those of the *an*-stems in other Indo-European tongues: as to form, all are a growth from one stem. This stem is a secondary formation by means of the pronominal affix *-an*. The force of this affix may be illustrated by comparing it with the pronouns *jâin*, *ân*; many nouns with it are rendered in English by an adjective + *one*: *pædla*, poor one; *præcca*, wretched one; *pana*, defective one, etc.; but to call the adjective a compound with either is likely to mislead. Compare the explanation of affixes in §§ 56, 63.

As to the logical and historical value of the weak declension, see § 95, *c*. It may give a profound insight into the Teutonic mind to notice here that its fundamental classification of objects is into those made definite to thought and those not so.

108. The weak form is used when the adjective is preceded by the definite article, or by a demonstrative or possessive pronoun, or personal pronoun in the genitive, always with comparatives, often with vocatives, instrumentals, and genitives, § 362.

(*a*.) For masculine present participles, see § 119.

109. Like *blind* decline adjectives ending in a long syllable, participles present, weak participles past, superlatives, and adjective pronouns: *fæst*, fast; *gôd*, good; *hât*, hot; *heard*, hard; *hæbbende*, having (§ 119); *gehâlgôd*, hallowed; *hâtôst*, hotest; *mîn*, mine. See § 110, *a*.

110. With the endings of *glæd* decline adjectives with a final short syllable and strong participles past: *eadig*, blessed; *hæđen*, heathen; *fæger*, fair; *brocen*, broken.

(*a*.) The *-u* of the feminine singular oftenest, and of the neuter plural often, suffers precession to *-o* > *-e* > —, especially in derivatives. It drops pretty regularly after a long syllable (§ 109; 91, *b*). A few once *u*-stems hold it: *heard*, *heardu* > *hearde* (Gothic *hardus*), hard.

111. (*Shifting*, §§ 73, 41).—Like *glæd* decline short monosyllables with root *a* > *æ*: *bær*, bare; *blæc*, black; *hræđ*, ready; *hpæt*, whetted; *læt*, late; *smæl*, small; *spær*, spare; *pær*, wary.

(*a*.) The shifting is stopped by a following vowel, even by *e* which is from *a*, and *ê* < *â*. The nouns (*dæges*) have shifted further; the adjective has throughout held stronger than the noun by the old forms.

112. (*Gemination*, § 78).—Rule 10, § 20, for simplification of gemination applies: *grim*, *grimmes*, *grimre*, *grimmum*, *grimne*, etc., grim.

113. (*Syncope*, §§ 46, 79).—Polysyllables in *-ig*, *-ol* (*ul*, *el*), *-en*, *-or* (*er*), and others liable to syncope, may drop the last vowel of the theme when the ending begins with a vowel: *fæger*, fair, *fægru*, but *fægerne*; *hâlig*, holy, *hâliges* > *hâlges*, *hâligan* > *hâlgan*, etc.

114. (*Stems in* **-ia**, § 83).—Some adjectives once in *-ia* have *e* < *ia* in the cases usually without endings: *blîđe*, blithe; gen. *blîdes*, *blîđre*, *blîdes*, etc.; rarely before the endings: *êce*, eternal, *êceum*, *êcum*. So decline adjectives in *-e* and present participles (§ 119).

(*a*.) Some show *i*-umlaut when compared with other words: *grêne* (O. H. German *gruoni*), green; *sêfte* (*sôft*), soft; *strenge* (*strang*), strong. § 32, 2.

(*b*.) Some show compensative gemination: *midde* < *mid* (Gothic *midis*, *midjia*), middle. § 37, 2.

115. (*Themes in* -**î**).—Such may have dissimilation into *ig* before the case-endings: *fri*, free, gen. *friges*, *frigre*, etc. The *g* is the parting of the organs after taking the *i*-position. § 85, *a*.

116. (*Themes in* -**eô**).—Such may drop the vowel of case-endings: *freô*, free, gen. *freôs*, *freôre*, *freôs*, etc. § 80.

117. (*Themes in* -*p* > -**u** > -**o**, § 81; 91, B).—Such may drop *p* final after a vowel: *blæ̂*, blue, gen. *blæ̂pes*. After a consonant *p* final shifts to *u* > *o*; and before a vowel may suffer quasi-gemination to *up*: *fealu*, fallow, *fealupe*, etc. (§ 27, 5). This *u* may suffer precession to *o* > *e*: *fealope*, *fealepe*, etc. § 38.

118. *Themes in* -**h**, § 80).—Such may drop *h* final or before a close ending, and before a vowel change it to *g*, or drop it and contract: *heâh*, *heâ* (Gothic *háuhs*, O. H. German *hôh*), high.

Singular.—				Plural.—			
Nom.	heâ(h)	heâ(h)	heâ(h)	*Nom.*	heâ(ge)	heâ(ge)	heâ(gu)
Gen.	heâ(ge)s	heâre	heâ(ge)s	*Gen.*	heârâ	heârâ	heârâ
Dat.	heâ(g)um	heâre	heâ(g)um	*Dat.*	heâ(g)um	heâ(g)um	heâ(g)um
Acc.	heâne	heâ(ge)	heâ(h)	*Acc.*	heâ(ge)	heâ(ge)	heâ(gu)
Voc.	heâ(h)	heâ(h)	heâ(h)	*Voc.*	heâg(e)	heâ(ge)	heâ(gu)
Inst.	heâ(gê)	heâre	heâ(gê)	*Inst.*	heâ(g)um	heâ(g)um	heâ(g)um

The spelling of such words is irregular in the manuscripts. Sing. nom. *hêh*, accusative *heâhne*, *heânne*, plur. dat. *heâhum*, are found.

119. Participles.

The participles have both declensions. §§ 103, 109, 110.

(*a*.) Present participles in the strong forms without endings have -*e* like *ia*-stems (§ 114): *gifende*, giving.

(*b*.) Masculine present participles used substantively may take strong forms after the definite article: *pâ lidende* or *lidend*, those sailing; *pârâ ymb-sittendrâ*, of those dwelling around. (§ 100, *f*.)

(*c*.) The strong singular accusative of the participles is often (wrongly) spelt without -*n*: *gecorene*<*gecoren-ne*, chosen; *scridend-(n)e*, coming.

120. The declined infinitive (gerund) is often found in the dative: *tô faranne*, to fare.

121. Northumbrian Adjective Declension.

The strong declension is like Common Anglo-Saxon. The instrumental in -*ê* is very rare—the dative takes its place. The plural nominative is often in -*o*, perhaps an older form than -*e*: compare Old Saxon -*a* and precession, § 38; perhaps merely an irregular conformation with weak forms. The weak declension drops -*n*, and is otherwise like that of the weak substantive (p. 51).

122. Comparison.

Comparison is a variation to denote degrees of quantity or quality. It belongs to adjectives and adverbs.

(*a.*) In Anglo-Saxon it is a variation of stem, and is a matter rather of derivation than inflection; but the common mode of treatment is convenient.

(*b.*) The suffixes of comparison were once less definite in meaning than now, and were used to form many numerals, pronouns, adverbs > prepositions, and substantives, in which compared correlative terms are implied: *either, other, over, under, first*, etc.

(*c.*) Anglo-Saxon adverbs are in brackets: (*spiđe*).

123. Adjectives are regularly compared by suffixing to the theme of the positive *-ir* > *-er* or *-ôr* for the theme of the comparative, and *-ist* > *-est* or *-ôst* for the theme of the superlative.

The *Comparative* has always weak endings and syncopated stem.

The *Superlative* has both weak and strong endings.

Adverbs are compared like adjectives: the positive uses the ending *-e*, the comparative and superlative have none; *-ir* drops.

Strong,	spîđ, *strenuous;*	spîđra;	spîđôst.
Weak,	se spîđa;	se spîđra;	se spîđôsta.
Adverb,	(spîđe);	(spîđôr);	(spîđôst).

(*a.*) These suffixes in the Parent Speech were comparative *-jans*, superlative *-jans-ta* > *ista*, combinations of emphatic dental radicles (§ 56; 126, *a*):

	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	O. Saxon.	O. Norse.
Theme	mah, *great.*	μεγ > μεῖ, *great.*	mag > mâ, *great.*	mak > mâ, *great.*	mik > mê, *great.*	mik > mei, *great.*
Compar.	máh-î-jas	μεῖ-ζον (-jon)	mâ-jor, -jus	má-iz-a	mê-r-o	mei-r-i
Superl.	máh-is'ṭha	μέγ-ιστο-ν	(see § 126, *b*)	má-ist-s	mê-st	mei-st-r

The O. H. German has *mê-ro, mê-ist-er*, Anglo-Saxon *mâ-r-a, mæ-st.*

(*b.*) In Anglo-Saxon *ir* < *jans*, the *i* < *j*, *r* < *s* are shifting (§ 41, 2, *b*); dropping of *an*, apocope from gravitation (§§ 44, 38). *ô* in *-ôr* and *-ôst* is compensative progression from *an* (§§ 37, 38); the same form is in Gothic, Old Saxon, Old H. German. Old Norse has *a* for *ô*. A further precession took place in *-ir, -ôr, -ist, -ôst*, of *i* > *e* > —, and of *ô* > *â* > *a* > *u* > *e* > — (§ 38). In Gothic, *s* has not shifted; so *pyrsa*, worse (§ 129).

(*c.*) The superlative *-ta* is suffixed to the theme of the positive in numerals: Sanskrit *s'as'-ṭhá*, sixth; Greek πρῶ-ro, first; Latin *quar-to*, fourth; Gothic *ahtu-da-n*, eighth; Anglo-Saxon *þrid-da*, third. § 139.

124. (*Umlaut*, § 32, 2).—The affixes *-ir* > *-er* and *-ist* > *-est*

may work i-umlaut, changing

	a,	â,	ea,	eâ,	co > o,	ô,	u,	û,
to	e,	æ̂,	y > e,	ŷ,	y,	ê,	y,	ŷ:

lang, long; *lengra* (*leng*); *lengest.*
strang, *strenge* (§ 114, *a*), strong; *strengra*; *strengest.*
eald, *ald* (§ 33), old; *yldra*, *eldra*; *yldest*, *eldest.*
heâh, *heâ*, *hēh*, high (§§ 118, 25); *hŷrra*, *hŷhra*, *hêrra*, *heâhra*; *hŷhst*, *hēhst*, *heâhst*, *heâhest*, *heâgôst*, and as *neâh.*
neâh, *nēh*, nigh (§§ 118, 25); *nŷra* (*nŷr*), *nêra* (*neâr*), *neârra* (*niôr*); *nŷst* (*ŷ* > *î* > *iê*), *nēhst*, *neâhst*, and as *heâh.*
feor, (*feor*), (*fyr*), far; *fyrra*; *fyrrest.*
geong, young; *gyngra* (*y* > *i*); *gyngest* (*y* > *i*).
sceort, short; *scyrtra*; *scyrtest.*
(*sôfte*) *sēfte*, soft (114, *a*); *sēftra* (*sēft*); *sēftest.* [125, 129.
eâde (*ŷ*, *ê*), easy; *ŷdra* (*eâ*), (*ŷd*(*eâ*, *ê*)); *ŷdest*, *eâdôst.* See §§

125. (*Shifting*, § 110).—Root *a* > *æ* of short monosyllables shifts to *æ* unless the next syllable begins with a vowel; such words may also have forms with i-umlaut (§ 124):

glæd, glad; *glædra*, *gledra*; *gladôst.*
hræd, ready; *hrædra*, *hredra*; *hradôst.*
hpæt, whetted, keen; *hpætra*; *hpatôst.*
pær, wary; *pærra*; *parôst.*

126. Relics are found of forms from Parent Speech Comparative *-ra*, *-ta-ra*, Superlative *-ma*, *-ta-ma.* Of the comparative, only pronouns, adverbs > prepositions, and the like: *ô-der*, other; *hpæ-der*, whether; *æ-r*, ere; *æf-ter*, after; *hi-der*, hither; *of-er*, over; *un-der*, under. Of the superlative: *for-ma*, first; *hindema*, hindmost; *inn-ema*, inmost; *læt-ema*, latest; *med-ema*, midmost; *nid-ema*, nethermost; *sîd-ema*, latest; *ût-ema*, utmost; and others with double comparison. §§ 127, 129.

(*a.*) Parent Speech *-tara.* Forms on *an*, that, and *ka*, what, English *other*, *whether:*

Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	O. Saxon.	Anglo-Saxon.	O. Norse.
an-tará	ἕ-τερο(ς)	al-teru(s)	an-þar(a-)	â-dar	ô-der	ann-ar
ka-tará	πό-τερο(ς)	u-teru(s)	hva-þar(a-)	hue-der	hpæ-der	hvâ-rr

The O. H. German has *andera*, other; *hwedar*, whether. This is a common form for the adjective in Sanskrit, the most common in Greek; in Latin and Teutonic only as in Anglo-Saxon. Latin, *in-ter*, between; *dex-ter*, right; *sinis-ter*, left. § 122, *b.*

(*b.*) Parent Speech *-ma, -ta-ma.* Forms on *pra*, fore; *sep*, seven; *hin*, hind:

Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	O. Saxon.	Ang.-Sax.	O. Nor.
pra-tha-má	πρό-μο(ς)	pri-mu(s)	fru-ma	for-mo	fru-ma / for-ma	frum-
sap-ta-má	ἑβ-δο-μο(ς)	sep-tu-mu(s)	hin-du-ma	——	hin-de-ma	——

The O. H. German has *frumi*, first. This is a common form in Sanskrit; in Latin, suffixed to Comparative *jans* > *is* (§ 123, *a*), it makes the regular *-issimo* < *is-timo* by assimilation (§ 35). After *l* and *r* it is suffixed to the theme and assimilated: *facil-limo*, easiest; *pulcher-rimo*, handsomest. In the other languages it is found only as in Anglo-Saxon. For numerals, see § 140.

127. DOUBLE COMPARISON is found chiefly with relics in *-ðer, -er*, and *-m* (§ 126): *êr-r, êr-r-er, -ôr, êr-r-est; æf-ter, æfter-ra* > *æftera, æf-ter-mest* (Rask), *æf-tem-est; læs*, less, *læs-sa, læs-ðst, -est; for-ma, fyr-m-est*, and see § 129.

(*a.*) Accumulation of signs of comparison is a striking fact through all the languages. (1.) Repetition of the suffix for emphasis: *-raroς* < *ra-ra*, regular Greek superlative; Irish *ma-ma;* O. H. German *bezeroro*, more better (Shakespeare); *êrerera*, more sooner, etc.; Parent Speech *ta-ma* (§ 126, *b*). (2.) New suffix after Relics (§ 126): Gothic *af-tu-m-is-ta;* Anglo-Saxon *æf-te-m-es-t;* aftermost = *af*+*ta*+*ra*+*ma*+*jans*+*ta*, a heaping of radicles which illustrates their force as signs of comparison (§ 123, *a*). Emphatic double comparison abounds in early English: Shakespeare has *more braver, more fairer, most best, most boldest, most unkindest*, etc.

(*b.*) The English superlative ending *-most* in *aftermost*, and the like, is simulation of a connection with *most.* § 42, 2.

128. HETEROCLITIC forms abound from themes in *-ir* and *-ôr, -ist, -ôst: sêl*, good; *-ra, -la, (sêl)*;—*est, -ôst; rîce*, rich; *rîcest, rîcôst; glæd*, glad; *glædra, gledra*, etc. (§ 125). Some have themes with and without double comparison: *læt*, late; *lætra; latôst, latemest; sîð*, late; *sîðra (sîð, sidôr)*; *sîð-ðst, -est, -mest.*

129. DEFECTIVE are the following. Words in capitals are not found.

(1.) *Mixed Roots:*

	POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
good,	gôd / BAT (pel)	betera, betra, § 124 / bættra, § 125 (bet)	betst, betôst, -âst (betst)
bad,	yfel / peor / sâm- (yfele)	pyrsa, (pyrs), § 123, *b* / sæmra, § 124	pyrst, pyrresta, (pyrst), (pyrrest) / sæmest

	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
great, much,	micel, fela, mâ (micle), (fela)	mâra, (mâ)	mæst, § 124; 123, *a*
little,	lytel, læs (Goth. *lasivs*)	(lyt), læssa (læs), § 35, *B*	læs-âst, -est, -t

(2.) *From Adverbs of time and place* (compare §§ 126, 127):

ever, ere, erst,	â-, æ-	(ær) > ærra, (ær-ôr, -ur)	ær-est
after-ward,	af-, æf- = of, æfterpeard	(æf-ter) > æftera	æf-tem-est, æfter-mest, § 127
else,	(elles)	(ellôr), elra	———
fore,	forepeard, (fore)	fyrra	for-ma > (fyrmest), fyrst, fruma, § 51
far,	feor, (fyr)	fyrre, (fyr)	fyrrest (eo > y)
forth,	forđpeard, (forđ)	(furđ-ôr, -ur)	(furđ-um), forđ-m-est
behind,	hinde(r)peard, (hindan)	(hinder)	hinduma, hinde-ma, § 126, *b*
inner,	innepeard, (in)	innera	inne-ma, (-m-est)
mid,	middepeard, (mid)	———	med-ema (-uma?), mid-m-est
north,	norđepeard, (norđ)	(norđ-ôr)	norđ-m-est
nether,	niđepeard, (niđe)	niđ-ra, (niđ-ôr, -er (i > eo)	niđema, § 126; niđe-m-est (i > eo)
upper,	ûfepeard, (up)	ufera, (ufôr)	yf(e)-m-est, § 124
outer,	ûtepeard, (ût)	ûtra, (uttôr, ûtôr)	ûtema, ûtmest, ŷt-(e-)m-est, § 124

So *sûđemest, eâstemest, pestemest*, south-, east-, west-most.

Decay of Endings.—(1), Declension: Layamon, strong, sing. masc. —, *-es, -en, -ne*; fem. —, *-re, -re, -e*; neut. —, *-es, -en*, —; plur. *-e, -re, -en, -e*; but *n, s, r* may drop. Weak, *-e, -en*, as in § 102.—Ormulum, strong, sing. —, plur. *-e*. Weak, *-e*.—Chaucer, monosyllables as in Orm., others undeclined.—Shakespeare, no declension.

(2), Comparison: Layamon, Ormulum, *-re, -est*.—Chaucer (= Modern English), *-er, -est*.

V. PRONOUNS (*Relational Names*, § 56).

130. Personal Pronouns (*Relational Substantives*).

Sing.—1. *I.*	2. *thou.*	3. *he,*	*she,*	*it.*
N. ic	þû	hê	heô	hit
G. mîn	þîn	his	hire	his
D. mê	þê	him	hire	him
A. mec, mê	þec, þê	hine	hîe, hî, heô	hit
V. ——	þû	——	——	——
I. mê	þê	him	hire	him
Plural.—				
N. pê	gê	hîe, hî, heô	hîe, hî, heô	heô, hîe, hî
G. ûser, ûre	eôper	heorâ, hyrâ	heorâ, hyrâ	heorâ, hyrâ
D. ûs	eôp	him	him	him
A. ûsic, ûs	eôpic, eôp	hîe, hî, heô	hîe, hî, heô	heô, hîe, hî
V. ——	gê	——	——	——
I. ûs	eôp	him	him	him
Dual.—				
N. pit	git			
G. uncer	incer			
D. unc	inc			
A. uncit, unc	incit, inc			
V. ——	git			
I. unc	inc			

	Sing. Nom.	Genitive.	Plur. Nom.
P. Sp. ..	i-s, i-ja, i-t	i-sja	aj-as
Latin ...	i-s, ea, i-d	ejus	ii, eæ, ea
Gothic..	i-s, si, i-ta	is, izôs, is	eis, ijôs, ija
O. Sax..	hi, siu, i-t	is, ira, is	siâ, siâ, siu
O. H. G.	i-r, siu, i-z	sîn, irâ, is	sîê, siô, siu
O. Norse	hann, hon, —	{hans, hen- nar, —}	——

(*a.*) Other Forms.—(1 and 2), *pyt*; *gyt*; *ungc*; *uncer* not found; *usser*, *ussic*. (3), i > y (bad spelling): *hys*, *hyt*, etc.; i > eo, i > ie (breaking, § 33): *heom*, plur. (sing. prose) *hierâ*, *hiene*; î > ŷ (bad spelling): *hŷ*; *hî* > *hig* (dissimilated gemination, § 85, *a*; 27, 5); io for eo; iô, eâ, for eô (orthographic): *hiorâ*, *hiô*, *heâ*. Nom. sing. fem. *hîe*, *hî*, inst. sing. masc. *heô* < *hŷ* in *heô-dæg* (Latin *hodie*), to-day; *hirâ* (not in Grein) > *heorâ*.

Northumbrian for final *c* has *h*, *ch*, sometimes *g*: *ih*, *ich*; *meh*, *mech*, *mehe*; *ûsih*, *ûsig*, etc.; for final *ê* thus: *gê*, *gee*, *giê*, etc.; *woe*=*uoe*=*pê*; *ûser* > *urer*; for *eôper* appear *iwer*, *iuere*, *iuerræ*, *iurra*(*e*); for *eôp* appear *iuh*, *iowh*, *iouh*, *iwh*, *iu*, *ou*; for *eôpic* appear *iuih*, *iuigh*, *iwih*. Third Person: for *heô*, *hîe* appear *hiâ*, *hiæ*, *hiu*; *hire* > *hir*; for *heorâ* appear *hearâ*, *hiorâ*, *hiarâ*.

(*b.*) The pronouns are clusters of radicles, some of which lure beyond the Indo-European family; the *c*(*k*) of *ic* and of Hebrew *ānōkî* have been claimed to be plainly from the same radicle; so the dental of *þû*, thou, and Hebrew *attâh*, the guttural of *hê* and Hebrew *hû'*, the nasal of *mê* and Hebrew *ānōkî*.

(*c.*) The mode of growth from the radicles in the Indo-European family may be studied in the following:

SING.—	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	O. Sax.	O. H. G.	O. Norse.
Nom...	ahám	ἐγώ	egô	ik	ic	ih (ihha)	ek
Gen....	má-ma (mê)	ἐμοῦ	(mei)	(meina)	(mîn)	mîn	mîn
Dat....	má-hjam (mê)	ἐμοί (*Loc.*)	mihî	mi-s	mî	mir	mer
Acc....	mâ-m, mâ	ἐμε	mê	mi-k	mic, mî	mih	mik
Voc. ...	——	——	——	——	——	——	——
Inst....	má-jâ	(*Loc.*)	{(*Ablat.*) mê-d, mê}	(*Dat.*)	(*Dat.*)	(*Dat.*)	(*Dat.*)
PLURAL.—							
Nom...	asmê', vajám	ἡμεῖς	nôs	veis	wî, wô	wir	ver
Gen....	(asmâ'kam) nas	ἡμῶν	nostrum (tri)	(unsara)	ûser	unsar	vâr (vôr)
Dat....	asmâ'-bhjam, nas	ἡμῖν	nô-bis	unsis, uns	ûs	uns	ôss
Acc....	asmâ'n, nas	ἡμᾶς	nôs	unsis, uns	ûs	unsih	ôss
DUAL.—							
Nom...	âvâ'm	νώ, νῶι	——	vi-t	wi-t	(wi-z)	vi-t
Gen....	âvá-jôs, nâu	——	——	ugkara	uncerô	unchar	okkar
D.& I.	âvâ'-bhjâm, nâu	νῶιν	——	ugkis	unc	(unch)	okkr
Acc....	âvâ'm, nâu	νώ, νῶι	——	ugkis	unc	(unch)	okkr

In SANSKRIT there are seemingly five themes: (1), *ma*, me; (2), *aha* < *ma* + *ga* (*-ga* > Sansk. *-ha*, *-gha* = Greek *-γε* (ἔγω-γε) = Gothic *-k*(*c*) is an emphatic enclitic). (3), PLURAL, *va* < *ma*, labial shifting, § 41, *b*; (4), *a-sma* < *ma* + *sma* = I + he = we. (5), DUAL, *â-va* < *ma* + *dva* = I + two = we two. *Nas*, *nâu*, from *masm*+, *mâv*+, in oblique cases.

ANGLO-SAXON *ic* < *maga* by aphæresis of *m* (§ 43), shifting of *a* > *i* and *g* > *c* (§ 41; apocope, § 44). *mîn* < *mîna*, a possessive adjective *-na*: *mê* < *mer* (compensation, § 37) < *mir* (*-r* dative sign, as in adjective, § 104, *c*): *mê* < *mec*, § 37 (*-c* same as in *ic*; *e* < *âm*, precession, § 41). PLURAL: *pê* < *per* (compensation, § 37) < *pis* (shifting, § 41); *-s* < *sma* (apocope, § 44): *ûser* < *uns-erâ*, *ûs* < *uns* (§ 37) < *muns* (§ 43) < *mans* (§ 41) < *masm* (metathesis and dental assimilation, §§ 51, 35); *-râ*, genitive ending, § 104, *c*. DUAL: *pit* < *pi* + *tpa*, we two; *uncer* is a variation of *unser*; *s* = *h* > *k*(*c*): Sanskrit *sma* = Prâkrit *hma*; *h* < *k* (shifting, § 41). In *uncit*, *-t* as in *pit*.

(*d.*) SING.—	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	O. Saxon.	O. H. G.	O. N.
Nom...	tva-m	τύ, σύ	tû	þu	thu	dû	þû
Gen....	táva (tê)	τεοῖο, σοῦ	(tui)	(þeina)	(thîn)	(dîn)	þîn
Dat....	tú-bhjam (tvê, tê)	σοί (*Loc.*)	tî-bî	þis	thî	dîr	þer
Acc....	tvâ-m, tvâ	τέ, σέ	tê	þik	thic, thî	dîh	þik
Voc. ...	(*Nominative.*)	(*Nom.*)	(*Nom.*)	(*Nom.*)	(*Nom.*)	(*Nom.*)	(*Nom.*)
Inst....	tvá-jâ	(*Loc.*)	*Abl.* tê-d, tê	(*Dat.*)	(*Dat.*)	(*Dat.*)	(*Dat.*)
PLURAL.—							
Nom...	jus'mê', jûjám	ὑμεῖς	vôs	jus	gî, gê	ier, ir	er, þer
Gen....	(jus'mâ'kam) vas	ὑμῶν	vôstrum (-tri)	izvara	iwar	iwar	yǣar
Dat....	jus'mâbhjam, vas	ὑμῖν	vô-bis	izvis	iu	iu	yǣr
Acc....	jus'mâ'n, vas	ὑμᾶς	vôs	izvis	iu	iwih	yǣr

DUAL.—	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	O. Saxon.	O. H. G.	O. N.
Nom....	juvâ'm	σφώ, σφῶι	———	(ju-t)	git	(jiz, iz)	it, þit
Gen....	juvá-jôs, vâm	———	———	igqara	(incerô)	(inchar)	ykkar
D. & I.	juvâ'-bhjâm, vâm	σφῶιν	———	igqis	inc	(inch)	ykkr
Acc....	juvâ'm, vâm	σφώ, σφῶι	———	igqis	inc	(inch)	ykkr

Radicle stem in PARENT SPEECH, *tu*<*tva;* plural, *tu*+*sma*=*thou* and *he;* dual, *tu*+*dva*=*thou*+*two*=you two. ANGLO-SAXON, *þû*<*tu* (shifting, § 41); *eôp*<*iup*<*iu* (quasi-gemination, § 117) =*ju*<*tu*, irregular softening of *t*. Compare assibilation, § 24. Other forms like those of *ic*.

(*e*.) Three stems show in the third person, *i*, *hi*, *sia*. The Anglo-Saxon alone has *hi* throughout. In English, *she* and *they*, *their*, *them* have come in from the demonstrative (§ 133) *hit*>it; *its* is a late formation. The third personal pronoun is a weak demonstrative. In the cases not given above, each language uses the endings of its demonstrative given on page 57.

131. REFLEXIVES are supplied by the personal pronouns with *self* (self), or without it. *Self* has strong adjective endings like *blind* (§ 103); in the nominative singular also weak *selfa*: *ic self*, *ic selfa*, myself; *mîn selfes*, of myself; *mê selfum*, *mê selfne*, etc.; *þû selfa*, thyself, etc.; *hê selfa*, himself, etc.

(*a*.) *Sîn* is the possessive of an old reflexive *si*, *sê* (§ 132, *b*). *Self*, Gothic *silba*, is used throughout the Teutonic tongues: <*si*+(*lib*?), life, soul; so Sanskrit *âtmán* (soul) and Hebrew *nephes'* are used as reflexives.

(*b*.) *Silf* is found in Anglo-Saxon: >*self*(*a*) (a-umlaut, § 32, 1), *seolf*, *siolf* (breaking, § 33), *sylf* (graphic variation). Demonstrative *selfan* is found: *þŷ selfan dægê*, the same day (§ 133).

132. POSSESSIVES are *mîn*, *þîn*, *sîn*, *ûser*, *ûre*, *eôper*, *uncer*, *incer*. They have strong adjective endings (§ 103). Those in *-er* are usually syncopated (§ 79). *Ûser* has assimilation of *r*>*s* (§ 35, *B*).

SING.—			PLUR.—	
	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
N.	ûser	ûser	ûser	(ûsere) ûsse (a)	ûser
G.	(ûseres) ûsses	(ûserre) ûsse	(ûseres) ûsses	(ûserrâ) ûssâ	
D.	(ûserum) ûssum	(ûserre) ûsse	(ûserum) ûssum	(ûserum) ûssum	
A.	ûserne	(ûsere) usse	ûser	(ûsere) ûsse	ûser
V.	ûser	ûser	ûser	(ûsere) ûsse	ûser
I.	(ûserê) ûssê	(ûserre) ûsse	(ûserê) ûssê	(ûserum) ûssum	

Northumbrian has *ûsenne*<*ûserne*, *ûsrâ*. *Ûre* is a syncopated form of *ûser*.

(*a*.) They have the same themes as the genitives of the personal pronouns. Analogous forms are found throughout the Indo-European family:

	mine,	*thine,*	*his,*	*our,*	*your,*	*of us two,*	*of you two,*
Sanskrit.	madi'ja	tvadi'ja	svadi'ja	asmadi'ja	jus'madi'ja	———	———
Greek....	ἐμός	σός	ὅς	ἡμέτερ-ος	ὑμέτερ-ος	νωίτερ-ος	σφωίτερ-ος
Latin....	meus	tuus	suus	noster	vester	———	———
Gothic...	meins	þeins	seins	unsar	izvar	ugkar	igqar
O. Saxon	mîn	thîn	sîn	ûsa	iwa	unca	inca
O. Norse	minn	þinn	sinn	vârr	yðarr	okkar	ykkar
O. H. G.	mînêr	dînêr	sînêr	unsarêr	iwarêr	———	———

The *n* (*mei(n)s*) and *r* (*unsa(r)*) have been thought variations of Sanskrit dental *d* (*ma(d)i'ja*), but see § 130, *c*. Fries. *min, thin, sin, ûse, unser*, etc.

(*b.*) *Sîn* is from obsolete *sê* (self) found in Gothic, Old Saxon, etc., defective like Latin *sê*, Greek ἑ. It does not cover the full meaning of the possessive of the third person; hence in Low German dialects the formation of new possessives: English, *his, her, their, its*, etc.

133. Demonstratives.

Definite Article.

	1. *that* and *the.*			2. *this.*		
Nom.	se	seô	þæt	þes	þeôs	þis
Gen.	þæs	þâre	þæs	þisses	þisse	þisses
Dat.	þam, þæm	þâre	þam, þæm	þissum	þisse	þissum
Acc.	þone	þâ	þæt	þisne	þâs	þis
Voc.	———	———	———	———	———	———
Inst.	þŷ	þâre	þŷ, þê	þŷs	þisse	þŷs

Nom.	þâ
Gen.	þârâ, þârâ
Dat.	þâm, þâm
Acc.	þâ
Voc.	———
Inst.	þâm, þâm

þâs
þissâ
þissum
þâs
———
þissum

(1. *se.*)—Other Forms: sing. gen. *þes, þâre, þâra?* dat. *þâm, þæm, þan, þon;* acc. *þæne, þane;* inst. *þi;* plur. gen. *þearâ*, dat. *þan, þon.* Northumbrian: sing. nom. *ðe; ðiô, ðiu, ðŷ; ðæt.* Compare Old H. German, § 104, and Old Saxon *thie; thiu; that.* Add nom. *siô, siâ* for *seâ.*

(*a.*) The changes of stem *a* to *æ* and *o* are the common shiftings (§ 41, 1). The lengthening of the stem in the feminine singular and throughout the plural was to be expected (§ 64, 2; 88, *c*). The O. Norse has sing. nom. *sâ, sû, þat;* gen. *þess, þeirrar, þess;* dat. *þeim, þeirri, því;* acc. *þann, þâ, þat;* plur. nom. *þeir, þær, þau;* gen. *þeirra;* dat. *þeim;* acc. *þâ, þær, þau.* O. Fries. *thi, thiu, thet; thes, there, thes*, etc.

(*b.*) For forms in other languages and discussion of case-endings, see § 104. Heyne gives *þêra, þêm* only as masculine, but *þêrâ bôcâ*, Ælfric, 2, 114; *þêrâ þingâ*, ib. 2, 130; see *þêm* in Grein.

(2. *þes.*)—Other Forms: without gemination of *s* in masculine and neuter, *þises, þisum, þisê*; i>y: *þys, þysses, þysse*, etc.; sing. nom. f. *þiôs*; gen. and dat. f. *þisere>þisre, þissere*; dat. *þisson, þissan, þiosum*; inst. m. and n. *þis, þisê, þissê* adjective form, (*þeôs*=O. Saxon *þius*; Grimm, Ettmüller, Heyne—examples given are all false readings); plur. nom. *þês*; gen. *þiscrâ, þisserâ*. Northumbrian: sing. nom. *ðæs, ðius, ðis*; gen. and dat. f. *ðæsser, ðisser*; dat. m. *ðassum*; acc. *ðiosne, ða, ðis*.

(*a.*) Pes is an emphatic demonstrative from *þa+sja*. In Gothic, the same force is obtained by affixing *-uh* (Latin *-ce, -que: hi-c, quis-que*). In the other Germanic tongues analogous forms to *þes* are found: O. Saxon sing. nom. *the-se, the-su* (*thius*), *thi-t*; gen. *the-sas, the-sara, the-sas*; dat. *the-sumu, the-saru, the-sumu*; acc. *the-san, the-sa, thi-t*; inst. n. *thius*; pl. nom. acc. *the-sa, thius*; gen. *the-sarô*; dat. *the-sun*; O. H. G. *di-sê-r*, etc. The Anglo-Saxon has lost all the *sja* except *-s* in the nominative. In *þisse, þissâ* there has been syncope and assimilation of *r>s*, as in *ússe, ússâ* (§ 132); in *þisses* and *þissum*, gemination of *s* through gravitation. The genitive and dative masculine are written pretty regularly with gemination of *s*—not always.

(3.) *Ylc, þylc, spylc: ylca*, same, has only weak forms; *þylc, spylc*, such, have only strong. (*y=i=e.*) *þys-lîc>þyllîc*, strong.

(*a.*) *Ylc<ŷ+lic*; *ŷ<i*, demonstrative *he*; *-lic*, like; so *þŷ-lîc*, analogous to Latin *tâ-lis*, Greek τη-λίκος, Sanskrit *tâ-dṛ'ks'a*; *spŷ-lîc*, Gothic *swêleiks*, etc., English *such*.

(4.) *Self*, see § 131. (5.) *Same*, adv. same, Sanskrit pron. *sama* (*sa+ma*), Greek ὅμο-ς, Latin *simi-lis*, Gothic, Old Saxon *sama*, Old Norse *sam-r*, Old H. German *samo*.

(6.) *Geond*, adv. yon, Gothic pron. *jâins*, that (§ 255, *a*).

134. Relatives.—(1.) *se, seô, þæt*, who, which, that, is declined as when a demonstrative (§ 133). (2.) *þe* used in all the cases, both alone and in combination with *se, seô, þæt*, or a personal pronoun, is indeclinable. (3.) *spâ*, so, used like English *as* and Old German *so* in place of a relative, is indeclinable.

135. Interrogatives are *hpâ*, who; *hpæðer*, which of two; *hpylc, hâlîc*, of what kind. They have strong adjective endings; *hpæðer* is syncopated (§ 84.)

SING.—	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	hpâ	——	hpæt	*Sanskrit.*	ka-s	kâ	ka-t
Gen.	hpæs	——	hpæs	*Greek...*	κο-ς>πος>πό-θι,		πoῦ, etc.
Dat.	hpam	——	hpam	*Latin...*	qui-s	quæ	quo-d
Acc.	hpone	——	hpæt	*Gothic..*	hva-s	hvô	hva
Voc.	——	——	——	*O. Saxon*	hue	——	hua-t
Inst.	hpam	——	hpŷ	*O. Norse.*	hva-r	——	hva-t

OTHER FORMS: dat. *hpæm, hpan, hpon, hpâm, hpæm;* acc. *hpæne;* inst. *hpi, hpig, hû.* NORTHUMBRIAN: *huâ, huæ, huætd, huæd.*

(*a.*) For shifting of the stem radicle, see § 41, *B;* for case-endings, § 105.
(*b.*) *Hpæđer*<*hpâ*, comparative form, § 126, *a.* *Hpylc*<*hpŷ*+*lic* like *hylc*<*þŷ*+*lic*, § 133, 3, *a.* (*y*=*i*=*e.*) O. Fries. *hwa—hwet.*

136. INDEFINITES.

(1.) *The Indefinite Article* ÂN<*ân*, one.

SING.—	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	PLUR.— M., F., N.
Nom...	ân	ân	ân	âne
Gen....	âne*s*	ânre	âne*s*	ânrâ
Dat....	ânu*m*	ânre	ânu*m*	ânu*m*
Acc....	ânne, ænne	âne	ân	âne
Voc....	ân	ân	ân	âne
Inst....	ânê	ânre	ânê	ânu*m*

A weak sing. nom. *âna, âne*(*a*), *âne*, is also found, and undeclined forms. The vocative and plural mean *sole, some*, etc. See the numeral *ân*, § 137, *a.*

(*a.*) So also decline *nân*, none.

(2.) *Ænig*, any (*ân*+*ig*), and *nænig*, none, are strong. (3.) *sum*, some, one (akin to *same*, § 133, 5), is strong. (4.) The notional substantives *man* (man) and *piht* (whit) have become pronouns in certain uses; for their declension, see §§ 83; 100, *f.* They simulate pronominal stems. Compare English *one, whit* (wh), *thing* (th), § 40, 2. Compounds of *piht* f. and n. are neuter: *âpiht, âpyht, âpuht*>*âuht*>*âht, ópiht*, aught; *nâpiht*, naught. *Eal* (all), *manig* (many), strong, *feâ* (few), sing. indec. pl. strong (§ 117), *fela* (much), *lyt, hpon* may be added.

(5.) Compounds of *hpâ, hpæđer, -lic*, decline like the simples:

(*a.*) From *hpâ: ge-hpâ*, each, every; *æg-hpâ* (*â*+*ge*+*hpâ*), every; *elles-hpâ* (Lat. *ali-quis*), any; *spâ-hpâ-spâ, spâ-hpæt-spâ*, whoso, whatsoever; *hpæt-hpugu, -hpigu, -hûgu* (Lat. *cum-que*, § 133, 2, *a*), anything. *Gehpâ* has fem. gen. dat. *gehpære, gehpâre* (*gehpóre?*), and masc. forms as feminines.

(*b.*) From *hpæðer* (§ 135, *b*): *â-hpæðer* (any one)>*âpðer*>*âðor*, *ôpðer*, *ôðer*, other, either; *nâ-hpæðer* (neither)>*nâpðer*, *nôpðer*, *nôðer*; *ge-hpæðer*, either; *æg-hpæðer* (*â*+*ge*+*hpæðer*)>*æġðer*, either; *spâ-hpæðer-spâ*, whichsoever.

(*c.*) From *lîc* (§ 133, 3, *a*): *ge-hpilc*, *-hpelc*, *-hpylc*, any body; *æg-hpilc* (*â*+*ge*+*hpŷ*+*lîc*, § 135, *b*), whoever; *hpilc-hûgu*, *hpilce-hûgu*, any one, anything; *spâ-hpilc-spâ*, whosoever; *þys-lîc*, *þus-lîc*, *þyllîc*, *þŷ-lîc*, of this sort; *ælc* (*â*+*ge*+*lîc*), each, all: *ælc*, *elc*, *ylc*.

(*d.*) Analogous compounds are found throughout the Teutonic tongues, and to many through most of the Indo-European family.

137. Decay of Pronominal Endings:—

(*a.*) *Personal.*—Layamon and Ormulum have Anglo-Saxon forms, also Lay. *ic*>*ich*>Orm. *i*, Chaucer sometimes *ich*, *ik*. Pû>thou, late Old English (§ 38, *A*, 1); *gê*>Lay. ȝ*ê*>ye; *eôp*>Lay. ȝ*ou*>you. Hê, *heô*, *hit*: sing. fem. nom., Ang.-Sax. chronicle (A.D. 1140+) *scê*>Chaucer *schê*>shê, Northern O. Engl. *schô* (O. Sax. *siâ*, O. Norse *sú*), Lay. ȝ*eô*, ȝ*ê*, Orm. ȝ*hô*; *hit*>Orm. *itt*, it; dat.>acc. Lay. *him*, *hire*>Chaucer *hire* (monosyllable)>her; plur. nom. acc. Lay. *peô*, *paie*, Orm. nom. *peȝȝ*>they; gen. Lay. *heore*, *hire*, Orm. *peȝȝre* (*heore*), dat.>acc. Orm. *peȝȝm* (*hemm*)>them (§ 130, *e*); *her*, *hir*, *here* (their), *hem* (them), are still in Chaucer.

(*b.*) *Possessives.*—Lay. *mîn*>*mî*>my, *þîn*>*þî*>thy, sometimes before a consonant; other endings like adjectives, § 129+.

(*c.*) *Demonstratives.*—The definite article in Layamon retains its declension, except dat. *m*>*n* and precession of *â*>*a*>*o*>*e*; but indeclinable *þe* grows more frequent, and in Orm. is established as in Modern English. Pes changes like the adjective (§ 129+): plur. *þâs*>*þeôs*>those (§ 38, *A*, 1). Ormulum sing. *þiss* (this), plur. *þisse* (these); and sing. *þatt* (that), plur. *þâ* (those). Chaucer *this*, plur. *these*; *that*, plur. *thô*.

(*d.*) *Relatives.*—Layamon *þe*, *þat* throughout, also fem. and plur. *þâ*>*þeô*; Ormulum *þatt* (=that) throughout, as in English now. For the change of *who*, *which* to relatives, see Syntax.

(*e.*) *Interrogatives.*—Layamon *whâ* (>*wô*), *whes*, *whâm* (>*wâm*), *whân* (>*wân*), neuter *whæt*; Ormulum *whâ*, *whâs*, dat.>acc. *whamm*, *whatt*; O. Engl. *â*>*ô*. *Hpilc*, *hpæder*, like adjectives, § 129+.

(*f.*) *Indefinite ân* in Layamon is declined throughout, sometimes also nom. *ân*>*â*, and oblique cases *one*. Ormulum has only masculine endings; *â*, *a*, frequent. Chaucer no inflection, *ân*>*a*, as now.

138. NUMERALS.

	Cardinals.	Ormulum.	Ordinals.	Symbols.
1.	ân	ân	forma (fruma, æresta) / fyrsta, § 129	I.
2.	tpegen, tpâ, tu / <tpa	twâ	ôđer	II.
3.	þrî, þreô	þreo, þrê	þridda	III.
4.	feôper	fowwerr	feôperđa (feôrđa)	IV.
5.	fîf	fîf	fîfta	V.
6.	six	sexe	sixta	VI.
7.	seofon (syfone)	se(o)fenn, (-ffne)	seofođa (-eđa)	VII.
8.	eahta	ehhte	eahtođa (-eđa)	VIII.
9.	nigon (-en)	niȝhenn	nigođa (-eđa)	IX.
10.	tŷn, tên	têne, (tenn)	teôđa	X.
11.	endleofan (ellefne)		endleofta (eo>u, y, e)	XI.
12.	tpelf	twellf	tpelfta	XII.
13.	þreôtŷne	þrittêne	þreôteôđa	XIII.
14.	feôpertŷne		feôperteôđa	XIV.
15.	fîftŷne		fîfteôđa	XV.
16.	sixtŷne	sextêne	sixteôđa	XVI.
17.	seofontŷne		seofonteôđa	XVII.
18.	eahtatŷne		eahtateôđa	XVIII.
19.	nigontŷne		nigonteôđa	XIX.
20.	tpêntig	twennti ȝ	tpêntigôđa	XX.
21.	ân and tpêntig		ân and tpêntigôđa / tpêntigôđa and forma	XXI.
30.	þrîtig, þrittig	þritti ȝ	þrîtigôđa	XXX.
40.	feôpertig	fowwerrti ȝ	feôpertigôđa	XL.
50.	fîftig	fiffti ȝ	fîftigôđa	L.
60.	sixtig	sexti ȝ	sixtigôđa	LX.
70.	hundseofontig	seofennti ȝ	hundseofontigôđa	LXX.
80.	hundeahtatig		hundeahtatigôđa	LXXX.
90.	hundnigontig		hundnigontigôđa	XC.
100.	hundteôntig / hund	hunndredd	hundteôntigôđa	C.
101.	hund and ân		ân and hundteôntigôđa / hundteôntigôđa and forma	CI.

Cardinals.	Ormclum.	Ordinals.	Symbols.
110. hundendleofantig		hundendleofantigôđa	CX.
120. hundtpelftig		hundtpelftigôđa	CXX.
130. hund and þrittig		hund and þrîtigôđa	CXXX.
200. tpa hund		tpa hundteôntigôđa	CC.
1000. þûsend	þûsennde	(*not found.*)	M.

(*a.*) The order of combined numbers is indicated by the examples. The substantive defined is oftenest placed next the largest of the numbers.

(*b.*) Combined numbers are sometimes connected by *eâc* (added to) or *and* governing a dative: *þridda eâc tpêntigum* = 23d; sometimes by the next greater ten and *pana, læs*, or *bûtan: ânes pana þrittig*, thirty less one; *tpâ læs XXX*, two less than thirty; *XX bûtan ân*, § 393.

(*c.*) For *hund-* from 70 to 120, see § 139, *e*; indefinites, § 136, 2.

(*d.*) The unaccented syllables often suffer precession, sometimes syncope, often cacography.

139. ETYMOLOGY.—CARDINALS.

	Parent Sp.	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	O. Saxon.	O. Norse.
1.	ai-na?	ê'ka	εἷς<ἕ-ν-ς	oi-nos>unus	âi-n-s	ê-n	ei-nn
2.	dva	dva	δύο	duo	tvai	tuê-na	tvei-r
3.	tri	tri	τρεῖς<τρί	tres<tri	þrei-s	thri-a	þrî-r
4.	katvar	k'atva'r	τέτταρ-ες <κετ'ϝας	quatuor	fidvor	fiwar	fiór-ir
5.	kankan	pañk'an	πέντε	quinque	fimf	fîf	fimm
6.	?	s'as'	ἕξ	sex	saihs	sehs	sex
7.	?	saptán	ἑπτά	septem	sibun	sibun	siau
8.	akta	as'ṭ'án	ὀκτώ	octo	ahtáu	ahtô	âtta
9.	navan	návan	ἐννέα< νέϝαν	novem	niun	nigun	nîu
10.	dakan	dáçan	δέκα	decem	taíhun	tehan	tîu

Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	Old Saxon.	Old Norse.
11. ê'kâ-daçan	ἕν-δεκα	un-decim	âin-lif	ellif	ellifu
12. dvâ'-daçan	δώ-δεκα	duo-decim	tva-lif	tue-lif	tô-lf
13. trájô-daçan	τρισκαί-δεκα	tre-decim	þrija-taíhun	———	þrettian
20. (d)viñ-(da)çáti	(δϝ)εῖ-κοσι	(d)vi-ginti	tvai-tig-jus	tuên-tig	tu-ttug-u
30. triñ-çát	τριά-κοντα	tri-ginta	þreis-tig-jus	thrî-tig	þria-tig-i
70. sapta-(daça)tí	ἑβδομή-κοντα	septuâ-ginta	sibun-têhund	ant-sibunta	siô-tigi
100. -çatá	ἑ-κατόν	-centum	taíhun-têhund / hund	(ant-tehunta) / hund	tîu-tiu / hund-rað
120. (*By* 100+20.	*The great hundred not used.*)		(tvalif-têhund)	(ant-tuelifta)	tôlf-ti-u
1000. sahásra	χίλιο-ι	millia	þûsundi	thûsundig	þûsund

(*a.*) The numerals are clusters of radicles, some of which lure beyond the Indo-European family.

1–10. — Ân (one) < pronominal stem *i* > *ai-na* > Sansk. *êna*, that; *ê'ka* (*ê-(na)ka*)? § 130, *b*, *c*. Dva (two), dental radicle for addition, § 56. Tri, *tar*, fem. *tissar* (*titar*), three < dental radicle *t* + emphatic *r*; compare its force in comparison, § 123, *c*, and in √*tri*, to go further. Katvar, fem. *katasar* (*ka-tatar*), four, = *ka* (< *êka*, one) + *tpar* (< *tar*, *titar*, three): the symbols for four are composed of those for *one* and *three* in Sanskrit and kindred alphabets, also in Egyptian. Kan-kan (five) is a reduplication indicating the completion of *one* (*ka* < *êka*) count—one hand. For reduplication as a sign of completion, see Greek Grammars: Crosby, § 179; see further below. Aktan (eight) is *ak* (one) + superlative *-ta* (§ 123, *c*), the highest count of fingers. Navan (nine) is akin to Sansk. *nava-s*, Greek νέϝο-ς, Latin *novu-s*, Gothic *niu-ji-s*, Ang.-Sax. *nipe*, new, now, < *nu*, pronominal stem of interrogation, negation, stimulation; *nine* begins a *new* quaternion. Dakan (ten) < *dva-kan* = 2 × 5.

(*b.*) Well-marked identity with the Semitic numerals has been claimed in *ê'ka*, Hebrew *èk'ad*; *s'as'*, Hebrew *s'es'*, six; *saptan*, Gothic *sibun*, Hebrew *s'ebà*, seven. It has been said that *s'es'* = *s'e* + *s'e* = 3 + 3, and *s'ebà* = *s'e* + (*àr*)*bà* = 3 + 4; the *-tan* in *saptan* being a superlative, as in *aktan*, finishing the count of possibly a week. Kan in *kan-kan* is also like Hebrew *kam-es'*, five. The original stem for five has been also thought to be *pankan*, and to be from Sanskrit *pâni*, hand.

(*c.*) The shifting and gravitation in coming down from the Parent Speech is generally regular, §§ 41, 38, tables in §§ 18, 19; *k* > *p* > *f*, § 41, 3, *A*, *B*; *i* > *ig*, quasi-gemination, § 27, 5.

(*d.*) 11–19. — Endleofan < *ân* + *leofan* < *tihan* (Lithuanic, *lika*), ten; *d* > *e*, precession, § 38; *nl* > *ndl*, dissimilated gemination of *n*, the last part of which changes to *d* from the dropping of the nasal veil to send breath forward for *l* (§ 27, 5; 50); *t*(< *d*) > *l*, unusual shifting: Ὀδυσσεύς > *Ulysses*; *dingua* > *lingua* (§ 41, *b*); *h*(< *k*) > *f*, shifting as in *katvar* > *fidvor*, four; *kankan* > *finf*, five, etc., § 41, 3, *A*, *B*; *i* > *eo*, breaking, § 33; 35, 2, *a*. Tdelf < *tpâ* + *leofan* = 2 + 10; *threô-tŷne*, 3 + 10, etc., are plain.

(*e.*) 20–120.—Tdentig < *tpegen* (twain) + *tig* < *dakan* (ten), 2 × 10: shifting, § 41, 3, *A*. Similar are the forms in *-tig* up to (*hund*)*tpelftig* = 12 × 10, the great hundred.

60–120.—With the forms in *-tig* from three-score to the great hundred is joined *hund*. Gothic *têhund* (Latin *-ginti*, Greek *-κοντι*, Sanskrit *-çati*) < *dakanta* < *dakan* (ten) + *-ta* superlative, as in *saptan*, *aktan*: shifting, § 41, 3, *A*; *nt* > *nd*, instead of *nd*, through influence of *n*; *a* > *ê*, progression to *d* and shifting, § 18; *a* > *u*, precession, § 38. The Gothic has *sibun-têhund* = 7 × 10, *taihun-têhund* = 10 × 10, etc. The Anglo-Saxon form was once *hund-seofonta* (decade seventh), like Old Saxon (*h*)*ant-sibunta*. The *-ta* changed to *-tig* through conformation with the smaller numbers, and *hund-*, whose meaning had faded, was retained as a sign of the second half of the

great hundred; when counting by the common hundred, it is omitted: *ân hund mannâ and seofontig*, 170 men.

(*f.*) 100–1000.—Hund, *hundred*<Parent Speech *dakan-dakanta*, which would shift in Anglo-Saxon to *tihun-tihund* (§ 41). It has gravitated to *hund*>*hundred*<*hundare* (Latin *centuria*) + *d*, as in *eored*, legion; *eôped*, herd, etc. 1000 is expressed by so different words in the different tongues that no common origin can be found, and hence it is believed not to have been in the Parent Speech. The Lithuanic, Slavonic, and Teutonic, however, agree: Lith. *túkstanti*; Slav. *tusantja*; Goth. *þûsundi*<*tuk-*<*dakan* (ten) + *santi*<*kanti*>*hund* (hundred) = 10×100.

140. Ordinals are superlative forms, except *ôder*, second.

(*a.*) Fruma, *forma*, first, see § 126+; *ôder*, second, § 126, *a*; *-da*, *-ta*, *-đa* are all shiftings of superlative *-ta*, § 123, *c*; *-teôđa* is a repetition of *teôđa*<*teônđa* (tenth); *-tigôđa*, Friesic *-tigôsta*, O. Norse *-tugasti*, O. H. German *-zugôsto* (no examples in Gothic or Old Saxon), has conformed to the smaller and more frequently recurring numbers in *-teôđa*. The substantives *hund* and *þûsend* had not developed ordinals in Anglo-Saxon.

(*b.*) The formation of ordinals is similar in principle throughout the Indo-European family.

Declension.

141. Cardinals.—1, *ân*, is declined, § 136.

N., A., V.	2, tpegen tpâ tu<tpa	3, þrî (-ŷ, -ie)	þreô þreô (-iâ, -iô)
Gen.	tpegrâ, tpegâ		þreôrâ
D., Inst..	tpâm>tpêm		þrîm (-ŷm)

Like *tpegen* decline *begen*, *bâ*, *bu*, both.

4–19.—Cardinals from *feôper* to *tpelf*, and from *þreô-tŷne* to *nigon-tŷne*, are used as indeclinable, but are also declined like *i*-stem nouns of the First Declension (*byre*, § 84), oftenest when used as substantives: nom. acc. voc. *feôpere*, gen. *feôperâ*, dat. inst. *feôperum*. Such forms of *eahta* are not found. *Tŷne*<*teôn*, umlaut, § 32, 2.

(*a.*) Those in *-tŷne* have also sometimes a neut. nom. and acc. in *-u*>*-o*, or *-a*: *fiftŷn-u, -o, -a* (fifteen); *þreôteno* (=thirteen). (*ŷ*>*î*>*e*.)

(*b.*) They are quasi-adjectives like *Dene*, § 86.

20–120.—Forms in *-tig* are declined as singular neuter nouns: *þrîtig* (thirty), gen. *þrîtiges*; or, as adjectives, have plural gen. *-râ*, dat. *-um*: *þrîtigrâ*, *þrîtigum*.

100–1000.—*Hund*, n., is declined like *pord*, § 73; *hundred* and *þûsend*, like *scip*, § 70; pl. *þûsend-u, -o, -e, -a* (Psa. lxvii, 17), § 393.

142. Ordinals have always the regular weak forms of the adjective, except *óðer* (second), always strong. Indefinites, § 136, 2.

143. Multiplicatives are found in *-feald* (fold): *ânfeald*, simple: *tpî-feald*, two-fold; *þúsend-mælum*, thousandfoldly.

144. Distributives may be expressed by repeating cardinals, or by a dative: *seofon and seofon*, seven by seven; *bi tpâm*, by twos.

145. In answer to *how often*, numeral adverbs are used, or an ordinal or cardinal with *sîd* (time): *ênne*, once; *tpipa* (*tpiga*), twice; *þrîpa* (*þiga*), thrice; *þriddan side*, the third time; *feôper sîdum*, four times.

146. For adverbs of division the cardinals are used, or ordinals with *dæl*: *on þreó*, in three (parts); *seofedan dæl*, seventh part.

147. An ordinal before *healf* (half) numbers the whole of which the half is counted: *hê pæs þâ tpâ geâr and þridde healf*, he was there two years and (the) third (year) half=2½ years. The whole numbers are usually understood: *hê rícsóde nigonteóðe healf geâr*, he reigned half the nineteenth year=18½ years. A similar idiom is used in German and Scandinavian.

148. *Sum*, agreeing with a numeral, is indefinite, as in English: *sume tîn geâr*, some ten years, more or less; limited by the genitive of a cardinal it is a partitive of eminence: *eóde eahta sum*, he went one of eight=with seven attendants or companions.

VERB.

149. The notion signified by a verb root may be predicated of a subject or uttered as an interjection of command, or (2) it may be spoken of as a substantive fact or as descriptive of some person or thing. In the first case proper verb stems are formed, or auxiliaries used, to denote time, mode, and voice; and suffixes (personal endings) are used to indicate the person and number of the subject: thus is made up the verb proper or finite verb. In the second case a noun stem is formed, and declined in cases as a substantive or adjective.

150. Two Voices.—The *active* represents the subject as acting, the *passive* as affected by the action. The *active* has inflection endings for many forms, the *passive* only for a participle. Other passive forms help this participle with the auxiliary verbs *eom* (am), *beón*, *þesan*, *þeordan*.

(*n.*) The *middle* voice represents the subject as affected by its own action. It is expressed in Anglo-Saxon by adding pronouns, and needs no paradigms.

151. Six Modes.—The *indicative* states or asks about a fact, the *subjunctive* a possibility; the *imperative* commands or in-

treats; the *infinitives* (and gerunds) are substantives, the *participles* adjectives. Certain forms of possibility are expressed by auxiliary modal verbs with the infinitive. They need separate discussion, and are conveniently called a *potential* mode.

152. Five Tenses.—*Present, imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect.* The present and imperfect have tense stems; the future is expressed by the present, or by aid of *sceal* (shall) or *pille* (will); the perfect by aid of the present of *habban* (have) or, with some intransitives, *beón* (be), *pesan* or *peorđan* (be); the pluperfect by aid of the imperfect of *habban*, *beón*, *pesan*, or *peorđan*.

153. Two Numbers, *singular* and *plural*.

154. Three Persons, *first*, *second*, and *third*.

155. Stems and Themes.—A tense-*stem* is that part of a verb to which the signs of mode, person, and number were added in that tense. The verb-*stem* is that to which the tense signs were added. The *theme* of any part of a verb is so much of it as is unchanged in the inflection. For roots, § 57.

156. The Principal Parts are the *present. infinitive*, the *imperfect indicative first persons*, and the *passive participle*.

157. Conjugation.—Verbs are classified for conjugation by the stems of the imperfect tense.

Strong Verbs express tense by varying the root vowel; *weak verbs*, by composition. Strong verbs in the imperfect indicative singular first person have the root vowel *unchanged*, or changed by *progression* or by *contraction*. The vowels are

No change.	*Progression.*	*Contraction.*	*Composition.*
Conjugation I.	II., III., IV.	V.	VI.
a > (æ, ea)	**â, eâ, ô**	**eô > ê**	**+de > te**

158. Further subdivision gives the following classes. The Roman numerals give Grimm's numbers. We arrange in alphabetical order of the stem vowels of the imperfect.

Class.	Root Vowel.	Strong. Present.	Imperfect Sing.	Plur.	Passive Participle.
1, X., XI.	a	i (>e, eo)	a (>æ, ea)	â (>ê, ê)	e, u>o
2, XII.	a	i (>e, eo)	a (>æ, ea)	u	u>o
3, VIII.	i	î	â	i	i
4, IX.	u	cô, û	eâ	u	o
5, VII.	â	a (>ea)	ô	ô	a
6, I.–VI.	a>ea, â, eâ, æ, ê, ô		eô>ê	eô>ê	a>ea, â, eâ, æ, ê, ô
		Weak (§§ 160, 165, *d*).			
7,	affix -ia>-ie>-e>—		+ede>de>te		+ed>d>t
8,	affix -ô>-â; -ia>-ige, -ie		+ôde		+ôd

(*a.*) The variation of letters in the five first classes is called ABLAUT; it sprang from gravitation (§ 38) and compensation (§ 37). Its beginnings may be seen in the other Indo-European tongues, plainest in Sanskrit. Sanskrit grammars have ten conjugation classes; the present stems are, 1. $\surd+a$; 2. $\surd$; 3. Reduplicated $\surd$; 4. $\surd+ja$; 5. $\surd+nu$; 6. $\surd+a'$; 7. $\surd$ with *n* inserted; 8. $\surd+u$; 9. $\surd+nî$; 10. $\surd+aja$. Anglo-Saxon strong verbs correspond to the first or sixth class, a few to the fourth; weak verbs to the (4th ?) and tenth. Sanskrit reduplicated preterites (perfects) are formed all alike from the root by prefixing its first letters.

PRESENTS.

Sense.	*Root.*	*Conj.*	*Sanskrit.*	*Greek.*	*Latin.*	*Gothic.*
throw.	kar	6.	kir-â'mi; tir-â'mi < √tar, 6, *step over.*			
sit.	sad	6.	sîd-â'mi	ἕζ-ομαι	sĕd-eo	sit-an
know, go.	k'it, i	1, 2.	k'ê't-âmi, ô'-mi	εἶ-μι	î-re	
show.	diç	6.	diç-â'mi, *Causal base* dêç-aja	δείκ-νυμι	dîc-o	teih-an
know.	budh	1.	bô'dh-âmi	πεύθ-ομαι		
bend.	bhug'	6.	bhug'-â'mi, *Caus. base* bhô'g'-aja	φεύγ-ω	fŭg-io	biug-an
wax.	vaks'	1.	váks'-âmi			vahs-jan

PERFECTS > Anglo-Saxon Imperfect.

			Sanskrit.		*Greek.*		*Latin.*		*Gothic.*	
Sense.	*Root.*	*Conj.*	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
extend.	tan	8.	ta-tă'n-a	{ta-tin-imá > tênimá}	τέ-τα(ν)-κα,	-καμεν	te-tin-i,	-imus	than	thên-um
sit.	sad	6.	sa-să'd-a	sêd-imá	——	——	sĕd-i,	-imus	sat	sêt-um
do.	kar	8.	(*Pres.*) kar-ô'mi	kur-más; tu-tur-jâ'm < √tar, *step over.*						
bind.	bandh	9.	ba-bándh-a	ba-bandh-imá	——	——	——	——	band	bund-um
see.	vid	2.	(vi)vê'd-a	(vi)vid-má	Fοἰδ-α	Fίσ-μεν	vi:d-i,	-imus	vâit	vit-um
show.	diç	6.	di-dé'ç-a	di-diç-imá	δέ-δειχ-α,	-αμεν	——	——	tâih	t(a)ih-um
bend.	bhug'	6.	bu-bhô'g'-a	bu-bhug'-imá	πέ-φευγ-α,	-αμεν	fŭg-i	-imus	bâug	bug-um
wax.	vaks'	1.	va-váks'-a	va-vaks'-imá	——	——	——	——	vôhs	vôhs-um
break.	bhrag'		*Greek Present* Fρήγ-νυμι		ἔ-ῤῥωγ-α,	-αμεν	frĕg-i,	-imus	——	——
bake.	bhag'		*Greek Present* φώγ-ω		πέ-φωγ-α,	-αμεν	*Ang.-Sax.* bac-an; bôc, bôc-on.			

(*b.*) The Sanskrit passive past participle in *-na* is accented on the affix, and the root in Teutonic has precession like the imperfect plural. § 175.

(*c.*) Roots in *a* have conformed to the analogy of the Sanskrit Sixth Conjugation Class, those in *i* and *u* to that of the first. Since accent opens the organs, the open *a* must be most varied by its absence (i. e., by precession), the close *i* and *u* by its presence—progression.

(*d.*) COMPARISON OF ABLAUT:

	FIRST CONJUGATION, √**a.**			2ND CONJ., √**i.**			3D CONJ., √**u.**		
Sanskrit	i;	ĕ, ŏ; i & u		i;	ă, u; u		ê; ô, i; i	ô;	ô, u; u
Gothic ..	i;	a, è; i & u		i;	a, u; u		ei; âi, i; i	iu;	âu, u; u
O. Sax. .	i > e;	a, â; e & u > o		i > e;	a, u; u > o		î; ê, i; i	iu > io > û;	ô, u; o
O. Norse	i > e;	a, â; e & u > o		i > e > ia;	a, u; u > o		î; ei, i; i	iu > io > û;	au, u; o
O. H. G.	i > e;	a, â; e & o		i > e;	a, u; u > o		î; ei > ê, i; i	iu > io > û;	ou > ô, u; o

FOURTH CONJUGATION, √**â** *or* **a.**

Greek η; ω, ω; η. *Goth.* a; ô, ô; a. *O. S. & O. H. G.* a; ô > uo, ô > uo; a. *O. N.* a; ô, ô; a > e.

(*e.*) In Sanskrit these vowel changes have no meaning, but are mostly mechanical results of the accent: yet, as the place of the accent depends on the weight of the prefixes and suffixes in which the meaning resides, the vowel changes come to be signs of this meaning, and, as the prefixes and suffixes decay, the sole signs of it. The vowels are the vehicles of emotion and harmony; to make them signs of relation fuses thought and feeling, and gives power for oratory and poetry. The Teutonic races, like the Semitic, found this fusion congenial, and in the earliest Gothic the ablaut is already a fundamental law of the language. Physiology teaches that progression may spring from accent, that precession may take place in unaccented syllables of course, and in accented syllables from compensation or shifting: comparison of Anglo-Saxon and English proves these possibilities to be important facts in the history of language; the Sanskrit verb shows that they are the facts from which sprang Ablaut. §§ 37, 38, 41. The changes of the *i*-roots and *u*-roots are established in Sanskrit; those of the *a*-roots are only occasional in the present even in the sixth class, and that class is small. It seems, then, that *a*-roots of the Sanskrit sixth class were drawn to ablaut by conformation with *i*-roots and *u*-roots, and that *a*-roots of the first class conformed after ablaut was fully established, except such as attained the Fourth Teutonic Conjugation, where the whole perfect conforms in progression to the singular $\acute{o} < \acute{a}$.

(*f.*) In Gothic, the present, the imperfect plural, and past participle have the same precession or progression as in Sanskrit (§§ 18, 38). The imperfect singular has a second progression in the second, third, and fourth conjugations, because it has gravitated to a monosyllable.

(*g.*) The *ê* of imperfect plural *têním̂a* is from *ani*, a compensative dropping of *n* and lengthening of *a*, the result of which is modified by *i*—a process in which we may see how umlaut and contraction run into each other.

(*h.*) Imperfect plural and past participle $u < a$ is in liquid and double consonant roots. The first consonant is almost always a liquid. The effort for the two consonants takes the place of accent in part. For the assimilating effect of *m*, *n*, *l*, *r*, see § 35, 2. In Sanskrit, also, *a* goes to *u* in connection with *r*, *m*, *n*.

(*i.*) In Anglo-Saxon and the other Teutonic tongues the changes from Gothic ablaut are explained by umlaut, breaking, and shifting. O. Fries., 38.

159. CONTRACTION.—Roots incapable of progression kept the reduplication till after the accent had shifted to it (§ 41, 4) and it had taken progression (Gothic $i < \hat{a}i$); and in Anglo-Saxon they had contracted the reduplication and root to a uniform *eó* or *é*.

(*a.*) Such roots are those in *a*+two consonants, and in vowels having the second progression (§ 38). Add, also, a few in Gothic *ê*, *ai*, perf. *âi-ô: lêt-an* (let), *lâi-lôt; lai-an* (blame), *lâi-lô*. Hence Grimm's Conjugation Classes from the vowels of the present and (im)perfect:

	Pres.	Perf.	Pres.	Perf.	Pres.	Perf.	Pres.	Perf.
Gothic ...	(1) a+,	âi-a;	(2) âi,	âi-âi;	(3) âu-,	âi-au;	(4) ê,	âi-ê;
O. Saxon	(1) a+,	ie>ê;	(2) ê,	ie>ê;	(3) ô,	io>ie;	(4) â,	ie>ê;
O. Norse	(1) a+,	ê;	(2) ei,	ê;	(3) au,	io;	(4) â,	ê;
O. H. G.	(1) a+,	ia;	(2) ei,	ia;	(3) ou>ô,	io;	(4) â,	ia;
Ang.Sax.	(1) a+,	eô>ê;	(2) â,	eô>ê;	(3) câ,	eô>ê;	(4) æ>ê,	eô<ê;

	Pres.	Perf.	Pres.	Perf.	Pres.	Perf.
Gothic...	(5) âi,	ài-ô;	(6) ê,	âi-ô;	(—) ô,	âi-ô.
O. Saxon	———		———		ô>uo,	io>ie.
O. Norse	———		———		ô,	ê.
O. H. G.	———		———		uo,	io.
Ang.Sax.	â+p,	eô+p;	æ>ê,	eô>ê;	ô,	eô>ê.

(*b.*) Traces of the process of contraction are found in O. H. German and in the following Anglo-Saxon words:

Gothic ***haldan***, hold, perf. ***hâihald***; O.H.G. ***haltan, heialt>hialt>hialt.***
Gothic ***stâutan***, strike, perf. ***stâistâut***; O.H.G. ***stôzan, stêrôz*** (*r<st*)***>steoz, stioz.***
Gothic ***hâitan***, call, perf. ***hâihâit***; A.-Sax. ***hâtan, hêht<hæhât.***
Gothic ***rêdan***, rede, perf. ***râiróth***; A.-Sax. ***rædan, reôrd<rærôd.***
Gothic ***lêtan***, let, perf. ***lâilôt***; A.-Sax. ***lætan, leôrt*** (*r<l*, § 41, 3, *A*)***<læ-***
Gothic ***lâikan***, leap, perf. ***lâilâik***; A.-Sax. ***lâcan, leôlc<læ̂lâc.*** [***lôt.***
——— A.-Sax. ***on-drædan, on-dreôrd***, dread.

The repeated consonants weaken, and finally fall out and let the vowels together. In the Anglo-Saxon relics the first root consonant is saved by metathesis with the root vowel. These contractions at first gave rise to several different vowels and diphthongs found in O. H. German. Conformation in analogy with ablaut has brought them to a uniform *eô* or *ê* in Ang.-Saxon. § 52. O. Fries. presents *a, ê, ê, â, ô, ê*; perf. *i, ê.*

160. COMPOSITION.—Derivatives form the imperfect by suffixing to the verb stem *de<dide*, imperfect of *dôn*, do: *lufô-de*=did love.

(*a.*) This formation is common to, and peculiar to, the Teutonic tongues. Two suffixes of derivation appear in Anglo-Saxon verb stems: *-ia>ie>i>e>*— (Latin *-î*, Conj. IV.), and *-ô>*(*ă, u*)*>e* (Latin *-â*, Conj. I.), both from an original *-aja*, Sanskrit Class Tenth, Greek pure verbs.

Gothic.. *nasjan*, save; *nasi-da*, plur. *nasi-dêdum*: *salbôn*, salve; *salbô-da, salbô-dêdum.*
O. Sax.. *nerjan*, save; *neri-da, neri-dun*: *scawô-n*, see; *scawô-da, scawô-dun.*
A.-Sax. *nerian*, save; *nere-de, nere-don*; *sealfian*, salve; *sealfô-de, -don.*
O. Fries. *nera*, save; *ner(e)-de, ner(e)-don*; *salvja*, salve; *salva-de, -don.*
O.Norse *telja*, tell; *tal-da, töl-dum*: *kalla*, call; *kalla-ða, köllu-ðum.*
O.H.G. *nerjan*, save; *neri-ta, neri-tumês*: *salpôn*, salve; *salpô-ta, salpô-tumês.*

Gothic and O. H. German have also a stem in *-âi, -ê*, corresponding to the Latin Second Conjugation.

(*b.*) Derivatives in Sanskrit have only a periphrastic perfect, one form of which has *kar* (do) as its auxiliary enclitic; the Greek passive first aorist is compounded with $\theta\epsilon$=de (§ 168); the Latin first, second, and fourth conjugations compound with *fui* (be)>*-vi*, *-ui: amâ-vi*, *doc(ê)ui*, *audî-vi*.

161. TENSE STEMS.—The *present* stem suffixes *a* or *ia* to the root. The *imperfect* is from the old perfect, which repeated (reduplicated) the root. The Parent Speech had also an *aorist* stem prefixing to the root a demonstrative radicle called the augment, and an *imperfect* prefixing a similar augment to the present stem. Other tense stems were formed by composition, as a *future* with *as* (to be) or *bhu* (to be).

162. MODE SUFFIXES.—The *indicative* and *imperative* suffix the personal endings to the tense stem; the *subjunctive* prolonged the stem to express doubt or hesitation by suffixing to it *a* for present contingency, *ia* or *i* for past contingency or desire (the optative mode). The Teutonic subjunctives are from the optative.

163. PERSONAL ENDINGS are from the same radicles as the personal pronouns. § 130.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
ma,	**tva>ta,**	**ta,**	**ma+ta,**	**ta+ta,**	**an+ta,**
me.	*thou.*	*this, he*	*I+thou.*	*thou+thou.*	*he+he.*

The Sanskrit, Greek, and Gothic have a dual. §§ 61, 2; 165, *c.*

The usual phonetic decay has been modified by two main causes: (1) different weight of the tense stems, (2) different mode suffixes. It will be discussed in connection with the paradigm of a strong verb.

---

164. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Active Voice.

niman, to take.

Pres. Infinitive.	Imperfect Sing.,	Plur.	Passive Participle.
niman;	nam,	nâmon;	numen.

INDICATIVE MODE.

Present (and Future) Tense.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ic nime, *I take.*	pê nimađ, *we take.*
þû nimest, *thou takest.*	gê nimađ, *ye take.*
hê nimeđ, *he taketh.*	hî nimađ, *they take.*

165. Present tense, √**nam**; tense stem, *nama*. Sanskrit not yet identified with the others, though put with them by Pott, Benfey, Diefenbach; Latin *-emo* in *ad-imo*, etc., also put here by Bopp, Diefenbach.

SINGULAR.—

Parent Speech.	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	O. Saxon.	O. Norse.
1. namâ-mi	námâ-mi	*νέμω(-μι)*	emo-	nima-	nimu-	nem-
2. nama-si	náma-si	*νέμε-σι* > *νέμεις*	emi-s	nimi-*s*	nimi-*s*	nem-*r*
3. nama-ti	náma-ti	*νέμε-τι* > *νέμει*	emi-t	nimi-*þ*	nimi-*d*	nem-*r*

PLURAL.—

1. namâ-masi	námâ-mas	*νέμο-μεν*	emi-mus	nima-*m*	nima-*d*	nemu-*m*
2. nama-tasi	náma-tha	*νέμε-τε*	emi-tis	nimi-*þ*	nima-*d*	nemi-*đ*
3. nama-nti	náma-nti	*νέμο-ντι* > *νέμο-νσι*	emo-nti > emunt	nima-*nd*	nima-*d*	nema

O. H. Ger. *nim-u, -is, -it*; plur. *nem-amês, -at, -ant*. O. Fries. like A.-Sax. A.-Sax. plur. may be *-un, -um*, § 212; before a subjt., *-e*, and see § 170, *c*.

(*a*.)—1. **-ma** > *-mi* > *-m* > — is gravitation, § 38: *-m* is found only in *eom, eam*, am; *beôm*, be; Northumbrian *geseôm*, I see; *gedoam* > *gedôm*, I do; also (*m* > *n*) *cueđon*, I quoth, etc. 2. **-tva** > **-ta** > *-ti* > *-si* (lingual softening, § 41, *b*) > *-s* > *-st* (lingual strengthening, § 49): *-s* is found especially in Northumbrian before *đú: spreces đú*, speakest thou. 3. **-ta** > *-ti* > *-t* (gravitation, § 38) > *-đ* (shifting, § 41, *a*). Northumbrian *-s* < *-đ*, § 31, 2; 41, *b*; same in plural; so in O. Norse *-đ* > *-s* > *-r*. PLURAL.—1. **-mata** > *-masi* (as in 2d sing.) > *-m* (gravitation, § 38) > *-đ* (conformation with 2d and 3d person, § 40, 1). 2. **-tata** > *-tasi* (as in 2d sing.) > *-t* (gravitation, § 38) > *-đ* (shifting, § 41, *a*). 3. **-anta** > *-nti* > *-đ* (gravitation, § 38, and shifting, § 41, *a*).

(*b*.) Stem ending *a* > *e* or *i*, rare *o, u*, -, § 38. √*nam* > *nim* (ablaut, § 158). The common a-umlaut of *nim* > *nem* in the O. Saxon plural is stopped by *m*. Labial assimilation *i* > *eo* > *y* is found, § 35, 2, *a*; 23.

(*c*.) The Sanskrit has dual forms, *-vas, -thas, -tas*; Greek, —, *-τον, -τον*; Gothic, *-vas* > *-ôs, -ts*, —, § 130.

(*d*.) Weak verbs suffix the same endings to the stem *ia* or *ô*, § 160:

Gothic. nas-*ja, -jis, -jiþ; -jam, -jiþ, -jand:* salb-*ô, -ôs, -ôþ; ôm, -ôþ, -ônd.*

O. Sax. ner-*ju, -is, -id; -jad, -jad, -jad:* { scaw-*ôn, -ôs, -ôd*; 1, 2, 3. *-ôd* or *-ôjad*.

A.-Sax. ner-*ie, -est, -eđ; -iađ, -iađ, -iađ:* { sealf-*ie*, (*-ige*), *-âst, -âđ*; 1, 2, 3. *-iađ* or *-ig(e)ađ*.

O. Fries. ner-*e*, -(*i*)*st*, -(*i*)*th; -ath, -ath, -ath:*

O. Nor. tel, —, *-r, -r; -jum, -id, -ja:* kall-*a, -ar, -ar; -um, -id, -a.*

O. H. G. ner-*ju, -is, -it; -jamês, -jat, -jant:* salp-*ôm, -ôs, -ôt; -ômês, -ôt, -ônt.*

Anglo-Saxon has *ia* > *ie* > *e* > — in the singular, *ia* > *a* in the plural: *ô* has been driven out by *ia* (conformation, § 40; compare O. Saxon) except in singular second and third *ô* > *â* > *a*, § 38. The *i* in *ie* and *ia* often has dissimilated gemination to *ig, ige*. § 85, *a*. See §§ 183–186.

Imperfect.

Singular.	Plural.
ic nam, *I took.*	pê nâm*on*, *we took.*
þû nâme, *thou tookest.*	gê nâm*on*, *ye took.*
hê nam, *he took.*	hî nâm*on*, *they took.*

Future.

I shall or *will take.*

ic sceal (pille) nim*an.*	pê sculo*n* (pill*að*) nim*an.*
þû scealt (pilt) nim*an.*	gê sculo*n* (pill*að*) nim*an.*
hê sceal (pille) nim*an.*	hî sculo*n* (pill*að*) nim*an.*

Perfect.

	Transitive Form.	Intransitive Form.
Sing.	*I have taken.*	*I have (am) come.*
	ic hæbbe num*en.*	ic eo*m* cum*en.*
	þû hæf*st* (haf*âst*) num*en.*	þû ear*t* cum*en.*
	hê hæf*ð* (haf*âð*) num*en.*	hê is cum*en.*
Plur.		
	pê habb*að* num*en.*	pê s*ind* (sindon) cum*ene.*
	gê habb*að* num*en.*	gê s*ind* (sindon) cum*ene.*
	hî habb*að* num*en.*	hî s*ind* (sindon) cum*ene.*

Pluper'fect.

Sing.	*I had taken.*	*I had (was) come.*
	ic hæf*de* num*en.*	ic pæs cum*en.*
	þû hæf*dest* num*en.*	þû pâ̂re cum*en.*
	hê hæf*de* num*en.*	hê pæs cum*en.*
Plur.		
	pê hæf*don* num*en.*	pê pâ̂r*on* cum*ene.*
	gê hæf*don* num*en.*	gê pâ̂r*on* cum*ene.*
	hî hæf*don* num*en.*	hî pâ̂r*on* cum*ene.*

Other Forms: *nam, nom; nâmon, -an* (*â*>*ô*); *sceal, scel; scul-on, -un, -an; sceol-on, -un, -an; pille, pile, pilt* (*i*>*y*); *hæbbe, hebbe, habbe, haf-a, -u, -o; hafest; hæfeð; hæbbað; eom, eam; is, ys; sind, sint, sindan* (*i*>*y, ie, eo*), *ear-on, -un.* For *eom* may be used *peorðe* or *beóm;* for *pæs, pearð* (§ 178).

166. PERFECT STEM *na-nam*, Latin theme *em-im* > *êm*.

SINGULAR.—

Parent Speech.	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	O. Saxon.	O. Norse.
1. na-nam-(m)a	na-nă'm-a	*νε-νέμ-ηκα*	êm-i	nam	nam	nam
2. na-nam-ta	na-nán-tha, na-nim-i-thá, nêm-i-thá	*νε-νέμ-ηκας*	êm-(is)ti	nam-*t*	nâm-*i*	nam-*t*
3. na-nam-(t)a	na-nâ'm-a	*νε-νέμ-ηκε*	êm-it	nam	nam	nam

PLURAL.—

1. na-nam-masi	nêm-i-má	*νε-νεμ-ήκαμεν*	êm-imus	nêm-*um*	nâm-*un*	nâm-*um*
2. na-nam-tasi	nêm-á	*νε-νεμ-ήκατι*	êm-(is)tis	nêm-*uþ*	nâm-*un*	nâm-*uđ*
3. na-nam-anti	nêm-ús	*νε-νεμ-ήκᾶσι*	êm-(êr)unt	nêm-*un*	nâm-*un*	nâm-*u*

O. H. Ger. *nam*, *nâm-i*, *nam*; *nâm-umes*, *-ut*, *-un*. O. Fries. endings are like Ang.-Saxon, *nam* > *nom*.

A.-Sax. PLURALS *have sometimes -um* (§ 196), *often -un*, and see § 170, *c*.

(*a*.) The reduplication sets at work compensation (§ 37, 4), and all the singular endings are lost except in the second person a vanishing *-e* < *-i*. O. Sax. and O. H. Ger. have *-i* < Sanskrit *-i-tha*, and a stem like the plural. Gothic and O. Norse have *-t* < *-tha* and the singular unchanged stem; *-t* is found in some Anglo-Saxon preteritive verbs: *scealt*, etc., § 167. Weak verbs in Gothic have *-s* < *-th* < *-t*, like the present, and it is found in Anglo-Saxon, oftenest in the new imperfect of preteritive verbs: *cunnan*, imp. *cûđes*; so *lǽstes*, observedst; *brohtes*, broughtest; *sealdes*, gavest, etc. (§ 168); and in Northumbrian; weak verbs generally strengthen the *-s* > *-st* like the present.

PLURAL.—*m* > *n* is shifting (41, *b*); the second person conforms with the first and third. Sanskrit *-i-*, Gothic *-u-*, connecting vowel, inserted for euphony; *-u-* > *-o-*, precession, § 38.

167. FUTURE.—*Sceal* is a preterito-present, § 212; *pille* is irregular in the singular after the same analogy, § 40; *niman* is the infinitive. For the history and use of these periphrastic forms, see Syntax.

168. PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.—*Hæbbe*, imperf. *hæfde*, is a weak verb, § 183; *eom*, imperf. *pæs*, is irregular, § 213; *numen* is the past participle. For history and use, see Syntax.

Weak Imperfect *hæfde* < √*haf-ia* + *de* (§ 160).

	Gothic.		O. H. German.		O. Saxon.	Ang.-Sax.	O. Norse.
	Infinitive.	nasjan,	tuon,	nerjan,	nerjan,	dôn,	telja,
	did.	*saved.*	*did.*	*saved.*	*saved.*	*did.*	*told.*
SING.—	dida	nasi-da	teta	neri-ta	neri-da	dide	tal-da
	didê*s*	nasi-dê*s*	tâti	neri-tô*s*	neri-dô*s*	dide*st*	tal-di*r*
	dida	nasi-da	teta	neri-ta	neri-da	dide	tal-di
PLUR.—	dêdu*m*	nasi-dêdu*m*	tâtum*ês*	neri-tum*ês*	neri-dun	dido*n*	tōl-du*m*
	dêdu*þ*	nasi-dêdu*þ*	tâtu*t*	neri-tu*t*	neri-dun	dido*n*	tōl-du*đ*
	dêdu*n*	nasi-dêdu*n*.	tâtu*n*.	neri-tu*n*	neri-du*n*	dido*n*	tōl-du

169. Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense.

Singular.	Plural
ic nime, (*if*) *I take.*	pê nim*en*, (*if*) *we take.*
þû nime, (*if*) *thou take.*	gê nim*en*, (*if*) *ye take.*
hê nime, (*if*) *he take.*	hî nim*en*, (*if*) *they take.*

Imperfect.

ic nâme, (*if*) *I took.*	pê nâm*en*, (*if*) *we took.*
þû nâme, (*if*) *thou took.*	gê nâm*en*, (*if*) *ye took.*
hê nâme, (*if*) *he took.*	hî nâm*en*, (*if*) *they took.*

Future.

(*If*) *I shall* (*will*) *take.*

ic scyle (pille) nim*an*.	pê scyl*en* (pill*en*) nim*an*.
þû scyle (pille) nim*an*.	gê scyl*en* (pill*en*) nim*an*.
hê scyle (pille) nim*an*.	hî scyl*en* (pill*en*) nim*an*.

Perfect

	Transitive Form.	Intransitive Form.
Sing.	(*If*) *I have taken.*	(*If*) *I have* (*be*) *come.*
	ic hæbbe num*en*.	ic sî cum*en*.
	þû hæbbe num*en*.	þû sî cum*en*.
	hê hæbbe num*en*.	hê sî cum*en*.
Plur.		
	pê hæbb*en* num*en*.	pê sîn cum*ene*.
	gê hæbb*en* num*en*.	gê sîn cum*ene*.
	hî hæbb*en* num*en*.	hî sîn cum*ene*.

Pluper'fect.

Sing.	(*If*) *I had taken.*	(*If*) *I had* (*were*) *come.*
	ic hæf*de* num*en*.	ic pêre cum*en*.
	þû hæf*de* num*en*.	þû pêre cum*en*.
	hê hæf*de* num*en*.	hê pêre cum*en*.
Plur.		
	pê hæf*den* num*en*.	pê pêr*en* cum*ene*.
	gê hæf*den* num*en*.	gê pêr*en* cum*ene*.
	hî hæf*den* num*en*.	hî pêr*en* cum*ene*.

Other Forms: *scyle, scyl-en, -on, -an, -e* (*y*>*i, u, eo*); *hæbben, habban, habbon; sî, sîn* (*î*>*ŷ, îe, eô, ig*); *pêr-en, -an, -on* (*ê*>*ê*). For *sî* may be *beô, pese, peorde;* for *pêre, purde.* § 179.

[§ 168.—*Continued from page* 85.]

Sanskrit *da-dhâ-mi* < √*dhâ*, Greek *τί-θη-μι*, does not occur as an independent verb in Gothic, and the form is supplied by comparison. The reduplication has given rise to a secondary stem, Sanskrit *dadh*, Gothic *dad*, O. H. Ger. *tat*, from which the plural and second singular are formed with the ablaut of the first conjugation. For second singular *-s*, see § 166. In *haf-ia-de* > *hæfde*, *ia* drops and √*a* shifts (§ 41).

170. Subjunctive Present < Optative Stem *nama-i* (§ 162).

	Parent Sp.	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	O. Sax.	O. Norse.
Sing.—1.	namai-m	námêj-am	*νέμοι-μι*	emê-m	nimâu	nimê	nemi
2.	namai-s	námê-s	*νέμοι-ς*	emê-s	nimâi-*s*	nimê-*s*	nemi-*r*
3.	namai-t	námê-t	*νέμοι-*	emê-t	nimâi-	nimê	nemi
Plur.—1.	namai-mas	námê-ma	*νέμοι-μεν*	emê-mus	nimâi-*ma*	nimê-*n*	nemi-*m*
2.	namai-tas	námê-ta	*νέμοι-τε*	emê-tis	nimâi-*þ*	nimê-*n*	nemi-*ð*
3.	namai-nt	námêj-us	*νέμοιε-ν*	emê-nt	nimâi-*na*	nimê-*n*	nemi

O. H. Ger. *neme, nemê-s, neme; nemê-mês, -t, -n.* O. Fries. *nime* throughout. The Latin serves as a future; *emêm* is archaic. O. Sax. has *â=ê: nimân.*

The plural *in Anglo-Saxon ends often in -ân* > *-an, -on* > *-en* > *-e*, §§ 18, 38. *Before a subject pronoun -e is used.*

(*a.*) The long stem ending has worked like the long vowels of feminine nouns (§ 64, 2); the singular is weathered of the personal endings. Plural *m* > *n* is shifting (§ 41, *b*), and the second person conforms with the first and third (§ 40, 1).

(*b.*) The accent in the Sanskrit is the same as in the present indicative; and hence the root vowel is the same; but the stem ending works a-umlaut whenever there is umlaut in the plural indicative; *m* stops it in Saxon *niman.*

(*c.*) The plural subjunctive endings (especially *-an*) are sometimes found in the indicative of auxiliaries, of præteritive presents, and of imperfects, most of which have a subjunctive force. §§ 151, 40.

171. The Subjunctive Imperfect (Optative Perfect) Stem *nanam* + *jâ* > *nêmjâ* (§ 166).

	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Gothic.	O. Saxon.	O. Norse.	O. H. Ger.
Sing.—1.	nêmjấ-m	*νε-νεμ(ηκο)ίη-ν*	nêmjâu	nâmi	nêmi	nâmi
2.	nêmjấ-s	*νε-νεμ(ηκο)ίη-ς*	nêmjei-*s*	nâmî-*s*	nêmi-*r*	nâmî-*s*
3.	nêmjấ-t	*νε-νεμ(ηκο)ίη*	nêmi	nâmi	nêmi	nâmi
Plur.—1.	nêmjấ-ma	*νε-νεμ(ηκο)ίη-μεν*	nêmei-*ma*	nâmî-*n*	nêmi-*m*	nâmî-*mês*
2.	nêmjấ-ta	*νε-νεμ(ηκο)ίη-τε*	nêmei-*þ*	nâmî-*n*	nêmi-*ð*	nâmî-*t*
3.	nêmjús	*νε-νεμ(ηκο)ίη-σαν*	nêmei-*na*	nâmî-*n*	nêmi	nâmî-*n*

The Sanskrit is an uncommon form from the Vedas. The accent on the ending leaves the root to the same changes as in the plural of the imperfect indicative. Anglo Saxon stem *î* > *e* is precession; the personal endings as in the present subjunctive. Conformation with the present brings in the ending *-an, -on*; for *-e*, § 170. O. Fries. *nôme*, throughout.

172. Imperative Mode.

Sing.	Plur.
2. nim, *take.*	nim*að*, *take.*

173. Infinitive.	Gerund.
nim*an*, *to take.*	tô nim*anne*, *to take.*

Present Participle.	Past Participle.
nim*ende*, *taking.*	num*en*, *taken.*

174. Imperative Stem *nama.*

	Sanskrit.	Greek.		Gothic.	O. Saxon.	O. Norse.	O. H. G.
Sing. —	náma	*νέμε*,	*Latin* eme	nim	nim	nem	nim
Plur. —	náma-ta	*νέμε-τε*,	*Latin* emi-te	nimi-*þ*	nima-*d*	nemi-*ð*	nema-*t*

Plural -**tata** > *ta* > *t* (§ 38) > *d* (shifting, § 41, *a*). O. F. = A. Sax.

175. Noun Forms.

1. Infinitive *nam*+*ana*; 2. Gerund. *nam*+*ana*+*ja*.

1. *Dative* ...	nám-anâj-a (§ 79, *a*)	*νέμ-ειν* <-*εναι* (§ 70, *a*)	nim-*an*	nim-*an*	nem-*a*	nem-*an*
2. (§ 120),	nám-anîja, *Latin* em-endo, *O. Saxon* nim-annia > -anna.					nem-*enne*
3. *Pr. Part.*	náma-nt	*νέμο-ντ-ος*; *Lat.* eme-nt-is	nima-*nd(a)-s*	nima-*nd*	nema-*nd-i*	nema-*nd-i*
4. *P. Part.* (*Strong.*)	bhug-ná (*bent*)	*τέκ-νο-ν* (*born*); do-nu-m (*gift*)	numa-*n-s*	numa-*n*	numi-*nn*	ga-nom-*an-ẽr*
5. *P. Part.* (*Weak.*)	na(m)-tá	*νεμ-η-τό-ς*; em(p)-tu-s	nasi-*þ(a)s*	(gi-)neri-*d*	tal-d-*r*	ga-neri-*t*

(*a.*) The dative case ending is gone in Teutonic infinitives. § 38.

(*b.*) Gerund -*enne* > -*ende* (§ 445, 2, *nn* > *nd*, § 27, 5), so in O. N.; M. H. Ger.; Friesic, O. Sax., and O. H. Ger. have a genitive *nim-annias*, *-an-nas* (*-es*); *nem-ennes*; and M. H. German has gen. *nem-endes.*

(*c.*) To these stems of the participles are added suffixes contained in the case endings. §§ 104–106.

(*d.*) The Greek verbals in *-τός* are not counted participles (Hadley, 261, *c*). Only weak verbs have *-ða*, *-da*, in Teutonic. Few verbs have the participle in *-na* in Sanskrit; only relics are found in Greek and Latin, but all the strong verbs use it in Teutonic.

(*e.*) Weak stems in *-ia* and *-ô* have *i*, *e*, *ig* or *ige*, before *-an*, *-anne*, *-end.* § 165, *d.*

176. Periphrastic Conditional Forms.

Potential Mode.

Modal verbs *magan*, *cunnan*, *môtan*, *durran*, *pillan*, *sculan*, *pîtan* > *utan*,
may, can, must, dare, will, shall, let us.

Present Tense.

Sing. Indicative Forms.		Subjunctive Forms.	
mæg, can, môt, dear *meaht, canst, môst, dearst* *mæg, can, môt, dear*	*niman.*	*mæge, cunne, môte, durre* *mæge, cunne, môte, durre* *mæge, cunne, môte, durre*	*niman.*
Plur. *mâgon, cunnon, môton, durron*		*mægen, cunnen, môten, durren, utan*	

Sing. *Imperfect Tense*, Indicative Forms.

meahte, cúde, môste, dorste, polde, sc(e)olde
meahtest, cúdest, môstest, dorstest, poldest, sc(e)oldest
meahte, cúde, môste, dorste, polde, sc(e)olde } *niman.*
Plur.
meahton, cúdon, môston, dorston, poldon, sc(e)oldon

Imperfect Tense, Subjunctive Forms.

Sing. *meahte, cúde, môste, dorste, polde, sc(e)olde*
Plur. *meahten, cúden, môsten, dorsten, polden, sc(e)olden* } *niman.*

Gerundial Form.

I am to take = I must *or* ought to take *or* be taken.

Sing.		Plur.	
ic eom *þú eart* *hê is*	*tô nimanne.*	*pê sind* *gê sind* *hî sind*	*tô nimanne.*

177. Other Periphrastic Forms.

1. *eom* (am) + present participle.

Present..... *eom, eart, is; sind nimende.*
Imperfect..... *pæs, pære, pæs; pæron nimende.*
Future ..... *beôm, bist, bid; beôð nimende.*
sceal pesan nimende.
Infinitive Future... *beôn nimende.*

2. *dôn* (do) + infinitive, § 406, *a*.

Other Forms: *meaht, meahte*, etc. (*ea*>*i*); *mâg-on, -um, -un, -an* (*â*>*æ*); *meahtes; meaht-on, -um, -an, -en, -e* (§§ 166, 170); *can, con; const; cunn-on, -un, -an; cudes; cud-on, -an, -en; môt-on, -um, -un, -an, -en; môt-en, -an, -e; môst-es; môst-um, -on, -an; durre* (*u*>*y*); *durr-on, -an; dorst-on, -en; poldes; pold-on, -um, -un, -an, -e; sc(e)oldes; sc(e)old-on, -un, -an, -en, -e.* Forms of *eom, peorðe*, and *beôm* interchange (§ 178).

178. Passive Voice.

Indicative Mode.

Singular.	Plural.
Present and Perfect, *I am taken* or *have been taken.*	
ic eo*m** (peorđe) num*en.*	pê *sind(on)* (peorđa*đ*) num*ene.*
þû ear*t* (peorđe*st*) num*en.*	gê *sind(on)* (peorđa*đ*) num*ene.*
hê is (peorđe*đ*) num*en.*	hî *sind(on)* (peorđa*đ*) num*ene.*
Past and Pluperfect, *I was taken* or *had been taken.*	
ic pâ̂s (pearđ) num*en.*	pê pâ̂r*on* (purd*on*) num*ene.*
þû pâ̂re (purde) num*en.*	gê pâ̂r*on* (purd*on*) num*ene.*
hê pâ̂s (pearđ) num*en.*	hî pâ̂r*on* (purd*on*) num*ene.*

Future.

1. *I shall be taken.*

ic beô(*m*)* num*en.*	pê beô*đ* num*ene.*
þû bi*st* num*en.*	gê beô*đ* num*ene.*
hê bi*đ* num*en.*	hî beô*đ* num*ene.*

2. *I shall* or *will be taken.*

ic sceal (pille) beô*n* num*en.*	pê sculo*n* (pilla*đ*) beô*n* num*ene.*
þû scealt (pilt) beô*n* num*en.*	gê sculo*n* (pilla*đ*) beô*n* num*ene.*
hê sceal (pille) beô*n* num*en.*	hî sculo*n* (pilla*đ*) beô*n* num*ene.*

Perfect, *I have been taken.*

ic eom geporden numen.	*pê sind(on) gepordene numene.*
þû eart geporden numen.	*gê sind(on) gepordene numene.*
hê is geporden numen.	*hî sind(on) gepordene numene.*

Pluperfect, *I had been taken.*

ic pæs geporden numen.	*pê pâ̂ron gepordene numene.*
þû pâ̂re geporden numen.	*gê pâ̂ron gepordene numene.*
hê pæs geporden numen.	*hî pâ̂ron gepordene numene.*

179. Subjunctive Mode.

Present.

(If) I be taken.

Sing.	Plur.
ic (þû, hê) beô num*en.*	pê (gê, hî) beô*n* num*ene.*

* The forms of *peorđe*, *eom*, and *beôm* interchange.

Past.

(If) I were taken.

SING.	PLUR.
ic (þû, hê) pǽre numen.	pê (gê, hî) pǽren numene.

180. IMPERATIVE MODE.

SING. *Be thou taken.*	PLUR. *Be ye taken.*
pes þû numen.	pesað gê numene.

181. INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
beôn numen, *to be taken.*	numen, *taken.*

---

182. PERIPHRASTIC CONDITIONAL (§ 176).

POTENTIAL MODE.

Present Tense.

SING. Indicative Forms.		Subjunctive Forms.	
mæg (&c.)	*beôn numen(e).*	*mǽge* (&c.)	*beôn numen(e).*
meaht (&c.)		*mǽge* (&c.)	
mæg (&c.)		*mǽge* (&c.)	
PLUR.			
mâgon (&c.)		*mǽgen* (&c.)	

Imperfect.

SING.			
meahte (&c.)	*beôn numen(e).*	*meahte* (&c.)	*beôn numen(e).*
meahtest (&c.)		*meahte* (&c.)	
meahte (&c.)		*meahte* (&c.)	
PLUR.			
meahton (&c.)		*meahten* (&c.)	

For *beón* (infinitive) is found *pesan* or *peorđan*. The forms interchange of *beó, sî, pese, peorđe;* of *pǽre, purde;* of *pes, beó, peorđ*. *Bist, bið* (*i*>*y*); *beó, beóð* (*eó*<*ió*). Ælfric's grammar has indic. pres. *eom*, imperf. *pæs*, fut. *beó*, perf. *pæs fulfremedlice* (completely), pluperf. *pæs gefyrn* (formerly); subjunctive for a wish, pres. *beó gyt* (yet), imperf. *pǽre*, pluperf. *pǽre fulfremedlîce;* for a condition, pres. *eom nu* (now), imperf. *pæs*, fut. *beó gyt* (yet); imperative *sî;* infinitive *beón*.

183. WEAK VERBS.—(Conjugation VI.)

Active Voice.

Pres. Infinitive.	Imperf. Indicative.	Passive Participle.
ner*ian*, *save;*	ner*ede;*	ner*ed.*
hŷr*an*, *hear;*	hŷr*de;*	hŷr*ed.*
luf*ian*, *love;*	luf*ôde;*	(*ge-*)luf*ôd.*

Indicative Mode.

Present (and Future) Tense (§ 165, *d*).

I save, hear, love.

Singular.	Plural.
ic ner*ie*, hŷr*e*, luf*ige.*	pê ner*iađ*, hŷr*ađ*, luf*iađ.*
þû ner*est*, hŷr*est*, luf*âst.*	gê ner*iađ*, hŷr*ađ*, luf*iađ.*
hê ner*eđ*, hŷr*eđ*, luf*âđ.*	hî ner*iađ*, hŷr*ađ*, luf*iađ.*

Imperfect (§§ 160, 166, 168).

I saved, heard, loved.

ic ner*ede*, hŷr*de*, luf*ôde.*	pê ner*edon*, hŷr*don*, luf*ôdon.*
þû ner*edest*, hŷr*dest*, luf*ôdest.*	gê ner*edon*, hŷr*don*, luf*ôdon.*
hê ner*ede*, hŷr*de*, luf*ôde.*	hî ner*edon*, hŷr*don*, luf*ôdon.*

Future (§ 167).

I shall (will) save, hear, love.

ic sceal (pill*e*) þû sceal*t* (pil*t*) hê sceal (pill*e*)	ner*ian*, hŷr*an*, luf*ian.*	pê scul*on* (pill*ađ*) gê scul*on* (pill*ađ*) hî scul*on* (pill*ađ*)	ner*ian*, hŷr*an*, luf*ian.*

Perfect (§ 168).

Transitive.	Intransitive.
I have saved, heard, loved.	*I have (am) returned.*
Sing.	
ic hæbb*e* þû hæf*st*, haf*âst* hê hæf*đ*, haf*âđ* } ner*ed*, hŷr*ed*, luf*ôd.*	ic eo*m* þû ear*t* hê is } gecyrr*ed.*
Plur.	
pê habb*ađ* gê habb*ađ* hî habb*ađ* } ner*ed*, hŷr*ed*, luf*ôd.*	pê s*ind* (sindon) gê s*ind* (sindon) hî s*ind* (sindon) } gecyrr*ede.*

Ia, iga, igea, ga interchange, and *ie, ige, ge:* *ô*>(*ă, ŭ*)>plur. *e.* For variations of auxiliaries and endings, see corresponding tenses of strong verbs.

Pluper'fect (§ 168).

Transitive.	Intransitive.
I had saved, heard, loved.	*I had (was) returned.*
Sing.	
ic hæf*de* þû hæf*dest* hê hæf*de* } nere*d*, hŷre*d*, lufó*d*.	ic pæs þû pâre hê pæs } gecyrre*d*.
Plur.	
pê hæf*don* gê hæf*don* hî hæf*don* } nere*d*, hŷre*d*, lufó*d*.	pê pâr*on* gê pâr*on* hî pâr*on* } gecyrr*ede*.

184. Subjunctive Mode.

Present (§ 170).

(If) I save, hear, love.

Singular.	Plural.
ic þû hê } ner*ie*, hŷre, luf*ige*.	pê gê hî } ner*ien*, hŷr*en*, luf*igen*.

Imperfect (§ 171).

(If) I saved, heard, loved.

ic þû hê } nere*de*, hŷr*de*, lufó*de*.	pê gê hî } nere*den*, hŷr*den*, lufó*den*.

Future (§ 167).

(If) I shall (will) save, hear, love.

ic scyle (pille) þû scyle (pille) hê scyle (pille) } ner*ian*, hŷr*an*, luf*ian*.	pê scyl*en* (pill*en*) gê scyl*en* (pill*en*) hî scyl*en* (pill*en*) } ner*ian*, hŷr*an*, luf*ian*.

Perfect (§ 168).

Transitive.	Intransitive.
(If I) have saved, &c.	*(If I) have (be) returned.*
Sing. hæbbe Plur. hæbb*en* } nere*d*, hŷre*d*, lufó*d*.	sî sîn } gecyrre*d*(*e*).

Pluper'fect (§ 168).

(If I) had saved, &c.	*(If I) had (were) returned.*
Sing. hæfde Plur. hæfd*en* } nere*d*, hŷre*d*, lufó*d*.	pâre pâr*en* } gecyrre*d*(*e*).

185. IMPERATIVE MODE (§ 174).

Save, hear, love.

SING.	PLUR.
2. nere, hŷr, lufa.	neriad, hŷrad, lufiad.

186. INFINITIVE MODE (§ 175).

To save, hear, love.

Present. ner*ian* > ner*igan*, ner*igean*, ner*gan*; hŷr*an*; luf*ian* > luf*igan*, luf*igean*.

Gerund. tô ner*ianne*, hŷr*anne*, luf*ianne*.

PARTICIPLES.

Saving, hearing, loving.

Present. ner*iende*, hŷr*ende*, luf*igende*.

saved. heard. loved.

Past.... ner*ed*, hŷr*ed*, (*ge*-)luf*od*.

187. The special periphrastic forms and the whole passive voice of weak verbs are conjugated with the same auxiliaries as those of strong verbs (§§ 176–182).

---

188. PRESENTS (*Weak*).

(*a.*) Like *nerian* inflect stems in *-ia* from short roots: *derian*, hurt; *helian*, cover; *hegian*, hedge; *scerian*, apportion; *spyrian*, speer; *sylian*, soil; *punian*, thunder, etc.

(*b.*) But many stems in *-ia* from short roots have compensative gemination of their last consonant where it preceded *i*— (throughout the present, except in the indicative singular second and third, and the imperative singular); *ci* > *cc*, *di* > *dd*, *fi* > *bb*, *gi* > *cg*, *li* > *ll*, etc.; indicative *lecge* (< *legie*), lay, *legest*, *leged*; *lecgad* (< *legiad*); subjunctive *lecge*, *lecgen*; imperative *lege*, *lecgad*; infinitive *lecgan*; part. pres. *lecgende*; part. past *leged*. So *reccan*, reach; *hreddan*, rescue; *habban*, have; *sellan*, give; *tellan*, tell; *fremman*, frame; *clynnan*, clang; *dippan*, dip; *cnyssan*, knock; *settan*, set, etc.

(*c.*) Like *hŷran* inflect stems in *-ia* > *-e* > — from long roots: *dælan*, deal; *dēman*, deem; *belǣpan*, leave; *mǣnan*, mean; *sprengan*, spring; *styrman*, storm; *cennan*, bring forth; *cyssan*, kiss, etc. Infinitives in *-ean* occur: *sēc-ean*, § 175, *e*.

(*d.*) Like *lufian* inflect stems showing *-ô* in the imperfect: *ârian*, honor; *beorhtian*, shine; *cleopian*, call; *hopian*, hope. Past participles have *ô, ă, e; gegearp-ôd, -ăd, -ed*, prepared.

189. SYNCOPATED IMPERFECTS (*Weak*).

(*a.*) Stem *-e* < *-ia* is syncopated after long roots: *cîg-an*, call, *cîg-de; dæ̂l-on*, deal, *dæ̂l-de; dêm-an*, deem, *dêm-de; drêf-an*, trouble, *drêf-de; fêd-an*, feed; *hêd-an*, heed; *hŷr-an*, hear; *læ̂d-an*, lead; *be-læ̂p-an*, leave; *mêen-an*, mean; *nŷd-an*, urge; *rêd-an*, read; *spêd-an*, speed; *spreng-an*, spring, *spreng-de; bærn-an*, burn, *bærn-de; styrm-an*, storm; so *sep-de* and *sep-te*, showed.

(*b.*) Assimilation.—After a surd, *-d* becomes surd (*-t*). (Surds *p, t, c* (*x*), *ss, h*, not *f* or *s* alone, §§ 17, 30): *ræ̂p-an*, bind, *ræ̂p-te; bêt-an*, better, *bêt-te; grêt-an*, greet, *grêt-te; mêt-an*, meet, *mêt-te; drenc-an*, drench, *drenc-te; lŷx-an*, shine, *lŷx-te;* but *lŷs-an*, release, *lŷs-de; fŷs-an*, haste, *fŷs-de; ræ̂s-an*, rush, *ræ̂s-de.*

(*c.*) Dissimilation.—The mute *c* becomes continuous (*h*) before *-t: tæ̂c-an*, teach, *tæ̂h-te; êc-an*, eke, *êh-te* and *êc-te*, 36, 3.

(*d.*) Rückumlaut.—Themes in *ecg; ecc, ell; enc, eng; êc; ycg, ync*, i-umlaut for *acg; acc, all; anc, ang; ôc; ucg, unc*, may retain *a* (> *æ; ea; o*); *ô; u* > *o* in syncopated imperfects (§§ 209–211): *lecgan*, lay, *lægde; reccan*, rule, *reahte; cpellan*, kill, *cpealde; þencan*, think, *þohte; brengan*, bring, *brohte; rêcan*, reck, *rôhte; bycgan*, buy, *bohte; þyncan*, seem, *þohte.*

(*e.*) Gemination is simplified, and *mn*>*m* (Rule 13, page 10): *cenn-an*, beget, *cen-de; clypp-an*, clip, *clip-te; cyss-an*, kiss, *cys-te; dypp-an*, dip, *dyp-te; êht-an*, pursue, *êhte; fyll-an*, fill, *fyl-de; gyrd-an*, gird, *gyrde; hredd-an*, rescue, *hredde; hyrd-an*, harden, *hyrde; hyrt-an*, hearten, *hyrte; hæft-an*, bind, *hæfte; lecg-an*, lay, *leg-de; merr-an*, mar, *mer-de; mynt-an*, purpose, *mynte; nemn-an*, name, *nem-de; rest-an*, rest, *reste; riht-an*, right, *rihte; scild-an*, guard, *scilde; send-an*, send, *sende; spill-an*, spill, *spil-de; sett-an*, set, *sette; still-an*, spring, *stil-de; stylt-an*, stand astonished, *stylte; pemm-an*, spoil, *pem-de.*

(*f.*) Ecthlipsis occurs (*g*): *cêgan*, call, *cêgde, cêde.* See § 209.

190. Past Participles are syncopated like imperfects in verbs having rückumlaut, often in other verbs having a surd root (§ 189, *b*), less often in other verbs: *sellan*, give, *sealde, seald; ge-sêc-an*, seek, *ge-sôh-te, gesôht; sett-an*, set, *sette, seted* and *set; send-an*, send, *sende, sended* and *send; heân*, raise, *heâd*, raised.

191. Presents.—*Illustrations of Umlaut.*

Conjugation.....	(I.)	(I.)	(I.)	(III.)	(III.)
	drep*an*, *strike.*	cum*an*, *come.*	beorg*an*, *guard.*	scûf*an*, *shove.*	creôp*an*, *creep.*
Sing.— 1.	drep*e*	cum*e*	beorg*e*	scûf*e*	creôp*e*
2.	drip(*e*)*st* / drep*est*	cym(*e*)*st* / cum*est*	byrh*st* / beorg*est*(*y*)	scŷf(*e*)*st* / scûf*est*	crŷp(*e*)*st* / creôp*est*
3.	drip(*e*)*ð* / drep*eð*	cym(*e*)*ð* / cum*eð*	byrh*ð* / beorg*eð*(*y*)	scŷf(*e*)*ð* (*t*) / scûf*eð*	crŷp(*e*)*ð* / creôp*eð*
Plur.—	drep*að*	cum*að*	beorg*að*	scûf*að*	creôp*að*

Conjugation...	(IV.)	(IV.)	(V.)	(V.)	(V.)
	far*an*, *fare.*	bac*an*, *bake.*	feall*an*, *fall.*	lâc*an*, *leap.*	grôp*an*, *grow.*
Sing.— 1.	far*e*	bac*e*	feall*e*	lâc*e*	grôp*e*
2.	fær(*e*)*st* / far*est*	bec*st* / bac*est*	fel*st* / feall*est*	lâc*st* / lâc*est*	grêp*st* / grôp*est*
3.	fær(*e*)*ð* / far*eð*	bec*ð* / bac*eð*	fel*ð* / feall*eð*	lâc(*e*)*ð* / lâc*eð*	grêp*ð* / grôp*eð*
Plur.—	far*að*	bac*að*	feall*að*	lâc*að*	grôp*að*

192. *Illustrations of Assimilation.*

Conjugation....	(I.)	(I.)	(I.)	(I.)	(I.)
	et*an*, *eat.*	tred*an*, *tread.*	bind*an*, *bind.*	cpeð*an*, *quoth.*	les*an*, *collect.*
Sing.— 1.	et*e*	tred*e*	bind*e*	cpeð*e*	les*e*
2.	it(*e*)*st* / et*est*	tri(de)*st* / tred*est*	bin(t)*st* / bind*est*	cpi*st* / cpeð*est*	li*st* / les*est*
3.	it*eð*, it / et*eð*	trit / tred*eð*(*i*)	bint / bind*eð*	cpiđ / cpeð*eð*	li*st* / les*eð*
Plur.—	et*að*	tred*að*	bind*að*	cpeð*að*	les*að*

Conjugation.....	(I.)	(III.)	(IV.) sleân<	(III.) fleôn<	(I.)
	berst*an*, *burst.*	leôg*an*, *lie.*	sleah*an*, *slay.*	fleoh*an*, *flee.*	licg*an*, *lie.*
Sing.— 1.	berst*e*	leôg*e*	sleâ	fleô	licg*e*
2.	birst / berst*est*	lŷh*st* / leôg*est*	sleh*st* (*y*) / slea*gest*	flŷh*st*	lig*st* / licg*est*
3.	birst(*eð*) / berst*eð*	lŷh*ð* / leôg*eð*	sleh*ð* (*y*) / slea*geð*	flŷh*ð*	li(g)*ð* / li(c)g*eð*
Plur.—	berst*að*	leog*að*	sleâ*ð*	fleô*ð*	licg*að*

Variations of Present Indicative.

193. Stem *-i* > *-e* in the singular second and third person works on the root vowel differently from *-a* > *-e* of the other persons.

(1.) Root *i* is here unchanged, while other forms have a-umlaut (*i* > *e*), § 32, or breaking (*i* > *eo*), § 33: *drepan; steorfan*, starve, *steorfe, stirf(e)st, stirf(e)ð, steorfað;* but *y*, not *i*, is usually found with *eo*, and often incorrectly with *e*.

(2.) Here is i-umlaut of a, ea, eo, u, â, ô, eâ, eô, û, to e, e(y), y, y, æ, ê, ê(ŷ), ŷ, ŷ: *bacan, feallan, sleahan* > *sleðn, beorgan, cuman, lâcan, grôpan, hleâpan, creôpan, scûfan.* § 32.

(3.) Here is shifting of *a* > *æ: faran; a* > *e* is rare. § 41.

194. Stem *-i* > *-e* of the singular second and third person is often syncopated in strong verbs and weak verbs of the first class. Then Variation of root vowel remains,
Assimilation of consonants follows,
Gemination is simplified: *etan, tð* > *t* (§ 35, *B*); *tredan, dst* > *st* (§ 35, *A*), *dð* > *t* (§ 36, 5); *bindan, ndst* > *ntst* > *nst* (§ 35, *A*), *ndð* > *nt* (§ 36, 5); *cpeðan, ðst* > *st* (§ 35, *A*), *ðð* > *ð* (§ 20, 13); *lesan, sst* > *st* (§ 20, 13), *sð* > *st* (§ 35, *B*); *berstan, stst* > *st, stð* > *st* (§ 35, *B*); *leôgan, gst* > *hst, gð* > *hð* (§ 35, *B*); *drîfan*, drive, *drîf(e)st, drîf(e)ð* or *drîft* (§ 35, *B*).

(*a.*) The ending of the third person *-ð* (*-þ*) was a surd (*þ*) when these changes were established (e. g. *ðð* > *t*). Gothic grammars give *-þ*, but *-d* is often in the manuscripts; Old Saxon grammars give *-d*, but *-th* is often found. English has uniformly *-th* = *-þ*. In Gothic, any dental + a preceding dental = *st*; + a preceding labial = *ft*; + a preceding guttural = *ht*, a law which illustrates the frequent appearance of final *t* in Anglo-Saxon. In Anglo-Saxon folkspeech there was doubtless variation in the sound of this ending, as in Gothic and Old Saxon; in syncopated forms it was surd after surds: *crŷpð* (*þ*), creeps; *drincð* (*þ*), drinks; sonant after sonants (rare): *bringð*, brings (z); but the predominant sound was always surd, as in Gothic and English. Compare *liget* for *ligeð*, lieth.

(*b.*) Of the three forms given of the singular second and third persons, the syncopated (*dripð*) is the common prose form, the unsyncopated, unvaried, or varied by i-umlaut (*dripeð, byrgeð*) is more frequent in poetry, the varied by a-umlaut (*drepeð*) is a later conformation with the other persons.

195. Verbs from roots in *-h* contract (§ 52): *sleðn* < *sleahan; fleôn* > *fleohan.*

196. Stems in *-ia* with compensative gemination hold it except

in the indicative singular second and third—sometimes throughout; but the imperative singular has *-e* (§§ 188, *b*; 199; 207, *d*): *licgan* < *ligian*, lie, imperative *lige*.

197. VARIATION IN STRONG IMPERFECTS.

	cpeđan, *quoth.*	sleahan > slcân, *slay.*	seahan > seôn, *see.*	ceôsan, *choose.*
SING.—cpæđ		slôh (*g*)	seah	ceâs
	cpǽde	slôge	sǽge, sâpe	cure
	cpæđ	slôh (*g*)	seah	ceâs
PLUR.—cpǽdon		slôgon	sǽgon, sâpon	curon
PART.—cpeden		slægen	sepen, segen	coren:

đ > *d* (§ 36, 2); *h* > *g* (§ 36, 2); *s* > *r* (§ 35, 3, *b*); *h* > *p* in *sâpe* (Gothic *saihvan*) is really *hp* > *p* (§ 35, 3, *b*). So inflect *lîđan*, *lâđ*, *lidon*, sail, etc. (§ 205); *seôđan*, *seđđ*, *sudon*, seethe, etc. (§ 206); *teâh*, *tuge* < *teôhan*, tug; *freôsan*, freeze (frore); *forleôsan*, lose (forlorn); *hreôsan*, rush; *pesan*, be, p. p. *pesen*, etc. (§ 206).

198. SUMMARY OF VARIATIONS IN CONJUGATION.

(*a*.) The root vowel may take five forms:

(1.) Throughout the present except the indicative singular second and third persons.

(2.) In the indicative singular second and third persons.

(3.) In the imperfect singular first and third persons.

(4.) In the other forms of the imperfect.

(5.) In the passive participle.

(*b*.) Consonant assimilation works mainly on the indicative singular second and third persons, and on the weak imperfects and passive participles.

(*c*.) We give the present indicative singular first, second, and third persons, the imperfect indicative singular first person and plural first person, and the passive participle.

(*d*.) Only the varied syncopated forms of the present indicative second and third persons are often given; the other regular forms generally occur, but may be easily supplied (§ 193, *b*). Any variation of vowel, or assimilation of consonants, which has been given in the phonology, and is here recorded as found in any verb, may be looked for with any similar verb. The variations of the imperfect plural *-on* (§§ 166, 170) are not given. The final root consonants determine the arrangement, —labials, dentals, gutturals. Vowels in parenthesis after a word are variations of its root vowels.

First Conjugation, √a.

199.—I. Roots ending in a single consonant not a liquid:

Ablaut (*i; a, â; i*)>(*e; æ, æ̂; e*); *i*>*e*, a-umlaut; *a*>*æ*, *â*>*æ̂*>*ê*, shifting (§§ 158, 32, 41); (*y, ie*)<*i*, bad spelling, is frequent; variation of consonants, § 194. Layamon and Ormulum hold the Ang.-Sax. ablaut, though with varying spelling; in Old English it is broken up, especially in the imperfect, where both numbers at last are alike. English ablaut (*ēe, ēa; a, a; ēe, ēa*)=(*î; ă* or *ĕ; î*): *ēat, āte* (*ēt*), *ēāten*; for stems with *g*-breaking and in *-ia* (*ı; a, a; i*): *bid, bădе, bidden; e*>*î*, progression (§ 38); *æ*>*e*, shifting (§ 41). Most of these verbs vary in English from their type in conformation with the forms in § 200, and with weak verbs.

Indicative Present. 1st. 2d. 3d.	Imperf. Sing. Plur.	Part. Past.	
drepe, drip(e)st, drip(e)ð (*þ*);	*dræp, drǣpon;*	*drepen* (*o*), § 200.	strike.
spefe, spif(e)st, spif(e)ð (*þ, t*);	*spæf, spǣfon;*	*spefen,*	sleep.
pefe, pif(e)st, pif(e)ð (*þ, t*);	*pæf, pǣfon* (*ê*);	*pefen,*	weave.
ete, it(e)st, it iteð (*y, ie, e*);	*æt, ǣton;*	*eten,*	eat.
frete, frit(e)st, frit friteð;	*fræt, frǣton;*	*freten,*	eat up.
mete, mit(e)st, mit;	*mæt, mǣton;*	*meten,*	mete.
cnede, cni(de)st, cnit;	*cnæd, cnǣdon;*	*cneden,*	knead.
trede, trist trides, trit trideð (*y, ie, e*);	*træd, trǣdon;*	*treden,*	tread.
cpeðe, cpĭst, cpið (*y*) *cpeðeð;*	*cpæð, cpǣdon;*	*cpeden,*	quoth.
lese, list, list;	*læs, lǣson;*	*lesen,*	gather.
ge-nese, -nist, -nist;	*-næs, -nǣson;*	*-nesen,*	recover.
(*pese, pesest, pesed*) rare;	*pæs, pǣron;*	*ge-pesen,*	be
sp(r)ece (*æ*), *spricst, spricð* (*þ*);	*spræc, sprǣcon;*	*sprecen,*	speak.
prece, pricst, pricð (*þ*);	*præc, prǣcon;*	*precen,*	wreak.
pege, pigst (*hst*), *pigð* (*hð*);	*pæg* (*h*), *pǣgon* (*â, ê*);	*pegen,*	carry.

brece, see § 200; *hpete*, whet; *peðe*, bind; *stece*, stick, are doubtful; so also (*fitan, arripere; hnipan, collabi; gipan, hiare; screpe*, scrape; *pede*, wed).

g-breaking: *i*>(*ie, io, eo*>*y*); *a*>*ea*>*e, â*>*eâ*>*ê*. §§ 33, 35.

gife (*ie*, &c.), *gifst, gif(e)ð* (*þ*); *geaf* (*æ, e*), *geâfon* (*ê*); *gifen,* give.
for-gite (*ie*, &c.), *-gitst, -git;* *-geat* (*æ, e*), *-geâton* (*ê*); *-giten,* forget.

h-breaking: *i*>*eo, a*>*ea*>*e*. §§ 33, 35.

seohe (*seô*), *sihst, si(h)ð* (*y*>*eo*); *seah, sǣgon* (*ê*), *sâpon;* *ge-sepen, -g-,* see.
ge-feohe (*-feó*), *-fihst, -fi(h)ð;* *-feah* (*e*), *-fǣgon;* *-fegen,* rejoice.

Stems in *-ia* (compensative gemination, § 196), no a-umlaut, or late.

The imperative has *-e: frige, site*, but plur. *þicgeað* occurs.

fricge, frig(e)st (*hst*), *frig(e)ð* (*hð, þ*);	*fræg, frǣgon;*	*ge-frigen* (*e, æ*),	inquire.
licge, ligst, lig(e)ð(*t*), *lið* (*þ*);	*læg, lǣgon* (*â, ê*);	*ligen,*	lie.

Indicative Present. 1st.	2d.	3d.	Imperf. Sing.	Plur.	Part. Past.	
þicge,	*þigst*,	*þig(e)đ (hđ)*;	*þeah (þah)*,	*þǣgon (â, ê)*;	*þigen*,	take.
sitte,	*sit(e)st*,	*sit*;	*sæt*,	*sǣton*;	*ge-seten*,	sit.
bidde,	*bi(de)st*,	*bit*;	*bæd*,	*bǣdon*;	*beden*,	bid.

Add *fecge*, *feah*, fetch; *spritte*, sprout; (*hlicce*, blame; *snicce*, sneak)?

200.—II. Roots ending in a single liquid:

Ablaut (*i*; *a*, *â*; *u*)>(*i* (*eo*, *y*); *o*, *ô*; *u*) (*e*; *æ*, *ǣ*; *o*); *i*>(*eo*, *y*), *a*>*o*, *â*>*ô*, *m*-assimilation; *i*>*e*, *u*>*o*, a-umlaut; *a*>*æ*, *â*>*ǣ*, shifting; *i*>*eo*, *a*>*ea*, *r*-breaking; *eo*>*y*, i-umlaut: (*æ*, *ea*)>*e*, shifting. §§ 158, 35, 32, 41.

English ablaut (*ēa*; *ă* or *ō*; *ō*): *stēal*, *stōle*, *stōlen*; *ēa*, *ă*, § 199; *ō* lengthened in the past part., conformation in the imperfect.

nime (eo, y), *nim(e)st*, *nim(e)đ*;	*nam (o)*, *nâmon (ô)*;	*numen*,	take.
cpime> *cume* } *cim(e)st* *cym(e)st* } *cim(e)đ* *cym(e)đ* }	*cpam (o)* *cŏm* } *cpâmon (ô)* *cômon* }	*cumen* (*y*), }	come.
cpele, *cpilst*, *cpilđ*;	*cpæl*, *cpǣlon*;	*cpolen*,	kill.
ge-dpele, *-dpilst*, *-dpilđ*;	*-dpæl*, *-dpǣlon*;	*-dpolen*,	err.
hele, *hilst*, *hilđ*;	*hæl*, *hǣlon*;	*holen*,	conceal.
hpele, *hpilst*, *hpilđ*;	*hpæl*, *hpǣlon*;	*hpolen*,	sound.
stele, *stilst*, *stilđ*;	*stæl*, *stǣlon*;	*stolen*,	steal.
spele, *spilst*, *spilđ*;	*spæl*, *spǣlon*;	*spolen*,	sweal.
bere, *birst (y)*, *birđ (y)*;	*bær*, *bǣron*;	*boren*,	bear.
scere (eo), *scirst (y)*, *scirđ (y)*;	*scær (ea, e)*, *scǣron*;	*scoren*,	shear.
tere, *tirst*, *tirđ (y)*;	*tær*, *tǣron*;	*toren*,	tear.
ge-þpere, *-þpirst*, *-þpirđ*;	*-þpær*, *-þpǣron*;	*-þporen* *-þuren* *-þrûen*, }	weld.
brece, *bricst*, *bricđ (þ)*;	*bræc*, *brǣcon*;	*brocen*,	break.

201.—III. Roots ending in two consonants, the first a nasal:

Ablaut (*i*; *a*, *u*; *u*); *i*>*y*, bad spelling, is frequent; *a*>*o*, nasal assimilation (§§ 158, 35); variation of consonants, § 194.

Final gemination is often preserved. Unsyncopated forms are very common (§ 194). English ablaut (*i*; *a* or *u*; *u*): *swim*, *swam* or *swum*, *swum*; but stems in *-nd* have progression (*ī*; *ou*; *ou*)=*âi*; *âu*; *âu*): *fīnd*, *found*.

hlimme, *hlimst*, *hlimđ*;	*hlam(o)*, *hlummon*;	*hlummen*,	sound.
grimme, *grimst*, *grimđ*;	*gram (o)*, *grummon*;	*grummen*,	rage.
spimme, *spimst*, *spimđ*;	*spam (o)*, *spummon*;	*spummen*,	swim.
climbe (§ 36), *climst*, *climđ*;	*clamb (omm)*, *clumbon*;	*clumben*,	climb.
ge-limpe, *-limpst*, *-limpđ (þ)*;	*-lămp*, *-lumpon*;	*-lumpen*,	happen.
ge-rimpe, *-rimpst*, *-rimpđ (þ)*;	*-ramp*, *-rumpon*;	*-rumpen*,	rumple.
brinne (*beorne*, § 204), *brinst*, *brinđ*; }	*bran*, *brunnon*;	*brunnen*,	burn.
on-ginne, *-ginst*, *-ginđ*;	*-gan*, *-gunnon*;	*-gunnen*,	begin.

b-linne, linst, lin(ni)d;	*lan, lunnon;*	*lunnen,*	cease.
rinne (eorne, § 203), rinst, rind;	*ran, runnon;*	*runnen,*	run.
sinne, sinst, sind;	*san, sunnon;*	*sunnen,*	think.
spinne, spinst, spind;	*span, spunnon;*	*spunnen,*	spin.
pinne, pinst, pind;	*pan, punnon;*	*punnen,*	fight (win).
stinte, stin(t)st, stint;	*stant, stunton;*	*stunten,*	stint.
þrinte, þrin(t)st, þrint;	*þrant, þrunton;*	*þrunten,*	swell.
binde, bin(t)st, bint;	*band (o), bundon;*	*bunden,*	bind.
finde, fin(t)st, fint; (*funde*)	*fand (o), fundon;*	*funden,*	find.
grinde, grin(t)st, grint;	*grand, grundon;*	*grunden,*	grind.
hrinde, hrin(t)st, hrint;	*hrand, hrundon;*	*hrunden,*	push.
spinde, spin(t)st, spint;	*spand, spundon;*	*spunden,*	pine (swoon).
þinde, þin(t)st, þint;	*þand, þundon;*	*þunden,*	swell.
pinde, pin(t)st, pint;	*pand, pundon;*	*punden,*	wind.
crince, crincst, crincd (þ);	*cranc, cruncon;*	*cruncen,*	yield (cringe).
â-cpince, -cpincst, -cpincd (þ);	*-cpanc, -cpuncon;*	*-cpuncen,*	go out (quench)
drince, drincst, drincd (þ);	*dranc, druncon;*	*druncen,*	drink.
for-scrince, -scrincst, -scrincd (þ);	*-scranc, -scruncon;*	*-scruncen,*	shrink.
since, sincst, sincd (þ);	*sanc, suncon;*	*suncen,*	sink.
stince, stincst, stincd (þ);	*stanc, stuncon;*	*stuncen,*	stink.
spince, spincst, spincd (þ);	*spanc, spuncon;*	*spuncen,*	toil.
bringe (cge), bringst, bringd;	*brang (o), brungon;*	*brungen,*	bring.
clinge, clingst, clingd;	*clang, clungon;*	*clungon,*	wither (cling).
cringe(cge), cring(e)st, cring(e)d;	*crang (o), crungon;*	*crungen,*	fall, cringe.
ge-fringe, -fring(e)st, -fring(e)d;	*-frang, -frungon;*	*-frungen,*	ask.
geonge;	*gang, gungon;*		go.
gringe, gring(e)st, gring(e)d;	*grang, grungon;*	*grungen,*	fall, cringe.
singe, sing(e)st, sing(e)d;	*sang (o), sungon;*	*sungen,*	sing.
springe, spring(e)st, spring(e)d;	*sprang (o), sprungon;*	*sprungen,*	spring.
stinge, sting(e)st, sting(e)d;	*stang, stungon;*	*stungen,*	sting.
spinge, sping(e)st, sping(e)d;	*spang (o), spungon;*	*spungen,*	swing.
ge-þinge, -þing(e)st, -þing(e)d;	*-þang (o), -þungon;*	*-þungen,*	grow.
þringe, þring(e)st, þring(e)d;	*þrang (o), þrungon;*	*þrungen,*	throng.
(*þpinge, þping(e)st, þping(e)d;*	*þpang, þpungon;*	*þpungen),*	*Dict.* constrain.
pringe, pring(e)st, pring(e)d;	*prang (o), prungon;*	*prungen,*	wring.

Add *scrimme*, shrimp; *slincan*, slink; *slingan*, sling.

202.—IV. Root in two consonants, the first *g*, or three consonants with metathesis of *r*:

Ablaut (*i*; *a*, *u*; *u*) > (*e*; *æ*, *u*; *o*); *i* > *e*, *u* > *o*, a-umlaut (§ 32); *a* > *æ* > *e*, shifting (§ 41). Umlaut and shifting stopped by *n*. §§ 200, 201.

	Indicative Present.		Imperf. Sing.	Plur.	Part. Past.	
1st.	2d.	3d.				
hregde, *brede*	*bregdest*, *bri(t)st*	*bregdeđ*, *brit*	*brægd*, *bræd*	*brugdon*, *brudon*	*brogden* (*e*), *broden*, *breden*, § 199	braid.
stregde, *strede*	*strigdest*, *stri(t)st*	*strigdeđ*, *strit*	*strægd*, *stræd*	*strugdon*	*strogden*	strow, sprinkle.
frigne (*e r*), *frine*	*frinst*	*frint*	*frægd*(*e*)*n* (*e*), *fran*	*frugnon*, *frunon*	*frugnen*, *frunen*	ask.

berste, *birst*, *birst*(*eđ*) (*ie*); *bærst*, *burston*; *borsten*, burst.
þersce, *þirscest*, *þirsceđ*; *þærsc*, *þurscon*; *þorscen*, thresh.

203.—V. Root in two consonants, first a trill (*l* or *r*):

(*a*.) Ablaut (*i*; *a*, *u*; *u*) > (*e*; *ea*, *u*; *o*); *i* > *e*, *u* > *o*, a-umlaut (§ 32); *a* > *ea* (l-breaking, § 33) > *eo* (irregular spelling), or *pea* > *peo*, p-assimilation (§ 35)? Unsyncopated forms in *e* are common: *helpest*, *helpeđ*. English ablaut (*e*; *ă*, *ĕ* or *ō*; *ō*); *ea* > *ă* or *ĕ*, shifting, § 38, *A*; *ō*, § 200; but all imperfects have become weak: *help*; (*hălp*, *hĕlp*, *hōlp*), *helped*; (*hōlpen*), *helped*.

belle, *bilst*, *bilđ*;	*beal*, *bullon*;	*bollen*,	bellow.
spelle, *spilst*, *spilđ*;	*speal* (*speoll*, Rask), *spullon*;	*spollen*,	swell.
helpe, *hilpst* (*e*), *hilpđ* (*þ*);	*healp*, *hulpen*;	*holpen*,	help.
delfe, *dilfst*, *dilfđ*;	*dealf*, *dulfon*;	*dolfen*,	delve.
melte, *miltst*, *milt*;	*mealt*, *multon*;	*molten*,	melt.
spelte, *spiltst*, *spilt* (*i* > *ie*, *y*);	*spealt* (*eo*?), *spulton*;	*spolten*,	die.
be-telde, *-til(t)st*, *-tilt*;	*teald*, *tuldon*;	*tolden*,	cover up.
melce, *milcst*, *milcđ* (*þ*);	*mealc*, *mulcon*;	*molcen*,	milk.
belge, *bilgst* (*hst*), *bilgđ* (*hđ*);	*bealg* (*h*), *bulgon*;	*bolgen*,	be wroth.
felge, *filgst* (*hst*), *filgđ* (*hđ*);	*fealg* (*h*), *fulgon*;	*folgen*,	go into.
spelge, *spilgst* (*hst*), *spilg*(*e*)*đ* (*hđ*);	*spealg* (*h*), *spulgon*;	*spolgen* (*spelgen*, Koch),	swallow.

Add *â-selce* (*e* > *eo*, *ea*), sulk.

g-breaking, *i* > *ie* > *y* (§ 33); *i* > *e* is also found, a-umlaut, §§ 32, 194, *b*.

gille (*e*, *ie*, *y*), *gilst* (*ie*, *y*), *gilđ* (*ie*, *y*);	*geal*, *gullon*;	*gollen*, yell.
gilpe (*ie*, *y*), *gilpst* (*ie*, *y*), *gilpđ* (*þ*) (*ie*, *y*);	*gealp*, *gulpon*;	*golpen*, boast.
gilde (*ie*, *y*), *gil*(*t*)*st* (*ie*, *y*), *gilt* (*ie*, *y*);	*geald*, *guldon*;	*golden*, pay.

204.—(*b.*) Before *r* (and *h*):

Ablaut (*i*; *a, u*; *u*)>(*eo*; *ea, u*; *o*); *i*>*eo*, *a*>*ea*, breaking (§ 33); *u*>*o*, a-umlaut (§ 32). After labials (*p, m, p*), *eo* may go to *u* (§ 35, 2); *y* for *i* abounds. Unsyncopated broken forms prevail: *peorpest, peorped*. Vowels brought before *r* by metathesis often retain their old umlaut: *rinne*>*irne*; *brinne*>*birne*; *bersce, perste* (§ 202). English like (*a*); *eo*>*e*, § 38, *A*.

georre, gyrst, gyrd;	*gear, gurron*;	*gorren,*	whur.
eorne (*i, y*), *yrn*(*e*)*st* (*i, eo*), *yrn*(*e*)*d* (*i, eo*);	(*earn*) *arn* (*o*), *urnon*;	*urnen,*	run.
beorne (*i, y*), *beorn*(*e*)*st* (*y*), *beorn*(*e*)*d* (*y*);	*bearn* (*barn*) (*o*), *burnon*;	*bornen,*	burn.
meorne (*u*), *myrnst, myrnd*;	*mearn, murnon*;	*mornen,*	mourn.
speorne (*u, o*), *spyrnst, spyrnd*;	*spearn, spurnon*;	*spornen,*	spurn.
peorpe (*u, y*), *pyrpst, pyrpd* (*þ*);	*pearp, purpon*;	*porpen,*	throw.
ceorfe, cyrfst, cyrfd;	*cearf, curfon*;	*corfen,*	carve.
deorfe, dyrfst, dyrfd;	*dearf, durfon*;	*dorfen,*	suffer.
hpeorfe (*u, o, y*), *hpyrfst, hpyrfd*;	*hpearf, hpurfon*;	*hporfen,*	return.
steorfe, styrfst, styrfd;	*stearf, sturfon*;	*storfen,*	die, starve.
speorfe, spyrfst, spyrfd (*t*);	*spearf, spurfon*;	*sporfen,*	cleanse.
peorde (*u, y*), *pyrst, pyrd* (*ed*);	*peard, purdon*;	*porden,*	become.
beorce, byrcst, byrcþ;	*bearc, burcon*;	*borcen,*	bark.
speorce, spyrcst, spyrcd (*þ*) (*sporced*);	*spearc, spurcon*;	*sporcen,*	faint.
beorge, byrgst (*hst*), *byrg*(*e*)*d* (*hd*);	*bearg* (*h*), *burgon*;	*borgen,*	guard.
feohte, fyhtst, fyht;	*feaht, fuhton*;	*fohten,*	fight.

205. Second Conjugation, √ i.

Ablaut (*î*; *â*; *i*; *i*); *i*>*y*, *î*>*ŷ*, bad spelling; *sc*-breaking or *h*-breaking *â*>*eâ* (*i*>*io*?), *î*>*eô* (§ 33); *â*>*æ̂*, shifting. English ablaut (*ī*; *ō*; *i*)= (*âi*; *ô*; *i*); *î*>*âi*, *â*>*ô*, progression (§ 38): *drīve, drōve, drĭven*.

dpîne, dpîn(*e*)*st, dpîn*(*e*)*d*;	*dpân, dpinon*;	*dpinen,*	dwindle.
gîne, gîn(*e*)*st, gîn*(*e*)*d*;	*gân, ginon*;	*ginen,*	yawn.
hrîne, hrîn(*e*)*st, hrîn*(*e*)*d*;	*hrân, hrinon*;	*hrinen,*	touch.
hpîne, hpîn(*e*)*st, hpîn*(*e*)*d*;	*hpân, hpinon*;	*hpinen,*	whiz.
scîne, scîn(*e*)*st, scîn*(*e*)*d*;	*scân* (*eâ*), *scinon* (*io*);	*scinen,*	shine.
grîpe, grîp(*e*)*st, grîp*(*e*)*d* (*þ*);	*grâp, gripon*;	*gripen,*	gripe.
nîpe, nîp(*e*)*st, nîp*(*e*)*d* (*þ*);	*nâp, nipon*;	*nipen,*	darken.
rîpe, rîp(*e*)*st, rîp*(*e*)*d* (*þ*);	*râp, ripon*;	*ripen,*	reap.
to-slîpan, -slîp(*e*)*st, -slîp*(*e*)*d* (*þ*);	*-slâp, -slipon*;	*-slipen,*	dissolve.
be-lîfe, -lîf(*e*)*st, -lîf*(*e*)*d*;	*-lâf, -lifon*;	*-lifen,*	remain.
clîfe, clîf(*e*)*st, clîf*(*e*)*d*;	*clâf, clifon*;	*clifen,*	cleave.
drîfe, drîf(*e*)*st, drîf*(*e*)*d* (*ft*);	*drâf, drifon*;	*drifen,*	drive.
scrîfe, scrîf(*e*)*st, scrîf*(*e*)*d*;	*scrâf, scrifon*;	*scrifen,*	shrive.
slîfe, slîf(*e*)*st, slîf*(*e*)*d*;	*slâf, slifon*;	*slifen,*	split, sliver.

Indicative Present. 1st. 2d. 3d.	Imperfect Sing. Plur.	Part. Past.	
spîfe, spîf(e)st, spîf(e)đ;	*spâf, spifon;*	*spifen,*	{sweep, turn.
spîpe, spîp(e)st, spîp(e)đ;	*spâp (au), spipon;*	*spipen,*	spew.
bîte, bît(e)st, bît(eđ);	*bât, biton;*	*biten,*	bite.
flîte, flît(e)st, flît;	*flât, fliton;*	*fliten,*	{flite, strive.
hnîte, hnît(e)st, hnît;	*hnât, hniton;*	*hniten,*	butt.
slîte, slît(e)st, slît;	*slât, sliton;*	*sliten,*	slit.
smîte, smît(e)st, smît;	*smât, smiton;*	*smiten,*	smite.
þpîte, þpît(e)st, þpît(eđ);	*þpât, þpiton (eo);*	*þpiten,*	cut off.
pîte, pît(e)st, pît(eđ); subj. *pîtan,* >*putan*>*utan,* §§ 176, 224, *c.*	*pât, piton;*	*piten,*	{see, visit, impute.
plîte, plît(e)st, plît(eđ);	*plât, pliton;*	*pliten,*	look.
prîte, prît(e)st, prît(eđ);	*prât, priton;*	*priten,*	write.
bîde, bîdest (bî(t)st), bîdeđ (bît);	*bâd, bidon;*	*biden,*	bide.
cîde, cî(t)st, cît;	*câd, cidon (cîdde);*	*ciden,*	chide.
(?) *lîde, list, lîdeđ lît;*	*lâd, lidon;*	*liden,*	grow.
glîde, glîst, glît;	*glâd, glidon;*	*gliden,*	glide.
gnîde, gnîst, gnît;	*gnâd, gnidon;*	*gniden,*	rub.
hlîde, hlîst, hlît;	*hlâd, hlidon;*	*hliden,*	cover.
rîde, rîst, rît;	*râd, ridon (io)?;*	*riden,*	ride.
slîde, slîst, slît;	*slâd, slidon;*	*sliden,*	slide.
strîde, strîst, strît;	*strâd, stridon;*	*striden,*	stride.
prîde, prîst, prît;	*prâd, pridon;*	*priden,*	bud, grow.
lîđe, lî(đe)st, lîd(eđ);	*lâđ, lidon;*	*liđen,*	sail.
mîđe, mîst, mîđ;	*mâđ, midon;*	*miđen,*	hide.
scrîđe, scrîst, scrîđ;	*scrâđ, scridon;*	*scriđen (đ),*	go.
slîđe, slî(đe)st, slîđ;	*slâđ, slidon;*	*sliđen,*	slit.
snîđe, snîst, snîđ;	*snâđ, snidon;*	*sniden,*	cut.
prîđe, prîst, prîđ;	*prâđ, pridon (đ);*	*priden,*	wreathe.
prîđe, prîst, prîđ;	*prâđ, pridon;*	*priđen,*	bud, grow.
â-grîse, -grîst, -grîst;	*-grâs, -grison;*	*-grisen,*	dread.
rîse, rîsest (rîst), rîseđ (rîst);	*râs, rison;*	*risen,*	rise.
blîce, blîc(e)st, blîc(e)đ (þ);	*blâc, blicon;*	*blicen,*	shine.
sîce, sîc(e)st, sîc(e)đ (þ);	*sâc, sicon;*	*sicen,*	sigh.
snice, snîc(e)st, snîc(e)đ (þ);	*snâc, snicon;*	*snicen,*	sneak.
strîce, strîc(e)st, strîc(e)đ (þ);	*strâc, stricon;*	*stricen,*	go, streak.
spîce, spîc(e)st, spîc(e)đ (þ);	*spâc, spicon;*	*spicen,*	deceive.
pîce, pîc(e)st, pîc(e)đ (þ);	*pâc, picon;*	*picen,*	yield.
hnîge, hnîg(e)st (hst), hnîg(e)đ (hđ);	*hnâh (g), hnigon;*	*hnigen,*	nod.
mîge, mîhst, mîhđ;	*mâh, migon;*	*migen,*	{(*mingo*), water.
sîge, sîhst, sîhđ;	*sâh, sigon;*	*sigen,*	sink.
stîge, stîhst, stîhđ;	*stâh, stigon;*	*stigen,*	ascend.

pîge, pîhst, pîhđ;	*pâh, pigon;*	*pigen,*	fight.
lîhe, lîh(e)st, lîh(e)đ (ŷ);	*lâh (eâ) (lâg), ligon;*	*ligen,*	lend, give.
sîhe (seô), sîh(e)st, sîh(e)đ;	*sâh, sigon (h);*	*sigen (h),*	strain.
tîhe (teô), tîhst (ŷ), tîhđ (ŷ);	*tâh (eâ), (tigon?);*	*tigen,*	accuse.
þîhe, þîhst, þîhđ;	*þâh (þâg, þæh),* ——;	———,	(*þeô*, § 206) grow.
prîhe, prîhst, prîhđ;	*prâh, prigon;*	*prigen,*	(*preô*, § 206) cover.

Add *spîne*, swoon; *snîpe*, snow; *þrîfe*, thrive? *scrîe*, shriek.

206. Third Conjugation, √ u.

Ablaut (*iu (û); eâ, u; u*)>(*eô (û); eâ, u; o*); *iu*>*iô*>*eô*, *u*>*o*, a-umlaut (§§ 32; 38, 2); *eâ*>*ê*, shifting (§ 41); *eô*>*ŷ*, *û*>*ŷ*, i-umlaut (§ 32). Ormulum ablaut (*ê*, (*u*); *æ, ū; ō*), Old English (*ē*, (*u*); *ē, ŏ* or *ĕ; ŏ*), English (*ēe, ēa, ōo, ŭ; ēe, ĕ, ŏ, ŏ; ŏ, ŏ, ēe, ĕ*). The imperfect becoming like the present by the shifting of *eô*>*ē* and *eâ*>*ē*, is distinguished anew by conforming with the *ō* of the participle, by shortening its vowel (*ĕ, ŏ*), or by taking a weak ending: *sēethe; sēeth-ed, sŏd; sēeth-ed, sŏdden; clēave; clōve, clĕf-t; clōven, clĕf-t; chōose; chōse; chōsen; sŭp*, weak, §§ 25, 200.

Variation of consonants, § 194.

creôpe, crŷp(e)st (eô), crŷp(e)đ (eô) (þ);	*creâp, crupon;*	*cropen,*	creep.
dreôpe, drŷpst, drŷpđ (þ);	*dreâp, drupon;*	*dropen,*	drop.
geôpe, gŷpst, gŷpđ (þ);	*geâp, gupon;*	*gopen,*	take up.
slûpe, slŷp(e)st (û), slŷp(e)đ (û) (þ);	*sleâp, slupon;*	*slopen,*	dissolve.
sûpe, sŷpst, sŷpđ (þ);	*seâp, supon;*	*sopen,*	sup.
cleôfe, clŷfst, clyfđ;	*cleâf, clufon;*	*clofen,*	cleave.
dûfe, dŷfst, dŷfđ;	*deâf, dufon;*	*dofen,*	dive.
scûfe, scŷfst, scŷfđ (fl);	*sceâf, scufon;*	*scofen,*	shove.
hreôfe, ———, ———;	———, ———;	*be-hrofen,*	(?)
leôfe, lŷfst, lŷfđ;	*leâf, lufon;*	*lofen,*	love.
reôfe, rŷfst, rŷfđ;	*reâf, rufon;*	*rofen,*	reave.
breôpe, brŷpst, brŷpđ;	*breâp, brupon;*	*bropen,*	brew.
ceôpe, cŷpst, cŷpđ;	*ceâp, cupon;*	*copen,*	chew.
hreôpe, hrŷpst, hrŷpđ;	*hreâp, hrupon;*	*hropen,*	rue.
þreôpe, þrŷpst, þrŷpđ;	*þreâp, þrupen;*	*þropen,*	throe.
breôte, brŷt(e)st (eô), brŷt (eđ) (eô);	*breât, bruton;*	*broten,*	break.
fleôte, flŷtst, flŷt;	*fleât, fluton;*	*floten,*	float.
geôte, gŷtst, gŷt;	*geât (ê), guton;*	*goten,*	pour.
greôte, grŷt(e)st, grŷt;	*greât, gruton;*	*gruten,*	greet.
hleôte, hleôtest (hlŷtst), hlŷt;	*hleât, hluton;*	*hloten,*	cast lots.
hrûte, hrŷtst, hrŷt;	*hreât, hruton;*	*hroten,*	rustle, snore.
lûte, lŷtst, lûteđ (lŷt);	*leât, luton;*	*loten,*	lout.
neôte (iô), nŷtst, neôteđ (nŷt);	*neât, nuton;*	*noten,*	enjoy.
reôte, rŷtst, reôteđ (rŷt);	*reât, ruton;*	*roten,*	weep, cry.
sceôte, scŷtst, sceôteđ (scŷt);	*sceât (ê), scuton;*	*scoten,*	shoot.
spreôte, sprŷtst, sprŷt;	*spreât, spruton;*	*sproten,*	sprout.

Indicative Present. 1st. 2d. 3d.	Imperfect Sing. Plur.	Part. Past.	
þeôte, þýtst, þýt;	*þeât, þuton;*	*þoten,*	howl.
â-þreôte, -þrýtst, -þreôteđ (-þrýt);	*-þreât, -þruton;*	*-þroten,*	irks, loathe.
beôde (iô), beôdest (býd(t)st), beôdeđ (být);	*beâd, budon;*	*boden,*	bid.
cneôde, cnýd(t)st, cnýt;	*cneâd, cnudon;*	*cnoden,*	knot.
creôde (ú), crýd(t)st, crýdeđ crýt;	*creâd, crudon;*	*croden,*	crowd.
leôde (iô), lyd(t)st, lýt;	*leâd, ludon;*	*loden,*	grow.
reôde, rýd(t)st, rýt;	*reâd, rudon;*	*roden,*	redden.
strûde, strýd(t)st, strûdeđ (strýt);	*streâd, strudon;*	*stroden,*	despoil.
â-breôđe, -breôđest (-brýst), -breôđeđ (-brýđ);	*-breâđ, -bruđon;*	*-brođen,*	worsen.
â-hûđe, -hýst, -hýđ;	*-heađ, -hudon;*	*-hoden,*	spoil.
hreôđe, hrýst, hrýđ;	*hreâđ (d), hrudon;*	*hroden,*	adorn.
seôđe, seôđest (sýst), seôđeđ (sýđ);	*seâđ, sudon;*	*soden,*	seethe.
ceôse, ceôsest (cýst), ceôseđ (cýst);	*ceâs (ê), curon;*	*coren,*	choose.
dreôse, drýst, dreôseđ (drýst);	*dreâs, druron;*	*droren,*	fall (?), mourn.
freôse, frýst, frýst;	*freâs, fruron;*	*froren,*	freeze.
be-greôse, -grýst, -grýst;	*-greâs, -gruron;*	*-groren,*	frighten.
hreôse, hrýst, hrýst;	*hreâs, hruron;*	*hroren,*	rush.
for-leôse, -lýst, -lýst;	*-leâs, -luron;*	*-loren,*	lose.
brûce, brûcest (brýcst), brûceđ (brýcđ (þ));	*breâc, brucon;*	*brocen,*	brook, use.
lûce, lýcst, lýcđ (þ);	*leâc, lucon;*	*locen,*	lock.
reôce, rýcst, rýcđ (þ);	*reâc, rucon;*	*rocen,*	reek.
smeôce, smýcst, smýcđ (þ);	*smeâc, smucon;*	*smocen,*	smoke.
sûce, sýcst, sýcđ (þ) (c<g);	*seâc, sucon;*	*socen,*	suck.
bûge (eô), bûgest (býhst (g)), bûgeđ (býhđ (g));	*beâh (g), bugon;*	*bogen,*	bow.
dreôge, dreôgest (drýhst), dreôgeđ (drýhđ);	*dreâh (g), drugon;*	*drogen,*	suffer.
fleôge, fleôgest (ýhst), fleôgeđ (ýhđ);	*fleâh (êg), flugon;*	*flogen,*	fly.
leôge, lýhst, lýhđ;	*leâh (ê) (g), lugon;*	*logen,*	lie.
smûge, smýhst, smýhđ;	*smeâh, smugon;*	*smogen,*	creep.
fleôhe (fleô), flýhst, flýhđ; plur. *fleôđ;*	*fleâh, flugon;*	*flogen,*	flee.
teôhe (teô), týhst, týhđ (iđ); plur. *teôđ;*	*teâh (ê) (g), tugon;*	*togen,*	tug.
peô, þýhst, þýhđ;	*peâh, pugon;*	*pogen,*	(<*þihe*, 205) thrive.
preô, prýst, prýhđ;	*preâh, prugon;*	*progen,*	(<*prûhe*, 205) cover.

Add *seô*, strain; *teô*, accuse, § 205, Heyne; *fneôse*, sneeze?

207. Fourth Conjugation, √ â or a.

Ablaut (*a; ô, ô; a*); *a*>*æ*, shifting; *a*>*e*, i-umlaut, infrequent (§ 32). English ablaut (*ā; ō* or *o͞o; ā*)=(*ê; ô* or *û; ê*); *ă*>*ê*, progression and i-umlaut (§§ 38, 32); *ô*>*û*, progression (§ 38): *wāke, wōke, wāken; tāke, to͞ok, tāken.* Variation of consonants, § 194.

ale, æl(e)st (e, a), æl(e)ð (e, a);	*ôl, ôlon;*	*alen,*	shine.
gale, gæl(e)st, gæl(e)ð;	*gôl, gôlon;*	*galen,*	sing.
fare, fær(e)st, fær(e)ð;	*fôr, fôron;*	*faren,*	fare.
stape, stæp(e)st, stæp(e)ð (þ);	*stôp, stôpon;*	*stapen,*	step.
———;	———;	*ge-dafen,*	behoove.
grafe, græf(e)st, græf(e)ð;	*grôf, grôfon;*	*grafen, be-grauen,*	grave, dig.
rafe, ræf(e)st, ræf(e)ð;	*rôf, rôfon;*	*rafen,*	rob.
hlade, hladest (hlest), hladeð (hleð);	*hl(e)ôd, hl(e)ôdon;*	*hladen (æ),*	load.
pade, padest (pæst), padeð (pæð);	*pôd, pôdon;*	*paden,*	wade, go.
ace, æc(e)st, æc(e)ð (þ);	*ôc, ôcon;*	*acen,*	ache.
bace, bæc(e)st (e), bæceð (e), § 191;	*bôc, bôcon;*	*bacen,*	bake.
sace, sæc(e)st, sæc(e)ð (þ);	*sôc, sôcon;*	*sacen,*	fight.
tace, tæc(e)st, tæc(e)ð (þ);	*tôc, tôcon;*	*tacen,*	take.
pace, pæc(e)st, pæc(e)ð (þ);	*pôc, pôcon;*	*pacen,*	wake.
pasce, pæsc(e)st, pæsc(e)ð (þ);	*pôsc (x), pôscon (x);*	*pæscen,*	wash.
drage, dræg(e)st (hst), dræg(e)ð (hð);	*drôh (g), drôgon;*	*dragen,*	drag.
gnage, gnæg(e)st (hst), gnæg(e)ð (hð);	*gnôh, gnôgon;*	*gnagen,*	gnaw.

Add *þape*, thaw.

(*b.*) *sc*-breaking, § 33; *h*-breaking, § 33; *ea*>*y*, § 32.

sc(e)aðe, sc(e)aðest (scæst), sc(e)aðeð (scæð);	*sc(e)ôd, sc(e)ôdon;*	*sc(e)aðen,*	scathe.
sc(e)ace, sc(e)acest (scæst), sc(e)aceð (scæð);	*sc(e)ôc, sc(e)ôcon;*	*sc(e)acen (æ),*	shake.
sceppe (y), scyp(pe)st, scyp(pe)ð;	*sc(e)ôp, sc(e)ôpon;*	*sc(e)apen (e),*	create.
scafe (ea?), scæf(e)st, scæf(e)ð;	*scôf (eo?), scôfon;*	*scafen,*	shave.
leahe (leâ), lehst (y), lehð (y);	*lôh (g), lôgon;*	*leahen (leân),*	blame.
sleahe (sleâ), slehst (y), slehð (y);	*slôh (g), slôgon;*	*slagen (æ, e),*	slay.
þpeâ, þpehst (y), þpehð (y);	*þpôh, þpôgon;*	*þpegen,*	wash.
peaxe, pexest, peaxeð, pex(e)ð;	*p(e)ôx, p(e)ôxon;*	*peaxen,*	wax.

Add *fleâ*, flay.

(*c.*) *n*-assimilation, *a*>*o*, § 35.

spane, span(e)st, span(e)ð (æ);	*sp(e)ôn, sp(e)ônon;*	*spanen (o),*	allure.
stande (o), standest (stentst), standeð (stent (y));	*stôd, stôdon* (§ 216).	*standen,*	stand.

(*d.*) Stems in *-ia*, § 196. Imperative in *-e*: *spere, stepe, hefe.*

Indicative Present. 1st.	2d.	3d.	Imperfect Sing.	Plur.	Part. Past.	
sper-ie (*-(i)ge*),	*sperest*,	*spereƀ*;	*spôr*,	*spôron*;	*sporen*,	swear.
sceppe < *scafie*, § 207, *b*;		*scyppe* < *sceafie*, § 32.				
steppe (< *stapie*),	*step(e)st*,	*step(e)ƀ* (*þ*);	*stôp*,	*stôpon*;	*stapen*,	step.
hebbe (*æ*) (< *hafie*),	*hef(e)st*,	*hef(e)ƀ*;	*hôf*,	*hôfon*;	*hafen* (*æ*),	heave.
hlehhe (< *hlahie*) (*i, y, ea*), *hlehƀ* (*i, y*);	*hlehst* (*i, y*),		*hlôh*,	*hlôgon*;	*hleahhen* (?),	laugh.

Add *scedde*, shed.

208. Fifth Conjugation.—Contract. Imperfect in **eô**, **ê** (*iǒ*).

(L.) Root in **a** + two consonants; *a* > *ea*, l-breaking (§ 33). Umlaut *y* < *ea* or *e* < *a* (§ 32). English *eǒ* > *e*, shifting (§ 41); *ald* > *ôld*, progression (§ 38): *fall, fell, fallen; hōld, held, hōlden.*

fealle, *feal(le)st* (*fylst*), *feal(le)ƀ* (*fylƀ, feld*);	*feôl(l)*,	*feôllon*;	*ge-feallen*,	fall.
pealle, *peallest* (*pylst*), *peal(l)eƀ* (*pylƀ*);	*peôl(l)*,	*peôllon*;	*peallen*,	well.
pealte; *pealtest* (*pylst*), *pealteƀ* (*pylt*);	*peôlt*,	*peôlton*;	*pealten*,	fall.
fealde, *fealdest* (*fylst*), *fealdeƀ* (*fylt*);	*feôld*,	*feôldon*;	*fealden*,	fold.
h(e)alde, *healdest* (*hylst*), *healdeƀ* (*hylt*);	*heôld*,	*heôldon*;	*healden*,	hold.
stealde, *stealdest* (*stylst*), *stealdeƀ* (*stylƀ*);	*steôld*,	*steôldon*;	*stealden*,	possess.
p(e)alde, *pealdest* (*pylst*), *pealdeƀ* (*pylt*);	*peôld*,	*peôldon*;	*pealden*,	govern.
pealce, *pealc(e)st* (*pylcst*), *pealc(e)ƀ* (*pylcƀ* (*þ*));	*peôlc*,	*peôlcon*;	*pealcen*,	walk.

(*b.*) *n*-assimilation, *a* > *o* (§ 35).

banne, *ban(ne)st* (*benst*), *ban(ne)ƀ* (*benƀ*);	*bên(n)* (*eô*),	*bênnon* (*eô*);	*bannen* (*o*),	order.
spanne, *span(ne)st* (*spenst*), *span(ne)ƀ* (*spenƀ*);	*spên(n)* (*eô*),	*spênnon* (*eô*);	*spannen*,	span.
blande (*o*), *blandest* (*blen(t)ƀ*), *blandeƀ* (*blent*);	*blênd* (*eô*),	*blêndon* (*eô*);	*blanden* (*o*),	blend.
fô (< *fâhe*), *fê(h)st* (*æ*), *fê(h)ƀ* (*æ*), plur. *fôƀ*;	*fêng* (*cg*),	*fêngon*;	*fangen* (*o*),	catch.
infin. *fôn*; imperat. *fô(h)*, *fôƀ*.				
gâ (< *ga-gâ-mi*, § 210), *gǽst*, *gǽƀ*, plur. *gâƀ*; imperat. *gâ*, *gaƀ*; infin. *gân*;	*eŏde*,	*eŏdon*;	*ge-gân*,	go.
gange (*o*) (*cg*), *gangest* (*o*), *gangeƀ* (*o*), pl. *gangaƀ* (*o*);	*gêng* (*iô, eô, îe*),	*-on*;	*gangen* (*o*),	go.
infin. *gangan* (*o*); imperat. *gang* (*o*); p. pr. *gangende* (*o*) (*geongan*, § 201; *gengan*, weak).				

hô (<*hâhe*), *hê(h)st* (*æ*), *hê(h)ð* (*æ*), plur. *hôð*; infin. *hôn* (<*hâhan*); imperat. *hô(h)*, *hôð*. } *hêng*, *hêngon*; *hangen* (*o*), } hang.

(2.) Root in **â**; i-umlaut *â* > *æ* (§ 32). English *âþ* > *ōw*, progression and labial assimilation (§§ 38, 35); *eóþ* > *ew* = *iú*, shifting and labial assimilation (§§ 41, 35): *blōw*, *blew*, *blōwn*.

spâpe, *spâp(e)st* (*spæp(e)st*), *spâp(e)ð* (*spæp(e)ð* (*þ*));	*speôp*, *speôpon*;	*spâpen*,	sweep.
ge-nâpe, *-nâpest* (*-næpst*), *-nâpeð* (*-næpþ*);	*-neôp*, *-neôpon*;	*-nâpen*,	whelm.
for-spâfe, *-spæfst*, *-spæf(e)ð*;	*-speôf*, *-speôfon*;	*-spâfen*,	drive.
blâpe, *blâp(e)st* (*blæp(e)st*), *blâp(e)ð* (*blæp(e)ð*);	*bleôp*, *bleôpon*;	*blâpen*,	blow.
cnâpe, *cnâpest* (*cnæpst*), *cnâpeð* (*cnæpð*);	*cneôp*, *cneôpon*;	*cnâpen*,	know.
crâpe, *crâpest* (*cræpst*), *crâpeð* (*cræpð*);	*creôp*, *creôpon*;	*crâpen*,	crow.
mâpe, *mâpest* (*mæpst*), *mâpeð* (*mæpð*);	*meôp*, *meôpon*;	*mâpen*,	mow.
sâpe, *sâpest* (*sæpst*), *sâpeð* (*sæpð*);	*seôp*, *seôpon*;	*sâpen*,	sow.
þrâpe, *þrâpest* (*þræpst*), *þrâpeð* (*þræpð*);	*þreôp*, *þreôpon*;	*þrâpen*,	throw.
pâpe, *pâpest* (*pæp(e)st*), *pâpeð* (*pæp(e)ð*);	*peôp*, *peôpon*;	*pâpen* (*pâune*),	blow.
blâte, *blâtest* (*blætst*), *blâteð* (*blæt*);	*blêt* (*eô*), *blêton*;	*blâten*,	pale.
hâte, *hâtest* (*hætst*), *hâteð* (*hæt*); *hâtte* (*æ*), passive, § 219.	*hê(h)t* (§ 159, *b*), *hê(h)ton*;	*hâten*,	order.
hnâte, *hnâtest* (*hnætst*), *hnâteð* (*hnæt*);	*hneôt* (*ê*), *hneôton*;	*hnâten*,	knock.
sc(e)âde, *sc(e)âdest*, *sc(e)âdeð*;	*scêd* (*iô*, *eô* ?), *scêdon*;	*sc(e)âden*,	divide.
(?) *strâde*, *strâdest* (*stræ(t)st*), *strâdeð* (*stræt*);	*strêd* (*eô*), *strêdon*;	*strâden*,	stride.
(?) *scâne*, ———, ———;	*sceôn*, *sciônon* (*eô*);	———,	shine.
lâce, *lâc(e)st* (*læcst*), *lâceð* (*læcð* (*þ*));	*leôlc* (*lêc*) (§ 159, *b*), *lêcon*;	*lâcen*,	leap.

(3.) Root **eâ**. Syncopated forms not found in poetry.

heâfe, *heâfest* (*hŷfst*), *heâfeð* (*hŷfð*)*t*;	*heôf*, *heôfon*;	*heâfen*,	weep.
hleâpe, *hleâp(e)st* (*ý*), *hleâpeð* (*hlŷpð* (*þ*));	*hleôp*, *hleôpon*;	*hleâpen*,	leap.
â-hneâpe, *-hneâp(e)st* (*-hnŷpst*), *-hneâp(e)ð* (*-hnŷpð* (*þ*));	*-hneôp*, *-hneôpon*;	*-hneâpen*,	sever.
heâpe, *heâpest* (*hŷpst*), *heâpeð* (*hŷpð*);	*heôp*, *heôpon*;	*heâpen*,	hew.
beâte, *beâtest* (*bŷtst*), *beâteð* (*bŷt*);	*beôt*, *beôton*;	*beâten*,	beat.
breâte, *breâtest* (*brŷtst*), *breâteð* (*brŷt*);	*breôt*, *breôton*;	*breâten*,	break.
ge-sceâte, *-sceâtest* (*-scŷtst*), *-sceâteð* (*-scŷt*);	*-sceôt*, *-sceôton*;	*-sceâten*,	fall to.
deâge, *deâg(e)st* (*dŷhst*), *deâg(e)ð* (*dŷgð*) (*hþ*);	*deôg*, *deôgon*;	*deâgen*,	dye.

(4.) Root æ̂ > English ēe, shifting (§ 41).

Indicative Present. 1st. 2d. 3d.	Imperfect Sing. Plur.	Part. Past.	
slǽpe (â, ê), slǽp(e)st, slǽp(e)ð;	*slêp, slêpon;*	*slǽpen,*	sleep.
grǽte, grǽt(e)st, grǽt(eð);	*grêt, grêton;*	*grǽten,*	greet.
lǽte, lǽt(e)st, lǽt(eð) (ê);	*leôrt* (§ 159, *b*), *leôt, lêt, lêton;*	*lǽten,*	let.
on-drǽde, -drǽ(t)st, -drǽdeð (-drǽt);	*-dreôrd (-drêd), -drêdon;*	*-drǽden,*	dread.
rǽd(e), rǽd(e)st (rǽ(t)st), rǽdeð (rǽt);	*reôrd* (§ 159, *b*), *rêd* rǽd (M.Gloss.), *reôrdon* (?);	*rǽden,*	counsel.

(5.) Root ê > English ēe, shifting (§ 41).

(hrêpe, hrêp(e)st, hrêp(e)ð;	*hreôp, hreôpon;*	*hrêpen)?*	cry.
pêpe, pêp(e)st, pêp(e)ð;	*peôp, peôpon;*	*pêpen,*	weep.

(6.) Root ô; i-umlaut ó > ê (§ 32). English *eów* > *ew* (§ 208, 2): *grōw, grew, grōwn.*

hrôpe, hrôpest (hrêpst), hrôpeð (hrêpð (þ));	*hreôp, hreôpon;*	*hrôpen,*	cry.
hpôpe, hpôpest (hpêpst), hpôpeð (hpêpð (þ));	*hpeôp, hpeôpon;*	*hpôpen,*	whoop.
blôpe, blôpest (blêpst), blôpeð (blêpð);	*bleôp, bleôpon;*	*blôpen,*	blow.
flôpe, flôpest (flêpst), flôpeð (flêpð);	*fleôp, fleôpon;*	*flôpen,*	flow.
grôpe, grôpest (grêpst), grôpeð (grêpð);	*greôp, greôpon;*	*grôpen,*	grow.
hlôpe, hlôpest (hlêpst), hlôpeð (hlêpð);	*hleôp, hleôpon;*	*hlôpen,*	low.
rôpe, rôpest (rêpst), rôpeð (rêpð);	*reôp, reô(po)n;*	*rôpen,*	row.
spôpe, spôpest (spêpst), spôpeð (spêpð);	*speôp, speôpon;*	*spôpen,*	speed.
blôte, blôtest (blêtst), blôteð (blêt);	*bleôt, bleôton;*	*blôten,*	sacrifice.
(?) *prôte, prôtest (prêtst), prôteð (prêt);*	*preôt, preôton;*	*prôten,*	root.
spôge, spôgest (spêhst), spôgeð (spêhð);	*speôh (g), speôgon;*	*spôgen,*	sough.

209. Sixth Conjugation.—Stem in -ia. Weak.

No ablaut. Certain verbs, having their *-ia* syncopated in the imperfect and past participle, drop their umlaut in those forms. The imperative singular of these verbs has umlaut without gemination, and the ending *-e* (§ 188, *b*). The imperfect singular second person is often found in *-es* (§ 166, *a*).

√ a.

(*a.*) Theme in *cg* < *gi*, compensative gemination (§ 188, *b*). Order of vowels, (*e; æ, æ; æ*); *a* > *e*, i-umlaut (§ 32); *a* > *æ*, shifting (§ 41); *æg* > *æ̂*, *eg* > *ê*, § 37, 2.

lecge, leg(e)st (hst), leg(e)ð (hð), plur. *lecgað;*	*lægde (e), lêde,*	*lægdon (e), lêdon;*	*ge-lægd (e), gelêd,*	lay.

secge (æ), *seg(e)st* (æ) (*cg*), *seg(e)ð* (æ) (*cg*), plur. *secg(e)að* (æ). Imperat. *sege* (æ), plur. *secg(e)að* (æ). For *sagăst*, *sagăð*, *sagă*, see *sagian*. | *sægde* (*e*), *sǽde*, | *sægdon* (*e*), *sǽdon*; | *sægd*, *sǽd*, | say.

(*b*.) THEME IN *cc*<*ci*, *ll*<*li*, compensative gemination (§ 188, *b*). Order of vowels, (*e*; *ea*, *ea*; *ea*); *a*>*e*, i-umlaut (§ 32); *a*>*ea*, *h-l*-breaking (§ 33); *cd*>*ht*, § 189, *c*. English vowels, (*ĕ*; *ō*; *ō*); *ea*>*a* (Ormulum)>*ô*, progression (§ 38): *sell*, *sōld*, *sōld*.

cpelle, *cpel(e)st*, *cpel(e)ð*;	*cpeal-de*, *-don*;	*cpeald*, *cpeled*,	kill.
dpelle, *dpel(e)st*, *dpel(e)ð*;	*dpeal-de*, *-don* (*dpelede*);	*dpeald*, *dpeled*,	err.
felle (*y*<*ea*, § 32), *fel(e)st*, *fel(e)ð*, *fyllest*, *fylleð*;	*feal-de*, *-don* (*fylde*);	*feald*, *fylled*,	fell.
selle (*y*=*i*<*ea*, § 32), *selest* (*y*, *i*), *seled* (*y*, *i*);	*s(e)al-de*, *-don*;	*seald*,	(sell) give.
â-stelle, *-stelest*, *-stel(l)eð*;	*-steal-de*, *-don*;	*-steald*,	station.
telle, *telest*, *teleð*;	*teal-de*, *-don* (*telede*);	*teald*, *teled* (æ),	(tell) count.
cpecce, *cpec(e)st*, *cpec(e)ð* (*þ*);	(?) *cpeah-te*, *-ton* (*cpehte*);	(?) *cpeaht*,	(quake) shake.
drecce, *drec(e)st*, *drec(e)ð* (*þ*); plur. *drecc(e)að*;	*dre(a)h-te*, *-ton*;	*dre(a)ht*,	vex.
lecce, *lec(e)st*, *lec(e)ð* (*þ*);	*leoh-te*, *-ton* (*ea*? *e*);	*leoht* (*e*),	leak, wet.
recce, *rec(c)(e)st*, *rec(e)ð* (*þ*);	*reah-te*, *-ton* (*a*, *æ*, *e*);	*reaht*,	rule.
strecce, *strec(e)st*, *strec(e)ð* (*þ*);	*stre(a)h-te*, *-ton*;	*streaht*,	stretch.
þecce, *þec(e)st*, *þec(e)ð* (*þ*);	*þe(a)h-te*, *-ton*;	*þeaht*,	thatch.
pecce, *pec(e)st*, *pec(c)(e)ð* (*þ*);	*pe(a)h-te*, *-ton*;	*pe(a)ht*,	wake.
precce, *prec(e)st*, *prec(e)ð* (*þ*);	*preh-te*, *-ton* (*ea*?)	*pre(a)ht*,	wake.

(*c*.) THEME IN A NASAL (*nc*, *ng*). Order of vowels, (*e*; *o*, *o*; *o*); *a*>*e*, i-umlaut (§ 32); *a*>*o*, nasal assimilation (§ 35). English order, (*ĭ*; *ou*; *ou*); *ĭ* comes from *bringan* (§ 201), *þincan* (§ 211); *o*>*ou*=*âu*, progression (§ 38): *bring*, *brought*, *brought*.

brenge, *breng(e)st*, *breng(e)ð* (*cþ*);	*broh-te*, *-ton*;	*broht*,	bring.
þence, *penc(e)st*, *penc(e)ð* (*þ*), plur. *penc(e)að*;	*þoh-te*, *-ton*;	*þoht*,	think.

210.— √ô.

THEME IN *c*; *cd*>*ht* (§ 189, *c*). Order of vowels, (*ê*; *ô*, *ô*; *ô*); *ô*>*ê*, i-umlaut (§ 32). English order, (*ēe*; *ou*; *ou*); *ou*=*âu*, progression (§ 38): *sēek*, *sought*, *sought*.

rêce, *rêcst*, *rêcð* (*þ*), *rêcceð*;	*rôh-te*, *-ton*;	*rôht*,	reck.

Indicative Present. 1st. 2d. 3d.	Imperfect Sing. Plur.	Part. Past.	
sêce, sêcest, sêceđ, plur. *sêc(e)ađ*, subj. plur. *sêc(e)an* (*æ, eó*), part. pres. *sęc(c)ende.*	*sôh-te, -ton;*	*sôht,*	seek.

211.—√ u.

Theme in a guttural (*g, c*); *cgd* > *ht*, *ncd* > *ht* (§ 194, *a*). Order of vowels, ((*u*) *y* (*i*); *o, o; o*); *u* > *y*, i-umlaut (§ 32); *y* > *i*, shifting or bad spelling (§ 41); *u* > Goth. *au* > *o*, *h-r*-breaking (§ 33). English order, (*ȳ; ou; ou*); *ȳ* (*i*) > *ŷ* = *âi*, *o* > *ou* = *âu*, progression (§ 38): *buȳ, bought, bought.*

bycge (*i*) (< *bugie*, § 188, *b*), *bygest, bygeđ;*	*boh-te, -ton;*	*boht,*	buy.
hycge (*i*), *hygest, hygeđ*, plur. *hyc-g(e)ađ;*	*hog-de, -don;*	*ge-hugôd* (*o*),	mind.

(*hoh-te* is not found. Conformation with the common weak forms led to *hogde* > *hog-ede, -ăde, -ôde*, and finally to a present *hogie.*)

þynce (*i*), *þync(e)st* (*i*), *þync(e)đ* (*i*) (*þ*), plur. *þync(e)ađ;*	*þuh-te, -ton;*	*ge-þuht,*	seem.
þyrce (*eo, i, e*), *þyrc(e)st* (*e*), *þyrc-(e)đ* (*i*), plur. *þyrc(e)ađ;*	*þor(u)h-te, -ton;*	*ge-þorht,*	work.

---

212. IRREGULAR VERBS.

I. Præterite Presents.—The completion of certain acts is the beginning of states; perfects of verbs denoting such acts get to be used as presents denoting the states: Sansk. *vé'da*, Greek ϝοῖδα, Ang.-Sax. *pât, I have seen* > *I know.* About a dozen such verbs are common to the Teutonic tongues. They retain antiquated personal endings and other forms, have peculiar syntactical relations, and the original notion of their verb has often given place to a varying modal force, in which case they become auxiliary verbs. The old presents are obsolete. New weak imperfects are formed.

√ *vid*, see. Parent Speech, perfect *vi-vaid-(m)a*, plur. *vi-vid-masi* (§ 166).

Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	O. Saxon.	Ang.-Sax.	O. Norse.
vê'd-a	ϝοῖδ-α	vīd-i	vait	wêt	*pât*	veit
vê't-tha	ϝοῖσ-θα	vīd-is-ti	vais-*t*	wês-*t*	*pâs-t*	veiz-*t*
vê'd-a	ϝοῖδ-ε	vīd-i-t	vait	wêt	*pât*	veit
vid-má	ϝίσ-μεν	vīd-i-mus	vit-*u-m*	wit-*u-n*	*pit-o-n*	vit-*u-m*
vid-á	ϝίσ-τε	vīd-is-tis	vit-*u-þ*	wit-*u-n*	*pit-o-n*	vit-*u-đ*
vid-ús	ϝισ-ᾶσι	vīd-ēr-unt	vit-*u-n*	wit-*u-n*	*pit-o-n*	vit-*u*

O. H. German has *weiz, weiz-t, weiz*, plur. *wiz-a-mês, wiz-u-t, wiz-u-n.* The other forms use the vowel of ablaut which appears in the plural of the

new present. It may be varied by umlaut, or other assimilation. The personal endings have all the variation mentioned in §§ 165, 166, 170: *mâg-um, -un, -on, -en, -e, -an; meahtes.* In *canst, gemanst, âhst, -t* is strengthened to *-st* (§§ 50; 40, 1). The grammars give *unne, cunne, durre, þurfe, âge, duge* as regular indic. pres. sing. 2d; but their examples are subjunctive.

FIRST CONJUGATION.—√ a;

megan, beneohan, innan, cinnan, ge-minan, scelan, deorran < *deorsan* (Goth. *dairsan*), *þeorfan*, not found.

	Indicative Sing. 1st & 3d.	2d.	Plur.	Subjunctive.	Imperat.	Infin.	Part.
Pres. (§§ 199, 200).	*mæg*,	*meah-t (i)*;	*mâgon (æ) (u)*;	*mæg-e, -en;*	——;	*mag-an (u)*;	——;
Imperf.	*meah-te (i), meah-ton (i)*;			*-te, -ten;*	am strong, (may), < have grown.		
Pres. (§ 199).	*be-neah*,	——;	*be-nugon*;	*benug-e, -en;*	——;	*benugan?*;	——;
Imperf.	*be-noh-te, -ton* (§ 211);			*-te, -ten;*	hold and use < have come to.		
Pres. (§ 201).	*an (o)*,	——;	*unnon*;	*unne, -en;*	——;	*unn-an*;	*(ge)unn-en;*
Imperf.	*û-ðe, -ðon* (Goth. *þ* irregular), § 37;			*-ðe, -ðen;*	favor < have given.		
Pres. (§ 201).	*can (o)*,	*canst (o)*;	*cunnon*;	*cunne, -en;*	——;	*cunn-an*;	——;
Imperf.	*cû-ðe, -ðon* (Goth. *kunþa*), § 37;			*-ðe, -ðen;*	know < have got.		*cûðe.*
Pres. (§ 201).	*ge-man (o)*,	*-manst*;	*-manon*;	*-e, -en;*	*gemun, -að;*	*gemun-an;*	——;
Imperf.	*ge-munde, -don*;			*-de, -den;*	remember < have called to mind.		
Pres. (§ 203).	*sc(e)al (scel), sc(e)alt*;	*scul-on (eo)*;	{ *scul-e, en* (*eo, y, i*); }	——;	*sculan*;	——;	
Imperf.	*sc(e)ol-de (io), -don*;			*-de, -den;*	shall < ought < have got in debt.		
Pres. (§ 204).	*d(e)ar, d(e)arst*;	*durr-on*;		*-e, -en (y)*;	——;	*durran*;	——;
Imperf.	*dors-te, -ton* (Goth. *daurs-ta*);			*-te, -ten;*	dare < have fought.		
Pres. (§ 204).	*þ(e)arf, þ(e)arf-t*;	*þurf-on*;		*þurf-e, -en (y)*;	——;	*þurf-an*;	——;
Imperf.	*porf-te, -ton*;			*-te, -ten;*	need < have worked (opus est).		

SECOND CONJUGATION (§ 205).—√ i; *îgan*, not found, *þitan*, § 205.

Pres.	*âh, âhst*;	*âgon*;	*âg-e, -en*;	——;	*âgan, -ne*;	*âgende*;
Imperf.	*âh-te, -ton*;		*-te, -ten*;	own < have earned or taken.		

nâh = (*ne* + *âh*), &c., not own.

Pres.	*þât, þâst (æ)*;	*þiton*;	*þit-e, -en*;	*þit-e, -að*;	*þitan(y)-ne*;	*þiten, -de*;
Imperf.	*þis-te (y), -ton*;	{ *þis-se, -son*, §§ 36, 3; 35, *B, þestan*; }	{ *-te, -se*, *-ten, -sen*; }	know < have seen.		
Pres.	*nât* (= *ne* + *þât*),	*nyton (e)*;	*nyt-e, -en*;	——;	*nitan (y)*;	*nyten, -de*;
Imperf.	*nyste, nysse*;	*nyston* (&c.);		not know.		

THIRD CONJUGATION (§ 206).—√ u; *dûgan* not found.

Pres.	*deâh (g)*,	——;	*dugon*;	*dug-e, -en*;	——;	*dugan*;	*dugende*;
Imperf.	*doh-te, -ton* (§ 211);			*-te, -ten*;	is fit < has grown.		

FOURTH CONJUGATION (§ 207). — √ â; *matan* not found.

	Indicative Sing. 1st & 3d.	2d.	Plur.	Subj.	Imp.	Infin.	Part.
Pres. ...	*môt*,	*môst*;	*môton*;	*môt-e*, *-en*;	——;	*môtan*;	——;
Imperf..	*môs-te*, *-ton* (§ 36, 3);			*-te*, *-ten*;	is meet<has met.		

Grimm takes *beô*, be, for a præteritive present from a *bûan*, to dwell, of the Fifth Conjugation.

From an imperfect subjunctive of the Second Conjugation (Goth. *viljau*< √ *vil*, inflected like *nemjau*, § 171) arise

Pres. ...	*pille*, *pilt*;	*pillað*(*y*);	*pill-e*, *-en*;	*-e*, *-að*;	*pill-an*; *-ende*;
Imperf..	*pol-de*, *-don* (Goth. *vilda*);		*-de*, *-den*;	will<have wished.	
Pres. ...	*nelle*, *nelt*;	*nellað*(*y*,*i*);	*-e*, *-en*;	*-e*, *-að*;	*-an*; *-ende*;
Imperf..	*nol-de*, *-don*, &c.			*ne*+*pille*, will not.	

pi>*po*, assimilation (§ 35, 2, *a*); *i*>*e*, a-umlaut; *pi*>*y*, §§ 32, 23; *ll*>*l*.

213.—II. VERBS WITHOUT CONNECTING VOWEL (Relics of Sanskrit 2d Class, § 158):

(1.) The common forms of the substantive verb are from three roots: √ *as*, √ *bhu*, √ *vas*.

(*a*.)—	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	O. Saxon.	Anglo-Saxon.		O. Norse.
Stem,	as, s	εσ	es, s	is, s	is, s	is, ir, s;	ar	er
SING.—1.	ás-mi	εἰ-μί>ἐσ-μι	*s-u-m	i-m<is-m	——	eo-m	ea-m	e-m<er-m
2.	ás-(s)i	ἐσ-σί, εἶ	es-	is-	——	——	ear-t	er-t
3.	ás-ti	ἐσ-τί	es-t	is-t	is-t	is-	——	er-
PLUR.—1.	*s-más	ἐσ-μέν	*s-u-mus	——	*s-ind	*s-ind(on)	ear-on	er-u-m
2.	*s-thá	ἐσ-τέ	es-tis	——	*s-ind	*s-ind(on)	ear-on	er-u-ð
3.	*s-ánti	ἔ-ασι, ε-ἰσί	*s-unt	*s-ind	*s-ind(un)	*s-ind(on)	ear-on	er-u

As>*s*, compensation, gravitation (§§ 37, 38); *as*>*is*, precession (§ 38); *ys*<*is*, bad spelling; *s*>*r*, shifting (§ 41, 3, *b*); *irm*>(*eorm*)>*eom*, *arm*>(*earm*) *eam*, breaking (§ 33); second person *-s* and *-t* (§ 165); *nt*>*nd*, shifting (§ 19), *nt* is often found. *Seond-on*, *-un* (*ie*, *y*), u-umlaut? (§ 32); *-on* in *earon* (O. Norse *er-u-m*) (§ 166, *a*); in *sind-on*, a double plural through conformation (§ 40); *aron*, *caron*, are rare in West Saxon.

The subjunctive (Sansk. **s-jâ-m*, Greek ε*-ἴη-ν, Lat. **s-iê-m*>*sîm*, Goth. **s-ija-u*, O. H. Ger., O. Sax., Ang.-Sax. **s-î*, O. Norse **s-ê*) is inflected like the imperfect given in § 171. Anglo-Saxon has also *sî*>*sig* (dissimilated gemination, § 27)>*sîe*, *seô* (a peculiar progression, § 25)>*sŷ* (bad spelling); so plur. *sîn*, *sîen*, *seôn*, *sŷn*. The subjunctive often has the force of an imperative, and is given as the imperative in Ælfric's grammar.

(*b*.) √ *bhu*, be. Sansk. *bhav-âmi*, Greek *φύ-ω*, Lat. *fu-i*, correspond in form to Goth. *báu-an*, Ang.-Sax. *bû-an*, dwell. From the same root are found forms without a connecting vowel in Ang.-Sax., O. Sax., O. H. Ger. In O. Sax. are only *biu-m*, *bi-st*; in O. H. Ger. *pi-m*, *pi-s*, —, plur. *pi-rumes*, *pi-rut*, *pi-run* (*r*<*s*<√ *as*). Ang.-Sax. has *beô-*(*m*) (*iô*), *bi-st* (*y*), *bi-ð* (*y*), plur. *beôð* (*iô*), and a present subjunctive, imperative, and infinitive, with the

common endings; *eô*>*ŷ*>*y*>*i*, umlaut, precession, and shifting (§§ 32, 38, 41). Sing. 3d *beôđ* occurs (conformation).

(*c.*) √*vas*>*vis* (ablaut) is inflected in the First Conjugation, §§ 199, 197, but the present indicative forms are so rare that they are not given in the grammars.

PARADIGMS FOR PRACTICAL USE (pp. 84, 90, 91).

PRESENT:

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imperative.	Infinitive.	Participle.
SING.—					
ic	*eom, beô(m);*	*sî, beô, pese;*			
þû	*eart, bist;*	*sî, beô, pese;*	*beô, pes;*		
hê	*is, biđ;*	*sî, beô, pese;*		*beôn,*	
PLUR.—				or	*pesende.*
pê	*sind(on), beôđ;*	*sîn, beôn, pesen;*		*pesan;*	
gê	*sind(on), beôđ;*	*sîn, beôn, pesen;*	*beôđ, pesađ;*		
hî	*sind(on), beôđ;*	*sîn, beôn, pesen;*			

IMPERFECT:

SING.—		
ic pæs;	*pære;*	
þû pære;	*pære;*	
hê pæs;	*pære;*	*ge-pesen.*
PLUR.—		
pê, gê, hî pæron;	*pæren;*	

The negative *ne* often unites with forms beginning with a vowel or *p*: *neom* = *ne* + *eom*; *nis*; *næs* = *ne* + *pæs*, p. p. *nærende* < *ne pærende*, etc.

(2.) √*dha*, place: Sansk. *da-dhâ-mi*, Greek *τί-θη-μι*, Goth. —, O. Sax. *dô-n*, O. H. Ger. *tuo-n*, do. Anglo-Saxon imperfect from reduplicated theme *dad*; *a*>*æ* (ablaut, § 199) >*y*>*i*, irregular weakening. § 168.

	Indicative Sing.	Plur.	Subj.	Imperat.	Infin.	Participle.
Pres. ..	*dô, dê-st, dê-đ;*	*dô-đ;*	*dô, -n;*	*dô, -đ;*	*dô-n;*	*do-nde.*
Imperf.	*did-e(y), -est, -e;*	*-on(æ);*	*-e(æ), n;*			*dô-n, dê-n.*

(3.) √*ga*, go: Sansk. *g'i-gâ-mi*, Greek *βί-βη-μι*, Goth. *gaggan*, O. Sax. *gâ-n*, O. H. Ger. *gê-n*. Imperfect from √*i* (Sansk. *ê-mi*, Greek *εἶ-μι*, Lat. *î-re*, go, § 158, *a*)>Goth. *i-ddja*, weak form strengthened.

Pres. ..	*gâ, gæ-st, gæ-đ;*	*gâđ;*	*gâ, -n;*	*gâ, -đ;*	*gâ-n;*
Imperf.	*eô-de, -dest, -de;*	*-don* (§ 37);			*ge-gâ-n.*

From the same root are the nasalized forms *gangan*, imperf. *geông, gêng, giêng* (§ 208, *b*); *geongan* (§ 201); and *gengan*, imperf. *gengde.*

214. REDUPLICATE PRESENTS (Relics of Sanskrit 3d Class, § 158): *gangan*<√*ga*>*ga-gâ-mi*, go (§ 213); so *hangan, standan*, § 216).

215. STEMS IN *-ia* of strong verbs (Relics of Sanskrit 4th Class, § 158): *fricge*, inquire, etc. (§ 199); *sperie*, swear, etc. (§ 207, *d*).

216. STEMS WITH *n* INSERTED (Relics of Sanskrit 7th Class, § 158):
fô<*fâhe*>(*fâ(n)gan*), *fêng*, etc., catch (§ 208, *b*).
ga(n)gan<*ga-ga*, go (§ 214).
hô<*hâhe*>(*hâ(n)gan*), *hêng*, etc., hang (§ 208, *b*).
sta(n)dan, *stôd*, etc. (§ 207, *c*).
bre(n)gan, *brohte*, bring; *þe(n)can*, *þohte*, think; *þy(n)can*, *þuhte*, seem (§§ 209, *c*; 211).

217. STEM IN $\sqrt{}+na$ (Relic of Sanskrit 9th Class): *frignan*, ask (§ 202), shows itself of this formation in Gothic, but is consolidated in Anglo-Saxon.

218. RELICS OF REDUPLICATION (§ 159, *b*): *hâtan*, call, *hêht*; *lâcan*, leap, *leôlc* (§ 208, 2); *lætan*, let, *leôrt*; *ondrædan*, dread, *ondreôrd*; *rædan*, rede, *reôrd* (§ 208, 4); and see § 214.

219. RELIC OF PASSIVE: *hâtan*, call, is called (§ 208, 2); passive indic. pres. sing. 1, *hât-te* (æ), I am called; 3, *hât-te*, he is called. Imperf. sing. 1, 3, *hât-te*; plur. *hât-ton*. *Hâtte* = Gothic *haitada*: *-te*, Goth. *-da* (*baira-da*), Greek *-ται* (*φέρε-ται*), Sansk. *-tê* (*bhára-tê*) < ta-ti > Parent Speech *-tai* (*bhara-tai*). Compare § 163: *ai* > *a* > *e*, precession, § 38; *t* > *d*, shifting, § 19; *td* > *tt*, assimilation, § 35, *B*.

220. VERBS WITH MIXED ABLAUT: *drepan*, strike, p. p. *drepen* and *dropen* (§ 199); *bregdan*, braid (§ 202); *spelgan*, swallow (§ 203); *sîhan*, *seôn*, strain; *tîhan*, *teôn*, accuse; *þîhan*, *þeôn*, grow; *prîhan*, *preôn*, cover (§§ 205, 206); but these eight last should be treated as separate verbs.

221. VERBS WITH MIXED STRONG AND WEAK FORMS: *finde*, find, imperf. *fand* and *funde* (§ 201); *búan*, inhabit; imperf. *bû-de*; p. p. *gebû-n*; *búian*, *bûgian*, *bûpian* are other variations; *cîdan*, chide, *câd*, *cidde*.

222. VERBS WITH MIXED WEAK FORMS in *-ia* and *ô* (§§ 160; 165, *d*; 183). The same theme often has forms from both stems; but they are best given under different verbs:
Theme *lif* has imperfects *lif-de* (<stem *lifia*) and *lifô-de* (*y*, *eo*) (<stem *lifô*). Hence two verbs, *libban* < *lifian* by compensative gemination (§ 188, *b*), and *lifian* like *lufian* (§ 183).
With *libban* are put indic. pres. (*libbe*, plur. *libbaþ*, not in Grein) imperf. *lifde*, *lifdon*.
With *lifian*, pres. *lif(i)ge*, *leofăst*, *lifăð* (*eo*, *y*), plur. *lif-iaþ* (*-igaþ*, *-gaþ*, *-igeaþ*); imperative *leofă*; p. p. *lifiende*; imperf. *lifôde* (*y*, *eo*). The *i* of *ia* has its usual variations in the infinitive and participle (*ig*, *ige*, *ge*, *g*), § 175; *i* > *eo*, a-umlaut, § 32.
Habban (æ), have, < *hafian*, has, besides full forms from *-ia*, indic. sing. 1 *haf-a*, *-o*, *-u*; 2, *haf-ăst*; 3, *haf-ăð*; imperative *haf-ă*. For other forms, see pages 84, 85, 86.

Secgan, say (§ 209), has *sagăst*, *sagăd*, *sagă* to put with a *sagian*; so *tellan* and *talian*, tell (§ 209); *hycgan* and *hogian*, mind (§ 211), etc.

223. Weak Verbs with Rückumlaut: *bycge*, buy, *bohte*, etc. (§ 211).

224. Forms disguised by ecthlipsis and the like.

(*a*.) Ecthlipsis of *g*, *h*, or *p*:

bregdan > *brede*, braid; *stregdan* > *strede*, strow; *frignan* > *frine*, ask, etc., vowel *e*, *i* kept short by ablaut (§ 202); *lecgan*, lay, imperf. *legde* > *lêde*; *sægde* > *sæde*, said, etc. (§ 209); *spîgian*, be silent, *spîgad* > *spîad*, etc.; *bôgan* > *bôd*, boasts.

fô < *fâhe*, catch; *hô* < *hâhe*, hang, etc. (§ 208, *b*); *seô* < *sîhe*, etc. (§ 205); and many others, strong and weak.

gerpan (*ie*, *y*, *i*, *ea*, *æ*), equip; imperf. *gyrede*, p. p. *gegyrped*, *gyred*.

serpan (*y*), contrive; indic. pres. plur. *syrpad*, *syrepad*; imperf. *syrp(e)de*, *syr(e)de* (*e*); p. p. *gesyrped*.

(*b*.) Dissimilated Gemination: *p* > *up* > *ep* (§ 117); (*i* > *ig* > *ige*, regular, § 183); *syrepad* < *syrpan*, contrive; *gefrætepôd* < *gefrætpian*, adorn. Compare *poruhte* < *porhte* < *pyrcan*, work (§ 211).

(*c*.) Assimilation: *po* > *u*; *pi* > *u*; *þperan*, weld, p. p. *geþporen* > *geþuren* (§ 200); *spîgian* (*y*), be silent, imperf. *sûgôde*, *spîgôde* (§ 224, *a*).

(*d*.) Shifting of *f*, *p* to *u*: *begrauen* < *begrafen* < *grafen*, grave (§ 207); *bi-pâune* < *pâpen* < *pâpan*, blow (§ 208, 2).

(*e*.) Interchange of *g*, *i*, and *p*: (*h* and *g* regular (§§ 197, 118)); *bûian*, *bûgian*, *bûpian*, inhabit (§ 221); *herian*, *herig(e)an*, *herpan* (*y*), blaspheme; and many more. For *seôn*, see, *seah*, *sægon*, *(ge)sepen*, § 197.

(*f*.) Metathesis: *frignan* > *fringan*, ask (§§ 201, 202); *geþrûen* < *geþperen*, weld (§ 200), etc.

225. Northumbrian.—Inflection.—Indic. pres. sing.: 1, *-o*; 2, *-est*; 3, *-eđ* > *-es*; plur. *-að* > *-as*. Subjunctive: sing. *-e*; plur. *-en* > *-e*. Infinitive: *-an* (rare) > *-a* > *-æ* > *-e*. Imperfect plur. *-un*, *-on* drops *n* before a subject *woe* (*pê*), we, or *gie* (*gê*), ye, and *-u*, *-o* may go to *e* or *i*.

Variation.—The vowels of ablaut and other variation may change as in § 26. The first form of ablaut (§§ 199, 200) has present *ea*, *eo*; imperf. sing. *æ*, *oe*, *e*; plur. *oe*, *ê*. The contracted imperfects (§ 208) have *ê*, *ei*, *ea*. Weak verbs with stem *-ia* (§ 160) in the present drop *i* with compensative gemination (§ 188, *b*). Stem *e* remains often in the imperfect, and oftenest in the p. p., except in verbs having rückumlaut (§ 189, *d*). Stem *ô* goes to *ă*. Participle pres. often in *-and*.

Irregular Verbs.—(For first person *-m*, see § 165, *a*):

Wosa = Ang.-Sax. *pesan*: Pres. indic. 1, *am*, *eom*; 2, *ard*; 3, *is*; plur. *aron*, *sind*, *sindon*. Subjunctive, *sîe*. Pres. indic. 1, *bium* (*om*); 2, *bist*; 3, *bid*; plur. *biđon*. Imperf. *wæs*; plur. *woerun*.

Gâa = Ang.-Sax. *gân*, go: Pres. indic. 1, *gæ* (*geongo*); 2, *gæs*; 3, *gæd*; plur. *gâad* (*gâđ*). Imperf. *eăde*.

DÔA=Ang.-Sax. *dôn*, do: Pres. indic. 1, *dôm* (*dô*); 2, *dôes*; 3, *dôeđ*; plur. *dôađ* (*dôeđ*). Subj. *dô*. Imperf. *dyde*.

Walla=Ang.-Sax. *pillan*, will: Pres. indic. 1, *willo*; 2, *wilt*; 3, *wil*; plur. *wallađ*. Imperf. *walde*. Other forms generally agree with the West Saxon.

226. WEATHERING OF INFLECTION ENDINGS.—(For variation of root vowel, see §§ 199–211):

Indicative Present.

	Ang.-Sax. S.	Ang.-Sax. W.	Layamon. S.	Layamon. W.	Ormulum. S. & W.	Chaucer. S. & W.	Shakespeare. S. & W.
SING.—1.	*e*	*ie*	*e*	*ie*	*e*	*e*, —	—
2.	*est*	*ăst*	*est*	*est*	*esst*	*est*	*est*
3.	*eđ*(*þ*)	*ăđ*(*þ*)	*eđ*(*þ*)	*eđ*(*þ*)	*epþ*	*eth*, *es*	*eth*, *s*
PLUR.—	*ađ*(*þ*)	*iađ*(*þ*)	*eđ*(*þ*)	*ieđ*(*þ*)	*enn*	*eth*, *en*, *e*	—

Imperfect.

SING.—1.	—	*e*	—	*e*	—	*e*	—	*e*, —	—
2.	*e*	*est*	*e*	*est*	*e*	*est*, *e*	*e*, —, *est*	*est*	*est*
3.	—	*e*	—	*e*	—	*e*	—	*e*, —	—
PLUR.—	*on*	*on*	*en*	*en*	*enn*	*enn*	*en*, *e*, —	*en*, *e*, —	—

Subjunctive sing. *e*, plur. *en*, *e*, stands to Chaucer, is gone in Shakespeare.

Imperative sing. *e*, *ă*, plur. *eđ*, *ađ*, weathers like the indicative.

Infinitive *an*, Layamon *en*, Ormulum *enn*, Chaucer *en*, *e*, —, Shakesp. —.

Participle present *ende*>Layamon *ende*, *inde*, *inge*, Chaucer *end*, *and*, *yng*, Shakespeare *ing*, conforming with verbal nouns in *ing*<Ang.-Sax. *ung*, *ing*.

Participle past *en*>*n*; *ôd*>*ăd*>*ed*. The prefix *ge-*>Layamon *i-* is rare in Ormulum; Chaucer often uses *i-* or *y-*, but with this participle only; Shakespeare ridicules it.

VII. DERIVATION.

227. Word stems are made from roots and radicles (§§ 56, 57). The Parent Speech made stems by suffixing a radicle to a root or stem, (2) by change of a root vowel (progression), (3) by reduplication, (4) by combining stems.

(*a*.) The last class are called *compound*, the others *simple*.

(*b*.) Words having stems formed from verb stems are called *verbals*; from noun stems, *denominatives*.

(*c*.) The radicle makes more definite the indefinite notion of a root by indicating a particular relation in which it is to be conceived. It often brings it under some one of the parts of speech.

The vowel change has a similar force symbolically.

Composition or coalescence combines two notions.

(*d.*) Certain notional stems used as the latter part of compounds lose their notional force, and become in effect relational suffixes. It is not easy always to separate these from suffixes springing directly from radicles.

228. Suffixes from Radicles (§ 56).

The suffixes of the Anglo-Saxon nominative or present are at the left. Small letters above the line have dropped. Latin stems in *o-* are of the second declension, and imply a nominative in *-us*, *-um*, or *-er* (§ 70,).

Suffix. 1. *Vowels.*	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	Anglo-Saxon.
—^{a}<a:	*jug-á*, yoke, √*jug*, join;	ζυγ-ό-ν;	*jug-o-*;	*juk-^{a}-s*;	*iuk^{a}*.
e<a (verb):	*bhár-â-mi*, I bear;	φέρ-ω;	*fer-o*;	*bair-a*;	*ber-e*.
u<â:	*bhug'-â'*, bend, √*bhug'* >*fug*, flee;	φυγ-ή, flight;	*fug-a*;	*gib-a*, √*gib*, give;	*gif-u*, gift.
—^{i}<i:	*áh-i*, snake, √*agh*, sin;	ἔχ-ι-ς;	*angu-i-s*;	*kvén-^{i}-s*, woman;	*cpén^{i}*.
—^{u}<u:	*âç-u'*, quick, √*ak*, to be sharp;	ὠκ-ύ-ς;	*ac-u-s*, needle;	*hand-u*, √*hanth*, catch;	*hand^{u}*, hand.
e<ja:	*mádh-ja*, middle;	μέσσον<μεδ-jo-ν;	*med-io-*;	*mid-ji-s*;	*midd*<*mide*.
a^{n}<jan:	Lat. *leg-ion-is*, legion;	Goth. *maurthr-ja^{n}*, murderer;		Ang.-Sax. *murdr-a^{n}*.	
—^{i}<jâ:	*vid-jâ'*, wit, √*vid*, see; *dêv-î'*, goddess;	ὄσσα<Fόκ-ja, voice, √*vok*;	*in-sid-ia*, *sit*-ting in wait;	*band-i*, √*band*;	*bend^{i}*, bond.

ie, ô<aja in verb stems, see § 160.

en^{a}<jâ (+na):	———	παιδ-ίο-ν, little child, <παι(δ)-ς, child;	O. H. G. *magat-i*, *-ines*, little maid;	*mæ̂gd-en^{a}* <*mæ̂gd*, maid.

2. *Semi-vowels.*

p^{a} (u, o)<va: ..	*ê'-va*, going, √*i*, go;	αἰ-Fών, time;	*æ-vo-*;	*ai-v^{a}-s*;	*â-p^{a}*.
pu<vu, p^{i}(u, o) <vjâ:	———	———	———	—	*far-bu(-pu)*, color; *bead-u*, battle.
m^{a}<ma:	*ghar-má*, heat, √*ghar*, radiate;	θερ-μό-ς, hot;	*for-mo-*;	*var-m^{a}*;	*pear-m^{a}*.
ma^{n}<man:	*(g)nâ'-man*, name, √*gna*, know;	γνώ-μον-ος;	*(g)no-men*;	*na-mô(-man)*;	*na-ma^{n}*.

For *ma*, *ra*, as suffixes of comparison, see §§ 123, 126.

r^{a}, l^{a}<ra:	*ág'-ra*, field, √*ag*, go; *sád-ra*, seat, √*sad*, —;	ἀγ-ρό-ς; ἕδ-ρα;	*ag-ro-*; *sel-la* (*d*>*l*);	*ak-r^{a}-s*; *sit-l^{a}-s*;	*æc-(e)r^{a}*. *set-(e)l^{a}*.

Here put *er^{a}*, *^{i}*, *or^{a}*, *^{i}*, *ur^{a}*, *^{i}*, *er-e* (<*-ja*), *al^{a}*, *^{i}*, *el^{a}*, *^{i}*, *ol^{a}*, *^{i}*, *ul^{a}*, *^{i}*, *el-e* (<*-ja*).

ere<ara+ja: .. Gr. (*-ηρο+ιο*), Lat. (*-âri+io*), Goth. (*-ar+ja*), (Bopp gives *-ar-ja*<*târ-ja*). Lat. *libr-âr-io-(ius)*, book-man; Goth. *bôk-ar-ei-s*, Ang.-Sax. *bóc-er-e*, O. H. G. *buoch-er-i* (*ărĭ*).

a^{n}, e^{n}<an:	*ud-án*, water, √*vad*, wet.	τέρ-εν-ος, smooth; εἰκ-όν-ος, likeness;	*pect-en*, comb; *ed-ón-is*, eater;	*vat-ô(-in-s)*, water.	*pæt-a^{n}*. *pæt-e-^{an}*.

For more of *-an*, see §§ 95, 105, *a*; for infinitive *-ana*, p. p. *-na*, § 175.

Semi-vowels—Continued.	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	Ang.-Sax.
n^a < na:	{*svâp-na*, sleep, / $\surd$ *svap*, sleep;	ὕπ-νο-ς;	{*som-nu-s*< / *sop-no-s*;	{*bar-n*^{a}, / bairn;	{*spęf-(e)n*^{a}, / sleep.
(e)n^a:	{*phali-ná*, / fruit-bearing;	{κέδρι-νο-ς, / cedarn;	{*fraxi-no*, / ashen;	{*silubrei-n*^{a}*-s*, / silvern;	*silfre-n*^{a}.
n^i < ni:	{*ag-ní*, fire, / $\surd$ *ag*;	μῆ-νι-ς, wrath;	*ig-ni-s*, fire;	{*libai-ni*, / victuals;	{*leof-(e)n*^{i}, / $\surd$ *líf*, live.
nu:	{*sû-nú*, son, / $\surd$ *su*, bear;	θρῆ-νυ-ς, stool;	*ma-nu-s*, hand;	{*su-nu-s*, / ęon;	*su-nu*, son.
en^{ne} < â-njâ: ...	{*Indr-âṇî*, In- / dra's wife;	{θε-αινα, goddess; / βασίλ-ινα, / queen (νν < νj);	{*reg-îna*, queen, / < *reg-s*(*x*), / king;	{O.H.Ger. / *gut-in*^{na}, / goddess;	*gyd-en*^{ne}, goddess.
erne < ar-û-nja:	{Lat. (*exter-no*), *extráneo-*, belonging to / that *extra*;	(*-er*, §§ 122, *b*; 129, 2);	{O. H. Ger. *êst-r-îni*, / eastern;		*êâst-erne*.

3. *Dentals.*

ta: .....{For p. p. *-ta*, Goth. *-da*, *-tha*, § 175, 5; for *-ta-ra*, *-ta-ma*, *-ta-ta* in comparison, § 126.

Here belong Ang.-Sax. $-d^a$ (*ăd*^{a}, *ŏd*^{a}, *năd*^{a}), $-d^a$ (*od*^{a}, *ud*^{a}, *ed*^{a}), $-t^a$ (*ot*^{a}, *et*^{a}).

₫er, der, dl^i < tar:	{*pi-tár*, father, / $\surd$ *pa*, feed; / *bhrâ'-tar*, brother;	πα-τέρ-ος; φρά-τορ-ος;	*pa-ter*; / $\surd$ *na*, Gr. νε, Lat. *ne* > (needle) *frâ-ter*;	*fa-der*; / *nê-thla*; / *brô-thar*;	*fæd-er*. / *næ̂-dl*^{i}. / *brô-đor*.
estre^n < as-ta-ra (+an):	{Latin *surd-astro-*, deafish; / French *poét-astre*, petty poet;			Ang.-Sax. *bæc-estr-e*^{an}, female baker.	
₫^{i}, d^i, t^i < ti: ...	{*má-ti*, mind, / $\surd$ *ma-n*, think;	μῆ-τι-ς;	*men-ti-s*;	*mun-th*^{i}*-s*;	{*myn-d*^{i}, / *-d*^{i}, *-t*^{i}.
tu:	{*sthâ-tu-m*, stand, / $\surd$ *sthâ*, stand;	{⌈ἀσ-τυ, city; / (-συ-νη < -τυ-νη);	{*sta-tu-s*; (*-tu-ti*, / *-tu-don*, *-tu-din*, / etc.);	{*dâu-thu-s*, / death, / *thuh-tu-s*;	{*deâ-đ*^{a}; / *ge-þoh-t*^{a}, / thought.
nes^{si} (nis^{si}, nys^{si}) < na + as + tu:	———	———	———	{*gudji-nassu-s*, / priest-hood;	{*gôd-nes*^{se}, / goodness,

ende < ant: ..... § 175, 3.

es-a^n < as (+an):	{*gán-as*, genus, / $\surd$ *gen*, bear;	γέν-ο-ς;	*gen-us*, *-er-is*;	{*ag-is*^{a}, / awe;	{*eg-esa*^{n}, / $\surd$ *ag*, fear.

Here put (e)s^i, (e)ru: .....} Goth. *-iza*, O.H.G. *-ira*, A.-S. *-eru* > *-ru* in plurals *xg-ru*, *eggs*, etc. (§ 82, *a*).

els^a / esl^a <	{al + sa / as + la}	O. H. G. *fuot-isal*^{a}, fodder;	O. Norse *foed-sla*;	Ang.-Sax. *fêd-els*^{a}, *-esl*^{a}.
		O. H. G. *rât-isal*^{a}, riddle;	Swedish *ræd-else*;	Ang.-Sax. *rædels*^{a}.

4. *Gutturals.*

ih^a, ig^a < ka: ...	{*Sindhu-ka*, / from *Sindhu*;	{λογι-κό-ς, of / *logos*;	{*belli-co-*, of / war;	{*grêd-a-g*^{a}*-s*, / greedy;	*grêd-i-g*^{a}.

Here put h^a, oc^a, i, uc^a, i.

iht^a:	O. H. Ger. *stein-oh-t*, stony;	———	{*steina-ha*, / stony;	{*stên-ih-t*^{a}, / ston-y.

	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	Ang.-Sax.
isc^{a}<**i(s)ka**:	——	*παιδ-ισκο-ς*, little child (*παιδ-*);	*scutr-isco-*, little plate; *Syr-isco-*, a Syrian;	*barn-isk*^{a}*-s*, childish;	*cild-isc*^{a}. *Engl-isc*^{a}, English.

ing^{a}<**i(n)g**^{a}: O. H. G. *edil-inc*^{a}, noble-man; A.-Sax. *æðel-ing*^{a}; *Elis-ing*^{a}, son of Elisha.

l-ing^{a}:..... O. H. G. *junki-linc*^{a}, a youth; A.-Sax. *geong-ling*^{a}<*geong*, young.

ung^{i}, **ing**^{i}: O. H. G. *warn-unga*, warning; A.-Sax. *pearn-ung*^{i} (*-ing*^{i}) (*pearn-ian*, to warn).

incle: ..... Lat. *domu-n-cu-lo*, little house (*domo-*); O. H. G. *esil-inchilin*, little ass; A.-Sax. *hûs-incle*, little house.

For suffixes of pronouns and numerals, see §§ 130–140; for those of comparison, §§ 122–129. The endings of adverbs are mostly from case-endings.

229. Quasi-Suffixes from Notional Stems.

ærn, ern, house; Goth. *razn*, O. Norse *rann*: *slêp-ern*, sleeping-room; *hors-ern*, stable. Often mixed with Latin radicle suffix *-ern*: Lat. *lat-ern-a*, *lucerna*, A.-Sax. *blâc-ern*, lant-ern; Lat. *tab-erna*, A.-Sax. *gæst-ern*, tav-ern; Lat. *carcer*, A.-Sax. *carc-ern*, prison; A.-Sax. *cpeart-ern*, quarters.

bære, bearing; Lat. *-ferus*, O. H. G. *pâri*, O. Nor. *bær*: *lust-bære*, lust-y, joyous.

cund, kind; Gr. *-γεν-ής*, Lat. *-gena*, Goth. *kunds*, O. H. G. *chund*: *deôfol-cund*, devil-ish; *god-cund*, god-like.

cræft, craft; O. Sax. *-kraft*, O. H. G. *-chraft*: *stæf-cræft*, (letter-craft) grammar.

cyn, kind; Lat. *gen-us*, Goth. *kuni*, O. Sax. *kunni*, O. Nor. *kynni*, O. H. G. *chunni*: *treôp-cyn*, (tree-kind) wood; *man-cyn*, man-kind.

dæg, day; Goth. *dags*, O. Sax. *dag*, O. Nor. *dagr*, O. H. G. *tac*: *geâr-dæg*, (yore-days) formerly.

dôm, judgment, authority, dominion; O. Nor. *-dômr*, O. H. G. *-tuom*, Ger. *-thum*: *cyning-dôm*, kingdom.

fæst, fast; O. Nor. *-fastr*, M. H. G. *-veste*, Ger. *-fest*: *âr-fæst*, honorable; *stæde-fæst*, stead-fast.

feald, fold; Goth. *falths*, O. Nor. *-faldr*, O. H. G. *-falt*: *mænig-feald*, manifold.

ful, full; Goth. *fulls*, O. Sax. *-ful*, O. Nor. *-fullr*, O. H. G. *-fol*: *âr-ful*, honorable. Sansk. *pûr*, Gr. *πλέ-ως*, Lat. *plê-nus*.

hâd, character, state, rank; O. H. G. *-heit*: *brôðor-hâd*, brother-hood; *mæden-hâd*, maiden-head.

heard, hard; Goth. *hard-u-s*, O. Nor. *-hardr*, O. H. G. *-hart*, O. French *-ard*: *mægen-heard*, (might-hard) very mighty; drunk-ard; bragg-art.

lâc, sport, gift; Goth. *láiks*, O. Nor. *leikr*, O. H. G. *-leih*: *feoht-lâc*, fight; O. Eng. *love-laik*, love; know-ledge; *ped-lâc*, wed-lock.

leâs, loose from; Goth. *-láus*, O. Sax. *-lôs*, O. Nor. *-laus*, O. H. G. *-laos*, *-lôs*: *âr-leâs*, (honor-less) dishonorable; *god-leâs*, god-less.

lîc, like; Goth. *-leiks*, O. Nor. *-líkr*, *-lëgr*, O. H. G. *-lîh*: *âr-lîc*, (honor-like) honorable; *god-lîc*, god-ly. Sansk. *-dṛk*, Gr. *-λικ*, Lat. *-lic*.

man, man; Goth. *mans*, O. Sax. *-man*, O. Nor. *-maðr*, O. H. G. *-man*: *gleô-man*, glee-man; *pîf-man*, wo-man.

mǽl, time; Goth. *-mêl*, O. Sax. *-mahal*, O. Nor. *-mâl*, O. H. G. *-mahal*, *mǎl* (i): *undern-mǽl*, noon-time; *stycce-mǽlum*, piece-meal.

rǽden (Lat. *ratio*), mode, fashion: *freônd-rǽden*, friend-ship; *mǽg-rǽden*, kind-red.

rêd, **rǽd**, counsel, condition; O. N. *-râd*, O. H. G. *-rât*: *hî-rêd*, (hive-condition) family.

rîce, prince; Goth. *-reiks*, O. Nor. *rëkr*, O. H. G. *-rih*, Sansk. *râ'g'an*, Lat. *rex*: *sige-rice*, victorious. (2) =*dôm*, *cyne-rice*, kingdom.

sceaft, shape, manner; O. Sax. *-scaft*, O. H. G. (10th century) *scaft*.
scipe (*y*), shape, manner; O. Sax. *-scepi*, O. Nor. *scapr*, O. H. G. *scaf*: *freônd-scipe*, friend-ship; *hyge-sceaft*, mind-state; *land-sceap* (*-scipe*), land-scape (-skip).

smið, smith; O. Nor. *-smiðr*, O. H. G. *-smid*: *pîg-smið*, warrior; Goth. *-a*.

stæf, staff; O. Nor. *-stafr*, O. H. G. *-stap*: *fâcen-stæf*, wickedness; *âr-stæf*, honor.

sum, same, like; O. Nor. *-samr*, O. H. G. *-sam*: *pyn-sum*, winsome, joyous.

tême (*ý*) = **sum**: *luf-tŷme*, lovely; *hefig-tŷme*, troublesome; *þþeorh-tême*, perverse.

pare, men; Goth. *vair*, O. Sax. *wer*: *Rôm-pare*, Romans. Sansk. *vîr-a-s*, Gr. *ἥρ-ως*, Lat. *vir*.

peard, becoming, tending to; Goth. *-vairths*, O. H. G. *-wert*, *-wart*: *hâm-peard*, home-ward. Sansk. *vṛt*, Lat. *vert-ere*.

pîs, wise; O. Sax. *-wîsi*; O. Nor. *-vîs*; M. H. G. *wîse*: *riht-pîs*, (wise as to rights) righteous. √ **vid**, § 212.

230. New Stems from Variation of Root Vowel.

Ablaut.—The vowel of the present denotes the *act* or an object suited to act; those of the past denote *result*, the plural being more abstract. But in many derivatives this force is lost.

First Conjugation, (*e* (*eo*); *æ* (*ea*); *ǽ* (*â*); *e*; § 199): *beran* (*beoran*), bear, >*beorð*, birth; *bere*, barley; *bearn*, child; *bǽr*, bier. (*i*; *a*, *u*; *u*; § 201): *singan*, sing, >*sang*, *song*, song; *grindan*, grind, >*grund*, ground.

Second Conjugation, (*î; â, i; i*; § 205): *drîfan*, drive, > *drâf*, drove; *bîtan*, bite, > *bit*, bit; *biter*, bitter; *bât*, bait.

Third Conjugation, (*eô* (*û*); *eâ, u; o*; § 206): *beôgan*, bend, > *beâh*, ring; *boga*, bow; *teôhan*, tug, > *teâm*, team; *toga*, duke; *tyht*, course.

Fourth Conjugation, (*a* (*ea*); *ô, ô; a* (*ea*); § 207): *grafan*, grave, > *græf*, grave; *grôf*, ditch; *sceapan*, shape, > *scôp*, shaper, poet.

UMLAUT.—The same stem may occur with and without umlaut or breaking, but this variation does not make a new word, though it may be the beginning of bifurcation (§ 40, 3). Since the ablaut became irregular (§ 199) new words have been formed in large numbers by irregular bifurcation.

SUFFIXES ARRANGED ACCORDING TO THEIR USE.

Formation of Substantives.

231. INDEFINITE NOUN-SIGNS: **u** < *â*, **—^{i}** < *i*, **—^{i}** < *jâ*, **u**, **—^{a}** < *a*, **e** < *ja*, **a** < *an*, **e** < *an*.

These combine with the case-endings (§§ 69–95), and are abundantly used as secondary suffixes; **—^{i}** is found oftenest with names of actions and qualities, **u** with names of qualities, **e** and **a** with agents.

gif-u (*gif-an*, give), gift.
dæd^{i} (*dôn*, do), deed.
pyn^{ni} (O. Sax. *wunnia*), fun.
mag-u (*mag-an*, get), son.
drinc^{a} (*drinc-an*, drink), drink.
hird-e (Goth. *haird-ei-s*), hird.
han-a^{n} (√ **can**, sing), cock.
tung-e, *-an*, tongue.

232. AGENT.—Masculine **a, end, ere, e** < *ja*, **l^{a}** (*el^{a}*, *ol^{a}*, *ul^{a}*), **ðer, der, ter.**
Feminine **e** < *an*, **en^{ne}, estre, —** < *i*, *iâ*, *isse* (Lat. *issa*).
Instruments and means: **els^{a}, ele, el^{a}, dl^{i}, or^{a}** (*er^{a}*), **(e)n^{i}.**
Quasi-suffix, **smiðð.**

dêm-a (*dêm-an*, deem), judge.
dêm-end (*dêm-an*, deem), judge.
dêm-ere (*dêm-an*, deem), judge.
sang-ere (*sing-an*, sing), singer.
pin-e (√ **pin**, love), friend.
fore-rin-el (*rinn-an*, run), fore-runner.
fæ-der (√ **pa**, feed), father.
brô-ðer (√ **bhar**, support), brother.
speos-ter, f. (*sva-su-tar*, connected woman; √ **su**, bear).
abbud-isse, abbess.
myr-e, *-an* (*mearh*, horse), mare.
fix-en, *enne* (fox), vixen.
sang-estre (*sing-an*, sing), songster.
fêd-els (*fêd-an*, feed), victuals.
net-ele (√ **na**, sew)? nettle.
set-l^{a}, n. (*sittan*, sit), settle.
næ-dl^{i} (√ **na**, sew), needle.
fôd-or^{a} (*fêd-an*, feed), fodder.
leof-en^{i} (*lif-an*, live), victuals.
byg-els, bow; *ham-or^{a}*, hammer.
pig-smiðð (war-smith), warrior.

233. Action.—Masculine and Neuter **t**^{a} (*ot*^{a}, *et*^{a}), **ð**^{a} (*að*, *ǒð*, *nað*).
Feminine **ing**^{i}, **ung**^{i}, **l**^{i}, **le**^{an} (*ele*, *ole*, *ule*).
Quasi-suffix, **lâc**.

â-rîs-t (*rîs-an*, rise), resurrection.
bærn-et (*beorn-an*, burn), burning.
hunt-að (*hunt-ian*, hunt), hunting.
hunt-ôt (*hunt-ian*, hunt), hunting.
hunt-nað (*hunt-ian*, hunt), hunting.
bern-ing (*beorn-an*, burn), burning.
bærn-ung (*beorn-an*, burn), burning.
sping-el^{i}, *sping-ele* } (*sping-an*, scourge), scourging.
beadu-lâc^{a} (fight-sport), fighting.
pîf-lâc, marriage.

234. Result.—Masculine **m**^{a} (*em*^{a}, *um*^{a}), **ma**^{n}, **n**^{a}, **ð**^{a} < *tu*, **t**^{a} < *tu*.
Neuter **n**^{a}.
Feminine (**e**)**n**^{i}.

cpeal-m^{a} (*cpell-an*, kill), death.
pæs-t-m^{a} (*peax-an*, wax), fruit.
blô-ma^{n} (*blôp-an*, blow), bloom.
heof-en^{a} (*hebb-an*, heave), heaven.
deâ-ð^{a} (√ **ðau**, die), death.
ge-þoh-t^{a} (*þinc-an*, think), counsel.
bear-n^{a} (*ber-an*, bear), child.
sel-en^{i} (*sell-an*, give), gift.

235. Quality and objects named from it.—
Feminine **u** (*o*, *eo*), **nes**^{si} (*nis*, *nys*), (**u**)**ð**^{i}, **ð**^{i}, **t**^{i}.
Neuter **ð**^{a}, **ð**^{a}, **t**^{a}, used instead of *ð*^{i}, *ð*^{i}, *t*^{i} when *ge-* or other prefix is used with an abstract.
Masculine **ing**^{a}.
Quasi-suffixes, **cræft**, **cyn**, **dôm**, **hâd**, **man**, **rêd**, **ræden**, **rice**, **sceaft**, **scеap**, **scipe**, **stæf**.

hæt-u (*hât*, hot), heat.
streng-u, *-o*, *-eo*, strength.
ge-lîc-nes^{si}, like-ness.
mild-heort-nes^{si}, mercy.
streng-ð^{i}, strength.
ge-cyn-ð^{i}, nature.
pit-leâs-t^{i}, wit-lessness.
gŷme-lŷs-t^{i}, heed-lessness.
geôg-uð^{i} (*geong*), youth.
ge-þing-ð^{a}, honor.
ge-cyn-ð^{a}, nature.
ge-pih-t^{a} (*peg-an*, weigh), weight.
æðel-ing^{a}, noble-man.
læce-cræft^{a}, m. leech-craft.
læce-cyn^{a}, n. (leech-kind), doctors.
læce-dôm^{a}, m. leech-craft.
pîs-dôm (*pîs*, wise), wisdom.
cild-hâd^{a}, m. child-hood.
þeôp-hâd, serf-dom.
sûð-man, m. Southerner.
hî-rêd^{i}, f. (hive-state), family.
freônd-ræden^{i}, f. friendship.
hyge-sceaft^{i}, f. (mind-state), thinking.
land-sceap, n., *-scipe*, m., land-scape, [-skip.
âr-stæf^{a}, m. honor.
bisceop-rice, n., bishopric.

236. Diminutives: **c** (*uca*, *oc*^{a}), **l** (*l*^{a} < (*i*)*la*), **le** < *il*+*an*, **ling**, **incle**^{ia}, **en**^{a} < *jâ*+*na*.
k (questioning, § 56) and **l** (trilling) are suited to express diminution.

The Sanskrit diminutive is *k*; Greek, *ω*, *σκ*; Latin, *l*, *c-l*; Goth., O.H.G., *l* most; Low German, *k* most. Anglo-Saxon words in *uca*, *el*, *le* are relics; *ling* is growing into use. The English uses *ock*, *ling*.

bull-uca^{n}, bull-ock.
cyrn-el^{a}, n. (*corn*, corn), kernel.
meóp-le, f. (Goth. *mavi*, virgin; *mavilô*, little girl), girl.
geong-ling^{a}, m. young-ling.
râp-incle, n. (*râp*, rope), string.
cyc-en^{a}, n. (*coc*, cock), chicken.
mægd-en^{a}, n. (*mægd*, maid), maiden.

237. Patronymics: **ing**^{a}.

Ælfréd Æðelpulf-ing^{a}, Alfred son of Æthelwulf.

238. Gentiles: **e**$<$*ia*, **an**, **isc**, **ing**^{a} (§ 101, 2).

Quasi-suffix, **pare**.

Engl-e (§ 83), English.
Got-an, Goths.
Róm-pare, Romans.
Englisc, adj., English.
Pyr-ing-âs, Thyringians, descendants of Thyr.

239. Place: **en**^{a}, **ene**^{an}. Time:

Quasi-suffix, **ern** (*ærn*), etc. (§ 101). . . **dæg**, **mâl**.

midl-en^{a}, n. midst.
cyc-ene, f. (*coc*, cook), kitchen.
geár-dæg, m. (yore-day), antiquity.
dôm-ern^{a}, n. (*dôm*, doom), judgment-hall.
hors-ern, n. horse-stable.
undern-mâl, n. noon-time.

ADJECTIVES.

240. Indefinite Suffixes combining with case-endings: —^{a}, **u**$<$*â*, —^{i}, **a**$<$*an*, **e**$<$*an*.

Any adjective theme may have stems in all these endings (§§ 103–114).

241. Characteristic, connoting quality of the object denoted by the stem: **isc**.

Quasi-suffixes, **cund**, **lîc** (with nouns).

cild-isc (*cild*, child), child-ish.
deófol-cund, (devil-kind) devil-ish.
pîf-lîc (*pîf*, woman), having the qualities of a woman, womanly.

(*a*.) Patrial **isc** also connotes origin from a place or stock: *Rômân-isc*, Roman; *Lunden-isc*, Londonish; *Engl-isc*, English.

242. Fitness or *disposition* for the act or state denoted by the theme: **ol**, **or**.

Quasi-suffixes, **fûs**, **lîc** (with verbs), **sum**, **tȳme**, **pîs**.

sprec-ol (*sprec-an*, speak), talk-ative.
bit-or, *-er* (*bît-an*, bite), bitter.
bealo-fûs, disposed to *bale*, wicked: O. Nor. *fûs*, O. H. G. *funs*, ready.

forgifend-lîc, to be forgiven.
un-gesepen-lîc, (unseen-) invisible.
un-gelæred-lîc, (unlearned-) unlearned.
luf-sum, disposed to love.
lôf-sum, worthy to be praised.
luf-tŷme, fitted for *love*.
riht-pîs, knowing right, righteous.

243. Fullness, connoting possession of an object denoted by the stem: **e**<*ja*, **ig, iht, ed.**

Quasi-suffixes, **bære, fæst, ful, heard, leâs.**

pyrd-e (*peord*, worth), worth-y.
stân-ig (*stân*, stone), stony, abounding in stones (æ).
pel-ig (*pela*, wealth), rich.
stân-iht, stony (æ).
ge-hyrn-ed (*horn*, horn), horned.
pæstm-bære (*pæstm*, fruit), fruit-ful.
hlŷs-bære (*hlŷsa*, fame), famous.
âr-fæst (*âr*, honor), honorable.
cear-ful (*cearu*, care), care-ful.
mægen-heard, might-y.
cear-leâs (*eearu*, care), careless.

244. Material, (e)n^a: *stæn-en* (*stân*, stone), made of stone.
gyld-en (*gold*, gold), golden.

245. Place, **erne**: *sûd-erne*, southern; *nord-erne*, northern.
peard: *sûd-peard*, southward; *nord-peard*, northward.

For *Pronouns*, see §§ 130–137; comparatives and superl., §§ 122–129.
For *Numeral -feald, -ôde, -tig*, etc., see §§ 139–148.

VERBS.

246. Strong Verb Suffixes: **a, ia**<*ja* (§§ 158, *a*; 215).

These are suffixed to a root.

nim-a-n, take; *sper-ia-n*, swear; *sittan*<*sit-ia-n*, sit.

247. Weak Verb Suffixes: **ia**<*aja*, **ô**<*aja* (§ 160).

(*a.*) **aja** is a secondary suffix = *a*+*ja*, *a* belonging to a simpler word. In *aja*>**ia**, *a* drops; *aja*>*ajâ*>*aâ*>*ô*, progression and contraction (§§ 38, 52).

(*b.*) Variations: **ia**, *iga, igea, ga, ea, a, ie, ige, ge, e*, —;
ô, *â, a, u, e*, precession and dissimilated gemination (§§ 38; 27, 5).

ner-ia-n, *ner-e-de*, save; infinitive *ner-ia-n*, *ner-iga-n*, *ner-igea-n*, *ner-ga-n*; *fêg-a-n*, *fêg-ea-n*, join, *fêg-(e)-de*; indicative present *ner-ie*, *ner-ige*, *ner-ge*, *ner-e*.

sealf-ia-n, salve, *sealf-ô-de*, *sealf-u-de*, *sealf-ă-de*, *sealf-e-de*.

247*. Infinitive **ân** is contracted from *aa, ăgan, ahan*; **ôn** from *âhan, ŏhan*: *gân* (*gaan*), go; *smeagan*>*smeân*, consider; *sleahan*>*sleân*, slay; *fôn*<*fâhan*, catch; *gefeôn*<*gefeohan*, rejoice; *teón*<*teôhan*, tug.

Noteworthy Weak Verbs.

248.—I. Causatives and Transitives, relics of the Sanskrit causative. They have the highest progression of the root (like the strong imperfect singular), and i-umlaut.

Conj. 1.—√ a: √ *sad*, sit; Sansk. *sîd-â'mi*, sit, causative *sâd-ájâ-mi*, set; Goth. *sit-an*, *sat-ja-n*; O. Sax. *sittian*, *settian*; O. Nor. *sit-ia*, *set-ia*. Highest progression, *a*; i-umlaut, *e* (§§ 199–204, 32).

sittan < *sit-ia-n*, sit;	imp. *sæt* (*a*);	*settan* < *sat-ia-n*, set.
licgan < *lig-ia-n*, lie;	imp. *læg* (*a*);	*lecgan* < *lag-ia-n*, lay.
beorn-an, burn;	imp. *barn*;	*bern-a-n*, cause to burn.
drinc-an, drink;	imp. *dranc*;	*drenc-a-n*, cause to drink.

Conj. 2.—√ i: √ *diç*, show; Sansk. causative *dêç-ájâ-mi*; Goth. *teih-an*, *tâik-ns*, token. Highest progression, *â*; i-umlaut, *æ* (§§ 205, 32).

tîh-an, point at;	imp. *tâh*;	*tæc-a-n*, teach.
drîf-an, drive;	imp. *drâf*;	*dræf-a-n*, disperse.
lîd-an, go (by sea);	imp. *lâd*;	*læd-a-n*, lead.
rîs-an, arise;	imp. *râs*;	*rær-a-n*, raise, rear.

Conj. 3.—√ u: √ *bhug'*, bend; Sansk. causative *bhôg'-ájâ-mi* (§ 158). Highest progression, *eâ*; i-umlaut, *ŷ* (§§ 206, 32); *ê* often occurs.

bûg-an, bow, bend;	imp. *beâh*;	*bŷg-a-n*, cause to bend.
fleôg-an, flee;	imp. *fleâh*;	*flŷg-a-n*, put to flight.

Conj. 4.—√ â, a: √ *pâr*, Sansk. causative *pâr-ájâ-mi*, accomplish. Highest progression, *ô*; i-umlaut, *ê* (§§ 207, 32); or, progression, *a*; umlaut, *e*: Goth. *far-an*, *far-ja-n*, but *gal-an*, sing, *gôl-ja-n* (compare § 158, *e*).

far-an, go;	imp. *fôr*;	*fêr-a-n*, go; *far-ia-n*, carry.
pac-an, wake;	imp. *pôc*;	*peccan* < *pac-ia-n*, awaken.

pac-ia-n, watch, is also found—a later denominative.

Here belong many verbs apparently formed from nouns or participles by i-umlaut of the root vowel: *hyld-an*, to make bent (*heald*); *hŷn-an*, to make lowly (*heân*); *hrŷm-an*, to cry (*hreâm*); *pyrc-an*, to work (*peorc*); *pyrm-an*, to warm (*pearm*); *yld-an*, to delay (*eald*, old); *yrm-an*, to make wretched (*earm*); *ypp-an*, to lay open (*up*); *ŷt-an*, to drive out (*út*); words in *-fyld-an*: *þrî-fyld-an*, to triple (*feald*, fold), etc.

249.—II. Denominatives without Umlaut, from adjectives.

Such are oftenest neuter, but with *ge-* oftenest transitive.

micl-ia-n, to grow great (*micel*);	*ge-miclıan*, to make great.
litl-ia-n, to grow little;	*ge-litlian*, to make little.
hât-ia-n, to grow hot (*hât*);	compare *hæt-an*, to make hot.
pearm-ia-n, to grow warm;	compare *pyrm-an*, to make warm.

250.—III. Denominative Suffixes grown Verbals: **-c-, -g-, -n-, -s-, ettan**<*atian* (§ 188, *b*), **lêcan**:

hŷr-c-n-ian, hark, hearken (*hŷr-an*, hear); *syn-g-ian*, to sin; *mêr-s-ian*, to make more; *pîl-n-ian*, to punish; *hâl-ettan*, *-etan*, *-etian*, hail; *sumor-lêcan*, summer is near.

ADVERBS.

251. Adverbial suffixes are mostly from case-endings.

Notional Stems (Nouns).

I. Living Case-endings, with and without prepositions: gen. **es, â**; dat. **a, e, um**; acc. **—, ne**; instrum. **é, e**; weak **an**.

es: *dæg-es*, by day; *ídæg-es*, (now)-a-days; *eall-es*, wholly; *micl-es*, much; *tô-midd-es*, amidst; *neaht-es*, by night; *nêd-es*, needs; *sôn-es*, (eft-)soons; *panc-es*, willingly; *æfter-peard-es*, afterwards; *hâm-peard-es*, homewards. **â**: *geâr-â*, of yore (*geâr*, year).

Adverbial **-es** is found with nouns having their genitive in *-e*: *neaht-e*, *nêd-e*, etc.; *sin-neahtes*, eternally.

a, dative feminine (§ 93, *i*): *dearn-ung-a*, *-inga*, *-enga*, O. Sax. *darn-ung-ô* (§ 88, *a*), O. H. G. *tarnunk-ûn* (*û*=Goth. *ô*, § 95, *c*), secretly; *deorcung-a*, in the gloaming; Scotch *darklings*, darkling; *eallung-a*, wholly; *bæcling-a*, O. Eng. *backlings*, on the back; so O. Eng. *noseling*, *side-ling*>sidelong (§ 40, 3), headlong, on the nose, side, head. This is often thought genitive plural; but feminine abstracts in *-ung* seldom use the plural, and they retain the old dative in *-a* (§ 77, *i*); while the O. H. G. can not be a genitive plural.

um, dative plural: *hpîl-um*, *-on*, whilom; *on-sundr-on*, asunder; *pundr-um*, wondrously; *stycce-mêl-um*, piece-meal; *seld-um*, *-on*, *-an*, seldom; *litl-um*, little; *micl-um*, much.

e, ê, dative and instrumental: *æfr-e*, ever; *heôdæg(é)*, to-day; *tô-dæg-e*, to-day; *tô-nihte*, to-night; *tô-ealdre*, always; *miclê mâ*, much more; *tô-gædere*, together. **an**: *tô-eâc-an*, moreover.

—, accusative: *hâm*, home; *eâst*, east; *pest*, west; *ealne peg*, always; *on peg*, away; *on bæc*, back; *on-geân*, against; *eal*, all; *neâh*, nigh; *hâmpeard*, homeward; *on îdel*, in vain; and comparatives and superlatives (§ 123). **ne**: *eal-ne peg*, always; *sum-ne dêl*, O. Eng. *some deal*, somewhat.

II. Obscure Endings, **a, e**.

(*a*.) **a**: Goth. *-a*, O. Sax. *-a*, O. H. G. *-a*, perhaps from instrumental *-â* (§ 63, *g*).

(*b*.) The common adverbial ending from adjectives is **-e**: O. Sax. *-o*,

O. Nor. *-a*, O. H. G. *-o*, Goth. *-ô*, some say *-ba*. Gothic *-ba*, *-ô* are probably akin to instrumental *-bhi* and *-â* (§ 63, *g*). Bopp thinks *-ô* an ablative ending like Greek *-ως* < *-ωτ*, Latin *-ô* and *-ê* < *-ed*, but in Teutonic the instrumentals have a history analogous to that of the ablative in Greek and Latin; the Anglo-Saxon instrumental has been kept alive by the influence of this adverb. Grimm thinks *-e* a weak singular accusative neuter.

(*c*.) So many adverbs are formed from adjectives in *-lîc*, that *-lîc-e* > Eng. *-ly* is established as an ending; so Icelandic *-liga*, M. H. G. *liche*.

fel-a, much; *gên-a*, again; *get-a*, yet; *sôn-a*, soon; *tel-a*, well; *feor*[a] (Goth. *fairra*), far; *neâh*[a] (Goth. *nêhva*), nigh; *oft*[a] (Goth. *ufta*), oft; *pel*[a] (Goth. *vaila*), well; *pîd-e*, widely; *deôp-e*, deeply; *heâge* < *heâh*, highly; *nearpe* < *nearu*, narrowly; *strang-lîc-e*, strongly; *sceort-lîc-e*, shortly, etc., etc. For *h* > *g*, *p* > *u*, see §§ 117, 118.

252. Relational Stems (Pronouns and Prepositions).

I. Correlatives of Place:

	whêre, whither, whence;	thêre, thither, thence;	hêre, hither, hence.
A.-Sax..	*hpæ̂r, hpider, hpanan;*	*þæ̂r, þider, þanan;*	*hêr, hider, heonan.*
O. Sax..	*huar, huar(oð), huanan;*	*thar, thar(oð), thanan;*	*hêr, her(oð), hinan.*
O. H. G.	*hwâr, hwar-a, -ôt, hwanana;*	*dâr, dar-a, -ôt, danana;*	*hiar, her-a, -ôt, hinana.*
O. Nor..	*hvar, hvert, hvaðan;*	*þar, þaðra, þaðan;*	*hêr, heðra, heðan.*
Goth.....	*hvar, hva-þ, -drê, hvaþrô;*	*þar, þadei, þaþrô;*	*hêr, hidrê, (hêþrô).*
Greek...	*πού, ποῖ, πόθεν;*	*ἔνθα, ἐνθάδε, ἔνθεν;*	Lat. *hîc, huc, citrô, hinc.*
Sansk...	*kú-tra, kú-tra, kú-tas;*	*tá-tra, tá-tra, tá-tas;*	*á-tra, á-tra, á-tas.*

(*a*.) For the stem radicles (interrogative hp, demonstrative þ, h), §§ 135, 133, 104, 130: *hpæ̂r, þær* (*æ̂, æ, ă*), Ormulum *æ̂*.

(*b*.) Ang.-Saxon endings, **-r, -der, -nan** (*-an*); **-d** (*samod*, Goth. *sama-þ*):

-r < locative *-ri* < comparative *-ra* (§§ 126, 62): Sansk. *upá-ri*, Greek *ὑπέ-ρ*, Lat. *s-upe-r*, Goth. *ufa-r*, O. H. G. *uba-r*, O. Sax. *obha-r*, Ang.-Sax. *ofe-r*, over.

-der, *-đer*, Goth. *-drê*, Sansk. *-tra* < *-trâ*, is the instrumental of a comparative in *-ta-ra* (§§ 126, 62): some think this *-tra* weathers to *-r* in *hpæ̂r*, etc.; **-d**, probably comparative, § 255 (Sansk. *samanṭi*).

-nan, *-nanne*, an oblique case of the repeated adjective suffix *-na*, belonging to (§ 228, 2): Lat. *super-no-*, belonging (*super*) above; whence ablative adverb *super-ne*, from above; *belonging to* and *coming from* are near akin, but the lost case-ending gives the turn to *from*. Goth. *innana*, within; *útana*, without; *hindana*, behind, etc., do not have the plain sense *from*. Pott suggests composition with a preposition (Lettisch *no*, from). Here belong *eâst-an*, from the east; *pest-an*, from the west, etc.; also *æft-an*, aft; *feorr-an*, from far; *for-an*, before; *hind-an*, from behind; *inn-an*, within; *neân*, from nigh; *neoð-an*, from beneath; *uf-an*, from above; *ût-an*, from out, and their compounds.

II. Correlatives of Time:	when; then; now; once.	Manner:	how; thus; so.
A.-S.	*hpanne; þanne (æ, o, e), þâ; nu; iu, geô.*		*hû < hpî; þus, þæs; spâ.*
Goth.	*hvan; þan*, (O. H. G. *dô; nu; ju, giu.*		*huieo), hvâiva; svah, svê.*
Lat...	*quum; tum; nunc; jam* < Sansk. *ja.*		*quo-modo; tam, ita; sic, ut.*
Gr....	*πότε; τότε; νύ, νῦν* (Sansk. *nu*); *ὁϊ* < *djû.*		*πῶς; τώς; ὡς.*

hpanne, accusative masculine; *þâ*, feminine; *hû, hpî*, instrumental; *þus*, genitive, < *þpis*, or instrumental *þû* + *s*, O. Sax. *thiu-s* (§ 133, 2); *þæs*, genitive; *spâ*, Goth. *svê*, instrumental; the endings in the other languages are not all analogous.

III. Prepositions = adverbs: *æfter, bî, for, in, mid, on, of, tô, þurh, under, up, ofer, þiut*, with many derivatives and compounds. See §§ 253–259.

IV. Derivatives in **e**, denoting *rest in*, probably a dative: Goth. *-a*, O. Sax. *-a*, O. Nor. *-i*, O. H. G. *-a*.

inn-e, within; *út-e*, without; *ufan-e*, over, etc.

V. Comparatives and Superlatives. §§ 123–129, 2.

PREPOSITIONS AND PREFIXES.

253.—I. Those denoting simple relations generally take their significance from a single consonant (§ 56). Contrasted space relations are primarily denoted. This contrast is often further brought out by endings of comparison (§§ 122–129). The relation is sometimes made more definite by case-endings and other suffixes. Most inseparable prefixes have a similar etymology.

II. Many prepositions and prefixes of later growth are from nouns or verbs, and have an etymology like adverbs.

254. Prepositions and prefixes with a single consonant. A few others are added to better illustrate their etymology.

1. *Semi-vowels.*	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	O. Sax.	O. Nor.	O. H. G.
â- (*æ*), privitive:...	*áviṣ* > *as*?	*ἐξ*?	*ex*?	see **or**;	*â-*;	*er-*;	*â* < *ar-*.
or- = *â*:	*áviṣ* > *us*?	——;	——;	*us-*;	——;	*ur, ör-*;	*ur-*.
eâ-c, besides:	*áva*;	*αὖ-(τις)*;	——;	*áu-k*;	*ô-k*;	*au-k*;	*au-h*.
pid, against, with:	*vi*, see **tô**;	——;	*vi-, ve-*;	*vi-þra*;	*wi-d*;	*vi-d*;	*wi-dar*.
ne, n-, negative: ..	*na*;	*νη-*;	*ne, nê*;	*ni*;	*ni, ne*;	*ne*;	*ni, ne*.
an (*on, â-*), on:	*aná*;	*ἀνά*;	*an-*;	*ana*;	*an*;	*â*;	*ana*.
and (*ond, ôd*), an-:	*án-ti*;	*ἀν-τί*;	*an-te*;	*an-d*;	*an-d-, -t*;	*an-d*;	*an-t*.
in, in, on:	*aná, an-*;	*ἐνί, ἐν*;	*in*;	*in*;	*inna*;	*inn, í*;	*in*.
un- (*on*), un-:	*an-, a-*;	*ἀν-, ἀ-*;	*in-*;	*un-*;	*un-*;	*û-*;	*un-*.

	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	O. Sax.	O. Nor.	O. H. Ger.
mi-d, with:	*mi-thás;*	*με-τά;*	——;	*mi-þ;*	*mi-d;*	*me-ð;*	*mi-t(i).*
mis-, mis-:	akin to **mid**, Goth. *misso*, mutually;			*missa-;*	*mis-;*	*miss-;*	*mis-.*
â- (*æ, âpa, ô*), ever:	*êva-s?*	*αἰϝεί;*	*ævum;*	*âiv;*	*êo;*	*ae;*	*êo.*
2. *Labials* (p, b, f).							
up, adv., up:	*úpa;*	*ὑπό, ὑπέρ;*	*s-ub, s-uper;*	*iup;*	*ûp;*	*upp;*	*ûf.*
bĭ (*be, big*), be-, by:	*abhí;*	*-φι;*	*(ti)-bi;*	*bi;*	*bĭ, be-;*	——;	*pi.*
ymb(e), *emb(e)*, about:	*abhí;*	*ἀμφί;*	*amb-;*	——;	*umbi;*	*um;*	*umpi.*
of (*æf-*), of, off:	*ápa;*	*ἀπό;*	*ab;*	*af;*	*af;*	*af;*	*aba.*
for-, for-(bid):	*pá-râ;*	*παρά, πάρ;*	*per-;*	*fra-;*	*far-;*	*for-;*	*far-.*
for, for:	*purás;*	*πάρος;*	*præ?*	*faúr;*	*fur(i);*	*fyr(i);*	*furi.*
fore, fore-:	*purás;*	*πάρος;*	*por;*	*faúra;*	*for(a);*	*for-;*	*fora.*
feor, adv. adj., far:	*pára;*	*πέρα;*	*per-;*	*fair-ra;*	*fer;*	*fiarri;*	*fer.*
frê- (*freâ-*), very:	*pári;* / *pra;*	*περί;* / *πρό;*	*per-;* / *pro, præ;*	mixed; *præ* by compounds of *freâ* (§ 40, 2).			probably a simulation of Lat.
fram, from:	*pá-ra-m;*	*πέραν;*	*peren-;*	*fram;*	*fram;*	*fram;*	*fram.*
3. *Dentals* (t, d, þ, ð, s).							
æt, at:	*ádhi;*	(ö-)ϑι;	*ad;*	*at;*	*at;*	*at;*	*az.*
ôð, unto:	*ádhi?*	——;	——;	*and, und;*	*unt;*	*unz;*	*unt-.*
tô, to:	*ádhi?*	*-δε;*	——;	*du;*	*tô, te;*	——;	*zuo, zi.*
tô-, in two:	*(d)vi-* (§ 130, 2);	*διά;*	*dis-;*	*dis-;*	*te-;*	——;	*ze(r), za(r).*
ût, out:	*út;*	*ὕσ-τερος;*	——;	*út;*	*út;*	*út;*	*úz.*
ed-, back:	*i-tara*, other?	——;	*i-terum?*	*id-;*	*id-ur;*	*id-;*	*it-.*
þurh, through:	*tirás;*	——;	*trans;*	*þairh;*	*thurh;*	——;	*durah.*
sam-, together: ...	*sa-mâ';*	*ἅμα;*	*sim-ul;*	*sama;*	*sama;*	*sam-;*	*sama.*
sâm-, half:	*sâ-mi-;*	*ἡμι-;*	*sêmi-;*	——;	*sâm-;*	——;	*sâmi-.*
sin-, ever:	*sa-nâ';*	*ἕνο-ς;*	*sem-(per);*	*sin-(teins);*	*sin-;*	*si-;*	*sin-.*
4. *Gutturals.*							
ge-, together:	*(sâ-)kám?*	*ξύν?*	*cum, co-?*	*ga-;*	*gi-;*	*g-;*	*ka-*, etc.
êg=*â*+*ge*, ever: .	O. H. G. *eô-ga* (§ 136, 5).						

(*a.*) For shifting of letters, see §§ 18, 19, 41; for precession and weathering of endings, § 38. *â* < *ar*, *ôð* < *and*, § 37; *ymbe* < *abhí*, *and* < *ádhi*, § 27, 5; *h* in *þurh*, *c* in *eâc*, § 133, 2, *a*.

(*b.*) Most of the Sanskrit forms look like vowel pronominal bases with suffixes and case-endings: *a-bhi*, *a-pa* > *a-pa-ra* > gen. *purás*, locative *pári*, acc. *páram*, instrum. *párâ*. § 62.

255. Comparative Forms: **er, r, ter, der, ðer, ð, d.** §§ 122–129.

of-er, over; *æf-ter*, after; *un-der*, under; *pi-ðer*, wither-(nam); *tô-pi-ðere*, against; *ni-ðer*, neath; *pi-ð*, with; *mi-d*, with; *fo-r*, for; *fo-re*, before; *f-rê*, very; *geon-d*, yond; *hin-d-an*, behind; *samo-d*, together.

(*b.*) The above are formed on *of*; *æf*; *an* > Sansk. *an(a)-tara*; *pi*; *ni*, akin to *in*, Sansk. *ani* > *ni*, down, Gr. *ἔνε-ροι*, O. H. G. *ni-dar*; *mi* < *ma*; *f*— < *pa*; *geon*, Goth. *jâins* < *ja-na*; *hin* = *heon(an)* (§ 252); *sam*.

256. Superlative **m** (§ 126): *fra-m*, from; *páram*, *πέραν*, *peren-* seem to be accusatives, and in so far not analogous to *fram*.

257. Adverbial **-an** (§ 252), mostly compounds: *be-*, *b-*, *pid-æft-an*; *for-an*; *æt-*, *bi-*, *on-*, *tô-*, *pid-for-an*; *geond-an*; *be-*, *pid-geond-an*; *be-heon-an*; *be-hind-an*; *inn-an*; *b-*, *on-*, *pid-inn-an*; *neod-an*; *be-*, *under-neod-an*; *uf-an*; *b-*, *â-b-*, *on-uf-an*; *upp-an*; *on-upp-an*; *út-an*; *b-*, *on-b-*, *pid-*, *ymb-út-an*; English before; beyond; behind; within; be-, underneath; above; a-b-, with-out.

258. From Substantives, mostly compounds with prepositions: *tô-eâcan*, besides; *â-*, *on-gegn*, *tô-gegnes*, against; *ge-mong*, *on-gemong*, among; *on-efn* (German *n-eben*), even with, beside, an-ent; *in-middum*, *tô-middes*, amidst; *be-tpeôn-um*, *-an*, between; *be-tpeo-h-s*, *be-tpeox*, betwixt; so English be-side < *be sîdan*; down < *â-dûne*, from a hill; a-loft (Shakespeare) < *on lyfte*, in the air; and the like. *hand-*, § 267, II.

259. From Adjectives = adverbs (see §§ 254, 229): *ær*, ere; *feor*, far from; *ge-hende*, handy to; *læs*, less; *neâh*, *neâr*, *nêhst*, *neâh-hand*, nigh to; *til* (Northumbrian), to; *peard*, *tô-peard*, toward; *pana*, less; *ge-long*, *and-long*, along; *n-efne*, *n-emne* (compare *on-efn*, § 258), except; *sîd* (late), since. Prefixes: *eal-* (*æl-*, *el-*), all; *efen-*, co-; *ful-*, full; *mis-*, mis-; *sâm-*, semi-; *sin-*, ever; *pan-*, less; *pel-*, well.

Particles of Interrogation, Affirmation, Negation.

260. Interrogation.—(*a*.) Adverbial forms of the pronominal *hp*, whose derivation has been explained: *hpæder*, *hpær*, *hpider*, *hpanan*, *hpý*, *hû*, and compounds, *for-hpam*, etc.

(*b*.) *Intensives: ne*, § 254; *ac* (*ach*, *ah*), § 262; *hû*, § 252; *lâ*, § 263.

(*c*.) *Conjunctions* in indirect questions: *gif*, if, § 262.

261. Affirmation and Negation.—(*a*.) From relational stems:

gea, **iă**, yea < *ja* (§ 107, *a*); Goth. *ja*, *jai*; O. Sax., O. Nor., O. H. G. *iă*.

ge-se, yes; *gea* + *-se* < *sî*, let it be.

ne (§ 254), **n-â**, **n-ô**, nay, no; Goth. *nê áiv*, O. H. G. *ni-êo*, not ever.

ne-se, like **gese**: *n-ân*, Ger. *n-ein*, Lat. *n-on*, not one; *nealles*, *nalæs*, *næs* (*ne ealles*), not at all; *n-â-piht*, *nôht*, not a whit.

(*b*.) Regular adverbial forms: *sôdlice*, *pitodlice*, verily.

---

262. CONJUNCTIONS.

In their formation they are similar to prepositions.

I. From relational stems.—(*a.*) Not before explained:

	Sanskrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Gothic.	O. Sax.	O. Nor.	O. H. G.
and, *ond*, and;	(*áti*;	ἔτι;	*et*)?	——;	*andi*;	——;	*anti* (*u*).
ano, *ono*, an=if;	(<*ana*);	ἄν;	*an*;	*an*;	O. H. G. *eno*, *inu*<*an*+*nu*.		
gif, if;	*ja-d* (*ja-pi*);	εἰ;	*s-î*;	*ja-bai*;	(*ef*;	*ef*;	*ibu*).
ac (*ch*, *h*), but;	(akin to *eâc*, § 254?)	——;	*ak*;	*ac*;	——;	*oh*.	
ge, and;	(<*ja*, § 252;	δή<δjâ;	*ja-m*);	*ja-h*;	*ja*, *ja-c*;	*ok*?	*ioh*.
gyt, *geta*, yet;	<*geo*, § 252;	——;	——;	*ju-þan*;	——;	M. H. G. *ie-zuo*.	
þen-den, whilst;	compare Latin *tan-dem*;			*þan-dê*;	——;	——;	*dan-ta*.
þeâh (*þêh*), though;	see for **-uh** § 133, 2, *a*;			*þa-uh*;	*thôh*;	*þô*;	*doh*.
oððe (*eðða*, *þe*), or;	*átha*, but;	——;	*at*;	*iþ*, *aiþ-þau*;	*ettha*;	*eða*;	*eddo* (*o*-).

eâc, also; **sam**, *samo-d*, as well as; **ne**—**ne**, neither—nor; **nu**—**nu**, now—then, have been given with adverbs or prefixes.

and may be akin with *and*<*anti* (§ 254). **ano** is all doubtful; *ja*>*ja-bai* and *i*>Goth. *i-ba*=O. H. G. *i-bu*, are kindred stems; *gif*, O. Friesic *jef*, Lithuanic *jei-b*, go with *ja-bai* (§§ 107, *a*; 63, *g*); *ge* might be *ge-* (§ 254); *-den* in *þen-den*, *-þan* in *þu-þan*, are the demonstrative *ta* (§ 104, *b*); Goth. *tþ*>*eð*, *aþ*>*oð* is akin to *ed-* (§§ 254, 3; 38).

(*b.*) Many other pronominal adverbs, whose etymology has been explained, and whose meaning and use belong in syntax: *hú*, how; *spâ*, so; *spylce*, such; *þider*, *þanan*, *þâ*, *þŷ*, *þê*, *þæs*, *þonne*, *þær*; *hþi-der*, whither; *hpæ-ðer*, whether; *elles*, else; O. H. G. *allıs*, *alıes*, gen., Lat. *alıas*, al-; § 216.

II. From notional stems, a few oblique cases of nouns.

hpile, *hpil-um*—*hpilum*, sometimes—sometimes.

---

263. INTERJECTIONS.

(1.) Imitation of cries, or sound-gestures: *eâ*, *eæ*, *eâp*, oh; *pâ*, *peâ*, wo; *lâ*, lo; *ha*, ha; *hâ*, ho; compounds—*eâ-lâ*, mixed with French *hé-las* (Lat. *lassus*, weary), alas, corrupt alack; *pâ-lâ*, *pâ-lâ-pâ*, welaway, corrupt weladay, etc.; *hīg*, *hīg*, Lat. *o*, *o*, Ælfrc. Coll.

Somewhat similar quasi-words are wide-spread, but they can be identified only when steadied by true words formed from them: Greek *ὀά*, *οὐαί*, Lat. *væ*, Goth. *vâi*, O. Sax. *wê*, Swed. *ve*, O. H. G. *wê*, wo; O. H. G. *we-la*, etc. Such words were doubtless as numerous in the ancient languages as in English, but are not preserved in books.

(2.) *True words* used as cries or gestures have nothing peculiar in their etymology: *hpæt*, what; *hú*, how; *pel*, well; *peg lâ*=*pel lâ*, well done, etc.; *efne*, Lat. *ecce*, lo.

---

264. COMPOSITION OF WORDS.

Composition proper combines word-stems so as to express a new notion.

Coalescence is the running together of whole words with such change of accent as to make a new word.

(*a.*) Parasyntheta are derivatives from compounds.

Nouns.

265.—I. **Form.**—Nouns final in compounds retain their stems and endings; elsewhere only their theme, except substantives in e<*ia*, e<*i*, and u (*o*): *gum-a*, man; *gum-cyn*, mankind; *eald-fæder*, grandfather; *gryre*, horror; *gryre-hpîl*, time of horror; *lagu*, lake; *lagu-flôd*, river. Coalescence takes place of prefixes and some genitives with a following noun: *Sæternes-dæg*, Saturday; *Mônan-dæg*, Monday; *Oxenâ-ford*, Oxford; *dæges-êge*, daisy; *and-sparu*, answer; *un-treôpd*, untruth; *un-pîs*, unwise, etc. Words with quasi-suffixes are compounds in form. § 229.

266.—II. **Relation of Stems to each other.**—(1.) **Attributive** (substantive + substantive)—**appositive**: *âc-treô*, oak-tree; *pîf-man*, woman; compare *peôp-boren*, born a slave; **descriptive**: *gâr-leâc*, spear-leek, garlick; *heafod-man*, head-man; **genitive**: *god-spel*, God's message; (adjective + substantive): *mid-dæg*, mid-day; *neâh-bûr*, neigh-bour. Adjective parasyntheta from the last are called **Possessives**: *clêen-heort*, possessing a clean heart; *ân-hende*, one-handed; *ân-eâge* and *ân-êged*, one-eyed; *bær-fôt*, bare-foot, bare-footed.

(2.) **Objective.**—(Substantive + noun, between which an accusative ending or preposition would express the relation)—**accusative**: *man-cpellere*, man-killer; *âd-sparing*, oath-swearing; *blôd-geôte*, shedding of blood: **genitive**: *cear-ful*, full of care; **dative**: *god-lic*, like to God.

(3.) **Adverbial** (*noun* or *particle* + *adjective*): *æl-meahtig*, all-mighty; *manig-feald*, manifold; *blôd-reâd*, blood-red; *snâp-hpît*, snow-white; *un-clêne*, unclean; (*noun* or *particle* + *substantive*)—**space relations**: *land-man*, man living on the land, farmer; **time**: *niht-hræfn*, raven flying by night; **cause**: *hand-gepeorc*, hand-iwork; **purpose**: *ort-geard*, orchard, yard for vegetables; *ealo-fæt*, vat for ale; *eâg-sealf*, eye-salve; with an infinitive, *hpet-stân*, stone to whet; *prît-bôc*, writing-book; **material**: *stân-peal*, wall of stone; *îs-gicel*, icicle; *gold-smiđ*, worker in gold.

(*a.*) Attributive compound nouns not possessives and adverbially compound adjectives are called **Determinatives**.

(*b.*) **Collectives** have copulate parts: *per-polf*, man and wolf, werewolf; *preô-tŷne*, three and ten.

267. Verbs.

I. For the terminations springing from composition, see § 160.

II. Verbs with proper compound stems are parasyntheta from compound nouns. But note *hand-sellan*, put in hand; *ful-fyllan*, etc., below.

III. Compound verbs are directly formed by coalescence with prepositions and prefixes: *ofer-fleôpan*, over-flow; *â-pacan*, a-wake; *mis-dôn*, mis-do; *ful-fyllan*, fulfill; *pel-dôn*, do well; *efen-peorcan*, co-operate.

(*a*.) For prepositions and prefixes, see §§ 15, 254.

(*b*.) Composition has the same laws throughout the Indo-European languages. In some of them so many of the stem-endings conform with the most common one that it comes to be regarded as a sign of composition (Gr. *-o-*, Lat. *-i-*, Goth. *-a-*); traces of this are in Anglo-Saxon: *niht-e-gale*, night-in-gale.

FORMATION OF WORDS TO EXPRESS GENDER.

268.—I. Animals.—*A*. Words with pairs of endings (Mobile):

Masculine, —$<a$; **a**$<an$; **ere**.

Feminine, —$<i$; **e**$<an$; **e**, **ige**$<ie<ian$; **en**$<enni$; **estre**.

1. (—$<a$ and —$<i$), umlaut, § 32: *gât, -es, gæt, -e*, he-goat, she-goat; *mæg, -es, -e*, kins-man, -woman; *pulf, pylf*, he-, she-wolf.—2. (**a** and **e**): *ass-a, -e*, he-, she-ass; *mâg-a, -e*, kins-man, -woman; *nef-a, -e*, nephew, niece; *ræg-a, -e*, hart, roe; *þeôp-a, -e*, man-, maid-servant; *pebb-a, -e*, weaver; *picc-a, -e*, witch; *pudup-a, -e*, widow-er.—3. (—$<a$ and **e**, **ige**): *mearh, merige, mere, myre*, horse, mare; *hlâford, hlâf(or)d-ige*, lord, lady.—4. (**a** and —$<i$): *han-a, hen*, cock, hen.—5. (—$<a$ and **en**): *ælf, -en*, elf; *fox, fixen*, fox, vixen; *god, gyd-en*, god-dess; *munec, -en*, monk, nun; *þeôp, -en, þegen, þign-en, pealh, pyl-en*, servant; add *manna, mennen*, servant; *câsere, câser-n*, emperor, empress.—6. (**ere** and **estre**): *bæc-ere, bæc-estre*, baker, bakster; *hearp-ere, -estre*, harper; *hopp-ere, -estre*, dancer; *rêd-ere, -estre*, reader; *sang-ere, -estre*, singer; *seâm-ere, -estre*, seam-ster; *pebb-ere, -estre*, weaver, webster; *fiðel-ere, -estre*, fiddler.—7. (Relics): *gôs*$<$*gans, gandra* (§§ 37; 41, *b*; 50), goose, gander; *cyning, cpên* ($\sqrt{}$ *cpan*$>$*cun*$>$*cyn*, §§ 35, 32, 38, 24), king, queen; *abbud, -isse* (Lat. *abbatissa*, Gr. *-ισσα*), abbot, abbess; *speor, speger* (Goth. *svaihr-a, -ô*, Lat. *socer, socrus*, Gr. *ἑκυρ-ός, -ά*, Sansk. *çvaçura, çvaçrû*), father-, mother-in-law.

B. Compounds whose first part marks sex, last part gender:

Masculine, *pæpned, pæp-, pæpen-*, weaponed; *carl, hyse, man, guma*.

Feminine, *pîf*, wife; *mægden*, maid; *cpên*, woman.

pæpned-man, m., *-bearn*, n., *cild*, n., *-pîfestre*, f., man, boy, hermaphrodite; *hyse-cild*, n., boy; *man-cild*, n., man-child; *man-esne*, m., man-servant; *gum-man*, man; *gum-þegn*, man; *carl-cat*, m., *-fugol*, m., tom-cat, -bird; *pîf-man*$>$*pimman*, m., woman; *pîf-þegn*, m., servant; *pîf-freôndd*, m., friend; *mæden-cild*, n., *-fæmne*, f., *-man*, m., female child, maid; *cpên-*

fugol, m., bird; add *spere-healf*, f., *spindl-healf*, f., spear-half = male side, spindle-half = female side.

C. Male and female have names from different roots. Such names abound for man and the domestic animals. They are old and widespread.

Man: *guma*, *per*, *hûsbonda*, *leôd*, *secg*, *hæle(d)*, *rinc*, *beorn*, *carl*; plur. *firâs*; feminine, *fæmne*, *ides*, *brŷd*, *fôstre*, *meôple*, *mæged*, *mæg*, *cpên*; neuter, *bearn*, *cild*, child; *pîf*, wife. Pairs of kindred: *fæder*, *môdor*; *sunu*, *dôhtar*; *brôðor*, *speostor*; *eâm*, *môdrige*, uncle, aunt; *god-fæder*, *god-môdor*.

Horse: *hengest*, *steda*, *fola*; feminine, *merihe*. **Ox**: *oxa*, *steorc*, *fearh*, *bulluca*; fem. *cû*, *heafre*. **Sheep**: *ram*, *peðer*; fem. *eôp(u)*. **Swine**: *bâr*, *eofor*, *bearh*; fem. *sugu*. **Goat**: *bucca*, *hæfer*; fem. *râh*, *râ*. **Deer**: *heort*, m., *hind*, f. **Dog**: *hund*, m., *bicce*, f. **Hen**: *coc*, m., *hen*, f. **Bee**: *drân*, m., *beô*, f. Neuter: *hors*, *picg*, horse; *swîn*, swine; *mûl*, mule; *deôr*, wild beast, deer; *cealf*, calf; *lamb*; *sceâp*, sheep.

Names of other animals are *epicene* (§ 67). Neuter names of young animals often add *-ir-*, *-er-* in the plural: *cild*, *cild-er-u*, child, children (§ 82). Nothing else peculiar in the formation.

269.—II. Things without Sex, and abstracts. For general rules, § 67 (gender of the endings, §§ 231–239). It is often not easy to tell how far personification, and how far phonetic laws, determine the gender (§ 64, 2). The same object often has names of different genders: *sæ*, f., *lago*, m., *brim*, n., *egor*, n., sea. The Teutonic tongues generally agree. But note Neuters (German masculine) *môd*, mood, *muth*; *tpîg*, twig, *zweig*; *pîn*, wine, *wein*; (German feminine) *clif*, cliff, *klippe*; *ear*, ear, *ähre*; *fæsten*, fastness, *feste*; *lîc*, corps, *leiche*; *sæd*, seed, *saat*; *sceorp*, scarf, *schärpe*; *pæpen*, weapon, *waffe*; *pêsten*, n., m., waste, *wüste*; Masculines (German feminine), *cræft*, craft, *kraft*; *lust*, lust; *teâr*, tear, *zähre*; (German neuter) *ende*, end; *feld*, field; *here*, army, *heer*; *sâl*, cord, *seil*; Feminines (German masculine), *turf*, turf, *torf*; *piht*, wight, *wicht*; (German neuter) *blæd*, blade, *blatt*; *bôc*, book, *buch*; *hælu*, health, *heil*; *heorte*, heart, *herz*; *gesihð*, sight, *gesicht*.

270.—III. Derivatives from foreign names retain their gender, except Feminines > masculines: *ancor*, anchor; *box*, box-wood; *persuc*, peach; *pistol*, epistle; *regol*, rule; > neuters: *nôn*, noon; Neuters > masculines: *balsam*; *creda*, creed; > feminines: *ceaster*, city; *lilie*, lily; *palant*, palace; *timpane*, drum?

PART III.

SYNTAX.

271. **Syntax** is the doctrine of grammatical *combinations of words*. It treats of the use of the etymological forms in discourse—their agreement, government, and arrangement.

SIMPLE COMBINATIONS.

272. There are four simple combinations: the *predic'ative*, *attrib'utive*, *objective*, and *adverbial*.

273.—I. **Predicative**
=*nominative substantive*+*agreeing verb*;
=*nominative substantive*+*agreeing predicate noun*;
=*nominative substantive*+*predicate adverb*.

gold glisnâđ, gold glistens; *gold is beorht*, gold is bright;
Ælfrêd pæs cyning, Alfred was king; *ic eom hêr*, I am here.

(*a*.) This is a combination between a **subject**, of which something is said (=*gold*, *Ælfrêd*, *ic*), and a **predicate**, which is said of the subject (=*glisnâđ*, *beorht*, *cyning*, *hêr*).

(*b*.) **Copula.**—The sign of predication is the stem-ending of a notional verb (=*â* in *glisnâđ*), or is a relational verb (*is*, *pæs*, *eom*). The substantive verb, when so used, is called the *copula*—a good name for any sign of predication. **Copulative** verbs take a predicate noun.

(*c*.) *Quasi-predicative* is the relation between the implied subject and predicate in a *quasi-clause*. § 278, *d*.

274.—II. **Attributive**=*agreeing noun*+*substantive*;
=*genitive substantive*+*substantive*.

gôd cyning, good king; *Ælfrêd æđeling*, Alfred the prince;
Englâ land, land of the Angles.

(*a*.) This combination expresses the relation of **subject**+**attribute** as taken for granted. The leading substantive is called the **subject**, that to which the attribute belongs (*cyning*, *Ælfrêd*, *land*); an **attributive** is the agreeing adjective (*gôd*), or genit. substantive (*Englâ*); an **appositive** is the agreeing substantive (*æđeling*).

(*b*.) The sign of this relation is the agreeing case-endings, or the attributive genitive ending, or a preposition (§ 277, 2).

275.—III. **Objective** = *verb* + *governed noun.*
= *adjective* + *governed noun.*

ic huntige heortâs, I hunt harts; *hê sylđ him hors*, he sells him a horse; *gilpes þû gyrnest*, thou wishest fame; *þære fæhđe hê gefeah*, he rejoiced at the vengeance; *hî macađ hine* (*tô*) *cyninge*, they make him king; *hpî segst þû mê gôdne*, why callest thou me good? *beôđ gemindige Lodes pîfes*, remember Lot's wife.

(*a.*) This combination expresses the relation of an *act* or *quality* to its *completing notional object.*

Objective verbs or adjectives are those which need such object (*huntige*, etc.).
Subjective need no such object (*ic slâpe*, I sleep).
Transitive verbs have a suffering object (*huntige*, *sylđ*, *macađ*, etc.).
Intransitive have no suffering object (*gyrnest*, *gefeah*).

The completing object may be
suffering (=*direct*), an accusative merely affected (*heortâs*, *hors*, *hine*, *mê*);
dative (=*indirect*=*personal*), a receiver to or for whom is the act (*him*);
genitive, suggesting or exciting the act (*gilpes*, *fæhđe*, *pîfes*);
factitive, a product or result in fact or thought (*cyninge*, *gôdne*).

(*b.*) The sign of relation is the case-ending or a preposition.

(*c.*) Many Anglo-Saxon verbs require an object, when the English by which we translate them do not. Many objects conceived as *exciting* in Anglo-Saxon are conceived as *suffering* in English; many as merely adverbial.

(*d.*) The factitive object often has a quasi-predicative relation to the suffering object, agreeing with it like a predicate noun (*mê*+*gôdne*). Such clauses are nearly equivalent to two (why sayest thou that I am good?).

276.—IV. **Adverbial** = *verb* + *adverb* or *adverbial phrase.*
= *adjective* + *adverb* or *adverbial phrase.*
= *adverb* + *adverb* or *adverbial phrase.*

ic gâ ût, I go out; *ic singe ælcê dæg*, I sing each day; *pê sprecađ gepemmodlîce*, we speak corruptly; *hê com mid þâ fæmnan*, he came with the woman; *mid sorgum libban*, to live having cares; *hpî fandige gê mîn*, why tempt ye me? *miclê mâ man is sceâpe betera*, man is much (more) better than a sheep.

(*a.*) This combination is between an *act* or *quality* and its *unessential relations.* The most common relations are **place** (*ût*), **time** (*ælcê dæg*), **manner** (*gepemmodlîce*), **co-existence** (*mid fæmnan*, *mid sorgum*), **cause** (*hpî*), **intensity** (*miclê*, *mâ*, *sceâpe*).

(*b.*) The sign is an adverbial ending, case-ending, or preposition.

(*c.*) The *adverbial* combination is given by Becker as a subdivision of the *objective*, but the linguistic sense of the Indo-European races uniformly recognizes the adverb as a separate part of speech.

277. **Equivalents of the Noun and Adverb** in the combinations:

(1.) For a SUBSTANTIVE may be used a *substantive noun* or *pronoun*, an *adjective* or any of its equivalents, an *infinitive*, a *clause*, any *word* or *phrase* viewed merely as a thing.

(2.) For an ADJECTIVE may be used an *adjective noun* or *pronoun*, an *article* (attributively), a *participle*, a *genitive substantive*, an *adverb*, a *preposition with its case*, a *relative clause*.

(3.) For an ADVERB may be used an *oblique case* of a noun with or without a preposition, a *phrase*, a *clause*.

SENTENCES.

278. A **Sentence** is a thought in words. It may be

declarative, an assertion, *indicative*, *subjunctive*, or *potential*;
interrogative, a question, *indicative*, *subjunctive*, or *potential*;
imperative, a command, exhortation, entreaty; a species of
exclamatory, an expanded interjection. §§ 149–151.

(*a.*) A **clause** is *one finite verb* with its subject, objects, and all their attributives and adjuncts. Its *essential part* is its predicative combination. The (*grammatical*) subject of the predicative combination, its attributives and adjuncts, make up the *logical* subject of the clause; the *grammatical* predicate and its objects with their attributives and adjuncts make up the *logical* predicate.

(*b.*) A **subordinate** clause enters into grammatical combination with some *word* in another (**principal**) clause; **co-ordinate** clauses are coupled as wholes.

(*c.*) The sign of relation between clauses is a relative or conjunction.

(*d.*) **Quasi-clauses.** — (1) *Infinitives*, *participles*, and *factitive* objects mark quasi-predicative combinations, and each has its quasi-clause. (2) *Interjections* and *vocatives* are exclamatory quasi-clauses.

279. A **Sentence** is *simple*, *complex*, or *compound*.

280. A **simple** sentence is *one independent* clause.

I. A predicative combination.

Verb for predicate: *fiscerâs fisciaḍ*, fishers *fish*.
Adjective: *God is gôd*, God is *good*.
Genitive: *tôl Cæsares is*, tribute is *Cæsar's*.
Substantive: *Cædmon pæs leôðpyrhta*, Cædmon was a *poet*.
Adverb: *pê sind hêr*, we are *here*.
Adverbial: *God is in heofenum*, God is *in heaven*.
Subject indefinite: (*hit*) *snîpḍ*, it snows; *mê pyrst*, me it thirsteth.

II. Clause with attributive combination.

Adjective attribute: *gôd gold glisnâđ, good* gold glistens.
Genitive: *folces stemn is Godes stemn, folk's* voice is *God's* voice.
Appositive: *pê cildra sind ungelǣrede*, we *children* are untaught.

III. Clause with objective combination.

Direct object: *Cædmon porhte leôđsangâs*, Cædmon made *poems*.
Dative: *lǣn mê þrî hlâfâs*, give *me* three loaves.
Genitive: *þæt pîf âhlôh drihtnes*, the woman laughed at *the lord*.
Factitive: *Simônem hê nemde Petrum*, Simon he named *Peter*.

IV. Clause with adverbial combination.

Place: *ic gâ ût*, I go *out*.
Time: *ic gâ ût on dægrêd*, I go out *at dawn*.
Manner: *se cyning scrŷt mê pel*, the king clothes me *well*.
Co-existence: *mid sorgum ic libbe*, I live *with cares*.
Cause: *hê hâs is for cylde*, he is hoarse *from cold; se cnapa þŷpâđ oxan mid gadîsenê*, the boy drives oxen *with an iron goad*.

281.—V. Abridged complex sentence. Clause containing a quasi-clause. § 278, *d*.

Infinitive: *tǣc ûs sprecan*, teach us *to speak*.
Factitive: *hpî segst þû mê gôdne*, why callest thou *me* (to be) *good?*
Participle (adjectival): *ic hæbbe sumne cnapan, þŷpendne oxan*, I have a boy, (*driving*) *who drives oxen;* (adverbial, gerund), *Boetius gebæd singende*, Boethius prayed *singing;* (absolute), *þînre durâ belocenre, bide þînne fæder, thy door having been locked*, pray thy father.

282.—VI. Abridged compound sentence (§ 284). Verbs>verb.

Compound subject: *hê and seô singađ, he and she* sing.
Compound predicate: *hê is gôd and pîs*, he is *good and wise; seô lufâđ hine and mê*, she loves *him and me*.

283. A **complex** sentence is one *principal* clause with its *subordinate* clause or clauses. § 278, *b*. The subordinate may be a

Substantive: (subject), *is sægd þæt hê com, that he came* is said; (object), *ic pât þæt hê com*, I wot *that he came;* (appositive), *ic com tô þam, þæt hê þǣre gefulpôd*, I came for this, *that he might be baptized*.
Adjective: *stæf-cræft is seô cǣg, þe þǣrâ bôcâ andgit unlŷcđ*, grammar is the key, *that unlocks the sense of the books*.
Adverb: (place), *hpider þû gǣst, ic gâ*, I go *whither thou goest;* (time), *ic gâ hpænne þû gǣst*, I go *when thou goest;* (manner), *þû sprǣce spâ spâ ân stunt pîf*, thou spakest *as a stupid woman speaks;* (intensity),

beôd gleâpe spâ nædran, be wise *as serpents; leôfre is hlehhan þonne grætan*, it is better to laugh *than cry;* (cause = efficient, motive, means, argument, condition [**protasis** to an **apodosis**], concession, purpose): *hit þunrâd forþam God pilt*, it thunders *because God wills; paciað, forþam þe gê nyton þone dæg*, watch, *because ye know not the day; Onsend Higelâce, gif mec hild nime*, (protasis) *if me battle take*, (apodosis) send to Higelac, etc. Co-existence is usually in an abridged participial clause (§ 281).

284. A **compound** sentence is a number of *co-ordinate* clauses. § 278, *b*.

Copulative: *ic gâ ût and ic geocie oxan*, I go out *and* I yoke oxen.
Adversative: *fŷr is gôd þegn, ac is frêcne freâ*, fire is a good servant, *but* is a bad master; *ne nom hê mâ, þeâh hê monige geseah*, he took no more, *though* he saw many.
Disjunctive: *ic singe oðde ic rǽde*, I sing *or* I read.
Causal: *forþŷ gê ne gehŷrað, forþam þe gê ne synd of Gode*, *therefore* ye do not hear, (*for this that*) *because* ye are not of God.

FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

285. A **complete** sentence has every part of all its combinations expressed.

A **normal** sentence is complete, and has its parts expressed and arranged according to the general laws of the language.

Figures of Syntax are deviations from the normal sentence.

I. **Ellipsis**, omission. This may be of a *conjunction* (**asyn'deton**), of a word to have been repeated (**brachyl'ogy**), of a verb somewhat like one in a corresponding clause (**zeugma**), of the latter part of a clause not to be supplied from the corresponding part of other clauses (**aposiope'sis**). See also *anacoluthon* (below, III.).

II. **Pleonasm**, too many words. There may be too many *conjunctions* (**polysyn'deton**), two nouns and a conjunction for a noun and attributive (**hendi'adis**).

III. **Enallage**, substitution. Of one part of speech for another (**antimeri'a**), of one case for another (**hypal'lage**), of a different scheme of construction for the one in which a sentence begins (**anacolu'thon**). **Syn'esis** is a construction according to sense and not grammatical form.

IV. **Hyper'baton**, transposition. Of words (**anas'trophe**), of clauses (**hys'teron-prot'eron**).

USES OF THE CASE-ENDINGS.

SUBSTANTIVES.

Agreement of Endings.

286.—I. **Predicative Combination.**—A **predicate** noun denoting the same person or thing as its **subject,** agrees with it in *case.*

(*a.*) Also in *gender,* if it varies for gender, and oftenest in *number;* but copulate singulars and a plural agree: *ic eom peg,* I am the way (John, xiv, 6); *hê is mîn sunu,* he is my son (Luke, ix, 38); *hê and seô sind freôndâs,* he and she are friends. Nouns of multitude take Synesis.

(*b.*) The rule applies to quasi-predicatives (§ 278, *d*): *God hêt þâ fæstnisse heofenan,* God called the *firmament heaven* (Gen., i, 8). But predicate-accusative substantives are rare in Anglo-Saxon. The Latin and Greek accusative + infinitive is generally represented by a clause with *þæt* (that), and the factitive depends on *tô* (to) or *for,* as does often the common predicate: *þû pyrcst þê tô Gode,* thou makest *thyself* (to) *God* (John, x, 33); *mê pêron mîne teârâs for hlâfâs,* to me my *tears* were (for) *bread* (Psa., xlii, 3).

(*c.*) The rule is called for oftenest in clauses having the verb be (*eom, pesan, beôn*), become (*peordan*), stand, lie, etc. (*standan, licgan,* etc.), go, remain (*gân, punian*), seem, prove (*þyncan, prôfian*); and passives of naming, calling (*hâtan, nemnan*), seeing, thinking, telling (*seôn, tellan*), making, appointing, choosing (*macian, gesceapan, gesettan, geberan, geceôsan,* etc.). The predicate noun is oftenest an adjective: *þâ beâmâs â grêne stondaḍ,* the trees *stand* ever *green* (C. Ex., 200, 4); *mîn cnapa lîtt lama,* my boy *lies lame* (Matt., viii, 6); *þeôs poruld punaḍ gehâl,* this world *remaineth whole* (St. B., 14); *mê þæt riht ne þynceḍ,* to me that *seems* not *right* (C., 289); *leôht pæs dæg genemned,* light *was called day* (C., 129); *lytel hê pæs gesepen,* he *was seen* (as) *little* (Hóm., i, 138); *hê pæs blind acenned,* he *was born blind* (John, ix, 20); *Saxulf pæs gecoren tô biscop,* Saxulf *was chosen* (to) *bishop* (Chr., 656). See *b.*

287.—II. **Attributive Combination.**—An **appositive** agrees in *case* with its **subject.**

Often also in gender and number. It is an undeveloped adjective clause, generally marked as such by tone and punctuation; but in titles it sometimes makes with its subject a kind of compound noun in English (see below, *e*): *pê, cildra,* we, (who are) children (Ælf.); *seô ârpyrde fæmne Ecgburh abbodisse, Aldpulfes dôhtor pæs cyninges, sende þam ârpyrdan pere Gûdlâce leâdene þruh,* the venerable maid Ecgburh abbess, Aldwulf's daughter the king('s), sent to the venerable man Guthlâc a leaden coffin (St. G., 18); *Dryhten sylf, heofenâ heâhcyning,* the Lord himself, heaven's

high king (And., 6); *pæs sum his scipes-man, þæs foresprecenan Aðelbaldes*, there was one, his boatman, the aforesaid Athelbald's (St. G., 22); *freôndscipe sî betpux unc, mê and þê*, friendship be betwixt *us, me* and *thee* (G., 31, 44); *pið Blædlan and Attilan, Hunâ cyningum*, against *Bledla* and *Attila, kings* of the Huns (Bêd., 1, 13); *spâ hêr men dôð, geonge and ealde*, so here *men* do, *young* and *old* (C., 1206); *hî þegniað, ælc ôðrum, they* serve, *each* the others (Met., 25, 12). The appositive is sometimes

descriptive, giving kind, condition, etc., of its subject (*cildra, abbodisse, dôhtor, cyninges, heâhcyning, scipes-man*, etc., in examples above);

definitive, a specific name after a general description, very common in Anglo-Saxon (*Ecgburh, Gûðlâc, Aðelbaldes*), emphatic (*sylf*). (*Repeated Subject.*—A pronoun + a name, and a name + a pronoun, where the seeming attributive is really a repetition of the subject for clearer syntax, are very common: *se Hælend, hê fæste*, the Saviour, he fasted, St. G., 9);

partitive, giving parts of its subject, or its whole (*mê and þê, cyningum, geonge and ealde*). **Examples** are introduced by *spâ spâ* (Latin *ut*, German *als*): *sume beôð langspeorede, spâ spâ spanâs, some* (birds) are long-necked, as *swans* (St. B., 14);

distributive (*ælc*).

(*a.*) *Adjectives* are often appositives (*geonge* and *ealde*), so *pronouns.*

(*b.*) *Sentences* are often appositives, oftenest definitives beginning with *þæt*, after *hit, þæt, þing*, or the like indefinite subject: *þæt gelamp, þæt þær com sum man*, it happened, that there came a man (St. G., 9); *hit* (20); *þing* (19).

(*c.*) *Appositive for partitive genitive* is found after *sum: þâ cpædon sume þâ bôcerâs*, then quoth *some* (of) (*the*) scribes (Matt., ix, 3); *sume, hî comon*, some (of them) they came (Mc., viii, 3). Rask gives *tpegen marc gold*, two marks (of) gold. I have not found such forms in Anglo-Saxon; but they are common in Old English, after the inflections had decayed (Lang., 1, 174; Ch., 7328). So German *masse geld, pfund fleisch*, etc. The reverse, *gold, two marks*, is in Sanskrit, and down to English.

(*d.*) *Genitive for appositive* of material or place: *ceastra Natzaredes* for *ceastre Nazareth*, i. e. City of Nazareth = City Nazareth. § 313.

(*e.*) Genitives in apposition all have their endings, where in Old English all but one drop it: *cyninges Aldpulfes dôhtor*, king('s) Aldwulf's daughter. See above.

(*f.*) An appositive often fails to agree with its subject from anacoluthon: *mînum hlâforde * * * Alfpold cyning* (nominative), to my lord—King Alfwold (St. G., Prol.); *se rîca and se heâna * * * ealle hî gelîce se stranga deâð forgrîpeð*, the rich and the poor (nominative)—all these alike strong death gripeth (St. G., 19).

(*g.*) NUMBER. Note *cyningum, ælc*, above. After a **dual** the name of the second person is used alone partitively: *pit Scilling song âhôfan*, we, (I and) Scilling, raised a song (C. Ex., 324, 31); *unc Adame*, to us, (me

and) Adam (C., 387); *git Iohannis*, ye, (thou and) John (C. Ex., 467, 7). This idiom is found in O. H. German, is common in O. Norse.

(*h.*) Gender. Synesis. Substantives agree in natural rather than in grammatical gender: *Ælfwêd, þæt mæden*, Alfled, the maiden (Hom., ii, 150).

Nominative.

288. The **subject** of a **finite** verb is put in the **nominative.**

Ælfrèd cpæd, Alfred said; *God is gôd*, God is good.

(*a.*) **Nominative independent.** The subject of quasi-clauses of enunciation is put in the nominative. Such are names and titles containing no predicative combination: *þæt godspel æfter Iôhannes gerecednysse*, the *Gospel* according to John. Anacoluthon, § 287, *f*. Absolute, § 295.

(*b.*) **Repeated subject.** See § 287, **definitive.**

(*c.*) **Predicate nominative.** See § 286.

(*d.*) **Attributive nominative.** See § 287.

(*e.*) **Factitive object.** A nominative of enunciation is often used instead of a factitive object after verbs of naming, calling, and the like: *clypôde God his gefylsta*, he called God his "*helper*" (Hom., 2, 82); *hâtaþ hine æfenstiorra*, they call it "*evening star*" (Met., 29, 30); *gê clypiaþ mê Lâreôp and Dryhten*, ye call me "Master" and "Lord" (John, xiii, 13). This use of the *oratio directa* is the common form in Sanskrit, and has doubtless been common in all folkspeech. It is in the Greek of the New Testament; the Latin Vulgate in such cases uses the vocative, as does the Greek sometimes. It is in the Gothic (O. H. German?) and M. H. German. Compare §§ 289, *d*; 294.

Vocative.

289. A **compellative** is put in the **vocative.**

Lâreôp, sege þonne, Lord, speak then (Luke, vii, 40); *eâ lâ geonga*, O young man (Luke, vii, 14); *lâ þû licetere*, thou hypocrite (Matt., vii, 5); *hlâford cyning*, lord king (Ap., 7); *Fæder ûre, þû þe eart on heofenum*, our Father, thou that art in the heavens (Matt., vi, 9); *mîn, se spêtesta sunnan scîma, Iuliâna*, my (the) sweetest sunshine, Juliana (Ju., 166); *Herra, se gôda*, Lord, the good (C. (G.), 678).

(*a.*) A compellative is the subject of a quasi-clause of address. The address may be formal, a simple call, or an emphatic judgment (*þû licetere*). The vocative may have an interjection with it, or not; it may enter into attributive combination with adjectives, appositives, clauses, etc. Note the use of an appositive with the definite article: *Herra, se gôda; mîn, se spêtesta;* and compare French *Monseigneur l'archevesque*, etc.

(*b.*) The weak form of the adjective is often used in the vocative without a definitive: *leôfa Beôpulf*, dear Beowulf (B., 1854).

(*c.*) Latin vocatives are sometimes used: *Thaliarche, Apollôni* (Ap., 5, 7, 9).

(*d.*) **Quasi-clause.** The vocative (with or without attributives) may enter into combinations as a clause. It may be a **direct object**: *manige cpeđad, Dryhten, Dryhten,* many shall say, Lord, Lord (Matt., vii, 22); **factitive object**: *hpî clypige gê mê Dryhten, Dryhten,* why call ye me Lord, Lord? (Luke, vi, 46). Compare § 288, *e.*

(*e.*) The native grammarians in Sanskrit do not separate the vocative from the nominative, but think it a slightly modified form for address. Its syntax is nearly the same in all our languages.

ACCUSATIVE.

290. **Objective Combinations.**—1. The **direct object** of a *verb* is put in the **accusative**. It may be

I. A **material object** moved, hit, or changed, or produced as an **effect**, by a transitive verb: *þone maddum byređ,* he *bears* the *treasure* (B., 2055); *stormâs stânclifu beôtan,* storms *beat cliffs* (Seaf., 23); *ic âhyrde heortan,* I will harden his heart (Exod., iv, 21); *scip pyrcan,* to build a ship (C., 1302). (*Mâdm* > *maddum,* Orm. *maddmess.*)

(*a.*) Persons and abstractions may also be conceived as material objects of act or thought: *se þæt picg byrd,* he whom that horse bears (El., 1196); *ic bere dryhtnes dômâs,* I bear the lord's commands (D., 744).

(*b.*) Transitive verbs express an exercise of the *appetites* (eat, drink, etc.), the *senses* (see, hear, etc.), the *sensibilities* (love, hate, etc.), the *intellect* (know, think, etc.); **movements**—moving an object, or keeping it from moving (set, lay, raise, carry, heave, have, hold, marry, catch, take, give, lead, throw, drive, call forth, send forth, speak, etc.), hitting or moving towards it (strike, follow, etc.), changing its form or condition (break, tear, harden, cover, sprinkle, etc.), making an object (do, make, work, build, etc.), causative acts. Verbs expressing these notions as affecting the whole of a material object govern the accusative throughout the Indo-European tongues.

(*c.*) Persons may be conceived as suffering objects of their appetites.

Impersonals of *appetite or passion* govern an **accusative** of the person suffering.

Mê þyrste, it thirsted me = I suffered thirst (Matt., xxv, 35); *mê hingrede,* I suffered hunger (Matt., xxv, 35); *hine lyste,* it listed him = he suffered list (B., 1793); *mec longăde,* I longed (Kl., 14); *mê âþrŷt,* it irks me, *âþreôtan þegn* (Sch., 21); *ûs plâtăd,* we loathe (Num., 21, 5). So *hreôpan,* rue (C., 1276); *gemætan,* dream (D., 122); *eglian,* ail (?) (Bosworth, Ett. their example a mistake); *tîhelan,* tickle (?), it tikeleth me (Chaucer, C. T., 6053). Koch says passives of these impersonals take an accusative; so Grein, *his mandryhten* (acc.) *gemæted peard*

(D., 157); but *dryhten* is nom., "his lord (was) had dreamed;" so *pæs monig gelysted* (Met., 1, 9); *ic pæs ofþyrsted* (Seel., 40); *ic eom oflongăd* (Kl., 29); no accusatives found.

(*d.*) **Reflexives.**—Many verbs may take an accusative of the reflexive pronoun: *hine sylfne âhêng*, he hung himself (Matt., xxvii, 5); *âpende hine sylfne tô Gode*, he turned himself to God (Chr., 1067). *Sylf*, self, is not frequent in early Anglo-Saxon. Some verbs get to have a reflexive sense without the pronoun: *hê gebealh hine*, he swelled himself = he was wrathful (Luc., xv, 28); *gê belgad*, ye are wrathful (John, vii, 23); *hê bepohte hine*, he bethought him (Luc., xv, 17); *gæst hine fŷsed*, the spirit hastens (itself) (Ex., 178, 7); *ic mê reste*, I rest me (Ex., 494, 8); *reste pæt folc hit*, the people rested (itself) (Exod., xvi, 30); *gegadorôde micel folc hit*, much people gathered itself (Chr., 921); *parniad côp*, beware (yourself) (Matt., vii, 15); *pene þec*, wont thee (Fath., 62); *se Hælend bependе* (*hine*), the Saviour went (him) (Matt., ix, 22; Mc., v, 30). In Sanskrit the reflexive is incorporated with the verb, and makes a middle voice (§ 150, *a*). So in Greek, but not in Latin. Traces of the middle are found in Gothic, but in the main it and the other Teutonic tongues work like the Anglo-Saxon. Intransitives take a dative reflexive, as do some of the above sometimes. See § 298, *c*.

291.—II. A **definitive object** repeating more specifically the notion of the verb: (cognate accusative), *dêmad rihtne dôm*, judge righteous judgment (John, vii., 24); (more specific), *sang hildeleôd*, it sang a war-song (Jud., 211).

(*a.*) The verb may be transitive or intransitive.

(*b.*) The simple *cognate* alone is tautological. An adjective + definitive = adverb. The transition from the *effect* to the *cognate* is easy, and is already made in Sanskrit. The definitive has a widely extended use in Greek, and in German and English is co-ordinate in importance with the material object.

292. **Double Object.**—Some verbs of **asking** and **teaching** may have *two accusatives*, one of a **person** and the other of a **thing**.

(*a.*) So in Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, Gothic, O. H. German, etc.

(*b.*) **Asking.** Verbs of asking may have the second object *cognate* (ask him *questions*), *exciting* (ask him a *favor*) or (ask him *about Vishnu*). The third form is the common one in Sanskrit; the first and second in Greek, Latin, O. H. German: *hig hine ne dorston ænig þing âcsian*, they durst not ask *him any question* (Luke, xx, 40); *hig hine pæt bigspel âcsôdon*, they asked *him* about the *parable* (Mc., iv, 10); *hî hine bissen gefrugnum* (same, vii, 17, Northumbrian); *spâ hpæt spâ heô hine bæde*, *whatever* favor she might ask *him* (Matt., xiv, 7). This construction is rare in Anglo-

Saxon; generally we have accusative of person + genitive of thing (+ dative of person for whom); or (2d) acc. of pers. + infinitive (or clause); or (3d) acc. of pers. + *ymbe*, *be*, *æfter* (concerning), and an acc. of thing; or (4th) the person follows *to* or *æt*, the thing is an acc. or gen.

(*c.*) **Teach** is a causative of *learn* in Sanskrit *çiks'aja*. Causatives govern an accusative + the case of the included verb: *ne meahton þê gelǣran leôfne þeôden rǣd ǣnigne*, we might not teach the dear lord any counsel (B., 3079). *Tǣcan*, teach, takes the accusative of thing + dative of person.

(*d.*) The passives seem not to take an accusative in Anglo-Saxon, as they do in Greek, Latin, English, etc.

293. **Quasi-predicative Combinations.**—I. The **subject** of an **infinitive** is put in the **accusative.**

Secgađ hine libban, they say that he lives (Luke, xxiv, 23);
geseah streâm ût brecan, he saw a stream break out (B., 2546).

(*a.*) This accusative is grammatically the object of the preceding verb; but after verbs of *perceiving* and *declaring*, *wishing* and *expressing a wish*, and some others, the logical object is the infinitive clause, and grammarians use this rule. Cases to which it applies are not found in Sanskrit, have a wide range in Greek and Latin, are rare in Anglo-Saxon. See § 286, *b*.

294.—II. A predicate noun denoting the same person or thing as its subject agrees with it in case (§ 286): *þê pitun þê bilepitne pesan*, we know thee to be gentle (Ælfc.). Under this rule come some

Factitives.—(*a.*) Some verbs of **making, naming, regarding** may have *two accusatives* of the **same** person or thing.

Hê his englâs dêđ æđele gâstâs, he makes noble souls his angels (Psa., ciii, 5); *seô eâ, þâ perâs Eufrâtên nemnađ*, the river, which men name Euphrates (C., 234); *tôcneôpon Crist sôđne man*, they recognized Christ as a true man (Hom., i, 106); *hî hine purđôdon sôđne God*, they worshipped him as true God (Hom., i, 108).

(*b.*) Verbs of making, naming, regarding, perceiving, finding, having, leaving, and the like, may take an accusative adjective as a factitive object. For Anglo-Saxon verbs, see passives in § 286, *c*.

(*c.*) Verbs of **making** (choosing, etc.) in Sanskrit may have two accusatives, but usually the factitive is a locative. So in Anglo-Saxon it is usually construed with *to* or *for*. See § 286, *b*.

(*d.*) Verbs of **naming**. See § 288, *e*.

(*e.*) Verbs of **regarding** have two accusatives in Sanskrit and after.

(*f.*) When the factitive is in the accusative, it is drawn into agreement with its quasi-subject, the direct object of the verb.

295. **Adverbial Combinations.**—The **extent** of **time** and **space** is put in the **accusative** after verbs.

(*a.*) So in Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, Gothic, etc.

Hæfdon sumne dæl peges gefaren, they had gone some part of the way (Gen., xliv, 4); *ealle niht spincende*, all night toiling (Luc., v, 5).

(*b.*) Excess of measure (dative): *ânne stæpe furdôr*, one step further (Jos., x, 12);—instrument: *græs ungrêne*, not green with grass (C., 117, 812);—absolute: *dæg scrîdende*, day dawning (Gû., 1011; C., 183, nom. abs. ?), § 304, *d.* Milton's *me overthrown* (Sam. Ag., 463) is classic affectation.

(*c.*) The accusative is used with **prepositions** to denote an object **towards** which, or **to, on,** or **over** which an action extends. For examples, see Prepositions.

DATIVE.

296. The dative in Anglo-Saxon denotes relations of four old cases:

1. **Dative,** the person to whom something is given, or for whom something is or is done.
2. **Instrumental,** that with which an act is done or associated.
3. **Ablative,** that from which something is separated or distinguished.
4. **Locative,** the time or place in which.

Objective Combinations.

297. An object of **influence** or **interest** is put in the **dative.**

I. **Object of Influence,** the person to whom something is given. The giving may be figurative; material objects or abstractions may be conceived as persons. The object given may be expressed as an accusative, or implied in the governing word.

(*a.*) This dative is oftenest found after verbs of

giving (paying, offering, loaning, etc.): *ealle þâs ic sylle þê*, all these I give *thee* (Matt., iv, 9); so *gifan, forgifan, lænan, leânian, âgyldan, geunnan, tîdian, onlîhan, pyrnan, forpyrnan*, etc.;

address = giving words (say, bid, forbid, answer, thank, chide, judge, promise, advise, etc.): *ic secge þê*, I say to *thee* (Matt., xvi, 18); so *cŷðan, bebeôdan*, command, *forbeôdan, ansparian, þancian, cidan, dêman, rædan;*

gesture: *beâcnian*, beckon, *bûgan*, bow, *hnîgan, lûtan, stupian, ôðýþan*, etc.;

obeying = giving thought (listen to, obey, follow, etc.): *hig hlyston him*, let them listen to *them* (Luc., xvi, 29); **that which** is obeyed is often conceived as personal: *mînum lârum hŷre*, hear to my precepts (C., 105, 8); so *gehŷrsumian, fylgian, heorcnian.* So exciting thought (seeming,

etc.): *manegum men þyncđ*, it seems to many a man (Boet., 29, 1); *mê þyncđ*, methinks (Boet., 33, 1), etc.

giving feeling (pity, mourn, honor, trust, etc.): *gemiltsă̆ mînum sunâ*, (give) pity (to) my son (Matt., xvii, 14); *âră̆ þînum fæder*, (give) honor (to) thy father (Ælf. L., 1, 4); so *besârgian, treôpian, treôpsian, gelŷfan.* Here also *giving = exciting* (please, soothe, still, etc.): *þam folce gecpêman*, to please the people (Mc., xv, 15); so *stillan, ôleccan*, and **impersonals**: *him ne sceamôde*, it did not shame him (Gen., ii., 25); *ofþuhte* (Sat., 247); *langăđ* (B., 1879), etc.

giving aid (help, serve, defend, injure, etc.): *þû monegum helpst*, thou helpest many (Hy., vii, 44); *heô him þênôde*, she ministered to them (Mc., i, 31); so *fremian, þeôpian, derian, fylstan, stŷran*, chastise, etc.: *hî mê þâ dydan*, they did me woe (Psa., cxviii, 138); *dô þel þâm*, do well to those (Psa., cxxiv, 4).

(*b.*) **Adjectives** of the above senses, especially of **thought** and **feeling**: *ânum gehŷrsum*, obedient to one (Matt., vi, 24); *getrŷþe hlâforde mînum*, true to my lord (Ælfrc); *þam bisceope cûđ*, known to the bishop (John, xviii, 15); *leôf Gode*, dear to God (C., xvi, 17); *fremde*, strange (B., 1691).

(*c.*) Some of these words may take a **genitive** of the **non-personal** object: *hlyst his pordâ*, listen to his words (Nic., 3); or even of a personal object; so *helpan, gelŷfan, þidsacan, þancian, treôpian, miltsian, gefeôn, sceamian*, etc. See under Genitive. The notion of the verb may be conceived as *given to* the object, or as *had as belonging to*, or excited by him, e. g. *gelŷfan = give confidence to him* (dative) or *have confidence in him* (genitive); *helpan = give help to him* or *be his help.* In Sanskrit the genitive may be used for most datives of this kind. The early Greek has much of the same freedom. The Latin is more fixed than the Gothic, O. H. German, or Anglo-Saxon.

(*d.*) **Double Object.**—Verbs of **granting, refusing,** and **thanking** may take a **dative** and **genitive.**

Ic feores þê unnan pille, I will grant (to) thee (of) life (Ex., 254, 4); so *onlîhan, pyrnan, tîdian; mê þæs forpyrnde paldend*, the lord refused me that (C., 2219); *þancian his dryhtne þæs leânes*, to thank his lord for the gift (C., 257). See under Genitive.

298.—II. **Object of Interest**, the person for whom something is or is done.

(*a.*) Dative of **advantage** or **disadvantage (verbs)**: *bæd him hlâfâs pyrcan*, bade make loaves *for him* (Sat., 673); *polde hire bûr âtimbran*, wished to build a bower *for herself* (R., 30, 5); *him heâhcyning þîf âpeahte*, *for him* (Adam) the high king a wife raised up (C., 172); **(adjectives)**: *þê is betere þæt ân þînrâ limâ forpeorde*, it is better *for thee* that one of thy limbs perish (Matt., v, 29); *nyttre him þêre*, it would be better *for him* (Luc., xvii, 2).

(*b.*) **Dative of Possessor**: *him pæs gepeald*, to him was (=he had) power (Cri., 228); *þêm ne byđ nânes gôdes pana*, to them is lack of no good (Psa., xxxiii, 9); *Gode sî puldor*, to God be glory (Luc., ii, 14); *pâ byđ þam*, woe is to him (Ex., 444, 25); so after **interjections**: *pâ þâm men*, woe to the man (Matt., xviii, 7); *pel þêre heorde*, well for the herd (Leg. Cnut., ii, 84, 2). A favorite in Greek and Latin; not so in Teutonic. The Sanskrit thus uses a genitive. A second dative takes a preposition.

(*c.*) **Reflexive**, after verbs meaning **take**: *nim þê þis ofæt on hand*, take *for thee* this fruit in hand (C., 518); **be, remain**, etc.: *þêron him on Cent*, they were *for themselves* in Kent (Chr., 1009); *beôđ eôp stille*, be still *for yourselves* (Exod., xiv, 14); so *stôd*, stood (Gen., xviii, 8); *sæt*, sat (Gen., xxi, 16), etc.; **move, go**, etc.: *gepât him*, he departed *for himself* = he was off with himself (C., 2884); so *cyrde* (Chr., 1016); *fêrde* (1009); *træd* (B., 1881); *gâ* (An., 1350); *hpearf* (C., 447); sometimes *pende* (Chr., 1016; § 290, *d*); **fear**, etc.: *ondrêd hê him*, he feared *for himself* (John, xix, 8); so with *pile*, wish (Ex., 450, 18); *piste*, knew (C., 445); *hleôđrede* (Ex., 185, 3); *hæfde*, had; *gelŷfeđ*, believeth; *peaxan*, grow, etc. (Grein, s. v.). These are substitutes for the middle voice. See § 290, *d*. Many of them resemble the ethical dative. Most would be expletive in English.

299. **Association.**—Words of **nearness** and **likeness** govern the **dative.**

Hê þam hûse geneâhlæhte, he came near to the house (Luc., xv, 25);
gelîc þâm leôhtum steorrum, like the bright stars (C., 17, 7).

(*a.*) Here belong some words of meeting, association, contention, and the like; of bringing near, receiving, touch; of imitation, agreement, etc.:

geefenlæcan, piđstandan, forstandan, piđpinnan, tîdan, hrînan, onfôn;
impersonals: *hit lîcôde Hê'rôde*, it was suited to Herod (Matt., xiv, 6); so *becyme*, becometh (Mc. (D.), xiv, 31); *gedafenađ* (Luc., iv, 43); *gerîseđ* (Ex., 1, 5); *gebyrăđ* (John, x, 13).

(*b.*) This relation takes the instrumental (or genitive, nearness sometimes the locative) in Sanskrit; the dative in Greek, Latin, Gothic, etc. Some of the words may govern in other relations an accusative, genitive, or instrumental: *hrînan, onfôn.*

300. **Mastery** (use).—The **instrumental** or **dative** may denote an object of **mastery**:

þâm þæpnum pealdan, to have power over the weapons (B., 2038);
þŷ pongê pealdan, to have the mastery of the field (Gûth., 674);
peôld Hûnum, ruled the Huns (Wid., 18); *þŷ rîcê rædan*, to rule the realm (Dan., 8, 688). Ruling may be conceived as *transitive*, or as *giving law or direction to* a dative, or as *being master of* a genitive, or as *being strong by means of* an instrumental: *pealdan* > English

wield governs the dative in Gothic and O. Norse, the genitive in O. H. German, in Anglo-Saxon, like Latin *potior*, the acc., gen. (dat.), instr.; *rædan* governs the gen. in O. Saxon and M. H. German, in Anglo-Saxon often the instrumental or dative, the dative elsewhere; *brûcan* (Lat. *fruor*), use (Bēd., 4, 19); *neôtan*, use (An., 811), take the acc., gen., instr., dat.

301. **Separation.**—Some verbs of **separation** may take an object **from which** in the **dative** or **instrumental.**

(*a.*) **Transitive** verbs of this kind take an accusative + a dative: *mec bescyrede eallum*, he deprived me *of all* (Rid., 41, 101); passive: *scyldum bescyredne*, deprived of shields (Mōd., 8); + instrumental: *hî rihtê benæman*, to rob them of their right (C., 129, 32); *hine heafdê becearf*, he cut him off from his head (B., 1590); *bedælan*, deprive (B., 721).

(*b.*) **Intransitives**: *hi feôndum ôdfaren hæfdon*, they had escaped the fiends (Exod., 64). So **adjectives**: *drihtne fremde*, far from God (C., 105).

(*c.*) The old case here is the ablative, which is retained in Latin. The Greek uses the genitive. The Anglo-Saxon has oftenest the genitive, then the instrumental, sometimes a dative.

Adverbial Combinations.

302.—I. **Instrumentals.**—(*a.*) The **instrumental** or **dative** may denote **instrument, means, manner,** or **cause**:

spebban speordê, to kill with sword (B., 679); *eâgum geseah*, saw with eyes (C., 51, 2); *þordum herian*, to praise with words (C., 1, 4); **cognate** of manner: *gefullôde þam fulluhte*, baptized in the baptism (that I am) (Mc., x, 39); *lustfullian þæs biscopes þordum*, to rejoice because of the bishop's words (Bēd., 2, 9); **adjectives**: *fedrum snell*, swift with wings (Ex., 206, 7); *ancrum fæste*, fast by means of anchors (El., 252); *fedrum strong*, strong in **respect** of wings (Ex., 203, 18); *mundum freôrig*, freezing in my hands (An., 491). Greek dative, Latin ablative represent these old instrumentals.

(*b.*) **Dative of the Agent.** Passive verbs take the agent with a preposition (*fram*, *þurh*, etc.): *gesealde fram mînum fæder*, given by my father (Matt., xi, 27); *gecpeden þurh þone þîtegan* (acc.), spoken by the prophet (Matt., iii., 3). The dative after some verbals might be put here: *Gode sind mihtelîce þâ þing*, to God the things are possible (Luc., xviii, 27). Sanskrit here uses the instrumental regularly; Greek often, Latin sometimes, a dative without a preposition.

(*c.*) The **instrumental** or **dative** may denote **price**:

ânum penninge geboht, bought with one penny (Matt. (D.), x, 29); usually after *þid* or *tô*, or a genitive.

(*d.*) The **instrumental** or **dative** may denote **measure** of **difference**:

sponnê lengra þêre pryh, longer than the coffin *by a span* (Bêd., 4, 11); *miclê mâ sceâpe betera*, better than a sheep *by much more* (Matt., xii, 12); so *micelum* (Greg.); *micelre* (Bêd., iv, 13).

(*e.*) The **instrumental** or **dative** may denote an **object sworn** by:

mec þinê lifê heâlsôde, he swore me *by thy life* (B., 2131); oftenest after *þurh* or *for*.

303.—II. **Ablatives.**—The **comparative** degree may govern a **dative.**

Mâra Iohanne fulluhtere, greater than John the Baptist (Matt., xi, 11); *betera manegum spearpum*, better than many sparrows (Luc., xii, 7). The nominative, with *þonne*, than, is more common. The instrumental is found. The Sanskrit uses the ablative, sometimes the instrumental; the Greek the genitive; the Latin the ablative; other Teutonic tongues are like Anglo-Saxon.

304.—III. **Locatives.**—(*a.*) The **dative** may denote **time when** or **place where.**

Ôdrum dæge hine hyngrôde, the second day he hungered (Mc., xi, 12); *þam þriddan dæge hê ârîst*, the third day he arises (Matt., xx, 19); so **instrumental**: *þŷ syxtan mônðê*, on the sixth month (Bêd., i, 3).

(*b.*) It may denote a repetition of times: *on dæg seofen sîðum syngăð*, sinneth seven times a day (Luc., xvii, 4).

(*c.*) The dative of place takes a preposition.

Quasi-predicative Combination.

(*d.*) **Dative absolute.**—A **substantive** and **participle** in the **dative** may make an **adverbial clause** of **time, cause,** or **coexistence** (§ 278, *d*, § 295, *b*, time with *be, bi*, § 334).

Him sprecendum, hig cômon, they came, *while he was speaking* (Mc., v, 35); *þinre durâ belocenre, bide*, thy door having been locked, pray (Matt., vi, 6), so still a dative in Wycliffe. Sanskrit uses thus different cases to denote different relations; the locative is the most common. The Greek has the genitive oftenest; the Latin the ablative. The Teutonic languages use this construction seldom. Time *when*, not absolute, is put in the dative in Greek.

305. **With Prepositions.**—The dative with a **preposition** may denote an object of **influence** or **interest, asso-**

ciation, mastery, or **separation**; or an **instrumental, ablative,** or **locative** adverbial relation. For examples, see Prepositions.

Instrumental.

306.—I. The **Proper Instrumental.** See §§ 299, 300, 302.

The plural instrumental endings are lost wholly, the singular nearly. The dative generally takes their place. The surviving endings are found sometimes in ablative and locative uses. They are lost also in Greek and Latin (§§ 302, 70, *a*). O. H. German and O. Saxon have a few singular examples, Gothic only pronouns.

307.—II. **Ablative** uses. See §§ 301, 303.

308.—III. **Locative** uses. See § 304.

Genitive.

309. The Anglo-Saxon genitive denotes relations of four old cases:

1. The **genitive,** the possessor and personal adjunct.
2. The **ablative,** that from which any thing is separated.
3. The **instrumental,** by which any thing is or is done.
4. The **locative,** the time or place in which. The genitive is already in the Sanskrit loosely used for all the other oblique cases.

Attributive Combinations.

310.—I. **Possessive.**—An **attributive genitive** may denote the **possessor** or **author** of its *subject.*

The subject may be

material wealth: *his speorde,* his sword (Mc., xiv, 47);
quality: *engles hip,* angel's beauty (Jul., 244);
persons had or related: *Godes peôpâs,* God's servants (LL. In., 1); *Offan dôhtor,* Offa's daughter (Chr., 787); *Ines brôđor,* Ine's brother (Chr., 718); **officers**: *Cantparâ cyning,* Kentish men's king (Chr., 827).
Any thing conceived as belonging to another: *Apollônies hand,* Apollonius' hand (Ap., 21); *þârâ apostolâ lâre,* the apostles' lore (Bêd., 4, 25); *Ælfrêdes dômâs,* Alfred's laws; *hûses duru,* house's door (St. G., 1).

311.—II. An **attributive genitive** may denote the **subject** or **object** of a *verbal.*

Subjective genitive: *Godes gife,* God's gift (LL. In., Pream.); *tpêgrâ mannâ gepitnes,* two men's testimony (John, viii, 17); *cyninges hês,* king's command (C., 8, 14).

Objective genitive: *Godes egsa*, fear of God (Ex., 244, 30); ***synnâ*** *forgifennes*, forgiveness of sins (Matt., xxvi, 28); ***huntunge heortâ***, hunting of harts (Bêd., 1, 1).

312.—III. **Partitive.**—An **attributive genitive** may denote the **whole** of which its subject is **part.**

Se norddæl middangeardes, the north part of the earth (Bêd., 1, 1); *reste dæges æfene*, the evening of the Sabbath (Matt., xxviii, 1).

(*a.*) **The subject a pronoun**: *hpæt gôdes dô ic*, what of good do I? (Matt., xix, 16); *hpæt peorces*, what sort of work (Ælf.); so *hpæder, hpylc, eal, sum, ælc, gehpâ, gehpylc, ênig, piht, nâht*, etc.; —*þær*, adv. (C., 284, 24).

(*b.*) **The subject a numeral**: *ân his cnihtâ*, one of his disciples (Luc., xi, 1); *ærest ealrâ*, first of all (C., 4, 32). Compare *d*, below.

(*c.*) **The subject a superlative**: *sædâ læst*, least of seeds (Matt., xiii, 32); *hûsâ sêlest*, best of houses (B., 146). Very common is *ealra* + a superlative; *ealrâ rîcôst*, richest of all, etc., whence old English *alder*first, *alder*liefest, etc. (Ch. Sh.).

(*d.*) **The subject an aggregation** or **measure** of objects or material: *mycele manegeo fixâ*, a great crowd òf fishes (Luc., v, 6); *heord spŷnâ*, herd of swine (viii, 32); *hund mittenâ hpætes*, a hundred *of measures* of wheat (xvi, 7); *þûsend pundâ goldes*, a thousand *of pounds* of gold (LL. Æthd., II, 7, 2). This should be distinguished from the characteristic genitive of material (§ 313, *b*). This is very common, that rare; this is Sanskrit gen.

(*e.*) A **cognate** genitive may denote the **eminence** of its *subject: cyningâ cyning*, king of kings (Ex., 9, 17); *dreâmâ dreâm*, joy of joys (36, 22); *heofonâ heofonâs*, heaven of heavens (Psa., cxlviii, 4); and so abundantly in Anglo-Saxon, O. Norse.

313.—IV. **Characteristic.**—An **attributive genitive** may denote a **characteristic** of its *subject.*

In Sanskrit a characteristic takes the instrumental, in Greek (rare) the genitive, in Latin (frequent) the ablative or genitive.

(*a.*) **Quality**: *fægeres hipes men*, men of fair aspect (Hom., ii, 120).

(*b.*) **Material**: *scennum scîran goldes*, patens of pure gold (B., 1694); rare: material as characteristic is almost always expressed by an adjective (*gylden*, golden), or a compound (*gold-fæt*, gold vessel), or a preposition (*reâf of hærum*, garment of hair (Matt., iii, 4)). Compare § 312, *d.*

(*c.*) **Age**: *lamb ânes geâres*, lamb of one year (Hom., ii, 262).

(*d.*) **Size**: *fen unmætre mycelnesse*, fen of immense size (St. G., 3); so **weight, value**, and the like: *penegâ peorðe*, pennies-worth (John, vi, 7).

(*e.*) **Name**: *hit ofetes noman âgan sceolde*, it the name (of) apple must have (C., 719); *hê forleort ceastra Natzareðes*, he left the city (of) Nazareth (Northumbrian Matt., iv, 13). The West Saxon uses the appositive *Nazareð. Britene īgland*, island (of) Britain (Chr., 1; Bêd., 1), is doubt-

ful. The Greek and Latin used this genitive sometimes, the French often, and it became common in Semi-Saxon.

Predicative Combinations.

314. A **predicate** substantive may be put in the **genitive** to denote a **possessor** or **characteristic** of the subject, or a **whole** of which it is part.

Possessor: *Dryhtnes sind þá rícu*, the kingdoms are the Lord's (Psa., xxi, 26); *gé Cristes sind*, ye are Christ's (Mc., ix, 41). **Characteristic**: *þá þéron ongrislices andplitan*, they were of grisly countenance (Bēd., 5, 13); *hé þæs scearpre gleápnesse*, he was of sharp wit (5, 19); *seó þæs micelre brǽdo*, it was of great breadth (5, 12); *hé lífes pére*, (if) he were (of life) alive (LL. Æthd., II, 9, 3); *hé X pintrá síe*, he may be of ten years (LL. H. & Ed., 6). **Partitive**: *se abbot þæs góderá manná*, the abbot was of good men (Chr., 1066).

(*a.*) The predicate genitive may be used perhaps in all the relations of the attributive genitive. Compare the Latin and Greek Grammars (Hadley, 572).

(*b.*) **Quasi-predicative.** The genitive may be used for a predicate-accusative adjective (§ 294): *Hig gesápon þone sittan gescrýdne and hâles módes*, they saw *him* sit clothed and *of sound mind* (Mc., v, 15).

Objective Combinations.

These are mostly secondary, either abridged or acquired. In most of them one of the common relations of the attributive genitive may be conceived between the genitive and the notion of the verb or adjective with which it combines: *he fears it* = he has *fear of it*; *he remembers it* = he has *remembrance of it*.

315. **Exciting Object.**—The **genitive** may denote an **exciting** object.

That which suggests or excites a mental state or an act is its exciting object. The most common states or acts taking this object are

I. **Feelings**—joy, sorrow, pride, shame, longing, love, hope, fear, care, wonder, etc. **Verbs**: *þeódnes gefégon*, they joyed in the lord (B., 1627); *mordres gylped*, he exults at murder (B., 2055); *þére feohgifte scamigan*, to be ashamed of the gift (B., 1026); *gilpes þú girnest*, thou yearnest for fame (Boeth., 32); *ondréd he þæs*, he feared that (John, xix, 8); *pǽpná ne réced*, he recks not of weapons (B., 434); *pundrige fulles mónan*, wonder at the full moon (Met., 28, 40); so *begým* (Luc., x, 35); *pilnian* (An., 1130); *pýscad* (Guth., 194), and see § 297, *c*. **Adjectives**: *fægen síðes*, glad of the journey (An., 1043); *síðes périg*, weary of the journey (B., 579); *góðes grǽdig*, greedy of good (Sol., 344).

II. **Intellectual states**—remember, forget, think of, listen, etc. **Verbs**: *gemun þînes pordes*, remember thy word (Psa., cxviii, 49); *Godes hî forgeâton*, they forgot God (Psa., cv, 18); *þence þê nânes yfeles*, we think no evil (Gen., xlii, 31); *hlyst his pordâ*, listen to his words (Nic., 3). **Adjectives**: *gemyndige Loðes þîfes*, mindful of Lot's wife (Luc., xvii, 31); *unþîs þæs naman*, ignorant of the name (Bêd., 4, 13).

III. **Acts** related with such states of mind—laugh, pray, help, try, watch, remind, etc.: *þæt þîf âhlôh drihtnes*, the woman laughed at the lord (C., 2380); *flæsces hî bædon*, they prayed for flesh (Psa., civ, 35); *bîdan þînes eftcymes*, watch for thy return (Ex., 466, 33); *help mîn*, help me (Psa., lx, 1); *Hpî fandige gê mîn*, why tempt ye me? (Matt., xxii, 19); *mîn costôde*, tried after me (B., 2084). **Adjectives**: *gearo* (Jul., 49).

(*a.*) Verbs of **asking, accusing, reminding** may take an **accusative** and **genitive** (§§ 292, 297, *a*):

þê biddan ânre bêne, to ask thee of one thing (B., 427); *âcsian* (Bêd., 4, 3); *tŷhð mê untreôpdâ*, accuseth me of untruths (C., 36, 33); *usic þârâ leânâ gemonian*, to remind us of the loans (Ex., 333, 19).

(*b.*) Verbs of **granting, refusing**, and **thanking** may take a **dative** and **genitive**. See § 297, *d.*

(*c.*) **Impersonals** may take a **genitive** and an **accusative** or **dative** of the person excited: *hine ætes lysteð*, he longs for food, § 290, *c* (Wal., 52); *him þæs ne sceamôde*, it did not shame him of that, § 297, *a* (Gen., ii, 25).

(*d.*) **Reflexives** may take the reflexive pronoun and a **genitive**: *ondrêd hê hım þæs*, he dreaded (him) of that (John, xix, 8).

(*e.*) In Sanskrit the exciting object is regularly an ablative, but many of the verb notions here specified already take a genitive; in Greek the genitive is established, in Latin frequent; in Teutonic, genitives, datives (instrumentals), and accusatives combine often with the same verb.

316. **Partitive.**—The **genitive** may denote an object affected **in part.**

After verbs of **sharing** and **touch**: *genam þæs ofætes*, he took of the fruit (C., 493); *æt þisses ofætes*, he ate of this fruit (C., 500, 564); *þæs þæstmes onbât*, bit of the fruit (C., 470); *ic hæbbe his hêr*, I have (some) of it (the fruit) here (C., 678); *his hrînan*, to take hold of it (C., 616); *þêpnâ onfôn*, to take hold of weapons (C., 2040). So in other languages. In the Romanic tongues, and sometimes in Anglo-Saxon, a preposition is used. See *of.*

317. **Separation** (ablative).—The **genitive** may denote an **object of separation.** (Compare § 301.)

(*a.*) Many **transitive** verbs of separation take an **accusative** of the

person and a **genitive**: *benæman Crist rîces*, to deprive Christ of the kingdom (C., 286, 3); *fatâ hine bereâfian*, rob him of his goods (Matt., xii, 29); *hine ganges getpæman*, to hinder him from flight (B., 967); *getpæfed* (B., 1763); *geclænsă* (Ps. C., 112); *berêdde* (An., 1328).

(*b.*) **Intransitives** — cease, need, miss, etc.: *God gespâc his peorces*, God ceased from his work (Gen., ii, 3); *ealdres linnan*, to be deprived of life (B., 2443); *þingâ beþurfon*, have need of things (Matt., vi, 32); *behôfăt* (Bêd., 4, 25); *miste mercelses*, missed the mark (B., 2439); *þæs sôðes ansaceð*, deviate from the truth (Sol., 182). **Adjectives**: *bûendrâ leâs*, empty of inhabitants (C., 6, 16); *fâcnes clæne*, clean of crime (Ex., 276, 13); *ânes pana fîftig*, fifty less one (An., 1042); *bedæled*, p. p. (C., 276, 9).

318. **Supremacy.**—The **genitive** may denote an object of **supremacy** or use.

God pealdeð mannâ cynnes, God rules the race of men (Psa., lviii, 13). See § 300.

319. **Material.**—The **genitive** or **instrumental** may denote the **material** of which any thing is made or full. Compare § 302, *a*.

Pæt fæt leâdes gefylde, filled the vessel with lead (Ex., 277, 10); *ofætes gehlædene*, laden with fruit (C., 461); *þeôs eorðe is berende fugelâ*, the land is full (bearing) of birds (Bêd., 1, 1); **adjectives**: *fæt ful ecedes*, vessel full of vinegar (John, xix, 29); *gâstê* (Luc., iv, 1).

(*a.*) The material after a verb of making takes a preposition. § 294, *c*.

(*b.*) The material is put in the genitive in some other relations. § 324.

320. **Measure.**—The **genitive** in combination with *adjectives* may denote **measure**. Compare §§ 295, 302.

(*a.*) **Space**, dimension: *fîftiges fôt-gemearces lang*, fifty paces long (B., 3043); *fîftênâ monnes elnâ deôp*, fifteen man's ells deep (C., 1397).

(*b.*) **Time**: *hê pæs hundnigontiges pintrâ eald*, he was (of) ninety (of) winters old (Bêd., 3, 27); oftenest English (*twelve*) *years old* is in Anglo-Saxon a compound adjective (*tpelf*) *pintre* (Luc., ii, 42; viii, 42; Gen., v, 6).

(*c.*) **Price**, value: *six peningâ pyrðe*, sixpence worth (Rask); *is pyrðe his metes*, is worthy of his meat (Matt., x, 10). Compare §§ 302, 313, *d*.

(*d.*) **Crime**: *morðres scyldig*, guilty of murder (B., 1683); *deâðes scyldig*, deserving of death (Matt., xxvi, 66). Also dative and instrumental.

321. **Adjunct.**—The **genitive** in combination with **adjectives** may denote the *part* or *relation* in which the quality is conceived.

Môdes blîðe, blithe of mind (B., 436); *mægenes streng*, strong of might (B., 1844). For instrumentals, see § 302.

Adverbial Combinations.

Most examples are relics of the time when the genitive was more freely used in the adverbial relations than we find it in the literary remains. See further § 251.

322. **Space.**—The **genitive** may denote **by what way**:

pendon him þâ ôdres peges hâmpeard, they return homeward by another way (Chr., 1006), Gr. τῆς ὁδοῦ, Ger. *deines weges*.

How far from (?): *IV mîlâ from þam mûdan*, four miles from the mouth (Chr., 893; so Mætzner), but *four of miles* is better (§ 295).

323. **Time.**—The **genitive** may denote the **time when**:

pintres and sumeres pudu bid gelîce gehongen, winter and summer the wood is alike hung (with fruits) (Ph., 37); *þæs pintres*, that winter (Chr., 878); *ânes dæges*, one day (Job, 165); *dæges and nihtes*, by day and night (B., 2269); *þis þæs feôrdes geâres*, this was on the fourth year (Chr., 47). Note also *þæs*, thereafter.

324. **Means.**—The **genitive** may denote **means** or **cause**:

þæteres peorpan, to sprinkle with water (Dôm., 78); *glæd pînes*, jolly with wine (B., 2791).

325. **Manner.**—The **genitive** may denote **manner**:

bûgan spilces gcongordômes, bow in such vassalage (C., 283); *gepealdes monnan ofsleâ*, intentionally slay a man (LL. Alf., Intr., 13); *sôdes ic þê secge*, of a truth I say to you (Matt., v, 26); *peaxað selfpilles*, grow of their own accord (Lev., xxv, 5).

326. **With Prepositions.**—The **genitive** with a **preposition** is sometimes used to denote **instrumental, ablative**, or **locative** adverbial relations. See Prepositions.

USES OF PREPOSITIONS.

327. A **preposition** governs a **substantive**, and shows its **relation** to some other word in the clause.

(*a.*) This relation is oftenest **adverbial**, but may be **attributive, predicative**, or **objective**: *sæton be þam strande*, sat by the strand (Matt., xiii, 48);—attributive: *reâf of hærum*, garment of hair (Matt., iii, 4);—predicative: *hê þæs fram Bêdsâïda*, he was from Bethsaida (John, i, 44);—objective: *on his âgenum fæder âre gesceâpian*, render honor to his father (C., 1580).

(*b.*) A preposition may merely define a verb. It is then said to be in *complete* composition, if phonetically united with it, otherwise in *incomplete*.

328. Prepositions expressing **extent** take the **accusative**, others the **dative** and **instrumental**.

Acc. Signs: *geond, ût, þurh, ymb(e)* = *emb(e)*.

Acc. sometimes: *and, æfter, æt, for, fore, foran, in, innan, mid, on, tô, ofer, uppan, under, pit.*

(*a.*) Prepositions expressing **position**, or a place of **rest** before or after motion, take a dative. The same preposition may express extension with one verb and rest after another. (Study the examples.) The dative also has taken up the **instrumental** and **ablative** relations, and all others except plain accusatives. Occasional instrumentals and genitives occur, and are given under their prepositions.

(*b.*) Prepositions compounded with adverbs generally retain their case. Acc. *ymb-ûtan*, and sometimes *on-bûtan, on-foran, on-uppan, ongegn, on-gemong, pit-geondan, pit-æftan, pit-innan* ? Grein.

329. The **genitive** is sometimes used with *þurh, pit, of, tô, innan, ûtan, þana*,—mostly in old phrases. (Compare §322.)

(*a.*) Prepositions compounded with nouns may take a genitive originally an attributive with the noun: *and-lang, tô-middes, be-tpeônum.*

Table of Prepositions.

330. **and** (§ 254); + dative or + accusative: Gothic acc.

I. Dative—**number**: *eahta niht and feôperum*, eight nights and four (Men., 211).

II. Accusative—**place**: *and eordan*, on the earth (Met., 20, 123); *and ordfruman*, in presence of their creator (C., 13).

and-long, *-lang* (§§ 259, 329, *a*) + gen.: *rîdende andlang þæs pêstenes*, pursuing along the wilderness (Jos., viii, 16); *up andlong* (Chr., 882); *nyder andlang*, down along (Lev., i, 15).

331. **æfter** (§ 255), more aft; + dative or (rare) accusative. Goth. *afar* + dat., acc.; O. Sax., O. H. Ger. *aftar*; O. N. *eptir.*

I. Dative.

Place—position: *cumaþ æfter mê*, come further back than I = follow me (Matt., iv, 19);—extent: *sæton æfter beorgum*, they sat dispersed through the hills (C., 191, 9). Latin *secundum.*

Time—point: *æfter þrŷm dagum ic ârîse*, after three days I arise (Matt., xxvii, 63);—extent: *æfter poruldstundum*, during this life (El., 363);—repetition: *pundor æfter pundre*, wonder after wonder (B., 931).

Cause: *panian æfter heaþospâte*, melt because of the hot blood (B., 1606);—end: *âcsôde æfter him*, asked after him (Psa., xxxvi, 35); *grôf æfter golde*, grub after gold (Met., 8, 57). Compare *for.*

Likeness: *geporhtne æfter his onlîcnesse*, made after his likeness (C., 25, 18); *æfter Englâ lage*, according to English law (Æd̃r., 1). See *bī*.

II. Accusative.

Place: *hê eordan æfter pæter sette*, he set the earth upon the waters (Psa., cxxxv, 6).

æft = *æfter* (rare): *æft mec*, (come) after me (Matt., iv, 19, Northumbr.); *æft sunnan setlgange*, after sunset (Gen., xxviii, 11). O. Eng. *eft, eft-soons*.

332. **ær** (§ 259) + dative. Northum. acc. and gen., Goth. gen.

Time: *ær sumeres cyme*, before summer's coming (El., 1228); *hâtede mê ær eôp*, hated me before (it hated) you (John, xv, 18); *ær þam, þon, þŷ*, Lat. *priusquam*, before that.

333. **æt** (§ 254, 3) + dative or (rare) acc. Gothic dat., acc., gen.

I. Dative.

Place—position: *pæron at Exanceastre*, were at Exeter (Æd̃s. VI); *æt hâm*, at home (B., 1248);—direction: *cômon æt mê*, came to me (Matt., xxv, 43);—departure: *ânimað þæt pund æt him*, take the pound from beside him (Matt., xxv, 28); *onfêng pallium æt papan*, he received the pallium at the hands of the pope (Chr., 1026); so with *learn, hear, take*, etc. *æt* = *of*, from. So in Gothic, O. Norse. Compare Gr. παρά and the dative of separation (§ 301). Often strengthened by *gelang* (B., 1377).

Time—point: *æt middan sumere*, at midsummer (Bêd., 5, 23); *æt êrestan*, for the first time (Ex., 51, 30).

Specification (Lat. *quoad*): *æt ête speôp*, got along as to eating (B., 3026).

Opposition: *æt mê gepyrcean*, work against me (Psa., cxxviii, 1).

State—circumstance: *stande æt gebede*, stand praying (Psa., v, 3); *sæt æt pîne*, sat at the wine (Rid., 47, 1).

II. Accusative—**space**: *æt sæstreâmâs gebrâddest*, extendest even to the sea-streams (Psa., lxxix, 11).

æt-foran (+ dative or (rare) acc.):—**place**: *ætforan þam folce*, (go) in front of the people (Jos., iii, 6);—**person**: *gepemmed ætforan Gode*, corrupt before God (Gen., vi, 11);—**time**: *ætforan mæssan*, before (St. Andrew's) mass-day (Chr., 1010). II. Acc.: *ætforan eâgan þîne*, before thine eyes (Psa., v, 5; Ettm.).

334. **bī**, *be* (§ 254, 2); + dative (instr.): Gothic acc. and dat.

Place—immediate juxtaposition: *hî sæton be þam strande*, they sat by the strand (Matt., xiii, 48); *âlêdon be mæste*, laid him by the mast (B., 36); *fôr be þam lande*, sailed along by the land (Oros., 1, 1); *be pege*, by the way (Mc., viii, 3);—part handled: *genam be feaxe*, took him by the hair (Jud., 99).

Time: *be dæges leôhte*, by daylight (Rid., 28, 17); —dative absolute: *þû ne âlête be þê lifigendum*, permit thou not, while thou livest (B., 2665).

Cause—means: *hangaƀ be þrâde*, hangs by a thread (Boeth., 29); —source: *sunu âgan be brŷde þînre*, have a son by thy wife (C., 2326); —theme: *sungon be Godes bearne*, sung of God's son (El., 562); *âcsiaƀ be þam cilde*, ask about the child (Matt., ii, 8); *be þam dæge nân man nât*, of that day no man knoweth (Mc., xiii, 32); —command: *fêrde be his hlâfordes hâse*, went by his lord's command (Gen., xxiv, 10); —agent (rare, if ever): *forlæd be þam lygenum*, seduced *by him* by lies (C., 598); so Mætzner, 1, 404, and Grein under *lygen*, but better *by the lies* (means). Goth. *bi* is not so used. In Middle English (Wycliffe) first common.

Manner: *be fullan*, fully (Psa., xxx, 27); *be sumum dâle*, partly (Met., 20, 96); —succession, likeness: *pord be porde*, word for word (Boeth., Pref.); —proportion: *be gepyrhtum*, according to their works (An., 1613); —accompaniment: *be hearpan singan*, sing to the harp (Bêd., 4, 24).

Measure of difference (§ 302, *d*): *mâre be ânum stæfe*, more by one letter (Nic., 33).

b-æftan (+dat.): *gang bæftan mê*, get behind (by) me (Matt., xvi, 23); *bæftan þam hlâforde*, except with the owner (Exod., xxii, 14).

be-eâstan, *-þestan*, etc. (+dat.): *be-eâstan Rîne*, east of the Rhine (Oros, 1, 1; where also *-þestan*, etc.).

be-foran (+dat. or acc.): —place: *him beforan*, before him (C., 183, 17); —time (Psa., civ, 15). Acc., place: *beforan þone cyning*, in sight of the king (Boeth., 16, 2).

be-geondan (+dat. or acc.): *hê þæs begeondan Iórdâne*, he was over by Jordan (John, iii, 26). Acc.: *com begeondan Iórdânen*, came by past Jordan (Matt., 19, 1).

be-healfe (+dat.): *behealfe mînum hlâforde*, beside of my lord (By., 318).

be-heonan (+dat.): *beheonan sæ̂*, this side the sea (Chr., 878).

be-hindan (+dat.): *him behindan*, behind him (Met., 29, 52).

b-innan (+dat.): —place: *binnan þam dîce*, within the dike (Bêd., 1, 11); —time: *binnan þrŷm dagum*, within three days (John, ii, 19).

be-neodan (+dat.): *beneodan cneôpe*, below the knee (Ælf. LL., 63).

b-ûfan (+dat.): *bûfan þæm elnbogan*, above the elbow (54); a-b-ove < Orm. *â-b-ûfenn* has not been found in Anglo-Saxon.

b(e)-ûtan (*a*, *o*) (+dat.): *bûton burgum*, out of towns (Edg., IV, 2, 3); *bûton ende*, without end (Sat., 315); *bûton ânum*, except one (B., 705).

be-tpeônum, *-tpâm*, *-tpŷnan* (+dat. or acc.): *be sæ̂m tpeônum*, by two seas (B., 858); *him betpynân*, among them (Job, 166). Acc.: *be-tpeônum peallâs*, (ledest) between walls (Psa. cv, 9). Genitive: Rid., 30, 2.

be-tpih-(s), *-tpeox*, Layamon *betwixte* (+dat. or acc.): *betpeox þê* and *þam pîfe*, betwixt thee and the woman (Gen., iii, 15). Acc.: *betpeox his mâgâs*, (sought him) among his kindred (Luc., ii, 44).

335. **eâc** (§ 254, 1) + dative. Goth. adv. conj.

Number: *þŷ þriddan geârê eâc tpentigum*, the third year in addition to twenty (Bêd., 1, 13); *freônd ænigne eâc þissum idesum*, any friend besides these women (C., 2500); *eâc þam* (*þan, þon*), thereupon, moreover (Met., 1, 44).

336. **feor** (§ 259) + dative.

Place: *feor ûrum mynstre*, far from our monastery (Bêd., 5, 4); *feor his fæder*, far from his father (Luc., xv, 20); *unfeor* (vii, 6).

337. **for** (§ 254, 2) + dat., or instr., or acc. Goth. acc.
fore (§ 254, 2) + dat. or acc. Goth. dat. (*for- = frô-*.)

1. Dative and instrumental: (*for-: for-manig*, very many, By., 239).

Place: *for his eâgum*, before his eyes (C., 2429); *fore eâgum* (Cri., 1324); *for Abrahame*, before Abraham (C., 2778); *fore* (Cri., 1233).

Time: *for pintrâ fela*, many winters before (C., 2199); *fore* (Cri., 1031).

Cause—motive: *þrôþôde for mannâ lufan*, suffered for love of men (Men., 86); *fore* (Hell., 110);—occasion: *for guman synnan*, suffered for man's sin (Kr., 146); *fore* (Cri., 1095);—exciting object: *for his lîfe lyt sorgedon*, they cared little for his life (Ex., 116, 18); *fore* (B., 1442);—dative of advantage: *for ûs geþrôþôde*, suffered for us (Sat., 665); *fore* (Cri., 1202);—theme: *sædon for manegum yfelum dædum*, spoke of many evil deeds (Nic., 2); *fore* (Pa., 34);—oath: *for drihtne*, for God's sake (Met., 1, 64); *fore* (Jul., 540);—reason: *for þam* (*an, on*), *for þŷ*, therefore; *for hpam* (*an, on*), *for hpî*, wherefore;—exchange: *feôunge for lufan*, hate for love (Psa. cviii, 4); *for eallum þissum*, in spite of all that (Chr., 1006); *for intingan*, for the sake of (Bêd., 3, 8).

Manner: *for his peldædum*, according to his good works (Psa., lxxvi, 7);—order: *gyfe for gyfe*, gift after gift (John, i, 16).

II. Accusative.

Place—after motion: *gân for þê andpeardne*, go before thee (C., 871); *fore* (An., 1030).

Time: *for ealle men*, (acted) before all men (Kr., 93); *fore þreô niht*, before three nights (An., 185).

Cause—motive: *for plenco*, for pride (B., 1206);—advantage = dative: *for êhterâs and tælendum*, pray for persecutors and calumniators (Matt., v, 44);—exchange: *tôð for tôð*, tooth for tooth (Matt., v, 38).

Factitive Object (§ 286, *b*): *hine hæfde for fulne cyning*, held him for (as) full king (Chr., 1013).

338. **fram**, *from* (§ 254, 2) + ablative > dat. (instr.). Goth. dat.

Place whence motion: *cômon fram eâst-dæle*, came from the east (Matt., ii, 1).

Time: *fram dæges orde*, from daybreak (El., 140).

Conditions and relations whence separation: *ârâs hê fram slæpe*, he arose from sleep (Bêd., 4, 24); *fram synnum*, from sins (El., 1309); *feor fram mê*, (their heart) far from me (Mc., vii, 6). Instrumental: *fram þŷs þîg-plegan*, (turn) from this war-play (By., 316).

Cause—source: *fram þâm hit naman onfêng*, from whom it took name (Bêd., 1, 1);—agent with the passive: *costnôd fram deofle*, tempted by the devil (Matt., iv, 1);—theme: *fram ellendædum secgan hŷrde*, heard tell of hero-deeds (B., 875).

339. **gehende** (§ 259) + dative. O. Sax. *at handum.*

Place: *gehende þam scype*, handy (near) to the ship (John, vi, 19).

340. **geond** (*io*) (§ 255), thither+acc. of that intervening.

Place: *gâ geond þegâs*, go through the highways (Luc., xiv, 23); *geond þudu*, through the wood (In., 20); *geond þâ þeôde*, among the people (An., 25); *geond stôpâ*, through the places, all about (Luc., xxi, 11).

Time: *geond feôpertig dagâ*, after forty (of) days (Num., xiii, 22).

341. **in** (§ 254, 1)+dat., instr., acc. Goth. dat., acc., genitive.
on (§ 254, 1)+dat., acc. Goth. dat., acc.

In Old Saxon **in** is not found, nor in the Anglo-Saxon of Alfred's Meters, the Runes, or Byrhtnôð; it is twice in the Psalms, three times in Cædmon's Genesis; elsewhere in the Anglo-Saxon poetry **in** and **on** freely interchange; but **in** prevails in the North, **on** in the South. The distinctive **on** has a vertical element (*up* or *down*), which easily runs to *against* or *near*. (See Grein, 2, 140.)

I. Dative, Instrumental.

Place where: *in tûne ofsleah*, slay (a man) in town (Æðb., 5); *on þŷ cynerîcê*, in the kingdom (Chr., 871); *in heafde hpîte loccâs*, on the head white locks (Rid., 41, 98); **on** has also: *on þicge*, on horse-back (B., 286); *on Temesan*, winter quarters on (along) the Thames (Chr., 1009);—person: *on hym sŷ gefylled*, in them is fulfilled (the prophecy) (Matt., xiii, 14); *on þîfum*, (blessed) among women (Luc., i, 28);—after verbs of taking away: *blædâ name on telgum*, took fruit from the branches (C., 892). Compare *æt*.

Time when: *in geâr-dagum*, in old days (B., 1);—**on**: *on þam eahtoðan dæge*, on the eighth day (Job, 164);—how long: *on six dagum*, in six days (he made the earth) (C., 266, 1); *on þŷ ylcan geârê*, in the same year (Chr., 896).

Cause—theme: think on (Psa. cxvii, 8);—end: *on forgifennisse*, for forgiveness of sins (Hom., ii, 268);—exciting object: *þundredon on his lâre*, wondered at his lore (Mc., vi, 2); trust in (Psa. li, 6; acc., cxxiv, 1).

Means or instrument: *se þæs beorht on blædum*, that was bright with

flowers (Dan., 500); *ic on mînum mûde andette*, I confess with my mouth (Psa., cviii, 29); *sungon on tympanis*, they sang to the accompaniment of drums (Psa., lxvii, 24); *psaltêriô, hearpe* (cxliii, 10).

Material: *on þâm telgum timbran*, to work upon the branches (Ph., 188).

Manner: *cômon on þrîm floccum*, came in three companies (Job, 165);—condition: *in gebede hê stôd*, he stood in prayer (Bêd., 5, 12); *on* (B., 1739); *on onlicnesse purde*, grew into likeness (C., 2564).

II. Accusative.

Place whither: *heô hine in þæt mynstre onfêng*, she took him into the monastery (Bêd., 4, 24);—**on**: *feôllon on þornâs*, fell (down) on thorns (Matt., xiii, 7); *lædde hine on munt*, led him (up) on a mount (Matt., iv, 8); datives are found in this sense: *on heofenum cuman*, to come into heaven (Job, 166);—persons: *com hungur on Bryttâs*, hunger came among the Britons (Bêd., 1, 14); *hê on hî feaht*, he fought against them (2, 9).

Time how long: *in ealle tîd*, for all time (Pa., 17); *on þâ æfentîd*, at eventide (Kr., 68).

Cause—purpose: *gân on fixôð*, go a fishing (John, xxi, 3);—price: *bebohte on seolfres sinc*, sold for a treasure of silver (C., 301, 7).

Manner: *on Scyttisc*, in Scottish (tongue) (Bêd., 3, 27);—condition: *onþæcneð in lîf*, awakeneth into life (Ph., 649).

Factitive: *hê up ârærde reâde streâmâs in rand-gebeorh*, he reared the red streams into (as) side defences (C., 196, 24).

innan (§ 257, Goth. adv.)+dat., acc., gen. Dat.: *hê sæt innan hûse*, he sat in the house (Matt., ix, 10);—acc.: *feal innan þâ sæ*, fall into the sea (xxi, 22);—gen.: *gâst innan hreðres*, soul within the body (Psa. cxlii, 4). So time; Dat. (Chr., 806); Acc. (Chr., 693).

on-bûtan (rare), *âbûtan* (§ 257)+dat. or acc.: *æteôped âbûtan þære sunnan*, (ring) visible around the sun (Chr., 806); *onbûtan þære sunnan* (Chr., 1104);—acc. (Exod., xix, 12). **Number**: *âbûtan feôper hund mannâ*, about four hundred men (Chr., 1055).

on-efn (O. Sax., O. H. Ger., § 258)+dat.: *him on-efn ligeð*, anent (= beside) him lies (B., 2903). Acc. (Grein); gen. (Gen., xvi, 12).

on-foran (§ 257)+dat. (rare, see *be-foran*): *onforan pinter*, before winter (Chr., 894).

on-gegn, *â-gên*, *-geân* (§ 258)+dat., acc. **Place**: *þâm dælum ongegen*, (Britain lies) opposite the regions (of Europe) (Bêd., 1, 1); *ongên eôp*, opposite you (Matt., xxi, 2);—hostility: *ongeân gramum*, (go) against the fiends (B., 1034); *ongeân his lustum*, fight against his lusts (Job, 167)=*pið*. Acc.—**place**: *âgên hine arn*, ran to him (Luc., xv, 20);—hostility: *cuman ongeân hine*, come against him (Boet., 35, 6). **Time**: *ongeân pinter hâm tugon*, against winter went home (Chr., 1096).

on-(ge)mong(e) (§ 258; O. Sax. *angimang*)+dat. **Place**: *Godum on-*

gemonge, stood among the Gods (Psa., lxxxi, 1)=*betpuh*, *on middum*. **Time**: *onmang þam gepinnan*, during the fight (Chr., 1106).

in innan (*inne*), *on innan* (*inne*) (§ 257) + dat., acc.: *ofne on innan*, in the oven (Dan., 259). Acc.: *in þone ofn innan*, into the oven (Dan., 238).

on-middan, *-middum* (§ 258) + dat.: *on-middan þam hpête*, amidst the wheat (Matt., xiii, 25); *ômiddan sceâfum*, amid your sheafs (Gen., xxxvii, 7). See *tô-middes*.

on ufan (§ 257) + acc. **Place**: *lôcăđ ufan on helle*, looketh from above on hell (A. R., 25). **Time**: *on-ufan harpest*, after harvest (Chr., 923).

on-uppan (§ 257) + dat.: *on-uppan þam assan*, rode upon the ass (John, xii, 14).

in-tô (§ 254, 1, 3) + dat.: *com intô healle*, came into the hall (Matt., ix, 23); *intô him*, went unto him (Bêd., 3, 12); *intô heom*, locked the doors *onto* them (Chr., 1083).

342. **læs** (§ 259) + dat. (instr.):

Number: *tpâ læs XXX* (*þrittigum*) *geârâ*, two less (than) thirty (of) years (Chr., 642).

343. **mid** (§ 254, 1) + dat. (instr.), acc. Goth. dat.

I. Dative (instr.).

Place—among whom: *ic pæs mid Hûnum*, I was among the Huns (Trav., 57);—near whom: *mid Eormanrîce*, I was with Ermanric (Trav., 88).

Time: *mid ærdæge*, with the dawn (B., 126).

Manner: *mid gefeân*, joyfully (An., 868); *mid rihtê*, rightfully (Jud., 97).

Co-existence: *se mid lâcum com*, he came with gifts (C., 2103); *perâs mid pîfum*, men with their wives (C., 1738); (instrumental) *gepât him hâm mid þŷ here-teâmê*, got himself home with the booty (C., 2162).

Cause—means: *mid his handum gesceôp*, with his hands made (C., 251); (instrumental) *þŷ hungrê*, with hunger (Soul, 31);—instr.: *mid þŷ billê*, with the sword (C., 2931).

II. Accusative.

Place: *punăđ mid ûsic*, dwell among us (C., 2722); *mid aldor*, lived with their lord (C., 20).

Co-existence: *gepât mid cyning*, he departed with the king (C., 1210).

Cause: *slôh mid hâlige hand*, smote with holy hand (C., 208, 18).

Object of address or discrimination: *spræc mid hine*, spoke with him (Bêd., 2, 13); *dêmăđ mid unc tpih*, judge between us two (C., 2253).

344. **neâh**, *nêh*, *nêh*; **neâr**; **nêhst** (§ 259) + dat. Goth. dat.

Place: *seô eâ flôpeđ neâh þâre ceastre pealle*, the river flows nigh the town's wall (Bêd., 1, 7); *pille ic þam lige neâr*, I will go nearer to the fire (C., 760); *nêhst þære eaxe*, (the nave) turns nearest the axle (Boet., 39, 7).

345. **nefne**, *nemne* (*ne gif ne*, Lat. *non nisi?* but see § 259) + dative.

Separation: *ealle fornam nemne feâum ânum*, took off all except a few (B., 1081).

346. **neoðan** (§ 257) + acc.? See *be-neoðan*, *under-neoðan*.

Hê peard þurhscoten neoðan þæt ôðer breôst, he was shot through beneath the other breast (Oros, 3, 9); so Koch, but the texts have *under-neoðan*. The O. H. Ger. *nida* is used as a prep., as is O. Norse *neðan* with *fyr*, but I have not found *neoðan* so used.

347. **ôð** (§ 254, 3) + acc., (rare) dat. Goth. acc., dat.

Space—extent to: *ealne ôð þone peal genômon*, they took all as far as to the wall (Bêd., 1, 12).

Time: *ôð þone dæg*, until that day (B., 2399). Dative: *ôð þisum dæge*, unto this day (Hom., ii, 132).

Effect: *unrôt ôð deâð*, sorrowful unto death (Mc., xiv, 34).

Degree: *ealrâ ôð nŷtenu*, (slew the first-born of the Egyptians) of all even to the cattle (Psa., cxxxiv, 8).

348. **of** (§ 254, 2) + dat. Gothic *af* translates *ἀπό*, *fram* oftener *ὑπό*; in space and time relations they interchange; in causal, *af* is material cause, *fram* is efficient; both take a dative.

Place whence: *hê âstâh of þam pætere*, he came out of the water (Matt., iii, 16).

Time: *of þam dæge*, from that day (John, xi, 53).

State or circumstances: *of slæpe onpôc*, awoke from sleep (C., 249, 2); *âlŷs ûs of yfle*, deliver us from evil (Matt., vi, 13);—any object of separation (§ 301): *hâl of þysum*, whole of this (Mc., v, 34; Luc., vii, 21).

Partitive: *ân of þysum*, one of these (Matt., vi, 29).

Cause—material: *of eorðan geporht*, made of earth (C., 365); *âfêdde of fixum*, fed with fishes (An., 589); *reâf of heârum*, garment of hair (Matt., iii, 4);—source: *of Geatâ fruman syndon Cantpare*, from the Geats are the people of Kent (Bêd., 483, 21);—author: *gehŷrde of Gode*, heard from God (John, viii, 40); I do nothing of myself, *of mê sylfum* (viii, 28);—agent: *pæs of Myrcum gecoren*, was chosen by the Mercians (Chr., 925).

349. **ofer** (§ 252, *b*) + dat., acc. Gothic dat., acc.

I. Dative.

Place—point higher than: *ofer since salo hlifian*, over the treasure a hall stand (C., 2403);—surface on which: *þind ofer ŷðum*, wind upon the waves (B., 1907).

Time: *ofer þam ânum geâre*, (live) over (=longer than) the one year (Hom., ii, 146).

Degree: *ofer snâpe scînende*, shining above (=brighter than) snow (Psa. C., 75).

Rule: *ofer deoflum pealdeđ*, rules over devils (Dan., 765).

Accusative senses are frequently found with datives.

II. Accusatives, often used where *geond* or *æfter* might be.

Place—motion or presence from side to side of an object: *ofer sæ̂ gepiton*, over sea they went (Chr., 885); *pæ̂ron þŷstru ofer ealle eorđan*, there was darkness over all the earth (Matt., xxvii, 45);—above it: *hlŷpp ofer heafod*, (my sin) is gone over my head (Psa., xxxvii, 4); *ofer peal*, got over a wall (Psa., xvii, 28); *standende ofer hig*, standing over her (Luc., iv, 39). Dative senses: *ofer hrôf hand sceâpedon*, showed the hand above the roof (B., 983).

Time—extent: *ofer ealne dæg*, through the whole day (Jud., 28). Dative sense: *ofer midne dæg*, after mid-day (C., 853), common.

Degree: *ofer ynce*, over an inch (Æđb., 67);—eminence: *ân steorra ofer ôđre bœorht*, a star bright above others (Met., 29, 19).

Rule: *pealdeđ ofer eal mannâ cyn*, ruleth over all mankind (Psa., lxv, 6).

Conflict: *ofer drihtnes pord*, against the lord's command (C., 593); *ofer pillan*, against the will (B., 2409).

Separation: *ofer pæ̂pen*, without a weapon (B., 685).

Exciting Object (§ 315): *ic blissige ofer þînre spræ̂ce*, I rejoice over thy speech (Psa., cxviii, 162).

Theme: *hê ofer benne spræc*, he talked about the wounds (B., 2724).

On and compounds, see **in.**

350. **Samod** (§ 255)+dat.: *samod æ̂rdage*, with dawn (B., 1311).

351. **til**, Northumbrian sometimes for *tô* (§ 259)+dat. Goth., Ang.-Sax. adjective; O. Norse preposition+gen.

Cpeđ til him, said to them (Matt., xxvi, 31); infinitive: *til eotanne*, to eat (Matt., xxvi, 17); so in Orm.—common in Chaucer, Wycliffe; often with *to* or *into;* used in time, place, and dative relations as late as Spenser.

352. **tô** (§ 254, 3)+dat. (rare acc., gen., instr.). Goth. dat. (rare acc.).

Place—end of motion or extent: *hê tô healle geông*, he to the hall went (B., 925); *hû heâh tô hefone*, how high to heaven (Boet., 35, 4); *beseoh tô mê*, look at me (Psa., xii, 3)=*on*+acc.;—after verbs of seeking, asking: *sæcce sêcean tô Heorote*, seek a fight at Heorot (B., 1990); *âhsôde tô Frysum*, asked among the Frisians (B., 1207)=*from*. Compare *æt*, *on*.

Time—end of duration: 30000 *pintrâ tô þînum deâđdæge*, 30000 years to

thy death-day (Soul, 37);—when: *tô dæge þissum*, to-day (C., 1031); *tô nôn-tîde*, at noon-tide (Mc., xv, 34);—how long: *tô langre hpîle*, for a long time (C., 489).

Degree: *gê etaþ tô fylle*, ye shall eat to fullness (Lev., xxvi, 5).

Price: *geseald tô þrim hund penegum*, sold for three hundred pence (Mc., xiv, 5).

Order: *hêhstne tô him*, highest next to him (C., 254).

Likeness: *God gesceôp man tô his anlîcnesse*, God made man in his likeness (Gen., i, 27).

End of action—**object** added to: *tô his anlîcnesse*, (add an ell) to his stature (Luc., xii, 25); *gecleofôd tô mînum gômum*, cleaved to my gums (Psa., xxi, 13);—of address or gesture: *cpæþ tô him*, said to him (Matt., viii, 7); *gebuge tô*, bow to a worse God (Jul., 361);—condition: *âgeaf þîf tô gepealde*, gave a wife into his power (C., 1867);—act prepared for: *tô gefeohte gearu*, ready for fight (Num., xxi, 33);—purpose: *lîg tô præce sende*, sent fire for vengeance (C., 2584). **Factitives**: *ceorfon tô sticcon*, cut to pieces (Lev., i, 6); *þê habbaþ Abraham tô fæder*, we have Abraham as father (Matt., iii, 9); *hine tô sylfcpale nemnaþ*, name him a suicide (Ex., 330, 24).

II. Accusatives (rare).

Place: *gongan tô Galilêam*, go to Galilee (Sat., 527). **Time**: *tô morgen*, this morning (C., 2438); *tô dæg*, to-day (Psa., ii, 7). **Condition**: *tô deâþ dêman*, doom to death (Gu., 521). *Tô hâm faran*, go home (B., 124); *tô honda*, at hand (Gu., 102); *tô gepeald?* (Jul., 86); *tô sôþ*, in truth; and some other adverbial phrases are possibly accusatives.

III. Genitives—mostly with *þæs, hpæs, middes: tô þæs*, to such a degree (B., 1616), thither (B., 2410); *tô hpæs*, whither (C. Exod., 192); *tô middes dæges*, at mid-day (Psa., xxxvi, 6).

IV. Instrumental: *tô hpî*, wherefore (Hom., ii, 134).

V. Infinitive—**purpose** or end: *mæl is mê tô fêran*, it is time for me to go (B., 316). Gerund: *hê com eorðan to dêmanne*, he came to judge the earth (Psa., xcvii, 8).

tô-eâcan (§ 258)+dat.: *tô-eâcan þâm*, in addition to these (Boet., 26, 2).

tô-foran (§ 257)+dat. **Place**: *tôforan him gegaderôde*, gathered before him (Matt., xxv, 32). **Time**: *tôforan þam dæge*, before the day (Chr., 1106).

tô-gegnes, *-gênes, -geânes* (§ 258)+dat., acc.: *him tôgeânes râd*, rode against him (B., 1893). **Time**: *tôgeânes Eâstron*, against Easter (Chr., 1095). Acc. (Gen., xiv, 17). See further **ongegn**.

tô-middes (§ 258)+gen., dat.: *tô-middes heorâ*, in the midst of them (John, viii, 3). Dative: *tô-mîddes þâm pæterum*, amidst the waters (Gen., i, 6).

tô-peard, *-peardes* (§§ 259; 251, 1): *tôpard Huntendûne*, lie toward Huntingdon (Chr., 656); *fêrdon tôpardes Ou*, went towards Ou (Chr., 1094).

tô-piđere (§§ 255, 359) +dat., acc.: *prâđum tôpiđere*, answer to (= against) enemies (Cri., 185); *þîg tôpiđere*, to hold against a fight (Ex., 341, 20).

353. **þurh** (§ 253, 3) +acc. (rare dat., gen.). Goth. acc.

Place—motion into and out at the opposite side: *gân þurh ânre nǽđle eâge*, go through a needle's eye (Luc., xviii, 25); *þurh heorâ midlen*, went through their midst (Luc., iv, 30);—simple extent (=*geond*): *lǽrende þurh ealle Iudêam*, teaching throughout all Judea (Luc., xxiii, 5).

Time: *þurh ealne dæg*, through the whole day (Psa., lxxiii, 21); *þurh slêp*, (spoke to him) during sleep (C., 2641).

Cause—agent: *pæs geporht þurh hine*, was made by him (John, i, 10); —means: *þurh dryhtnes pord*, (light was named day) by God's word (C., 130);—motive: *þurh feôndscipe*, through hatrêd (C., 610); *lust* (Ex., 23, 15);—reason: *þurh þæt*, Lat. *propter hoc*, for that reason (Gen., xxxvii, 5); oath (Lat. *per*): *ic sperige þurh mê silfne*, I swear by myself (Gen., xxii, 16). See *on*.

Manner: *þurh endebyrdnesse singan*, sing in order (Bed., 4, 24); *dêman þurh his dǽda*, judge according to his deeds (Sat., 623). **Co-existence**: *cennan þurh sâr micel sunu*, to bring forth with pain many a son (C., 924).

II. Dative—**place**: *þerh hiorâ middum*, went through their midst (North. Luc. iv, 30); **means**: *þurh costnungum gepenian*, seduce by temptations (Job, 165).

III. Genitive—means: *geclânsôde þurh þæs hûselganges*, purified by the sacrament (Hom., ii, 266).

ût **þurh**>Semi-Sax. *þurh ût*>Eng. *throughout* is common.

354. **ufan,** adv. See *bufan, onufan.*

355. **under** (§ 255) +dat., acc. Goth. *undar*, +acc; *undarô*, +dat. O. Sax. *undar, -er;* O. H. Ger. *untar;* O. Norse *undr.*

Place—where its object would fall, or overshadow: *þû pêre under þam fictreôpe*, thou wast under the fig-tree (John, i, 48); *under beorge*, at the foot of the mountain (B., 2559);—or cover, or enclose: *under hearmlocon*, under lock=in prison (El., 695; C., 6, 19);—dress: *under helme*, helmeted (B., 342, 2539); *under gyldnum beâge*, wearing a golden diadem (B., 1163).

Time: *under þâm*, Lat. *inter hæc*, in the midst of these things (Chr., 876); so in O. Sax.

Personal—rank, rule: *þegnâs under mê*, servants under me (Matt., viii, 9); *under Northmannum*, under the rule of the Northmen (Chr., 942); *under onpealde*, under authority (901).

II. Accusative.

Place—after motion: *under hrôf geför*, went under a roof (C., 1360);—di-

rection: *under bæc*, backwards (C., 2562);—extent like a dative: *under rôderâ rûm*, under the expanse of the heavens (C., 1166).

Personal: *under helle cin*, among the race of hell (Ex., 99, 5), so O. Saxon; *under hand speordes*, (give) to the sword (=under the hand of) (Psa., lxii, 8).

under-neoðan (+dat). Not in Layamon, Orm.; rare O. English.

þæs underneæðen his fôte, (support which) was underneath his foot (Chr., 1070).

356. **uppan** (§ 257) +dat., acc. Goth. *iupa*, adv.; O. Saxon *uppan, -en*; O. Norse *upâ*; O. H. G. *ûfan*. Perhaps two words, derivative *uppan*<*up*, and compound *up*+*on*, have mixed.

Place—on a high object: *ge-offrǎ hine uppon ânre dûne*, offer him upon a hill (Gen., xxii, 2); *uppan assene*, ride upon an ass (Matt., xxi, 5);—over: *him uppan*, above him the cross was raised (El., 886).

Time: *uppon Eâstron*, after Easter (Chr., 1095).

Separation: *uppon him genumen hæfde*, had taken from them (Chr., 1106).

II. Accusative.

Place—after motion: *mê âhôf uppon heâhne stân*, raised me upon a high stone (Psa., xxvi, 6); but dat. and acc. mix (Exod., xxxiv, 2).

Time: *uppon Pentêcostên*, at Pentecost (Chr., 1095);—succession: *êgðer uppon ôðerne*, one upon another (Chr., 1094).

Opposition: *uppon þone eorl þan*, fought against the earl (Chr., 1095); *tealde*, charged against the king (Chr., 1094).

357. **ûtan** (§ 257) +genitive. Goth. *utana*+gen.

Place: *innon landes oðþe úton landes*, within or out of the land (*Æðs*, vi, 8, 2). See *b-útan, on-b-útan, piþ-útan, ymb-útan*.

358. **þana** (§ 259) +genitive. Goth. *vans*; O. N. *vanr*, adj.

ânes þana þrittigum, thirty less one (Bêd., 1, 1). Same idiom in Gothic, etc. See § 317, *b*.

359. **piþ** (§ 254, 1) +acc., dat., gen. Goth. *viþra* +acc.; O. Norse acc., dat. In senses analogous to Latin *contra*, opposite; but gradually absorbing *miþ*, § 343. The accusative and dative are not wholly separable in sense; they often interchange in the same passage.

I. Accusative.

Space—beside, along: *sum feôl piþ þone peg*, some (seed) fell along the way (Luc., viii, 5); *eôde piþ þâ sæ*, went along the sea-side (Matt., iv, 18);

pið peal, (set their shields) against the wall (B., 326); *pið þæs Hélendes fét*, (sat) by the Savior's feet (Luc., x, 39)

Other Relations—association: *hé pið pulf*, he with the wolf (stripped the dead) (B., 3027); *hagol pið fýr gemenged*, hail with fire mixed (Exod., ix, 24);—conversation: *pið Abraham sprecan*, to talk with Abraham (C., 2405);—comparison: *pið sunnan leóht*, (the brightness of the stars is not to be set) beside sunlight (Met., 6, 7);—hostility: *pan pið paldend*, fought against the lord (C., 303); *yrre pið mé*, angry against me (Gen., xli, 10);—defence: *unc pið hronfixás perian*, to guard us against whales (B., 540); *pið hearm*, against harm (C., 245, 6);—friendship, agreement: *beó pið Geátás glæd*, be with the Geats friendly (B., 1173); *acordedan pið hine*, they agreed with him (Chr., 1120).

II. Dative.

Place—position opposite: *sépeal uplang gestód pið Israhélum*, the sea-wall stood upright next to the Israelites (C., 197, 8);—from far to near (§ 299): *teáh hine pið hyre peard*, drew him toward her (Jud., 99); so after *go near* (Sat., 249); *grasp after* (B., 439); *strike against* (B., 1566);—from union to near: *gesundróde leóht pið þeóstrum*, separated light from darkness (C., 127).

Other Relations—association: *teofanáde éghpylc pið ódrum*, associated each with the others (Sch., 44); *mengan lige pið sóde*, mingle falsehood with truth (El., 307);—conversation: *pið Abrahame spræc*, talked with Abraham (C., 2303);—exchange: *hé sealde élcon énne penig pið hys dæges peorce*, he paid to each a penny for his day's work (Matt., xx, 2);—opposition: *pið Gode punnon*, fight against God (B., 113); *pið pinde rópeð*, rows against the wind (Ex., 345, 12); *pið rihte*, against right (B., 144);—defence: *helpan pið líge*, help against fire (B., 2341); *pið cpealme gebearh cnihtum*, shield the youths from death (C., 246, 7);—separation: *mód pið dreámum gedælde*, mind from enjoyments sundered (Ex., 146, 18).

III. Genitive.

Place—towards an object exciting desire or dread (see § 315): *beseah underbæc pið þæs pífes*, (Orpheus) looked back after the woman (Eurydice) (Boet., 35, 6); *lét fleógan hafoc pið þæs holtes*, let the hawk fly to the wood (By., 8); *pið þæs fæstengeates folc onette*, toward the city gate folks hastened (Jud., 162); *hnáh áleát pið þæs engles*, louted low before the angel (Num., xxii, 31).

Abstract—defence: *hleó pið hungres*, protection against hunger (El., 616); *pið yfelá gefreó ús*, deliver us from evils (Hy., 6, 31).

pið-er (§ 255)+acc.: *pider mé péron*, they were against me (Psa., lv, 5). See *tó-pidere*.

pið-æftan (§ 257)+acc.: *pið-æftan his fét*, behind at his feet (Luc., vii, 38; Mrc., v, 27). Better *pið æftan*.

pið-eâstan, *-nordan*, *-súdan*, +acc., dat.: next eastward of, etc. (Oros., 1, 1).

piđ-foran (§ 257)+acc.: *piđforan þâ sunnan*, before the sun (Boet., 39, 13).

piđ-geondan (§ 257)+acc.: *piđgeondan Iórdānen*, beyond Jordan (Matt., iii, 5).

piđ-innan (§ 257)+acc.: *piđinnan pintan-ceastra*, within Winchester (Chr., 963).

piđ-ûtan (§ 257)+acc., dat. **Place**: *piđûtan þâ picstôpe*, without the camp (Lev., xxiv, 14). Dat. (Oros., 2, 4, 6);—**manner**: *ælcon pæpnon*, without any weapons (Chr., 1087).

piđ peard (separate): *piđ heofonâs peard*, towards heaven (Hom., i, 46); *piđ hire peard*, towards her (Jud., 99).

360. **ymb(e)**, *emb(e)* (§ 254, 2) +acc. (rare dat.). O. Sax. acc.; O. Norse acc., dat.

Place: *gyrdel ymbe lendenu*, girdle around his loins (Matt., iii, 4); *ymb hine sæt*, (a multitude) sat around him (Mc., iii, 32).

Time: (1) *ymb ântid*, about the first hour (B., 219); (2) *ymb þucan*, after a week (C., 2769); (3) *ymb âne niht*, within one night (Chr., 878); (4) *ymb preô niht*, three nights before (Sat., 426).

Theme: *forđ sprecan ymb Grendel*, to speak about Grendel (B., 2070); *ymb þâ fyrde þencean*, to think about the expedition (C., 408). So after *to wonder* (El., 959); *care* (B., 1536); *strive* (Gn. C., 55); and the like; *hig dydon ymbe hyne*, they acted about him=they did to him (Matt., xvii, 12).

Dative (generally after its case): *him ymbe gestôdon*, around him stood (B., 2597); *spræc ymb his mæge*, spoke of his kinsman (Hell., 25).

ymb-ûtan (§ 257)+acc.;—place: *licgađ mê ymbûtan*, lieth round about me (C., 382); *ymbûtan eôp*, (why seek) without you (what is within) (Boet., 11, 2)

ADJECTIVE.

361. An **Adjective** agrees with its **Substantive** in *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

(*a*.) This rule applies to the articles, adjective pronouns, and participles.

(*b*.) An **infinitive** or **clause** may take an adjective in the neuter singular: *leôfre is ûs gefôn fisc*, to catch fish is pleasanter to us (Ælf.); *gôd is þæt ic on God hyht sette*, it is good that I hope in God (Psa., lxxii, 23).

(*c*.) **Indefinite.** An adjective is often used indefinitely in the masculine for a person, or neuter for a thing: *se blinda, gif hê blindne lâđ*, the blind, if he lead the blind (Matt., xv, 14); *mê þyrse gelamp*, a worse thing happened to me (Sat., 175).

(*d*.) **Noun understood**: *Englisc ne cûđe*, did not know English (speech) (Bêd., 3, 3); *þîn spŷđre*, thy right (hand) (Matt., vi, 3).

(*e.*) **Collectives** singular may take a plural by synesis: *seó heord purdon âdruncene*, the herd were drowned (Mc., 5, 13).

(*f.*) **Copulative singulars** may take a plural, or have a repeated singular understood: *pæron gehâlgôde Eadhæd, and Bosa and Eâta*, Edhed, and Bosa, and Eata were consecrated (Bêd., 4, 12); *eâdig is se innoð, and þâ breôst*, blessed is the womb, and the breast (Lc., 11, 27).

(*g.*) **Partitives.** Neuter partitives may be used for agreeing adjectives (§ 312, *a*): *nân þing grênes*, nothing green (Exod., 10, 15).

Strong or Weak, §§ 103+.

362. The weak forms are used after the definite article, demonstratives, and possessives; and often in attributive vocatives, instrumentals, and genitives. The comparative forms are all weak:

1. **Article**: *se ofermôda cyning*, the proud king (C., 338). Exceptions are rare: *siô hâlig rôd*, the holy rood (El., 720); *se ôðer*, the other (B., 2061). For present participles, see § 119, *b*.

The article is sometimes omitted before the weak form of a current epithet, especially in epic forms: *hrefn blaca*, black raven (B., 1801); *mihtigan dryhtne*, mighty lord (B., 1398).

Demonstrative: *of þissum lænan life*, in this long life (C., 1211). Exceptions occur: *on þissum lænum life* (Kr., 109).

2. **Possessive**: *mînne stronglican stôl*, my strong throne (C., 366). The article is often inserted: *mîn se heofenlica fæder*, my heavenly father (Matt., xviii, 35). Strong forms are frequent: *mînne spêtne hlâf*, my sweet bread (Psa., ci, 4). *His*, and other possessives of the the third person, are regularly followed by a strong form or inserted article: *mid his âgenum reâfe*, with his own robe (Matt. xxvii., 31); *his se deôra sunu*, his dear son (Sat., 243); *sîne driôrigne* (B., 2789).
3. **Vocative**: *blindan latteôpâs*, blind guides (Matt., xxiii, 16); *gê blindan*, ye blind; *gê dysigan*, ye foolish (Matt., xxiii, 17). For other examples, and inserted article, see § 289.
4. **Instrumental**: *leôhtan speordê*, with a bright sword (B., 2492).
5. **Genitive**: *lânan lifes*, (end) of a long life (B., 2845); so C., 1, 13; 231, 13; Ex., 4, 25; 11, 4.
6. **Comparatives**: *lâðran landscipe*, (I never saw a) loathlier landscape (C., 376); *pæs betera þonne ic*, he was better than I (B., 469).

363. In other cases strong forms are used.

1. **No definitive**: *þû eart heard man*, thou are a hard man (Matt. xxv, 24);—vocative: *þû riht cyning*, thou true king (Ex., 2, 13);—instrumental: *reâdê lêgê*, with red flame (C., 44);—genitive: *mihtiges Godes môd*, mighty God's wrath (C., 403);—predicate: *Eâdige synd þâ*, blessed are they (Matt., v, 3);—superlative: *se pæs leôfôst*, he was dearest (B., 1296). For exceptions, see over, § 362.

2. **With the indefinite article**: *ofslôgan ænne Bryttiscne cyning*, slew a British king (Chr., 508); *ænne leófestne sunu*, (he had) a dearest son (Mrc., 12, 6).

364. These uses are established in Gothic, except that with the possessives, and perhaps the demonstratives, of some of which examples do not occur. The weak form has spread in High German. See § 107.

PRONOUNS.

365. A **Substantive Pronoun** agrees with its antecedent in *gender*, *number*, and *person*.

366.—1. Personal Pronouns, §§ 130+.

1. **Omitted subject**:—imperative (regular): *âris*, arise (thou) (Matt., ii. 20);—repeated in a concessive clause: *punige pær hê punige*, dwell (he) where he may dwell (Æd., 5, 6);—reflexives: *pende hine*, (he) turned him (C., 34, 33);—other cases (rare): *nât pû fare*, (I) know not whether thou come (C., 34, 2); *bist ful hâlgan hyhtes*, (thou) art full of holy joy (Ex., 4, 24).
2. **Repeated subject**: § 287, definitive.
3. **First person plural for singular** by authors and preachers: *nû pille pê reccan*, now will we (I) recount (Oros., 1, 1, 11);—so (Hom., 2, 446). Kings say *ic*, or *pê* for themselves and council: *ic Æðelstân cyning* (LL., 1); *pê* (LL. Ina. 1, 1), but Beowulf used the plural majestatis (B., 958, 1652); in Norman French *nous* (LL. William, 1, 41). *Ye* and *you* as pronomen reverentiæ appear first in Old English.
4. **Dual**:—interchange with plural: *gelyfe gyt*,—*þurniað þæt gê ne secgon*, believe ye * * take heed that ye tell not (Matt., ix, 28–30);—strengthened by *bu*, *bu tu*, *bâ*, *bâ tpâ* (§ 141): *pit bu druncon*, we two both drank (Bêd., 5, 3);—with single appositive: *unc*, *Adame*, to us, (me and) Adam (C., 387, see § 287, *g*).
5. **Hit** may represent a **definite** object of any gender or person: *etað þisne hlâf*, *hit is min lîchama*, eat this bread, it is my body (Hom., 2, 266); *hit* (*seô sunne*) *pære birnende stân*, it (the sun) is burning stone (A. R. Ett., 39); *ic hit eom*, I am it = he (Matt., xiv, 27); *ic sylf hit eom* (Luc., xxiv, 39); *þû hit eart* (Matt., xiv, 28);—or **a clause**: *hit is âpriten*, *ne costnă þû*, it is written, Do not thou tempt (Matt. iv, 7);—**an indefinite subject**—an operation of nature or chance: *hit snîþð*, it snows (Ælf. Gr., 24); *hit gelimpeð*, it happens (B., 1753);—a date: *hit pæs pinter*, it was winter (John x, 22); *hit æfenlæcþ*, it is evening (Luc., xxiv, 29);—*appetites, notions, and the like:* (rare) *hit lîcôde Hērôde*, it pleased Herod (Matt., xiv, 6).
6. **Indefinite persons** are denoted by *hi: þonne hig pyriað eôþ*, when men shall revile you (Matt., v, 11).

7. **Cases mix,** dative *mê* with accusative *mec*, *þê* with *þec*, *ûs* with *ûsic*, *eôp* with *eôpic*. The dative finally displaced the accusative; so also have *him* and *them* in English. Nominatives also give place to the oblique cases: *hê is strongra þon mec*, he is stronger than me = I (Matt., iii, 11, Northum.); *himself*, etc., see § 366, 10.

8. **Personal pronouns are often reflexives**: *ic mê reste*, I rest myself (Ex., 494, 8); *restaþ eôp*, rest yourselves (Ælfd., 3); *gegadorôde micel folc hit*, a great crowd gathered itself (Chr., 921). See 10.

9. **Personals reciprocals**: *hig betpeox him cpædon*, they said among themselves (Mrc., 1, 27).

10. **Strengthened** by *âgen*, *ân*, *self* (for declensions, see §§ 131+): *þîn âgen bearn*, thy own child (C., 144, 27); *hire âgen bearn*, her own child (158, 6); *þinum âgnum fôtum* (173, 2); *ic âna ætbærst*, I alone escaped (Job, 165); *ic selfa*, I myself (C., 35, 11); *þû selfa*, thyself (36, 12); *þû sylfa*, feminine (Ex. 262, 32); *gê sylfe* (John, iii, 28); *hê sylf* (C., 35, 18). Accusative for nominative: *þê sylf cyme*, thyself come (Ex., 8, 8); *Pilâtus hym sylf âprât*, Pilate himself wrote all this (Nic., 34);—reflexive: *lufâ þinne nêhstan spâ þê sylfne*, love thy neighbor as thyself (Matt., xix, 19);—possessive: *þîn sylfes bearn*, thy own child (C. 176, 34); *hire selfre sunâ*, her own sons (B., 1115);—pronoun omitted: *seolfes blædum*, its own shoots (C., 248, 17).

11. **Personals** with *þe* as **relatives,** see relatives.

POSSESSIVES, § 132.

367.—1. The **possessives** couple with a **demonstrative** without weak flexion: *þes min sunu pæs deâd*, this my son was dead (Luc. xv, 24); *min se gecorena sunu*, my chosen son (Matt., iii, 17).

2. **Sin** and **his**: *his hearran*, *drihten sinne*, his lord (C., 19, 20). See § 132, *b*.

3. **For genitive ending**: *Enac his cynrîn*, Anak's children (Num., xiii, 29); *Gode his naman cigdan*, call on God his name (Psa. xcviii, 6), doubtful; common in Layamon and Old English, where also *her: Pallas her glass=Pallas's glass* (Bacon).

4. **Omitted**: *mid handum*, (I can work) with my hands (C., 18, 27).

5. **Without its substantive**: *ealle mine synd þîne*, all mine are thine (John, xvii, 10); *heorâ is heofenan rîce*, theirs is heaven's kingdom (Matt., v, 10). In Layamon, *heoren*>Old Engl. *herun*>Engl. *hers*; *ourun*>*ours*, etc.

DEMONSTRATIVES, § 133.

1. Se, seô, þæt, **as an article.**

368. The definite article marks its object,

(*a*.) **As before mentioned or well known**: *porhte fen, and smyrede mid þam fenne*, he made clay, and anointed with the clay (John, ix, 6); *se*

1

3
ives,
occu

365.
in *gen*

1. **Om**
20);
(he)
turne
wheth
of hol
2. **Repe**
3. **First**
pê recc
Kings
(LL., 1)
(B., 958,
and *you* a
4. **Dual**:—i
secgon, bel
strengthene
both drank
(me and) A
5. **Hit** may re
þisne hlâf, *h*
266); *hit* (*se*
(A. R. Ett., 39
eom (Luc., xxi
âpriten, *ne cost*
an indefinite s
snows (Ælf. Gr.,
pæs pinter, it was
xxiv, 29);—*appet*
it pleased Herod (
6. **Indefinite perso**
men shall revile you

7. **Cases mix,** dative *mê* with accusative *mec*, *þê* with *þec*, *ûs* with *ûsic*, *eôþ* with *eôþic*. The dative finally displaced the accusative; so also have *him* and *them* in English. Nominatives also give place to the oblique cases: *hê is strongra þon mec*, he is stronger than me = I (Matt., iii, 11, Northum.); *himself*, etc., see § 366, 10.

8. **Personal pronouns are often reflexives**: *ic mê reste*, I rest myself (Ex., 494, 8); *restaþ eôþ*, rest yourselves (Ælfd., 3); *gegadorôde micel folc hit*, a great crowd gathered itself (Chr., 921). See 10.

9. **Personals reciprocals**: *hig betpeox him cpædon*, they said among themselves (Mrc., 1, 27).

10. **Strengthened** by *âgen*, *ân*, *self* (for declensions, see §§ 131+): *þîn âgen bearn*, thy own child (C., 144, 27); *hire âgen bearn*, her own child (158, 6); *þinum âgnum fôtum* (173, 2); *ic âna ætbærst*, I alone escaped (Job, 165); *ic selfa*, I myself (C., 35, 11); *þû selfa*, thyself (36, 12); *þû sylfa*, feminine (Ex. 262, 32); *gê sylfe* (John, iii, 28); *hê sylf* (C., 35, 18). Accusative for nominative: *þê sylf cyme*, thyself come (Ex., 8, 8); *Pilâtus hym sylf âprât*, Pilate himself wrote all this (Nic., 34);—reflexive: *lufâ þinne nêhstan spâ þê sylfne*, love thy neighbor as thyself (Matt., xix, 19);—possessive: *þîn sylfes bearn*, thy own child (C. 176, 34); *hire selfre sunâ*, her own sons (B., 1115);—pronoun omitted: *seolfes blædum*, its own shoots (C., 248, 17).

11. **Personals** with *þe* as **relatives,** see relatives.

Possessives, § 132.

367.—1. The **possessives** couple with a **demonstrative** without weak flexion: *þes mîn sunu pæs deâd*, this my son was dead (Luc. xv, 24); *mîn se gecorena sunu*, my chosen son (Matt., iii, 17).

2. **Sin** and **his**: *his hearran, drihten sinne*, his lord (C., 19, 20). See § 132, *b*.

3. **For genitive ending**: *Enac his cynrŷn*, Anak's children (Num., xiii, 29); *Gode his naman cigdan*, call on God his name (Psa. xcviii, 6), doubtful; common in Layamon and Old English, where also *her: Pallas her glass=Pallas's glass* (Bacon).

4. **Omitted**: *mid handum*, (I can work) with my hands (C., 18, 27).

5. **Without its substantive**: *ealle mîne synd þîne*, all mine are thine (John, xvii, 10); *heorâ is heofenan rice*, theirs is heaven's kingdom (Matt., v, 10). In Layamon, *heoren*>Old Engl. *herun*>Engl. *hers; ourun*>*ours*, etc.

Demonstratives, § 133.

1. Se, seô, þæt, **as an article.**

368. The definite article marks its object,

(*a*.) **As before mentioned or well known**: *porhte fen, and smyrede mid þam fenne*, he made clay, and anointed with the clay (John, ix, 6); *se*

Hælend, the Savior (Luc., x, 38); *þære eorðan*, the earth (John, viii, 6);—proper names: *Hlôdþiges sunu. Se Hlôdþig þæs Carles brôðor* (Chr., 885); *þæne Hērôdem*, the (famous) Herod (Matt., ii, 22).

(*b*.) **As further described**, by a clause: *þam bûre þâr heô inne læg*, the bower wherein she lay (Ap., 1); *se Beôpulf, se þe þûd Brecan punne*, the Beowulf, who fought with Breca (B., 506);—by an appositive: *þæs muntes Syon*, the mount Sion (Psa., xlvii, 2);—by an adjective: *þæt betste hors*, the best horse (Bêd., 3, 14); *se hâlga Gûðlâc*, the holy Guthlac (St. G., 4); *seô Magdalenisce Maria*, the Mary called Magdalene (Matt., xxvii, 56);—by a possessive: *þam hlâforde þæs hûses*, the lord of the house (Bêd., 3, 10);—by relation to other objects mentioned (often possessive): *gefyldon þâ ôðt þone brerd*, they filled it to the (=its) brim (John, ii, 7); *þam geate*, (into the sheepfold) at the (=its) gate (John, x, 1).

(*c*.) **As a definite whole**: *þâ Iûdêâs*, the Jews (John, vii, 1); *þâ clænheortan*, blessed are the pure in heart (Matt., v, 8);—a personified abstract: *se þisdom*, Wisdom (Boet., 3, 3).

369. The article is often omitted where it might be used. It is used less in Anglo-Saxon than in Gothic or Old High German, and very rarely in the oldest poetry, e. g., twice in the Traveler's Song, 19 times in the first 537 lines of Beowulf, 12 times in 268 lines of Cædmon (Grimm D. G., 4, 429). The steadiest uses are those in 368, *b*. Proper names of places and times, which are compounded with or described by appellatives, often take the article without further reason. Folk names under *c* vary.

(*a*.) Marked cases of the omission of articles are (1) after a genitive, (2) with an object compared, (3) with a negative, (4) superlatives, (5) copulative or disjunctive singulars meaning many, (6) a repeated word in correlation, (7) predicate nominative, (8) factitive object, (9), after prepositions with names of places, parts of a house, parts of the body, (10), before an attributive adjective, genitive, or appositive.

(1) *Mid Godes gife*, by God's gift (In. LL. 1); *þæs folces priterâs*, the scribes of the people (Matt., ii, 4, so oftenest); *þære Godes lufan*, the love of God (St. G., 2); § 367, 1; (2) *strengre þonne rôse*, more fragrant than (the) rose (Rid., 41, 24); (3) *þeôf ne cymð*, thief comes not (John x, 10); (4) *idesâ scênôst*, fairest of women (C., 626); (5) *beraþ bord and ord*, (chosen men) bear shield and spear (El., 1187); (6) *þæs âdæled pæter of pætrum*, then was parted (the) water from (the) waters (C., 152); (7) *hê þæs man-slaga*, he was (a) murderer (John, viii, 44); (8) *hine heôld for fulne cyning*, took him for full king (Chr., 1013); *tô hlâforde* (921); (9) *on sæ*, on (the) sea (Ap., 19); *on sande* (C., 242); *æt hûse*, at home (Psa., cxi, 3); *ût of healle*, out of (the) hall (B., 663); *beforan durâ*, before (the) door (Mc., 11, 4); *on bed gân*, go to bed (C., 2234); *cpædan on heortan*, said in heart (Psa., lxxiii, 8); *æt fôtum* (B., 500); *on cneôpum* (C., 227, 2), etc., abundantly; (10) *hæfdon langne speoran*, they had (a) long neck (St. G., 5); *clypiendes stefn*, the voice of one crying (Matt., iii, 3); *Ælfrêd cyning*, Alfred king (Chr., 894).

370. **The article with an adjective** is frequent, to point out persons: *se dumba spræc*, the dumb spake (Matt., ix, 33);—or things (rare): *þâ tôpeardan*, the future things (St. G., 13);—in apposition with a proper name: *Sidroc se geonga*, Sidroc the younger (Chr., 871);—so also: *helle*

þâre hâtan, hell the hot (C., 362). Just so participles: *þâ timbriendan*, those building (Matt., xxi, 42); *for þâm gecorenum*, for the chosen (xxiv, 22); *þâ geladôdan*, those invited (xxii, 3).

371. **With a numeral**: *þâ tpelfe*, the twelve (Mc., 4, 10); *þæt ân* (Matt., v, 47); *se eahtoða dæg*, the eighth day (St. G., 3).

372. **With pronouns**: *þâ ôðre*, the others (Matt., xxvii, 49); *se þe*, the which (Bêd., 2, 5); *eal þæt land*, all the land (Matt., ix, 26); *butu þâ scypu*, both the ships (Luc., v, 7); so: *healfne þone speoran*, half the neck (Jud., 105);—possessives, see § 367.

373. The article is repeated with copulative words oftener than in English: *þæt gold and þæt seolfor*, the gold and the silver (Apol., 14);—sometimes a plural is used with two singulars: *hyre þâ leôfstan hlâford and sunu*, her (the) dearest lord and son (Chr., 1093).

Se, seô, þæt; þes, þeôs, þis, § 133.

374. **Se** is less emphatic than **þes**. Both denote the near object, or an antecedent to a relative.

1. *Se* is often nearly the third pronoun: *spungon hīg þone, and forlêton hine*, they beat that one (him), and sent him away (Mc., xii, 3). Note *seô* >Eng. *she*, *þâ*>Eng. *they*; Lat. *hic*.

2. *þæt* and *þis* are often used without agreement in gender or number: *þæt pæs gôd cyning*, that was a good king (B., 11); *þæt pêron þâ êrestan scipu*, that (those) were the first ships (Chr., 787); *þis is seô eorðe*, this is the earth (C., 1787); *þis sint þâ bebodu*, this (these) are the statutes (Lev., xxvi, 46). Compare *hit*, § 366, 5. German *es sind*.

3. **Antecedent**: *se þe brŷde hæfð, se is brŷdguma*, he is bridegroom, (the which), who has the bride (John, iii, 29); *þæt þe âcenned is of flæsce, þæt is flæsc*, that is flesh, the which is born of the flesh (iii, 6); rare with *þes* (John, i, 15, North.).

4. *ôð þis*, till now (Bas. Hex., 6); but generally *these two years=nû tpâ geâr* (Gen., xlv, 6).

5. *This* and *that=the former, the latter*, are not expressed by *þis, þæt*; but *se êrra, se æftera* (Bêd., 4, 23). A discriminated remoter object is rare.

6. *þŷ mâ*, Lat. *eô magis*, more by that (so much the more) (C., 54, 33); *þŷ heardra*, the harder=harder by that (80, 8); § 302, *d*.

375. *ylc, þylc, spylc* (§ 133, 3). *Ylc* couples with the article or demonstrative; *þylc* and *spylc* may be used as adjectives or substantives; *þæt ylce leoht*, the same light (C., 301, 34); such (Luc., ix, 9); *þyllic*, such (Boet., 39, 3; Matt., xviii, 5); *spylc*, such (Mc., iv, 33; Boet., 38, 2).

376. *Self* (§ 131), with personal pronouns (§ 366, 10), with substantives: *þâre sylfan stôpe*, the same place (John, xi, 6); *se cyning sylfa*, the king himself (Ex., 2, 1); *se þeôden self*, the Lord himself (C., 9, 10); *on þæt dægrêd sylf*, at the dawn exactly (Jud., 204).

Interrogatives.

377. Hpâ, hpæt (§ 135).

Hpâ asks mostly for persons: *hpâ prât bôcstafâs êrest*, who wrote letters first? (A. R., 40).

Hpæt asks (1) for neuters, (2) for an answer without regard to gender or number, (3) for a special character or part of an object:

(1) *Hpæt nædderecynnâ sî on eorðan*, what of snake kind are on the earth? (A. R., 41); (2) *hpæt syndon gê*, what (who) are you? (B., 237); *hpæt is se cyning*, who is the king (of glory)? (Psa., xxiii, 10): compare *þæt, þis* (§ 374, 2); (3) *hpæt gôdes dô ic*, what (of) good thing must I do? (Matt., xix, 16); *hpæt nipes*, what of new? (Ex., 441, 22); *hpæt peorces*, what kind of work? (Ælf.)>Old English adjective use: *whatt weorrc* (Orm., 1833).

(*a.*) *Hpæt is se þe mê æthrân*, what is he who touched me (=emphatic *who*), Lat. *quis est qui* (Luc., viii, 45).

(*b.*) Interjection, opening poems, etc., *Hpæt! þê Gâr-Denâ* (B.).

(*c.*) *Hpænne secgað men þæt sŷ mannes sunu*, whom say men that the Son of Man may be? *Hpænne* (Thorpe), North. *huelcne* is used for *hpæt* of other A. Sax. versions in imitation of the Latin *Quem dicunt homines esse Filium hominis* (Matt., xvi, 13), making anacoluthon, § 293.

378. Hpæðer (which of two), and *hpilc* (what kind of, which among like), may agree as adjectives, or govern a genitive: *hpæðer uncer tpegâ*, which of us two (B., 2530; Matt., xxi, 31; A. R., 39); *hpylc man* (A. R., 40); *hpilc mannâ* (Ælfc.).

For interrogatives as indefinites and relatives, see §§ 382, 390.

Relatives, § 134.

379. Relative clauses in the Teutonic tongues are oftenest constructed like leading clauses with a demonstrative, personal, or interrogative pronoun. They are made relative, i. e., subordinate adjective, by tone alone, or by a relative particle *þe* added. The Sanskrit and Greek have peculiar forms for the relative; the Latin *qui* is from the interrogative>*quis*.

380.—A. **Demonstrative Forms.**

1. *Se, seô, þæt* alone: *þâ fêng Nero tô rice, se forlêt Britene*, then came Nero to the kingdom, who (that one) lost Britain (Chr., 47); *se þurhpunað, se byð hâl*, who endureth, he shall be saved (Matt., x, 22);—antecedent omitted: *þæt gê gehyrað, bodiað*, that ye hear, preach (it) (Matt., x, 27).

2. *þæt þæt*, whatever: *þæt þæt latôr bið, þæt hæfð angin*, whatever later is, that has beginning (Hom., i, 284).

3. *Se, seô, þæt* with indeclinable sign *þe: Augustinum, þone þe hi gecoren hæfdon*, Augustine, whom (the one that) they had chosen (Bêd., 1, 23); *þâ ungeleáfsuman, þârâ þe hi þâ gereorde ne cúðan*, the unbelievers, of whom

they the speech did not know (Bêd., 1, 23); *þæt þe*>*þætte* may refer to a sentence (Bêd., 2, 7).

4. *þe* alone: *se stân, þe*, the stone, that (the builders rejected) (Mc., xii, 10); *þâ mâdmâs, þe*, the treasures, that (thou gavest me) (B., 1482);—an antecedent omitted: *nû synd forðfarene þe sôhton*, now are gone (those) who sought (Matt., ii, 20).

From *þe* a preposition is usually separated: *þæt bed, þe se lama on læg*, the bed that the lame one on lay (Mc., ii, 4).

5. *Spylc—spylc: hê sêce spylcne hlâford, spylcne hê pille*, he may seek such a lord, as he may choose (Æðs., v, 1, 1); *spylce burh, spylce seó pæs*, such a city, as it was (Oros., ii, 4, 5).

6. *Spâ: spylcrâ yrmðâ, spâ þû unc âr scrife*, of such miseries, as thou to us before assigned (Ex., 373, 2). Compare German *so*, Engl. *as*, and § 382, 2.

381.—B. **Personal Pronouns.**

1. **Alone.** In O. H. German, clauses with the personal pronouns are made relative without further sign: *Fater unsêr dû pist in himilum*, our Father, who (thou) art in heaven (Schade, 8; Grimm, iii, 17).

2. **Personals with indeclinable** *þe* or *se: hpæt ic hâtte, þe ic lond reâfige*, what am I called, who (i. e. I) the land ravage? (Rid., 13, 14); *se mec*, whom (i. e. me) (Ex., 144, 9); *þe pê*, (we) who (Cri., 25); *Fæder ûre, þû þe eart on heofenum*, our Father, who (thou) art in heaven (Matt., vi, 9); *þe þû* (Hy., 8, 13); *þe hê* (Psa., lxvii, 4); *þe his*, whose (Psa., xxxix, 4); *þe him*, to whom (Psa., cxlv, 4)=*se him* (C., 201, 31);—*þe* separated: *hpæt se god pêre, þe þis his beâcen pæs*, of what sort the god was, that this was his sign=whose sign this was (El., 162). The German retains this idiom, *du, der du bist*, etc. The Gothic uses *ikei* (*ik*+*ei*), *þuei, izei*.

3. **Personals with** *se þe: se bið leofâst, se þe him God syleð*, he is dearest, (he) to whom God giveth (Vid., 132). Compare § 384, *a*.

382.—C. **Interrogatives.**

1. *Hpæt*;—indirect interrogative>relative: *ne rêdde gê þæt hpæt Dauid dyde*, have ye not read (that) what David did (Luc., vi, 3); *næfdon hpæt hig êton*, they had not what they might eat (Mc., viii, 1).

Hpâ (who) appears as a proper relative first in its dative *wam, wan* in Layamon (2, 632; 3, 50), in its genitive *whas* and dative *wham* in Ormulum (3425, 10370). The nominative *who* is found sometimes with a pronominal antecedent in Wycliffe, A.D. 1382–3 (Isa., l, 10), and becomes common as a full relative in Berners' Froissart, A.D. 1523.

2. *Spâ hpâ spâ, spâ hpæt spâ, spâ hpylc* (*spâ*), whosoever, whatsoever, whichsoever: *lête ic hine, spâ hpâ spâ cymeð*, I will let him, whosoever cometh (sit by me) (C., 28, 20); *spâ hpæt spâ* (Matt., xvi, 19); *spâ hpylc spâ* (Matt., x, 42; Bêd., 2, 2); *spa hpylc* (Psa., cxxxvii, 4).

Hpylc (which) appears by itself as a relative in Layamon.

383. **Attraction.** (*a*.) The relative is sometimes attracted to the case

of its antecedent: *hâligu treôp, seô þû healdest*, holy troth, which thou holdest (C., 2119). But see § 384, *a*.

(*b*.) The relative is sometimes attracted to the gender of a noun in its own clause: *fulpiht-tid, þæne* (*hi*) *Tpelfta-dæg hâtaƀ*, baptism-time, which they Twelfth-day call (Men., 13).

(*c*.) For relative adverbs, see §§ 396–398.

384. **Incorporation.** The same word may represent both antecedent and relative. It may have the case (*a*.) of the antecedent: *gebyrgde þæs gepeôx*, tasted of what grew (C., 483); such cases are frequent, *þæs=þæs þe*. Those in § 383, *a*, may be similar, *seô=seô þe, seô* appositive with *treôp*. Compare § 381, 3. (*b*.) Of the relative: *hi næfdon hpæt hīg ƀton*, they had not what they might eat (Mc., 8, 1). Here the clause *hpæt hīg ƀton* is the object of *næfdon*. (*c*.) The case of *þe* is not discriminated. For examples, see § 380, 4.

385. **Omission.** Phrases of naming often lack their subject: *ân munac, Brihtnôƀ þæs gehâten*, a monk (who) was called Brihtnoth (Chr., 963); *sealde âne þeôpene, Bala hâtte*, gave her a maid, (who) was called Bilhah =Old Eng. Bilhah hight (Gen. xxix, 29). M. H. German used the same idiom. Similar phrases sometimes have a relative expressed, sometimes a personal pronoun: *se þæs hâten Penpald*, who was called Penwald (St. G., 1); *Agaƀo hê þæs gehâten* (Chr., 675). Compare *geför Ælfrêd, þæs gerêfa*, Alfred died (who) was sheriff (Chr., 906). But the Anglo-Saxon does not omit the relative freely, like the English.

Indefinites, § 136.

386. **Ân**:—indefinite article: *ân man hæfde tpegen sunâ*, a man had two sons (Matt., xxi, 28); *âstâh on hine spâ ân culfre*, (the Spirit) descended on him, like a dove (Luc., iii, 22); seldom, if ever, in poetry; but a pretty indefinite *ân* after its noun occurs; *hê eorƀsele ânne pisse*, he knew a cavern (B., 2410);—with numeral or measure: *ân fiftig sealmâs*, a fifty psalms (Æƀs., 5, 3); *âne healfe tîde*, a half time (W. P. T., 12); *ân geâr ân man*, they ruled a year a man=each man one year (Oros., 2, 2, 3); *âne feâpa pordâ*, a few words (Nic., 11), *âne* is plural and means *only*.

(*a*.) The English *an*>*a* has several shades of meaning. *A nurse said, "a spoonful an hour is a dose for a child till a doctor comes"=A certain* nurse said, "*one* spoonful *each* hour is *what is called* dose for *any* child till *some* doctor comes." The first, second, and third of these uses are sometimes found in Anglo-Saxon, as in Latin (*unus*). Our second example is nearly the fourth use, which is the most characteristic use of the proper article, i. e., simple sign of a singular use of a generic term: but compare *it is a dove* with *it is like a dove*. *Nân* means *not any: is nân caru*, is there not any care? (Mc., 10, 40). The Goth. *ains* translates Gr. εἷς; *sums*, τις. O. Norse *einns* is sometimes proclitic, so Germ. *einer*. See *sum*.

(*b*.) *Ân* (indefinite pronoun) is adjective or substantive. Peculiar uses: (1) *his ânes cræft*, his *own* power (C., 272);—(2) *þuhte þê ânum*, it seemed to thy *self* (Sat., 55);—(3) *ân æfter ânum* (Sal., 385)=*ânne and ânne* (Oros., 2, 3)=*ân æfter eallum* (B., 2268)=*ân æfter ôƀrum* (Sat., 26)=*ânes and*

ôdres (Met., 25, 52), one after another;—(4) *bûtan þâm ânum*, except the ones (Sat., 147); *for unc ânum tpâm*, for us two alone (Rid., 61, 15);—(5) *ân sunu*, only son (Rid., 81, 10);—(6) *þæt pæs ân cyning*, that was a (true) king (B., 1885);—(7) *ânrâ* with indefinite pronouns: *ânrâ gehpylc*, each one (<of ones) (Matt., xxvi, 22); so *æghpylc* (Gû., 4); *hpâ, gehpâ*, etc., compare *gehpylc þegnâ*, each of thanes=each thane (B., 1673);—(8) *ânes hpæt*, somewhat, in any degree (Boet., 18, 3);—(9) *on ân*, in one, together, once for all (Psa., cxxxii, 1; lxxxii, 9; lii, 4).

387. **Nân**, *ænig, nænig* have both substantive and adjective syntax.

388. **Sum**; (1) indefinite article=*ân: sum man hæfde tpegen sunâ*, a man had two sons (Luc., xv, 11), see § 386;—(2) pronoun: *ânum hê sealde fif pund, sumum tpâ*, to one he gave five pounds, to another two (Matt., xxv, 15);—(3) *eôde eahta sum*, he went one of eight (B., 3123);—(4) *sum feôl*, some (seed) fell by the way (Mc., 4, 4);—(5) *sume þâ bôcerâs*, some (of) the scribes (Matt., ix, 3); *sume gê*, some of you (John, vi, 64), see § 287, *c*;—(6) *sume tên geâr*, some ten years (Boet., 38, 1), see § 148.

389. **Man**, *piht, âpiht, nâpiht: gif mon þîf ofsleâ*, if one a woman slay (Ælf. B., 9); *lædе mon hider*, some one led hither (Bêd., 2, 2); *lâdes piht*, anything of pain (painful) (Ex., 144, 1); *ôpiht elles*, anything else, something (Bêd., 3, 22); *nôpiht yfeles*, nothing evil (Bêd., 2, 12); so *nân þing grênes*, nothing green (Exod., x, 15).

390. *Hpâ* and compounds: *hpâ=man*, any one (Matt., xxi, 3; Mrc., 12, 19); *spylces hpæt*, some what (B., 880), *summ whatt* appears in Orm, 958; *gehpâ*, each (Mc., 15, 24); *æghpâ*, each (Rid., 66, 2); *hpæt-hugu*, some what (Bêd., 1, 27).

391. *Gehpæder*, each of two, *âhpæder*, any, are substantive, *æghpæder*, either of two (Bêd., 2, 3; 1, 7), of many (B., 1636), subst. and adj.

392. Compounds of *-lîc* are used substantively and adjectively: *ælc*, each, every (Matt., vii, 17; xx, 2), *æuer ælc>everyche>every* appears in Layamon, 2814; *ælc* with *ôder*, are both inflected: *hi cpædon ælc tô ôdrum*, they said, each to the others (Mc., 4, 41); *ælc ôdres fêt*, each wash the other's feet (John, xiii, 14); *spilce þri*, some three (Luc., 1, 56).

NUMERALS, §§ 138–148.

393. **Cardinals**: oftenest substantive with gen.: *feôpertig dagâ*, forty (of) days (C., 1351); with *of: ân of þisum*, one of these (Matt., v, 19); —apposition: *ân fiftig sealmâs*, a fifty psalms (Æds., 5, 3);—with pronoun: *hî þrý*, they three (Ex., 190, 11);—alone: *þâ forman tpâ*, the first two (=pair), Adam and Eve (C., 194);—adjective: *mid L scipum*, with fifty ships (Chr., 1052); *týn þûsend*, ten thousand (Matt., xviii, 24). Compounds with *and: six and fiftig*, 56 (Bêd., 2, 5);—with *læs, pana, bûtan: tpâ læs XXX*, 28 (Chr., 641); *ânes pana þrittigum*, thirty less one (Bêd., 1, 1); *tpêntig bûtan ân*, 19 (Bêd., 5, 19); numerals with *sum*, see § 388, and compare French *quelque*, Gr. τις.

For ordinal dates: *sixtigum pintrâ*, 60 years (=60th year) **B.C.** (**Bêd.**, 1, 2);—multiplicative: *six spâ micel*, six times as much (**LL.**, p. **398**);—distributive: *tpâm*, by twos (**Lc.**, 10, 1); *ânne and ânne*, one by one (**Oros.**, 2, 3, 4);—how often: *sixtŷne sidum*, 16 times (**An.**, **490**);—division: *on tpâ*, in two (**Ap.** 11).

394. **Ordinals.** Adjective, with or without an article: *se eahtoda dæg*, the eighth day (St. G., 3); *þriddan dæge*, the third day (**Lc.**, **9, 22**);—with *of* (rare): *ôder of his leorning-cnihtum*, a second of his disciples (Matt., viii, 21), *án ôþerr* appears in Orm., 5778;—compounds: (1) *ordinal+ordinal: þŷ tpêntigdan and þŷ feórdan*, the 24th (day of September) (Bêd., 4, 5); (2) cardinal+ordinal: *án and tpêntigôdan*, 21st (Exod., xii, 18); (3) ordinal+cardinal: *sixta eâc feôpertigum*, 46th (Bêd., 1, 15).

Division: *seofedan dæl*, seventh part (Oros., 2, 4, 6); before *healf* (§ 147): *nigonteôde healf geâr*, 18½ years (Chr., 855); *feórde healf hund scipe*, 350 ships (Chr., 851).

395. **Indefinites** (1.) **eal**: *eal here*, the whole mob (C., 150, 12); *þerod eal*, the host all (C., 184, 1); *eal seô æ*, all the law (Matt., **xxii, 40**); uninflected (B., 2042, and often when parted from its noun);—with pronouns: *þê ealle*, we all (C., 268, 27); *ealles þæs*, all that (**186, 25**); *hig ealle*, they all (Matt., xiv, 20);—substantive: *eallum gumenâ cynnes*, all of mankind (B., 1057); *geornăst ealles*, eagerest of all (**Psa.**, 83, 12); *hpæt ealles*, what on the whole (**cxix, 3**); *ealrâ rîcôst*, richest of all (Vid. 15, § 312, *c*); *tpelfâ ealrâ*, twelve in all (B., 3171).

(2.) **Manig**;—adjective: *manige men*, many men (B., 337); *rinc manig*, many (a) man, Germ. *mancher mann*, Lat. *multus vir* (**An.**, **1118**); *mony enne king*, many a king, appears in Layamon (6591). Note the noun *mænigeo*, a crowd (Matt., viii, 18; iv, 25); and often (>Shakespeare's *the rank-scented many, a great many*;—substantive: *moniges pintrâ*, many (of) winters (C., 1230).

(3.) **Micel**, much; *mâ*, *mârâ*, more.

(4.) **Feâpa**, few; *feâ(þ)um ânum*, few only, a few (B., 1081); *feâ(þe)râ sumne*, one of few=with few companions (B., 3061).

(5.) **Lyt**: *lyt freôndâ*, few (of) friends (C., 2626); *cynnes lyt-hpon*, few of the race (Jud., 311). For *hpon*, see Grein.

ADVERBS.

395*. **Adverbs** modify *verbs*, *adjectives*, and other *adverbs*.

Adverbs could for the most part be parsed as cases of nouns, as they were, § 251. They make

Adverbial combinations: *hê peôp biterlice*, he wept bitterly (Matt., xxvi, 75); *spâ geongum*, so young (B., 1843); *spâ miceles gepâh*, he throve so greatly (C., 186, 24).

Predicative, mostly adverbs of place: *hpâr is se Iudeâ cyning*, where is the Jews' king? (Matt., ii, 2); *pê hêr beón*, we are here (Mc., 9, 5); *þâr ic eom*, there I am (Matt., xviii, 20);—expletives, so called, *þâr peard geporden mycel eorðbifung*, there was a great earthquake (Matt., xxviii, 2).

Attributive, rare: *mîn ıu magîster*, my of-yore master (Bêd., 5, 10).

396. Interrogative and demonstrative adverbs may be used like their pronouns, §§ 252, 260.

A. To govern a case: *hpâr eorðan Abel pârè*, where (=in what part) of the earth Abel was (C., 1003); *hpider* (Jul., 700):—governed: *setl þâr þû on sitest*, seat where on thou sittest (Hy., 7, 41), so other prep. often.

B. To introduce clauses.

397.—I. Leading Clauses.

Declarative: *þâr* may introduce a clause like an indefinite *hit* (§ 365, 5): *þâr peard geporden mycel eorðbifung*, there was a great earthquake, Germ. *es geschah ein gross erdbeben*, Gr. σεισμὸς ἐγένετο, Lat. *terræ motus factus est* (Matt., xxviii, 2); hence English so-called expletive *there*.

Interrogative.—Interrogation may relate to the **general** *affirmation* of a sentence, or to some **particular** point connected with it, the *subject, object, time, place, manner*.

(1.) **General** questions are expressed by inversion or tone: *hæfst þû hafoc*, hast thou a hawk? (Ælfc.);—by *hpæðer* with the subjunctive: *hpæðer gê nû pillen pâðan*, will ye now hunt? (Met., 19, 15).

(2.) **Particular** questions are expressed by interrogative pronouns or adverbs: *hpâr is heorâ God*, where is their God? (Psa., cxiii, 10); *hpider*, whither? (C., 2269); *hpanon*, whence? (B., 333). For pronouns, see § 377–8.

(*a.*) Negative questions add *ne: ne drincst þû pîn*, dost thou not drink wine? (Ælfc.).

(*b.*) The particles *ac, ah, hû, lâ*, are used to strengthen questions.

Ac for hpam, wherefore then? (Sal., 342); *ah ne pê fordrifon*, did we not cast out (devils)? Matt., vii, 22; North.); *hû ne synd gê sêlran*, are not ye better? (Matt., vi, 26); *hpæt is þis lâ mannâ*, who is this (*lâ*) man? (El., 903); so are used forms of *secgan* and *cpeðan*, say: *segst þû mæg se blinda þone blindan lâðan*, (sayst thou) can the blind lead the blind? (Luc., vi, 39); *cpeðe gê hæbbe gê sufol*, (say ye) have ye any meat? (John, xxi, 5); *cpeðe pê ys þes Dauides sunu*, (say we) is this David's son? (Matt., xii, 24).

(3.) **Disjunctive** questions may have inverted clauses, or the sign *hpæðer: ys hit riht þæt man þam Casere gafol sylle, þe nâ*, is it right to give tribute to Cæsar, or no? (Luc. xx, 21); *hpæðer* first: *hpæðer is mâre, þe þæt gold, þe templ*, which is greater, the gold or the temple?

(Matt., xxiii, 17);—before second clause: *þæs Iohannes fulluht of heofone, hþæder þe of mannum*, was John's baptism of heaven, or of men? (Luc., xx, 4).

398.—II. Subordinate Clauses.

1. **Indirect questions**: *frægn, hpêr Abel pêre*, asked where Abel was (C., 1003). See further, §§ 424, 425.

2. **Relative clauses**: *hûs, þanon icût eôde*, house whence (=from which) I went out (Matt., xii, 44); *þâ dagâs, þonne se brŷdguma byð âfyrred*, the days when the bridegroom shall be taken away (Lc., 5, 35); *on stœnihte, þêr hyt nœfde mycle eorðan*, on stony ground, where it had not much earth (Matt., xiii, 5).

(*a.*) The relative adverb is often made a conjunction by incorporation (§ 384): *ne mâge gê cuman þider ic fare*, ye may not come whither I go (John, viii, 21).

Particles of Affirmation and Negation, § 261.

399. **Answers.** The particles **geâ, gese, ne, nese, nâ,** in answer to general questions, have the syntax of declarative clauses. (Other tongues have particles of like syntax.)

(*a.*) They are quasi-clauses, § 278, *d: lufăst þû mê? geâ*, lovest thou me, Yea (=I love thee) (John, xxi, 16); *gise, lâ gese*, yes, O yes (Boet., 16, 4);—object of a verb: *ne, secge ic eôþ*, I say to you, no (Luc., xii, 51); *nâ* (xiii, 3); *nese* (i, 60); *cpyst þú, eart þû of þyses leorning-cnihtum? nic, ne eom ic*, art thou of his disciples? Not I, I am not (John, xviii, 17).

400. **Negative Adverbs.** Repeated negatives strengthen the negation. (So in old Teutonic and Greek, not in Latin.)

1. **General** negation is expressed by *ne*. It may be repeated before the verb, subject, object, adverb: *ne on môde ne murn*, do not mourn in mind (An., 99); *nân spilc ne cpom*, none such comes (Cri., 290); *ne nân ne dorste nân þing âcsian*, no one durst ask him anything (Matt., xxii, 46); *ne þêþ þû nâ*, weep not at all (Lc., 7, 13).

(*a.*) A positive word of emphasis may be added: *ic ne forhtige piht*, I shall not fear a whit (Psa., lxi, 2); often *nâpiht* (Matt., xxvii, 24); so French *point, pas*.

2. **Particular** negation is expressed by *un-, -leâs, nâ, nalæs, nôht: nalæs rîdende on horse, ac on his fôtum gangende*, not riding on horseback, but going on his feet (Bêd., 3, 28); *nalæs micelre tide*, no long time (4, 6); *heô tiliað tô cpêmanne Gode mid þordum, næs mid þeorcum*, they try to please God with words, not with works (Psa., xlviii, 12); *nôht feor*, not far (4, 3).

USES OF THE VERB-FORMS.

Personal Endings.

Agreement.

401. A **finite verb** agrees with its **subject** in number and person.

(*a.*) **Participles** in compound tenses agree;—passives: *þes þû gebletsôd*, he thou blest (An., 540); *þesaþ gê gebletsăde*, be ye blest (Psa., cxiii, 23); —perfect: *hêr syndon geferede*, here have come (B., 361). After *habban*, transitive participles agree with the object, intransitives have no ending: *hê hæfd mon geporhtne*, he has man made (C., 25, 18); *hîe gêgân hæfdon*, they had gone (Jud., 140). But the endings early fell away. See further examples, §§ 412–419.

402. **Simple Subject.—1. Its forms.** 1. A substantive. 2. An adjective used as a substantive. 3. A pronoun. 4. A numeral. 5. An infinitive. 6. Any word or phrase as such. 7. A clause, or clauses. So in all tongues. *Impersonals* generally have their subject *hit*. For examples, see § 366, 5. See *þær*, § 397. *Indefinite personals* (*man*, etc)., see §§ 389, 390.

2. **Collectives** singular may take a plural verb by synesis: *se here gebrohton*, the army brought (their ships) (Chr., 1016);—a singular and plural: *þæt folc sæt * *, and ârison*, the people sat, and they arose (Exod., xxxii, 6); *se here spôr þæt hie poldon*, the army swore that they would (Chr., 921); *þîn ofspring sceal âgan heorâ feôndâ gata*, thy offspring *shall* possess the gates of *their* foes (Gen., xxii, 17).

3. **Numerals plural** may take a singular verb, generally before them: *þâ wæs âgân V̄ pintrâ*, then was gone 5000 years (Chr., 616, 655). Compare *him gelicăde hire þeâwâs*, him pleased her manners (?) (Chr., 1067).

403. **Compound subject**, § 282.

Copulate singulars take a plural (1) after them regularly: *Maria and Martha wêron tpâ gespystru*, Mary and Martha were two sisters (Hom., 1, 130);—before them sometimes: *þâ cpædon Annanias, Azarias, Misahêl*, then said Hananiah, Azariah, Mishael (Hom., 2, 18);—oftener: *þâ peard hê gedrêfed, and eal Hierosolim-paru*, then was he troubled, and all Jerusalem folks (Matt. iii, 2).

(*a.*) Copulate words may be really a simple subject, 1, a repetition of the same notion, often a climax: *min sâpl and mîn mind is spyde gedrêfed*, my soul and my mind is greatly troubled (Psa., vi, 2; Milton, P. L., 1, 139); —2, complements of one notion: *flæsc and blôd ne æteâpde þê*, flesh and blood hath not showed to thee (Matt., xvi, 17, North.; so Lat., Greek, etc.); *tor and burh stôd*, tower and burg stood (C., 102, 17; Milton, P. L., 2, 495; 6, 814, etc.).

(*b.*) **Logical copulates** connected by a preposition may take a plural by

synesis: *se feónd mid his gefêrum feôllon*, the fiend with (=and) his mates fell (C., 306). So in Latin, Greek, and elsewhere.

404. **Agreement with a predicate** may take place

1. When the subject is *þis* or *þæt: þis synt þâ bebodu*, these are the statutes (Lev., xxvi, 46); *þæt pâron þâ êrestan scipu*, those were the first ships (Chr., 787).

2. When the subject is remote: *gyf þæt leóht þe on þê ys, synt þŷstru*, if the light that is in thee is darkness, Lat. *tenebræ sunt* (Matt., vi, 23), and in other cases when the predicate is the more important to the thought.

405. **Omission** of the **subject** occurs (1) with imperatives, (2) where it would be repeated, (3) with reflexives, (4) in other rare cases, mostly of the first and second persons (for examples, see § 366);—of the **verb**: (1) the verb **to be** in exclamatory clauses: *pâ eôp*, woe (be) to you (Matt., xxiii, 13, Cambridge); *pel gesund, Apollôni*, (may you be) very well, Apollonius (Ap., 7);—elsewhere (rare): *þêr leôht and lîf*, in heaven, where (is) light and life (C., 212, 26); (2) to **give** in certain phrases: *eâge for eâge, and tôð for tôð*, an eye (must be given) for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth (Matt., v, 38). For *hpæt*, what, § 377, *b*. For omission of the infinitive with auxiliaries, §§ 435–443. Answers, § 399.

406. The Kinds of Verbs.

Notional, § 55.

Intransitive, § 275, *a*.
Transitive, §§ 275, *a*; 290, *b*.
Copulative, §§ 273, *b*; 286, *c*.
Impersonal, §§ 290, *c*; 299, *a*; 366, 5.
Reflexive, §§ 150, *a*; 290, *d*; 298, *c*.
Factitive, §§ 275, *a*; 294, *a*.
Causative, § 292, *c*.

Relational, §§ 150–152; 176; 212; 435–443.

(*a*.) The emphatic form in *do* (§ 177, 2): *spâ dôð nû þâ þeôstro piðstandan*, (as a great rock withstands), so does now the darkness withstand (Boet., 6). This perhaps never occurs in Anglo-Saxon except as a repetition of a verb just used. See a possible example (Psa., cxviii, 25) Grein. But *do*+an object clause occurs as an emphatic form: *ne dô þû êfre, þæt þû oncyrre=ne avertas*, do not (thou ever, that thou) turn away (Psa., cxxxi, 10); so cxviii, 97, 174, 170, etc.

(*b*.) The same verb may be in the same author notional in one connection, relational in another; so also transitive and intransitive, reflexive and not, causative and not, and the like.

(*c*.) Historically verbs change from one kind to another; especially from notional to relational, from intransitive to transitive (causal), from transitive to intransitive. They acquire factitive, reflexive, or passive senses, or drop them. Such changes may be noted in comparing Anglo-Saxon verbs with their English descendants. See impersonal and reflexive examples at the §§ referred to above.

VOICES, § 150.

407. A transitive verb may take two forms as the agent or the object is made more prominent.

408. **Active.** The **active** voice is used to make the *agent* the *subject* of predication.

(*a.*) It is the common form of all verbs.

409. **Passive.** The **passive** voice is used to make the *direct object* of the action the *subject* of predication.

For its forms, see §§ 178–182, and tenses, §§ 412–416.

(*a.*) The **agent** is expressed with passive verbs by an oblique case after *fram*, *þurh*, or the like: *fram Siluestre lârde pâron*, they were taught by Silvester (El., 190).

(*b.*) A **factitive** object becomes a predicate nominative: *Crist pæs Hælend gehâten*, Christ was called *Hælend* (Saviour) (Men., 4); but if expressed with a preposition, it is unchanged: *pæs tô pâpan geset*, was made (to a) pope (Chr., 1058).

(*c.*) **Other objects** are unchanged with passives: (dative) *pæs êrende æðelum cempum âboden*, the message was given to the noble knights (An., 230);—impersonals: *is mê geþuht=mê þyncð*, it seems to me (Ex., 163, 6);—genitive: *beâmâs pâron ofætes gehlædene*, trees were laden with fruit (C., 30, 4);—instrumental: *Iôhannês pæs heafdê becorfen*, John was cut off from his head (Bêd., 1, 27).

410. **Middle.** For middle forms, see §§ 150, *a*; 290, *d*; 298, *c*.

TENSE, § 152.

411. In relation to **time** action is represented by A.-Sax. verbs as in its own nature *indefinite*, *continued*, or *completed*; and in regard to the time of speaking as *present*, *past*, or *future*.

	Indefinite.	Continued.	Completed.
Present	*ic nime*, I take.	*ic eom nimende*, I am taking.	*ic hæbbe numen*, I have taken.
Future	*ic nime*, *ic sceal* (*pille*) *niman*, I shall (will) take.	*ic beô nimende*, I shall be taking.	———, I shall have taken.
Past	*ic nam*, I took.	*ic pæs nimende*, I was taking.	*ic hæfde numen*, I had taken.

For subordinate clauses, see § 418.

412. The **endings** of the Anglo-Saxon verb discriminate only **past** time from **other** time.

1. The so-called **present** tense is used for *present* and *future* acts.
2. The so-called **imperfect** is used for all *past* acts.

3. Compound forms in which the *auxiliary* has the **present** form discriminate varieties of *present* and *future* action.

4. Compound forms in which the *auxiliary* has the **imperfect** form discriminate varieties of *past* action.

(*a.*) The present, future, and perfect are called **principal tenses**; the imperfect and pluperfect, **historical tenses**.

Indicative Tenses.

413. **The Present** expresses

(1.) *What* **exists** or is taking place now: *þone maddum byreð*, he bears the treasure (B., 2055);—progressive: *þeôs eorðe is berende*, the land is bearing (=produces) (diverse birds) (Bêd., 1, 1);—passive: *ic eom gelufôd*, I am loved (Ælf. Gr., 26); *eorðe is gecpeden Godes fôtsceamel*, earth is called God's foot-stool (Hom., 2, 448); *pyrð bereâfăd* (Met., 28, 42); *beôð fangene* (Bêd., 1, 1).

(2.) **Customs** and *truths*: *þêr þîn goldheord is, þêr is þîn heorte*, where thy treasure is, there is thy heart (Matt., vi, 21).

(3.) **Author's** language: *se pitega ûs manăð*, the prophet exhorts us (Hom., 2, 124, rare).

(4.) **Future**: *æfter þrîm dagon ic ârise*, after three days I shall arise (Matt., xxvii, 63); *ne gêst þû þanone, êr þû âgilde*, thou shalt not go thence, till thou shalt have paid (Matt., v, 26).

(5.) **Imperative**: *six dagâs þû pircst*, § 420, *c.*

(6.) Narrative clause dependent on a past tense: *hpi noldest þú secgan þæt heô þîn pîf is*, why didst thou not say that she is thy wife? (Gen., xii, 18, frequent). § 419, III.

414. **The Imperfect** (preterit) expresses

(1.) What **took place** or was occurring in time fully past: *hê sægde*, he said (they were magicians) (Jul., 301);—progressive: *spâ ic êr secgende pæs*, as I was saying before (An., 951);—passive: *ic pæs gelufôd*, I was loved (Ælf. Gr., 26); *þâ pæs þriðpord sprecen*, then a mighty word was spoken (B., 642); *purdon heofenâs ontŷnede*, the heavens were opened (Matt., iii, 16).

(2.) **Perfect**: *nû þû lætst þinne þeôp, forþam mine eâgan gesâpon þine hæle*, now lettest thou thy servant depart, for mine eyes *have seen* thy salvation (Luc., 2, 30).

(3.) **Pluperfect**: *þâ hi þæt gebod gehŷrdon, þâ fêrdon hīg*, when they *had heard* the command, they went (Matt., ii, 9).

415. **The Future** is expressed (1.) by the present, § 412 (future perfect, § 413, 4);—progressive: *beôð feohtende*, will be fighting (Jos., x, 25);—passive: *ic beô gelufôd*, I shall be loved (Ælf. Gr., 26); *ælc treôp byð forcorfen*, each tree shall be hewn down (Matt. iii, 10; Luc., 6, 38); *pyrð him þîte gegearpôd*, punishment shall be prepared for them (C., 28, 6).

(2.) By *sceal: ic þê sceal mîne gelæ̂stan freôde*, I shall keep my regard for thee (B., 1706); *þû scealt peordan*, thou shalt be (=wilt be) a comfort to the people (B., 1707); *sceal gâr pesan hæfen on handâ*, spear shall be raised in hand (B., 3021); *hê sceal pesan Ismahêl hâten*, he shall be called Ishmael (C., 2286); *sceal pesan prîdende* (C., 1762).

(3.) By *pille: pêne ic þæt hê gyldan pille*, I think that he will pay (B., 1184); *þû pilt secgan*, thou wilt say (Met., 24, 48); Northumb. has often *uuillo* in the first person (Matt., xii, 44; x, 33).

(4.) By *gâ: hê gæ̂ð rædan*, Lat. *pergit lectum*, he is going to read (Ælf. Gr., 25), Fr. *Je vais lire*. See § 445, 6, and **uton**, § 443.

(5.) By *hæbbe: þone calic þe ic tô drincenne hæbbe*, North. *done ic drinca uuillo*, the cup that I *have to* (=*shall*) drink of, Lat. *bibiturus sum* (Matt., xx, 22); rare. See § 453, *a*. So in Goth., Romanic.

(6.) By *eom: Mannes Sunu is tô syllenne*, North. *sunu monnes gesald bid*, the Son of Man *is to* (=*shall*) be betrayed, Lat. *tradendus est* (Matt., xvii, 22). See § 451. The three last forms perhaps give no pure futures in the Anglo-Saxon literature.

(7.) The **future perfect** is not discriminated. In its place may be a future: *ær þû âgilde*, thou shalt not go thence, before (=till) thou shalt have paid (Matt., v, 26); a perfect: *pit eft cumaþ siddan pit âgifen habbaþ*, we will come again, after we (shall) have completed (C., 174, 25).

(*a*.) The future forms are sometimes imperative, § 420, *c*.

(*b*.) Pure futures in *sceal* and *pille* are not sure in large numbers, and the English distinction between the persons is not made out.

416. **The Perfect** represents an action as now come to completion. It is denoted

(1.) By *hæbbe: hê hæfd mon geporhtne*, he has made man (C., 25, 18); *þê habbaþ lyðre gefêred*, we have got along badly (Sat., 62).

(2.) By *eom*, with a few intransitives mostly of being and going: *ic eom hider gefêred*, I am (have) hither journeyed (C., 498); so *synd forðfarene*, have departed (died) (Matt., ii, 20); *âgân*, gone (El., 1227); *geporden, geseten, urnen*,

Passive: *eom* + pp. of transitives: *ealle þing me synd gesealde*, all things have been given me (Matt., xi, 27);—*eom geporden* + p. p.: *nû syndon hi geporpene tôlŷsde* (Psa., lxxii, 15; *ic pæs fulfremedlice geluf̂od=amatus sum* (Ælf. Gr., 26).

417. **The Pluperfect** represents an action as completed at some definite past time. It is denoted

(1.) By *hæfde: hæfde hine geporhtne*, he had made him (C., 17, 4); *gefaren hæfdon*, they had gone (Bêd., 1, 23).

(2.) By *pæs* with such as have a perfect in *eom: pæs þâ lencten âgân*, spring had gone (El., 1227). **Passive**:—*pæs* + p. p. of transitives: *þâ se Hælend gefullôd pæs, hê âstâh*, when the Saviour had been baptized, he came up (Matt., iii, 16);—*pæs geporden* + p. p.: *cearu pæs genipôd*

geporden, care had been renewed (B., 1304); *ic pæs gefyrn geluſōd*= Lat. *amatus eram* (Ælf. Gr., 26).

Subjunctive Tenses.

418. The tenses follow in general those of the indicative, but time is indefinitely expressed in relation to the speaker. Futurity runs with doubtful possibility. In indirect sentences the time is to be taken in relation to that of the principal verb.

The Imperfect often expresses time as future from a past of the principal verb: *ic spôr þæt ic hine hâm brohte*, I swore that I *would bring* him home (Gen., xliv, 32);—with auxiliary: *þohtan þæt hit ofergân sceolde*, they thought that it would go by (Chr., 1053); *pold þæt sceoldon bodian*, wished that they should preach (Hom., 2, 20);—Future perfect: *þæt polde þyncan pundorlîc, gif ænig âr þam sæde þæt hit spâ gepurdan sceolde*, that *would have seemed* wonderful if any before that had said that it should so happen (Chr., 1052).

Sequence of Tenses.

419. Principal tenses depend on principal tenses; historical on historical.

Exceptions.—I. Present + Past. (*a.*) A present narration or question of a past fact: *eart þû se mon þe pêre âfêd*, art thou the man who was fed? (Boet., 3, 1);—comparison of present and past: *hê is gên spâ hê pæs*, he is still as he was (Ex., 334, 5). II. Perfect + Past: *þû hæfst forgiten þarâ pæpnâ þe ic þê sealde*, thou hast forgotten the weapons that I gave thee (Boet., 3, 1). III. Past + Present;—a truth in narrative: *þâ Sciddeâs, þe on ôdre healfe búgiað, ne geheórdon*, the Scythians, who *live* on the other side, had not heard (the Roman name) (Boet., 18, 2);—quasi oratio directa in past narration: § 413, 6. Compare § 288, *e*.

MODES.

The Indicative, § 151.

420. The **indicative** is used in assertions, questions, and assumptions to express **simple predication.**

(*a.*) **Primary.** It is the primary form, to be used every where unless there is reason for some other.

(*b.*) **Real.**—Since there is a special mode for what *may be* and *might be*, the indicative is used in contrast to speak of things as *real* or *fact*. So in a protasis, § 431.

(*c.*) **Imperative.**—The indicative future may be used for the imperative: *six dagâs þû pircst*, six days shalt thou labor (Exod., xxxi, 15); *ne pylt þû*

mê gescyndan, Lat. *noli mê confundere*, please not confound me (Psa., cxviii, 31). So in Greek (Hadley, 710) and Latin (Harkness, 470).

The Subjunctive, § 151.

421. The **subjunctive** is used to express **mere possibility, doubt,** or **wish.**

The Teutonic subjunctive has the general range of the Latin subjunctive, together with the infinitive having a subject accusative. Compare § 293, *a*.

1. In **declarative** sentences (hypothetical): *nâre mîn brôđor deâd*, my brother would not have died (Joh., xi, 21); *punige þær hê punige*, he may dwell where he may dwell=wherever he may dwell (Æđr., vi, 3, 1). So in Greek (Hadley, 722) and Latin (Harkness, 486).

2. **Interrogative** sentences (doubt): *hpâ ne mæge pâſian*, who can fail to wonder? (Met., 28, 43); *hpi þû æfre polde*, how couldst thou ever wish? (Met., 4, 33). So in Greek (Hadley, 720, *c*) and Latin (Harkness, 486).

3. **Imperative** sentences; 1st person (exhortation or request): *fare pê on tûnâs*, go we to the towns (Mc., i, 38); *up-âhebben pê his naman*, exalt we his name (Psa., xxxiii, 3); *uton gân*, let us go (Mc., 14, 42);—2d person (command): *ne sperigen gê*, swear not (Ælf. LL. 48); *nellon gê pesan*, do not be (Matt., vi, 16);—3d person (wish, demand): *si Gode lof*, praise be to God (Chr., 1009); *sib sî mid eôpic*, peace be with you (Ex., 282, 25); *beôn gegaderôde þâ þæteru*, let the waters be gathered (Gen., i, 9). So in Greek (Hadley, 720, *a*) and Latin (Harkness, 487).

4. **Exclamatory** (wish, abridged subordinates): *Eâ lâ! þæt hit purde*, Oh! that it might be (Met., 8, 39); *Eâ lâ! gif ic môste geefenlæcan*, Oh! if I might imitate (the blessed Lawrence) (Hom., 1, 432); *Eâ lâ! gif þû þære hund*, Ah! if (=would) thou wert a dog (Hom., 2, 308). So in Greek (Hadley, 721) and Latin (Harkness, 488, 1).

5. In **Co-ordinate** and **Subordinate** clauses the subjunctive may every where be used as in the above examples to express a separate possibility, doubt, or wish. **Disjunctives** (doubt): *sam pê pillan, sam pê nyllan*, whether we will, or nill (Boet., 34, 12); *si hit man, si hit nŷten*, be it man, be it beast (Exod., xix, 13). For **adversatives**, § 432; for **causals**, § 433.

(*a*.) **Subordinates** share in the general possibility, doubt, or desire of their sentence, and take the subjunctive in many cases where it is not obviously the expression of either. Hence the following discussion, §§ 422-434.

The Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses.

422. The **subjunctive** may be used by **attraction** in clauses subordinate to a subjunctive.

(*a*.) Cases of so-called attraction are mostly better explained as illogical conformation with some of the other rules: *ponne þû ænig þing begite þæs þe þû þêne þæt mê licige*, when thou any thing mayst take of that thou

mayst know (=*knowest*) that *may please me* (=*I like*) (Gen., **xxvii, 3**). Compare Latin (Harkness, 527), Greek (Hadley, 738).

A. Substantive Clauses, § 283.

423. The **subjunctive** may be used in a **substantive** clause expressing something *said, asked, thought, wished,* or *done.*

(*a.*) The **indicative** is used in the same clauses to emphasize *reality* or *fact*, § 420, *b*.

(*b.*) These clauses oftenest represent an infinitive with a subject accusative in Latin and Greek, but sometimes in them also the subjunctive is used (Harkness, 549–558; Hadley, 763+).

424.—I. **The clause may be a subject,** oftenest of a copula, impersonal or passive.

(*a.*) An indirect assertion or question: *hit is sæd þæt hê âhôfe*, it is said that he raised (up his hands) (Bëd., 3, 16); *ne pæs mê cûð, hpæder egesa pêre*, it was not known to me, whether there was fear (of God) (C., 2710).

(*b.*) Something cognized: *þuhte him þæt fægre stôde pudubeâm*, it seemed to him that a forest tree stood fair (C., 247, 17).

(*c.*) Something to be desired, as *fit, necessary, enough, pleasant,* etc.: *þê ys betere, þæt ân þinrâ forpeorðe*, it is better for thee that one of thy members perish (Matt., v, 30); *gedafenað þæt hi heorâ lâre gýmon*, it beseems (priests) that they their lore heed (Hom., 2, 342).

425.—II. **The clause may be an object.**

(*a.*) An indirect assertion or question: *cpeðað þæt þû sie hlæfdige*, they say that thou art a lady (Ex., 18, 15); *sægeð þæt hit côme*, he says that it came (from God) (C., 683); *hê sægde þæt Sarra his speostor pêre*, he said that Sarah was his sister (C., 158, 27);—*hpæt secge gê þæt ic sīg*, what say ye that I am? (Matt., xvi, 15); *Gregorius befran hpæðer folc Cristen pêre, þe hæðen*, Gregory asked whether the people Christian were or heathen (Hom., 2, 120); *frægn gif him pêre*, asked if to him were (a pleasant night) (B., 1319).

(*b.*) Object of cognition: *pênde þæt se mæsta dæl pêre*, weened that the most was (aboard) (Chr., 911); *gelŷfe þæt hit côme*, I believe that it came (from God) (C., 679).

(*c.*) Object of desire or fear (*hope, heed, doubt, pray,* etc.), see § 315: *ic pylle þæt hê punige*, I will that he wait (John, xxi, 22); *hopôde þæt hê gesâpe*, hoped that he might see (Luc., 23, 8); so *onêgan*, fear (C., 110, 1); *begŷmað*, heed (Matt., vi, 1); *biddað*, pray (Exod., ix, 28), etc.

(*d.*) Object done: *dô symble þæt ic æ þîne metige*, I do continually that I meditate thy law=English emphatic form *I do meditate* (Psa., cxviii, 174); see further § 406, *a*.

426.—III. The clause may limit a noun or adjective: *sylle ponne âð þæt hê nelle þeôf beôn*, take the oath that he will not a thief be (LL. Cnut., ii, 21); *heô geornăst bið þæt heô âfære fleôgan*, she is earnest to (that she) frighten flies (Ps., 89, 10).

(*a.*) The clause is an appositive or genitive; in most cases might be conceived as adverbial of purpose or result. The same modal idea is here in a noun or adjective which in I. and II. is in the verb.

B. Adjective Clauses, § 283.

427. The **subjunctive** may be used in **indefinite** adjective clauses.

Hypothetical relative sentence (Harkness, 501; Hadley, 757): *syle þam þe þê bidde*, give to him that asketh thee=if any one ask (Matt., v, 42); *gehŷre se þe eâran hæbbe*, let him hear who has ears (Mc., 4, 9); *pyrce hpâ þæt þæt hê pyrce, oðde dô þæt þæt hê dô*, one may work that, that (whatever) he may work, or do that, that he may do (Boet., 37, 2).

C. Adverbial Clauses, § 283.

428.—I. **Clauses of Place.** The **subjunctive** may be used in **indefinite** adverbial clauses of place. Compare § 427.

Far, þâr þû freôndâ þêne, go where thou hopest for friends (Gû., 262); *haſâ bletsunge þâr þû fêre*, take a blessing wherever thou goest (An., 224); *þic geceôs þâr þê leôfôst sie*, choose a residence where to thee pleasantest may be (C., 2723). Oftenest indicative: *punâ þâr þê leôfôst ys*, dwell where to thee pleasantest is (Gen., xx, 15); so with *spâ hpâr spâ*, wherever (Chr., 1130); *spâ hpider spâ*, whithersoever (Mc., 14, 14).

429.—II. **Clauses of Time.**

The **subjunctive** may be used in adverbial clauses of **future** or **indefinite** time. (Compare Hark., 518–523; Hadley, 769.)

(*a.*) Future: *ne gâst þû þanone âr þû âgylde*, thou goest not thence before thou shalt pay (Matt., v, 26); *ic pæs âr þam þe Abraham pære*, I was before Abraham was (John, viii, 58); *gespræc Beôpulf, âr hê stige*, Beowulf said before he mounted (B., 676); *puniaþ þâr ôð þæt gê útgân*, stay there till ye depart (Mc., 6, 10); *hê sohte ôð hê funde*, he sought till he found (the cup) (Gen., xliv, 12). In Greek, πρίν with an infinitive, Hadley, 769.

(*b.*) Indefinite: *þonne þû fæste, smyrâ þin heafod*, when thou fastest, anoint thy head (Matt., vi, 17); *bâd, hponne peard reste âgeâfe*, waited, (for the time) when the Lord should give rest (C., 1428); so with *þenden*, until (B., 1224); *spâ lange spâ* (Deut., xxii, 29); *þâ hpile þe* (LL. Æðr., vi, 12).

430.—III. **Clauses of Manner** (intensity).

The **subjunctive** may be used in clauses of **comparison** expressing that which is **imagined** or **indefinite,** or descriptive of a **force** (Hark., 501, 4).

(*a.*) *pæs se mônа, spilce hê pære mid blôde begoten*, the moon was as if it were with blood washed (Chr., 734); *bête spâ hit riht sie*, let him pay as

it may be right (LL. Ælf., 38); *strengre þonne rôse sŷ*, (I am) more fragrant than any rose may be (Ex., 423, 19); *þû gesyhst mâre þonne þis sŷ*, thou shalt see more than this is (John, i, 50), an extreme case.

(*b.*) Consecutive clauses, descriptive of a force: *spâ stearc pinter þæt ic durre lûtian*, winter so severe that I dare to stay at home (Ælfc. Col.). Compare § 434.

431.—IV. **Conditional Clauses,** § 283, p. 141.

The **subjunctive** is used in a **protasis** when proposed as **possible,** the *imperfect* when assumed as *unreal.* (So in Latin and Greek, Hark., 502+; Had., 744+.)

(The indicative proposes as real: *gif gê Abrahames bearn sŷnd*, since ye Abraham's children are (do his works) (John, viii, 39).)

(*a.*) Present: *gif mec hild nime, onsend Higelâce*, if me battle take, send to Higelâc (B., 452). For inverted clauses, § 485, 6, *c.*

(*b.*) Imperfect: *gif þû þære hêr, nære min brôðor deâd*, if thou hadst been here, my brother had not died (John, xi, 32).

(*c.*) So with *on þæt gerâd þæt*, on condition that (Chr., 945); *piâ þam þe*, same (Gen., xxix, 27).

(*d.*) **Negative** condition: *bûton hpâ beô ednipan gecenned*, unless one be born again (he shall not see God's kingdom) (John, iii, 3); so *nefne* (B., 1056); *nemne* (Ex., 124, 12); *nymðe* (C., 205, 19); *bûtan þænne*, (*þâ*) except when (Men., 32; Sat., 391).

432.—V. **Concessive Clauses.**

The **subjunctive** may be used in a **concessive** clause.

Hpæt fremað, þeâh hê gestrŷne, what profiteth it, though he gain (the whole world) (Matt., xvi, 26); *þû scealt dreógan, þeâh þin pit duge*, thou shalt suffer, though thy wit is good (B., 589); *þeâh þû tô banan purde*, though thou wast a murderer (B., 587). For inverted clauses, § 485, 6, *c.*

(*a.*) The indicative is used in similar clauses. The English discrimination between the first and second examples was growing.

(*b.*) So in Latin (Hark., 514+); for Greek, see Hadley, 874.

433.—VI. **Final Clauses.** The **subjunctive** is used in clauses expressing **purpose.** (So in Latin and Greek, Hark., 500+; Had., 739+.)

(*a.*) Present: *sete þine hand ofer hīg, þæt heô hâl sŷ and libbe*, lay thy hand upon her, that she may be whole and live (Mc., 5, 23).

(*b.*) Imperfect: *genam þæt þif þæt hê bespice*, (the devil) took the woman (as aid) that he might deceive (the man) (Job, 166).

(*c.*) **Negative** clauses with *þŷ læs*, Lat. *quo-minus*, or *þŷ læs þe*>Eng. *lest: sælde scip, þŷ læs ŷðâ þrym forprecan meahte*, fastened the ship, lest the waves' force might wreck it (B., 1918); *beron, þŷ læs þe þîn fôt ætsporne*, they bear (thee), lest (so that less by that) thy foot may dash against (a stone) (Matt., iv, 6).

434.—VII. **Consecutive Clauses.**

The **subjunctive** may be used to express a result.

Gif mon sîe dumb oððe deâf geboren, þæt hê ne mæge his synnâ onsecgan, if one be born dumb or deaf, so that he can not deny his crimes (Ælf. LL., 14). Consecutive modal clauses in *spâ þæt*, see § 430, *b*. So in Lat., Hark., 501; in Greek, ὥστε with an infinitive (Hadley, 770).

The Potential, §§ 151, 176.

435. The **potential** expresses **power,** liberty, permission, necessity, or duty.

(*a*.) In some cases it is only a periphrastic form of the subjunctive or imperative; in most cases it adds a distinct notion of **power** in some form.

(*b*.) The indicative form of the auxiliary sometimes takes the place of the subjunctive ending of the principal verb, but generally a subjunctive clause retains the subjunctive form of the auxiliary, making a doubly-expressed *possibility*, or *doubt*, or *wish*: *ic nû syllan polde*, I now *would wish* to give (B., 2729).

(*c*.) The principal verb takes the infinitive, except after *eom* and *habban*, where the gerund is used.

(*d*.) The principal verb is often omitted, especially a verb of motion before an adverb of place. Examples under each.

436.—1. **Mæg** (§§ 176, 212), physical power; — declarative: *ic mæg þesan God*, I can be God (C., 18, 35); —(hypothetical), *eâðe mihte Crist punian*, easily might Christ have dwelt (Hom., 1, 164); —subordinate clauses, e. g. conditional; *gif heô meahte*, if she might, (she chose) (Bêd., 4, 23); — final: *heô polde hire êðel forlætan, þæt heô meahte geearnian*, she would give up her estate, that she might earn (one in heaven) (same); —principal verb omitted: *helle gatu ne mâgon ongeân þâ*, hell's gates can not (prevail) against it (Matt., xvi, 18).

437.—2. **Can** (§§ 176, 212): *ne can ic eôþ*, I know you not (Matt., xxv, 12; frequent). Intellectual power; —declarative: *ic can eôþ læran*, I can teach you (Sat., 250); —subordinate clauses; —conditional: *þonne hê ne can ongitan*, if he can not understand (Boet., 39, 2); —principal verb omitted: *sagǎ, gif þû cunne*, say, if thou can (say) (El., 857); *dydon spâ hie cûðon*, did as they could (do) (C., 232, 11).

438.—3. **Môt** (§§ 176, 212), possibility through permission: *þær ic sittan môt sumorlangne dæg*, there I may sit the summer-long day (Ex., 443, 28); —duty: *môt ic him forgifan*, should I forgive him (seven times)? (Matt., xviii, 21); —necessity (rare): *ealle þê môton speltan*, all we must die (Exod., xii, 33); —subordinate clauses; —object: *bæd þæt he môste niman*, besought that he might take (away the body) (John, xix, 38); —omission of principal verb: *gif (þê) þider môton*, if we thither might (go) (Sat., 302).

439.—4. **Dear,** *dorste* (§§ 176, 212), power of will in danger: *ne dear*

forð gân, I dare not go forth (C., 54, 1); subordinate clauses;—result: *hê pæs tô-gefultumiende, þæt him mon nôht hefiges gedôn dorste*, Lat. *ipse juvans, ne qui (iis) quicquam molestiæ inferret*, he was helping, so that no one might (*dare*) do anything grievous to them (Bêd., 5, 11); rarely auxiliary.

440.—5. **þille** (§§ 176, 212). **Present**;—declarative future indicative, see § 415;—imperative: *ne þille þû pêpan*, Lat. *noli plorare* (Hark., 538), please not weep (Bêd., 4, 29); *ne þylt þû*, same (Psa., cii, 2). **Imperfect**:—declarative: *ic sunâ minum syllan polde*, I to my son would give (if I had one) (B., 2729). Subordinate clauses;—purpose, result: *pæs gepunôd þæt hê polde gân tô sæ*, was wont to go to the sea (Hom., 2, 138);—principal verb omitted: *hpænne þû mê þylle tô*, when thou wilt (come) to me (Psa., c, 1, and often).

441.—6. **Sceal**, *sceolde* (§§ 176, 212): *hû micel scealt þû*, how much owest thou? (Luc., 16, 5. Matt., xviii, 24);—necessity under law or external force: *be ûre æ hê sceal speltan*, by our law he ought to die (John, xix, 7);—necessity for a purpose: *ic hîe sceal ærest geþinnian, þæt ic siððan mæge*, I must first dispel them, that I afterward may (bring light (Boet., 5, 3);—a future sign, see § 415;—imperative: *gê sculon herigean*, Lat. *laudate*, praise ye (the name of the Lord) (Psa., cxii, 3). **Imperfect**: *spylc sceolde secg pesan þegn*, such a warrior should a thane be (B., 2708);—subordinate clauses: *hê cpæð þæt helle healdan sceolde*, he said that he should inhabit hell (C., 530);—passive: *forhtian þæt hê gelæded beôn sceolde*, to fear that he should be led (to hell) (Bêd., 3, 13);—result: *nŷd þæt hê hrædlîcôr fêran sceolde*, need that he should travel more rapidly (Bêd., 3, 14);—principal verb omitted: *ic him æfter sceal*, I shall (go) after him (B., 2816).

442.—7. **þearf**, need (§§ 176, 212), common as a notional verb, rare as an auxiliary: *syle mê þæt pæter, þæt mê ne þyrste, ne ic ne þurfe hêr feccan*, Lat. *ut non sitiam neque veniam huc haurire*, give me the water, that I may not thirst, nor *need* (*come*) here to draw (John, iv, 15).

443.—8. **Uton**, *putun*, O. Saxon *wita* (§§ 176, 224, *c*), pres. subj. plur. 1st of *þîtan*, to go. Compare Lat. *eamus, age*, It. *andiamo*, Fr. *allons*;—imperative clauses: *putun gangan tô*, let us advance (B., 2648); *utan tô-brecan*, let us break (their bonds) (Psa., ii, 3); *uten* is in Layamon, but the common form is the subjunctive with *we: lete we þeos ferde bilæue, and speke we of Arðure*, let we this host remain, and speak we of Arthur (25407). The English pure auxiliary *let* is later yet.

For potential **eom**, §§ 451; 415, 6. For **hæbbe**, §§ 453, *a*; 415, 5.

The Imperative, §§ 149, 151.

444. The **imperative** is used in *commands*.

Gâ, go (Mc., 5, 8); *gang þû*, go thou (Matt., iv, 10); *gâð*, go ye (Exod., v, 18); *ne beôð gê*, be not ye (C., 194, 11).

(*a.*) In **hypothetical** sentences: *sêcaḍ and gê hit findaḍ*, seek and (=if ye seek) ye shall find (Matt., vii, 7).

(*e.*) **Subjunctive** for imperative, § 421, 3.

Indicative for imperative, § 420, *c.*

Potential, *pille*, § 440; *sculon*, § 441.

(*c.*) So through the Indo-European tongues.

The Infinitive and Gerund.

445. *Their forms*, §§ 173–175, 177, 181, 352, V.

1. The infinitive in **an** rarely uses **tô**: *mîcel is tô secgan*, there is much to say (Gû., 502); *âfŷsed biḍ tô sêcan*, it is prepared to seek (Ph., 275); so B., 316; C., 220, 25; Ex. 187, 27, etc. Grein.

2. The gerund in *-ende* appears in the later manuscripts of the Chronicle, and spreads: *Nero âgan tô rîxiende*, Nero began to rule (Chr., 49) *hê sende tô bodiende*, he sent to preach (604); *coman Crist tô purdiende*, they came to honor Christ (2). See § 460. So in Ælfric's Grammar.

3. The infinitive and gerund sometimes interchange in most of their uses, if not all.

4. The progressive future is rare: *ongeâte hine habbende beôn*, he knew himself to be about having, Lat. *se fuisse habiturum* (Bêd., 5, 8).

5. Future passive: *ne tpeôge ic mê gelæḍed beôn*, I did not doubt myself about to be led, Lat. *me rapiendum esse* (Bêd., 3, 13).

6. Ælfric gives as the Latin future active *amatum ire vel amaturum esse*, Anglo-Saxon *faran lufian*, to be going to love; *vis doctum ire, pilt þu gân leornian*, will you go to learning (Ælf. Gram., p. 25). The English is a true future=*to be about to love*. Sure examples of *faran* or *gân*, without notional force, are needed from Anglo-Saxon literature. See §§ 443; 415, 4.

Infinitive, §§ 149, 151.

446. The **infinitive** is construed as a **neuter noun.** (So in other tongues: Latin, Hark., 548; Greek, Had., 762+.)

447.—1. **A subject**: *hine rîdan lyste*, to ride pleases him (Boet., 34, 7); *âlŷfḍ on Reste-dagum pel dôn*, is to do well lawful on Sabbath days? (Luc., 6, 9); sometimes with *tô: is âlŷfed on Reste-dagum pel tô dônne*, it is lawful on Sabbath days to do well (Matt., xii, 12).

448.—2. **Direct object.**—(1) Of **beginning** and **ending** (acts exerted on other acts): *ongunnon rîċran riht*, began to establish right (C., 2, 17); *Rômāne blunnun ricsian*, Romans ceased to rule (Bêd., 1, 11);—(2) of **motive** (acts moving to other acts—*desire, seek, intend, expect, dare, dread*, etc.): *pille faran*, I wish to go (Hom., 2, 372); *sêcaḍ tô* (John, viii, 40); *þencaḍ* (C., 2436); *myntan* (B., 712); *ne dear ic faran*, I dare not go (Gen., xliv, 34); *ceara* (C., 2279);—(3) definitive object of **ability, duty, habit** (acts and states defined by acts): *ic mæg secgan*, I am able to say

(Cri., 317); *cûðon dôn*, were able to do (C., 189); *hê sceal spellan*, he ought to die (John, xix, 7); *gepunedon môder cŷgean*, they were wont to call (her) mother (Bed., 4, 23);—(4) general motion defined by specific motion: *fleôn gepât*, he went to fly = he flew away (C., 136, 23); *com fleôgan*, came flying (89, 10); *com gongan* (B., 710); *com drîfan*, came driving=fell (on a rock) (Bêd., 5, 6); so with *faran, fêran, glîdan, rîdan, scrîdan, sîðian, tredan*, etc. See further under Participles, § 458, 2.

(a.) These forms run to periphrastic forms of the future and potential, see §§ 415, 435+.

449.—3. The **infinitive** is used as a **final object** to express an act **of** the first object.

This occurs oftenest after verbs of

(*a.*) **Cognition**: *geseah rincâ manige spefan*, saw many heroes sleep (B., 729); *leôde secgan hŷrde*, heard people say (B., 1346); *ongeate hine habbende beôn*, he knew (himself to be having) that he should have (this number of years) (Bêd., 5, 8); so after *seón, gehŷran, gefrignan, findan, (â)fandian, gemêtan*, etc. The direct object is sometimes omitted: *secgan hŷrde*, I heard say (B., 582). **Teaching**: *lær ûs gebiddan*, teach us to pray (Luc., 11, 1).

(*b.*) **Bidding**: *bæd hine faran*, bade him go (Chr., 1050); *hâtan men gepyrcean*, ordered men to build (B., 69); so with *(be)beôdan, forbeôdan*, etc. Direct object omitted: *hæt fealdan þæt segl*, orders to furl the sail (Boet., 41, 3).

(*c.*) **Let**: *lêton holm beran*, let the sea bear him (B., 48); *lætað þâ lytlingâs tô mê cuman*, suffer the little ones to come to me (Luc., 18, 16). So *forlætan, alŷfan*.

(*d.*) **Make**: *dêð hi ealle beofian*, makes it all tremble (Psa., ciii, 30).

(*a, b, c.*) **With passives**: *pæs gesepen blôd peallan*, blood was seen to spring from the ground (Chr., 1100); *harâ and spŷn synt forbodene tô æt-hrînenne*, hares and swine are forbidden to touch (Lev., xi, 6–8);—wishing: *polde hyne genemnedne beôn*, he wished him to be named (Luc., 1, 62).

NOTE.—This construction gives rise to the accusative before the infinitive, for which see § 293.

GERUND, §§ 173, 175.

450. The so-called gerund usually answers to the Latin gerund, supine, or *ut* with the subjunctive. But see § 445, 3.

451.—I. The **gerund** after the **copula** expresses what *must*, *may*, or *should* be done.

Mannes sunu is tô syllanne, the Son of Man must be delivered up (Matt., xvii, 22); *his apostolâs tô farenne pæron*, his apostles were to go (LL. Ælf., 49, 1); *seô lufu is âá on môde tô healdanne*, love should always be kept in mind (Bêd., 1, 27).

(*a.*) The act may be done *to* or *by* the subject.
(*b.*) Latin periphrastic conjugations in *-rus* and *-dus* (Hark., §§ 227–233).

452.—II. **Attributive.** The **gerund** is sometimes used to describe or define a **noun.**

Neôd is tô dônne, there is need of acting (LL. Æđr., vi, 42); *gepeald tô gyrpanne*, power of working (C., 280); *mæl tô fêran*, time to go (B., 316); *mihte tô forlætenne*, power to forgive (John, xix, 10; Mc., 2, 10).

(*a.*) Latin genitive of the gerund (Hark., 563).

453.—III. **Objective.** The **gerund** may be used as a **final object** to express an act **on** the first object.

After verbs of **having** and **giving**: *ic hæbbe mete tô etanne*, I have meat to eat (John, iv, 32); *syllđ mê hlâf tô etenne*, gives me bread to eat (Gen., xxviii, 20); *ic sende flæsc tô etanne*, I send flesh to eat (Exod., xvi, 12).

Note *nim þæt ic þê tô sillenne habbe*, take that I to thee to give have, (Ap., 12); *ic hæbbe þê tô secgenne sum þing*, I have something to say to thee (Luc., 7, 40), Lat. *hæc dicere habeo* (Cic. N. D., 3, 39), Οὐδὲν ἀντειπεῖν ἔχω (Æsch. Prom., 51);—direct object omitted: *hire syllan etan*, to give to her to eat, Lat. *bibere dari* (Liv., 40, 47), δοθῆναι φαγεῖν (Luc., 8, 55).

(*a.*) Hence a periphrastic future I have to drink = I shall drink, § 415, 5.
(*b.*) The gerund as genitive object is pretty common: *ondrêd tô faranne*, dreaded to go (Matt., ii, 22); wished to see (xiii, 17.) Other objects occur, § 448, 2).

454.—IV. **Adverbial.** 1. The **gerund** is used to denote the **purpose** of motion.

Ût eôde se sâedere tô sâpenne, the sower went out to sow (Mc., 4, 3); so often without *tô: grêtan eôde*, went to greet (C., 146, 31); *gepât neôsean*, went to see (B., 115); *sende bodian*, sent to preach (Bêd., 3, 22).

(*a.*) The Latin supine in *-um* (Hark., 569).

2. The **gerund** with an **adjective** may express an act for which any thing is ready.

Hrađe blôd tô âgeôtanne, ready to shed blood (Psa., xiii, 6); *fûse tô farenne*, ready to go (B., 1805); so *gearu, reôpe, spid*, etc. Compare *hû þære þû dyrstig ofstician bâr*, how could you be daring (=how dared you) stab a boar? (Ælfrc.), § 448, 2; *gearpe gehŷran*, ready to hear (Ælfrc.).

(*a.*) Latin supine in *-u*, and infinitive (Hark., §§ 570, 552, 3).

3. The **gerund** with an **adjective** may express an act **in respect to** which any thing is *pleasant, unpleasant, easy, worthy*, §§ 321, 302.

Gladu on tô lócienne, pleasant to look on (Boet., 6); *grimlic tô geseónne*, grisly to see (Ex., 57, 15); *êâe on tó findanne*, easy to find (Psa., lxxvi, 16); *pyrâe tô âlætenne*, worthy to receive pardon (C., 622; Matt., iii, 11).

(a.) The Latin supine in *-u*, for which often an infinitive (Hark., 570).

PARTICIPLES.

455. *The Relation of the Forms.*

1. The **-nd** of the present denotes continuance; the **-en, -d** of the past denote completion. The completed acts are naturally used to describe the things completed, i. e., are passive.

(*a.*) A few past participles are active, *druncen, forsporen, gesprecen*, etc.: *beôrê druncen*, drunken with beer (B., 531, and often); *forsporen*, forsworn, perjured (Gen., xxiv, 8, and elsewhere); *heom pus gesprecenum*, they thus having spoken (Nic., 27, and elsewhere); *gelyfed folc*, people having believed (Hom., 1, 144); so Gothic (Mc., xv, 28), Lat. *potus, juratus*, etc.

(2.) The participles have (1) **adjective endings**, and agree with nouns; but the difference is so slight between an act asserted as done by the agent, and as descriptive of the agent, that the participles are used (2) like **infinitives**, and (3) as **abridged clauses**. The two last uses are less common in Anglo-Saxon than in Latin or Greek (Harkness, 571-581; Hadley, 785-806).

(3.) Weak and strong forms, see §§ 362, 119, *b*.

The Combinations.

456. A **participle** agrees with its **substantive** in *gender, number*, and *case*, § 361.

A **participle** may **govern the case** of its verb.

I. Attributive: *man rihtpîs and ondrædende God*, a man righteous and fearing God (Hom., 2, 446); *seô foresæde bóc*, the aforesaid book (Hom., 2, 118).

(*a.*) **Abridged.**—Here belong many abridged clauses, § 281: *onlŷht ælcne man cumendne tô pysum middanearde*, lighteth every man *coming* (who comes) to this world (W. P. T., 4).

(*b.*) **Subject omitted**:—persons: *ealrâ libbendrâ môdor*, mother of all living (Gen., iii, 20); *Godes gecorenan*, God's chosen (Hom., 2, 454);—things: *frumrîpan gongendes and peaxendes*, first fruits of that going and growing (LL. Ælf., 38).

(*c.*) Compounds with *un-* abound in the Teutonic tongues.

457.—II. Predicative: *ic secgende pæs*, I was saying (An., 951); *pæs first âgân*, the time was gone (An., 147); *fêt sint gebundene*, feet are

bound (C., 24, 18); *paldend licgaȧ dreâmê bedrorene*, the powerful lie bereft of joy (Ex., 291, 8).

(*a.*) Hence the progressive forms, §§ 177, 411; the perfect of intransitives, §§ 168, 416; the passives, §§ 178, 409.

458.—III. OBJECTIVE: (1.) **direct object** after verbs of *beginning* and *ending*: *geendude bebeódende*, he stopped giving commands (Matt., xi, 1).

(2.) **Definitive** after verbs of motion: *com rîdende*, came riding (Hom., 2, 134); *com gangende* (Matt., xiv, 25, and often); *cpom gefered* (Sal., 178; perhaps never exactly the Germ. *kam gegangen*); *pind pêdende færed*, (El., 1274); *þurhpunedon âcsiende*, they continued asking (John, viii, 7).

(3.) **Genitive object** after verbs of emotion: *ondrêdon hine âcsigende*, dreaded asking him, ἐφοβοῦντο ἐπερωτῆσαι (Mc., ix, 32); *pundredon geseónde dumbe specende*, they wondered to see the dumb speaking (Matt., xv, 31).

(4.) **Final object** after verbs of cognition: *hine geseah sittendne*, saw him sitting (Luc., xxii, 56); *geseah his hûs âfylled*, saw his house filled (St. G., 6); *gehŷrdon hine specende*, heard him speaking (John, i, 37).

(5.) **Final** after having: *hê hæfde hine geporhtne*, he had him wrought (C., 17, 4). Hence the perfect in Teutonic, Romanic, Romaic, rare Gr., Lat.

(*a.*) These correspond with infinitives, §§ 448, 449, 453.

459.—IV. ADVERBIAL. (1.) **Time**: *hê pæccende geseah*, he, when he waked, saw (St. G., 4); *nolde, geladȯd, siđian*, he would not, when invited, go (Hom., 1, 128).

(2.) **Cause**: *dyde ægđer tó ânum, tôpurpende feóndscipâs*, made both at one by abolishing enmities (Hom., 1, 106).

(3.) **Concession**: *syllaȧ, nân þing gehyhtende*, lend, though hoping nothing (Luc., vi, 35).

(4.) **Co-existence**: *gecyrdon þâ hyrdâs puldrigende and herigende God*, the shepherds returned, glorifying and praising God (Hom., 1, 32).

(*a.*) Such constructions are often abridged clauses, § 281.

(*b.*) For the **absolute** construction, see §§ 304, *d*; 295, *b*.

VERBALS.

460. 1. The Anglo-Saxon verbal in **-ung, -ing** (§ 233), is a true noun, e. g., governed by a preposition: *ic pæs on huntunge*>Engl. I was a hunting (Ælfc.).

2. The gerund in **-ende** (§ 445, 2) changed to **-ing** (Layamon, 2647), and hence the old English use of the form in *-ing* as a verb: *I am tó accusinge you* (John, v, 45, Wycliffe, Oxford edition).

3. The present participle in *-ende* changed to *-ing*; and, in English, noun, participle, adjective, and infinitive (gerund) mix.

INTERJECTIONS, § 263.

461. The **interjection** has the syntax of a clause, § 278, *d*.

(*a*.) Compare **vocative**, § 289, *d*; **answers**, § 399.

(*b*.) For the dative after so-called interjections, see § 298, *b*.

CONJUNCTIONS, § 262.

Co-ordinate Conjunctions.

462. **Co-ordinate conjunctions** connect **sentences** and **like parts** of a sentence.

463. Copulatives.

1. **And** connects **like clauses**; *cum and geseoh*, come and see (John, i, 46); **words**, often an emphatic repetition: *litlan and litlan*, by littles and littles (Chr., 1110); *spiđor and spiđor*, worse and worse (Chr., 1086);—correlatives: *feor and neâh*, far and nigh (C., 177, 27).

It is a **general sign** of connected discourse;—introductory to a sentence: *And ne forseoh þú cyrliscne man*, (Hail to thee, Apollonius). And do not neglect a plain man (Ap., 7); so Shakespeare, "*Yet ask.*" "*And shall I have?*" (Rich. II., iv, 1); and often beginning a lyric, Southey, Moore; so in German, Goethe.

Strengthened: *sunu and fæder ægđer*, son *and* father *both* (Hy., 7, 42); *and butu*, and both (Ex., 125, 8); *and eâc*, and also (Chr., 894); *and eâc spâ* (896); *and eâc spâ ilce* (*same*), and also (Psa., xxx, 10; El., 1278); *and ealspâ*, and likewise (Luc., v, 33); *and samod*, and together (C., 456); *and sôđlice*, and verily (Matt., ii, 9); *and tô*, (nine hundred), and (seventy) too (C., 1224).

Correlative: *and* . . . . *and*, both . . . . and (John, xii, 28); so Wycliffe, Mc., ix, 21, and often).

ægđer (*ge*) . . . . *and* (*eâc*) both . . . . and (By., 224); *bu* (*bâtpâ*) . . . . *and*, both . . . . and (Ex., 64, 12).

ge . . . . *and*, both . . . . and (C., 46, 31); *samod* . . . . *and*, both . . . . and (C. 239, 27).

(*a*.) As a **general connective**, *and* may connect clauses having various logical relations, and with or without other specific conjunctions.

Adversative: *God geseah þone deofol, and se deofol spâ-þeâh pæs bedæled Godes gesihđe*, God saw the devil, *and* the devil *though* was deprived of the sight of God (Hom., 2, 448); *and nâ þê læs*, and nevertheless (Chr., 1011); *ic pylle mild-heortnysse, and nâ onsægdnysse*, I wish mercy, and not sacrifice (Matt., xii, 7); so beginning a sentence

to enforce a contrast: *And do you now put on your best attire?* (Shakespeare, J. C., i, 1).

Causal: *gelŷf, and heô biđ hâl*, believe, and she shall be whole (Luc., viii, 50); *and for þon ne*, and not for that (Deut., i, 32).

Distributive: *tpâm and tpâm*, by two and two (Mc., vi, 7). See § 392.

(*b.*) **And** is often an **emphatic particle** (Gr. *καί*): *se þe næfđ, and þæt þe hê hæfđ, him biđ ætbroden*, whosoever hath not, *even* that which he hath, from him shall be taken away (Matt., xiii, 12); *And þû þêre mid þam Galileiscean*, thou also wast with the Galilean (Matt., xxvi, 69); so in Wycliffe: *Go and yee*, go ye also (Matt., xx, 4, and often); not in use now.

2. **Bu**, correlative with **and**; which see.

3. **Bâc**, *êc*, eke;—with **like clauses**: *eorđan þorhte, lîf eâc gesceôp*, God earth wrought, life also created (B., 97). It is also used as an **emphatic particle** alone, and with *and*, *ge*, *hpæđre*, *ne*, *ođđe*, *spâ*, *spilce*, *þeâh*.

Eal spâ, see *spâ*.

Eornostlîce, see *sôđlîce*, § 463, 8.

4. **Ge**;—with **like clauses**: *sæ bræc ge steorran forlêton*, the sea broke, *and* the stars ceased their light (Ex., 70, 33, rare);—**words**: *ealde ge geonge*, old and young (Jud., 166).

Strengthened: *æghpæđer ge*, both (Æđs. LL., 1); *butu ge*, both (C., 46, 30); *ge eâc*, and also (Cri., 1170); *ge eâc spâ same*, and also likewise (Met., 11, 10); *somod ge*, at once both (Bêd., 2, 9); *ge spylce*, and so also (B., 2258).

Correlative: *ge . . . ge*, both . . . and (B., 1864); *ægđer ge . . . ge*, both . . . and (Joh., xv, 24); *ge . . . and*, both . . . and (C., 752), see *and*.

5. **Gelîce**, likewise;—*hê þundrôde, and ealle; gelice Iacôbum*, i. e. *Iacôbus*, he wondered, and all (that were with him); likewise James (Luc., v, 9).

6. **Ne, nê**, with **like clauses**: *beorgâs þêr nê muntâs steâpe ne stondađ*, there hills *nor* mountains steep stand (Ex., 199, 6);—**general connective**: *Nê ne eton gê*, neither do you eat (Exod., xii, 8).

Correlative: *ne . . . nê*, not . . . nor (Gû., 670).

nâđer ne . . . nê (ne), neither . . . nor (Levit., iii, 17; **Psa., xxxiv, 12**).

nâđôr . . . nê, neither . . . nor (Matt., vi, 20) . . . nor (repeated).

ne . . . nê eâc ne, not . . . nor (also not) (Boet., 16, 1).

nâ (nalæs) þæt ân . . . ac eâc spylce (spâ); *and nalæs þæt ân þæt him þâ fugelâs, ac eâc spâ þâ fixâs*, and not only that the birds (were subject) to him, but also the fishes (St. G., 9); so Goth., *ni þat ain . . . ac jah* (1 Tim., v, 13).

Strengthenings, see § 400. Note *piston and ne pêndon*, knew (not) and hoped not (that they should see) (B., 1604).

7. **Sam**: *biđ oferfroren, sam hit sŷ sumor sam pinter*, is frozen over both when it is summer and winter (Oros., 1, 1, 23), compare § 464, 5; *spâ same spâ*, see after, *spâ*.

Samod, see *and*.

8. **Sôđlîce**;—general sign of connected discourse: *Sôđlîce Philippus*

pæs, Now Philip was (from Bethsaida) (John, i, 44), see under *and;* similar are *eornostlice* (Matt., ii, 1); *pitodlice* (iii, 11).

9. **Spâ**, correlative: *sprecan spâ yfel spâ gôd*, to speak *as well* evil *as* good (Nic., 6); for other uses of *spâ*, see § 473; *spâ same spâ*, beasts have these natures *the same as* men (Boet., 33, 4); **eal spâ**, also (Matt., xxi, 30).

10. **Tô**, see under *and;* **pitodlice**, see *sôdlîce*.

464. Disjunctives, § 262.

1. **Âþer**, *âðer*, strengthens *oððe*, which see.
2. **Elles**: *begŷmad; elles næbbe gê mêde*, take heed; *else* ye have no reward (Matt., vi, 1). § 262, *b*.
3. **Hpæðer**: correlative with *þe* and *oððe*, which see. See also § 397.
4. **Oððe**;—**alternative clauses**: *hi ne mihton, oððe hi noldon*, they could not, *or* they would not (Chr., 1052);—**words**: *feor oððe neâh*, far or nigh (C., 1029; B., 2870).

Strengthened: *âðer oððe on bôclande oððe on folclande*, either on bookland or on folkland (LL. Edw., 1, 2); *oððe eâc*, or also (Psa., cxvii, 12); *oððe hpæðer* (Gen., xliii, 27).

Correlatives: *oððe . . . oððe*, either . . . or; *oððe gemetan, oððe getellan, oððe âpegan*, either measure, or count, or weigh (LL. Æðs., 1);

âðer . . . oððe, either . . . or (Hy., 10, 42);

hpæðer . . . oððe, whether . . . or (Num., xiii, 20);

hpæðer . . . oððe hpæðer, whether . . . or whether (Gen., xliii, 27);

ôðer tpegâ . . . oððe, other of two (=either) . . . or (By., 208).

5. **Sam**: *sam pê pillan, sam pê nyllan*, whether we will or nill (Boet., 34, 12).
6. **Þe**, or;—**alternative clauses**: *is hit âlŷfed þe nâ*, is it lawful or no? (Matt., xxii, 17);—**words**: *pifhâdes þe peres*, of female or male (Ph., 357).

Strengthened: *gehælan hpæðer þe forspillan*, to heal (whether) or to destroy (Mc., iii, 4).

Correlatives: *þe . . . þe*, whether . . . or (Mc., xiii, 35): *hpæðer . . . þe* (Ex., 95, 8); *hpæðer þe . . . þe* (Matt. xxiii, 17); *hpæðer . . . hpæðer þe*, whether . . . or whether (Joh., vii, 17).

465. Adversatives, § 262.

1. **Ac**, *ach, ah*, but;—**contrasted clauses**: *nis þis mæden deâd, ac heô slæpð* (*þ*) (Mc., v, 39).

Strengthened: *ac spîðôr*, but rather (Ap., 20); *ac nâðemâ*, but none the more (Chr., 1127); *ac þeâh hpæðere*, but however (Hom., 1, 276).

2. **Bûtan**, see § 431, *d*.
3. **Git**, yet, correlative with concessive *þeâh* is not yet found in Anglo-Saxon.

4. **Ono** *hpæt*, but yet (Bêd., 3, 24, Smith's ed.).
5. **þeâh**, yet;—**contrasted clauses**: *ær ne cûđon; þeâh hie fela piston*, they did not know before; yet they knew many things (C., 179, 16).

Strengthened: *and ne eôde þeâh in*, and (=but) he did not go in *though* (John, xx, 5); *and spâ þeâh*, Goth. *svê þauh*, and yet even so (Hom., 2, 448); *emn spâ þeâh* (Met., 9, 38); *spâ þeâh hpæđere*, yet however (Psa., cxviii, 157); *spâ>sê* (Gû., 934, and often); *ac þeâh hpæđere*, see *ac*.

Correlative oftenest with a concessive *although*.

þeâh (*þe*) . . . *þeâh*, although . . . yet (Boet., 16, 3).
spâ . . . *spâ þeâh*, although . . . yet (El., 498).

6. **And nâ þê læs** (Chr., 1011); *ac nâ þê mâ* (Chr., 1127), nevertheless; *for þon*, notwithstanding (Deut., i, 32).

466. Causal.—Illative.

1. **Nû**, now that, since;—causal: *þû mê ne forpyrne, nû ic þus feorran com*, (I pray) that thou wilt not deny me, *since* I thus far have come (B., 430); *nû þe*, since that (An., 485).
2. **þâ**, since (causal); *þâ hie ofgifen hæfde*, (now he could replenish the earth) since they had given it up (C., 96), see § 252, II.
3. **Be þam þe**, by this that; because: *ongist þû hi be þam þe heô on nihte scineđ*, thou mayst know it *because* it shineth in the night (Mandr.).
4. **For þam þe** (*þam>þan, þon*), causal: *for þam þe Drihten behêt gôd*, we will do thee good, *for this that* (=because) the Lord has promised good (Num., x, 29).

For þam (causal): because (Boet., 19);—illative: therefore (C., 97).

5. **þonne**, since (causal): *hpâ sceal tô his rice fôn, þonne hê bróđer næfđ*, who shall to his throne succeed, since he has no brother (or children) (Hom., 2, 146).
6. **þŷ**, therefore (illative) (C., 34, 24); *þŷ þe*, because (Chr., 836).

Correlative: *þŷ* . . . *þŷ þe*, on this account . . . because (Chr., 836).

7. **For þŷ** (*þi, þê*);—causal (John, vii, 22).

Correlative: *for þi* . . . *for þan þe*, for this reason . . . because (Hom., 1, 288).

Subordinate Conjunctions.

467. A **subordinate conjunction** connects a **subordinate clause** and the **word** with which it combines, § 278, *b*.

(*a*.) Most are really relative adverbs, or adverbial phrases modifying a word in the principal and another in the subordinate clause.

(*b*.) The same word or phrase may denote different logical relations between different pairs of phrases, but we will follow our usual analysis of the subordinate clauses, § 283.

A. *Substantive Clauses.*

468. Declarative Conjunctions.

1. **þæt**, substantive sign (the article of a clause).

1. With a **subject clause**: *þêr gecŷded peard þæt God helpe gefremede*, there was made known that God help gave (An., 91);—**correlative** *þæt* or *hit: nis þæt feor heonon þæt se mere stondeð, it* is not far hence *that* the mere stands (B, 1362); *hit gelamp þæt (hie) cpômon*, it happened that they came (El., 272);—quasi-appositive: *peâtâcen þæt hie gesôhton*, the fatal sign (was spread) that they should seek (his death) (An., 1123).

2. With an **object clause** (*a*) accusative: *ic pât þæt þû eart*, I know that thou art (El., 815);—**correlative** *þæt* or *hit: þæt gecŷded mænig þæt þæt gepeorðed, that* the multitude shall show *that* it shall happen (An., 1439);—**apposition**: *þâ peádêd tô prêce ne sette, þæt hie berêddon*, he would not avenge the wicked *deed*, that they deprived (of life the guiltless) (El., 496).

(*b.*) Dative: *tô þam arod, þæt hê nêdde*, ready for this, that he ventured (Jud., 275).

(*c.*) Genitive: *gemyndig þæt hiô gesôhte*, mindful that she sought (El., 268);—correlative *þæs: pê þæs sculon hycgan, þæt pê*, we should strive for this, that we, etc. (C., 398);—appositive: *cræftes, þæt þû mê getêhte*, I would ask *knowledge*, that thou teach me (An., 485).

(*d.*) **þæt** is also used in final clauses, § 433; modal, § 473; consecutive, § 434; to introduce a wish or lamentation, § 421, 4.

The uses of *þæt* correspond with those of Goth. *patei*, O. H. Ger. *daz*, and generally with Lat. *ut, quod*, Gr. ὅτι, ὡς, ἵνα, and ὅπως, Sansk. *jat, játhâ*.

2. **þætte**<*þæt þe* has the same uses as *þæt;* for examples, see Grein.

3. **þæt is**, introduces an explanatory clause: *ongunnon hi þæt apostolice líf onhŷrigean, þæt is, on singalum gebedum Drihtne þeôpdon*, they began to imitate the apostolic life, that is, they served the Lord in continual prayers (Bêd., 1, 26); *mid feâpum brôðrum, þæt is, seofenum oðde eahtum*, (he lived) with few brothers, that is, seven or eight (Bêd., 4, 3).

Nemlîce is given by Koch and Thorpe for Lat. *videlicet*, like English *namely;* but it does not occur in the passages cited by them. Ælfric translates *videlicet* by *pitodlîce*, Gram., p. 40.

4. **Hû**, how, object of cognition: *pê gehŷrdon hû gê ofslogon*,, we heard how (that) ye slew (two kings) (Jos., ii, 10); *gesâpon hû hê pæs astîgende*, we saw how (that) he ascended into heaven (Nic., 18), frequent.

Prepositions sometimes govern clauses: *stôd ofer þêr þæt cild pæs*, stood over where the child was (Matt., ii, 9).

469. Interrogative Conjunctions.

1. **Hpæðer**: *befran hpæder folc Cristen pâre*, asked whether the people were Christian (Hom., 2, 120).

2. **Gif**: *frægn gif him pâre*, asked if to him were (B., 1319).

3. Similar is the use of *hpanon*, whence; *hpâr*, where; *hpænne*, when; *hpider*, whither; *hû*, how, and the like, see § 397–8.

4. For *ne*, *ac*, *ah*, *hû*, *lâ*, as strengthening particles, see § 397.

470.—B. *Adjective Clauses.*

These are connected to their substantive,

1. By relative pronouns, §§ 379–385, 427.

2. By relative adverbs, § 398, 2.

(*a.*) Adverbs of place connect to names of places; of time, to names of time, etc.; *on sumum dæge, þâ þâ Godes englâs cômon*, on a day when God's angels came (Hom., 2, 446).

C. *Adverbial Clauses.*

471.—I. **Place.**—The connectives are relative adverbs: *þâr*, where (§ 428); *þâr þâr*, North. *suâ huer*, wherever (John, xii, 26); *ne mæge gê cuman þyder ic fare*, ye can not come whither I go (John, viii, 21); *huer*, where (North., Matt., vi, 21); *spâ hpâr spâ*, wherever (§ 428); *spâ hpider spâ*, whithersoever (§ 428).

Correlative *þâr . . . þâr* (Matt., vi, 21).

472.—II. **Time.** 1. Adverbial conjunctives mentioned under the subjunctive, § 429: **âr** *þon þæt* (John, iv, 49, North.), *âr þon þe* (Jud., 252), *âr þon* (C., 2, 20), *âr*, before (B., 676); *âr . . . âr* (B., 1370);—**oð** *þæt*, *oð*, till (§ 429, *a*);—*þonne*, *hponne*, *þenden*, *spâ lange spâ*, *þâ hpile þâ* (§ 429, *b*).

2. Others with prepositions: **æfter** *þam þe ic ârîse, ic cume*, after I arise I will come (Mc., xiv, 28); **mid** *þam þe* (Hom., 2, 136), *mid þŷ þe* (Matt., xxvii, 12), *mid þŷ*, whilst (Bêd., 1, 1);—**of** *þon*, since (Mc., ix. 20, North.); —**on**-*mang* (*âmang*) *þam þe hê þâr pæs*, while he was there (Chr., 1091), *on þam þe*, while (Chr., 1050);—**sið** *þan*, since (B., 656), as soon as (604), after that (106); *siððon þæt* (Chr., 1128);—**tô** *þon þæt*, until (B., 2591).

3. Without prepositions,—pronominal: **þâ**, when (B., 632); *þâ . . . þâ* (Matt., ii, 3), *þâ þâ . . . þâ* (Matt., iv, 2), *þâ þe . . . þâ* (Chr., 1013), when . . . then;—*mid þam þe . . . þâ* (Hom., 2, 450), *mid þŷ þe . . . þâ* (Ap., 5), *on þam þe . . . þâ* (Chr., 1049), *âmang þam þê . . . þâ* (Nic., 15), whilst . . . then; *on sumum dæge . . . þâ*, on a day . . . then (Hom., 2, 446); *sôna pæs þe . . . þâ*, as soon after as . . . then (Bêd., 1, 12);—**þæs** *þe*, after that (Bêd., 1, 11);—**nu** (with causal shade), now that (Sat., 387); *nu . . . nu*, now . . . since (C., 403).

4. From nouns: **hpîlum** (*-on, -an*) . . . *hpilum* (Ex., 156, 30), *hpile* . . . *hpile* (Hy., 3, 44, 45), sometimes . . . sometimes; *þâ hpile þe* . . . *þâ hpile*, while . . . then (Oros., 2, 4, 5);—**sôna** *spâ* . . . *spâ*, as soon as . . . so soon (Bêd., 1, 1); *sôna þæs þe* . . . *þâ*, as soon (after) as . . . then (Bêd., 1, 12).

473.—III. **Manner**: **æfter** *þam þe*, after the manner that (Luc., ii, 24); —**eal spâ**, see *spâ*;—**ón efn**, *efen spâ*, likewise (Ps., 138, 6);—**gelîce**: *elpendes hŷd pyle drincan pætan gelice and spinge dêð*, elephant's hide will soak up water like (as) a sponge doth (Oros., 5, 7, 2); *spylce gelice and seô pêre*, such as if she were (Oros., 2, 4, 6);—**hû**, see § 468, 4;—**spâ**: *beôð gleâpe spâ næddran*, be wise as serpents (Matt., x, 16); *spâ spâ*, so as (Hom., 2, 452); *gelîcôst spâ*, most as if (Ex., 53, 15); *eal spâ*, wholly as (Ælfrc.); *spâ . . . þâ*, as soon as . . . then (Ex., 200, 16); *spâ spâ . . . spâ*, as . . . so (Hom., 2, 450). Before and after an adjective or adverb: *spâ fela spâ*, so many as (Ælfrc.); *spâ lange spâ*, so long as (Mc., ii, 19); *spâ same spâ*, just as (Oros., 2, 4, 8); etc. Interrogatives: *spâ hpêr spâ*, (to such place as)=wheresoever (Matt., xxiv, 28);—with comparatives: *spâ hê byð yldrâ, spâ hê fægerra byð*, as it becomes older, so it becomes fairer (Bêd., 1, 1);—**spilce**, as if (§ 430).

(*a.*) Intensity: (*tô*) *þæs þæt*, to such a degree that (Bêd., 4, 28); (*tô*) *þæs þe*, so far as (B., 2410, 1350); *þŷ . . . þŷ: bið þŷ heardra, þê spiðor beâtað*, it becomes the harder, the stronger they beat against it (C., 80, 8).

(*b.*) Comparison: **þonne**: *seô sâpul is mâ þonne se lichama*, the soul is more than the body (Luc., xii, 23).

(*c.*) Consecutive: *spâ*, § 430, *b*; *þæt*; *spâ þæt*, § 434.

474.—IV. **Causal**, § 466.

475.—V. **Conditional**: *gif, on þæt gerâd, þið þam þe*, and the negative *bûton, nefne, nemne, nymðe, bûtan þænne, bûtan þâ*, are illustrated in § 431;—*þêr*, if (C., 797); *se þe pille*, whoever will, *spâ hpâ spâ*, whoever, see hypothetical relatives, § 427);—*nêre þæt*, if it were not that (Chr., 943); **ono nu**, if now (Bêd., 1, 27); *ono gif*, same; compare *gelice* **and**, § 473, III; *an* and *and* for *if* occur in Layamon, and are common in old English.

476.—VI. **Concessive**: *þeâh*, though, see § 432; *spâ*: *forgif ûs gyltâs, spâ þê þið þê oft âbylgeað*, forgive us our debts, though we against thee often sin (Hy., 6, 22).

477.—VII. **Final**: *þæt*, and the negative *þŷ læs þe*, see § 433; *tô þam þæt*, to the end that (John, i, 31).

Conjunctions Omitted.

478. **Copulatives** are often omitted.

1. Where clauses are numbered by adverbs: *first . . . secondly*, etc.
2. Where recurring words mark the related clauses: *eâlâ, þæt ic eam ealles leâs . . ., þæt ic ne mæg gerêcan*, Alas, *that I* am of all bereft

that I may not reach (heaven) (C., 275, 7); *singaḍ, singaḍ*, sing, sing (Psa., xlvi, 6); not so common as in English.

3. Between circumstances closely related, especially a climax: *hê is mægnâ spêd, heafod ealrâ heâhgesceaftâ, freâ ælmihtig*, he is of power the essence, head of all high creatures, Lord Almighty (C., 3).
4. Between antithetic clauses or words: *pudu bær sunu, fæder fŷr*, wood the son bore, the father fire (C., 2887).

(*a.*) Sometimes they are omitted from part only of a row of copulates: *fŷr, forst, hægel, and snâp*, fire, frost, hail, and snow (Ps., cxlviii, 8);—especially between sets of pairs: *frige and þeôpe, æḍele and unæḍele*, free and serf, noble and unnoble (Ap., 12).

479. **Disjunctives** are **seldom** omitted.

Sometimes between sets of pairs: *gif pind cymḍ þestan oḍḍe eâstan, sûḍan oḍḍe norḍan*, if wind come from west or east, (or) from south or north (C., 50, 10).

480. **Adversatives** are **often** omitted.

Between antithetic clauses or words, especially between a positive and negative: *ne gelyfe þê . . . þê sylfe gehŷrdon*, we do not believe (on your report), we ourselves heard (John, iv, 42).

481. **Causals** and illatives are **very often** omitted, John, ii, 25; Gen., xi, 30.

---

482. PRINCIPAL RULES OF SYNTAX.

SUBSTANTIVES.

Agreement.

I. A **predicate** noun denoting the same person or thing as its **subject**, agrees with it in *case*, § 286.

II. An **appositive** agrees in *case* with its **subject**, § 287.

NOMINATIVE CASE.

III. The **subject** of a *finite* verb is put in the **nominative**, § 288.

VOCATIVE CASE.

IV. A **compellative** is put in the **vocative**, § 289.

ACCUSATIVE CASE.

Objective Combinations.

V. The **direct object** of a *verb* is put in the **accusative**, § 290.

VI. **Impersonals** of *appetite* or *passion* govern an **accusative** of the person suffering, § 290, *c.*

VII. Some verbs of **asking** and **teaching** may have **two accusatives**, one of a *person*, and the other of a *thing*, § 292.

Quasi-predicative Combinations.

VIII. The **subject** of an *infinitive* is put in the **accusative**, § 293.

IX. Some verbs of **making**, **naming**, and **regarding** may have **two accusatives** of the *same person* or thing, § 294.

Adverbial Combinations.

X. The **accusative** is used to express **extent** of time and **space after** verbs, § 295.

XI. The **accusative** is used with **prepositions**, § 295, *c*.

Dative and Instrumental Cases.

Objective Combinations.

XII. An object of **influence** or **interest** is put in the **dative**, § 297.

XIII. Verbs of **granting**, **refusing**, and **thanking** may take a **dative** and **genitive**, § 297, *d*.

XIV. Words of **nearness** and **likeness** govern the **dative**, § 299.

XV. The **instrumental** or **dative** may denote an object of **mastery**, § 300.

XVI. Some words of **separation** may take an object **from which** in the **dative** or **instrumental**, § 301.

Adverbial Combinations.

XVII. The **instrumental** or **dative** may denote **instrument**, **means**, **manner**, or **cause**, § 302.

XVII. The **instrumental** or **dative** may denote **price**, § 302, *c*.

XVIII. The **instrumental** or **dative** may denote **measure of difference**, § 302, *d*.

XIX. The **instrumental** or **dative** may denote an **object sworn** by, § 302, *e*.

XX. The **comparative** degree may govern a **dative**, § 303.

XXI. The **dative** may denote **time when** or **place where**, § 304.

XXII. A **substantive** and **participle** in the **dative** may make an adverbial clause of **time**, **cause**, or **co-existence**, § 304, *d*.

XXIII. The dative with a preposition may denote an object of influence or interest, association, mastery, or separation; or an instrumental, ablative, or locative adverbial relation, § 305. **Instrumental**, §§ 306–308.

GENITIVE.

Attributive Combinations.

XXIV. An **attributive genitive** may denote the **possessor** or **author** of its *subject*, § 310.

XXV. An **attributive genitive** may denote the **subject** or **object** of a *verbal*, § 311.

XXVI. An **attributive genitive** may denote the **whole** of which its subject is **part**, § 312.

XXVII. An **attributive genitive** may denote a **characteristic** of its *subject*, § 313.

Predicative Combinations.

XXVIII. A **predicate** substantive may be put in the **genitive** to denote a **possessor** or **characteristic** of the subject, or the **whole** of which it is part, § 314.

Objective Combinations.

XXIX. The **genitive** may denote an **exciting** object, § 315.

XXX. Verbs of **asking, accusing, reminding,** may take an **accusative** and **genitive**, § 315, *a*.

XXXI. Verbs of **granting, refusing,** and **thanking** may take a **dative** and **genitive**, § 315, *b*.

XXXII. The **genitive** may denote an object affected **in part**, § 316.

XXXIII. The **genitive** may denote an **object of separation**, § 317.

XXXIV. The **genitive** may denote an **object of supremacy** or use, § 318.

XXXV. The **genitive** or **instrumental** may denote the **material** of which any thing is made or full, § 319.

XXXVI. The **genitive** in combination with *adjectives* may denote **measure**, § 320.

XXXVII. The **genitive** in combination with *adjectives* may denote the **part** or **relation** in which the quality is conceived, § 321.

Adverbial Combinations.

XXXVIII. The **genitive** may denote **by what way**, § 322.

XXXIX. The **genitive** may denote **time when**, § 323.

XL. The **genitive** may denote **means, cause,** or **manner**, §§ 324, 325.

XLI. The genitive with a preposition is sometimes used to denote instrumental, ablative, or locative adverbial relations, § 326.

Prepositions.

XLII. A **preposition** governs a **substantive**, and shows its **relation** to some other word in the clause, § 327.

Adjectives.

XLIII. An **adjective** agrees with its **substantive** in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, § 361.

XLIV. The **weak forms** are used after the **definite article**, **demonstratives**, and **possessives**; and often in attributive *vocatives*, *instrumentals*, and *genitives*. **Comparative** forms are all weak, § 362.

Pronouns.

XLV. A **substantive pronoun** agrees with its **antecedent** in *gender*, *number*, and *person*, § 365.

Adverbs.

XLVI. **Adverbs** modify *verbs*, *adjectives*, and other *adverbs*, § 395.

Verbs.

Agreement.

XLVII. A **finite verb** agrees with its **subject** in *number* and *person*, § 401.

Voices.

XLVIII. The **active** voice is used to make the *agent* the *subject* of predication, § 408.

XLIX. The **passive** voice is used to make the direct *object* of the action the *subject* of predication, § 409.

Tenses.

L. **Principal** tenses depend on **principal** tenses, **historical** on **historical**, § 419.

Modes.

LI. The **indicative** is used in *assertions*, *questions*, and *assumptions* to express **simple predication**, § 420.

LII. The **subjunctive** is used to express **mere possibility**, **doubt**, or **wish**, § 421.

LIII. The **subjunctive** may be used by **attraction** in clauses **subordinate** to a subjunctive, § 422.

LIV. The **subjunctive** may be used in a **substantive** clause expressing something *said*, *asked*, *thought*, *wished*, or *done*, § 423.

LV. The **subjunctive** may be used in **indefinite adjective** clauses, § 427.

LVI. The **subjunctive** may be used in **indefinite** adverbial clauses of **place**, § 428.

LVII. The **subjunctive** may be used in adverbial clauses of **future** or *indefinite time*, § 429.

LVIII. The **subjunctive** may be used in clauses of **comparison** expressing that which is *imagined* or *indefinite*, or descriptive of a *force*.

LIX. The **subjunctive** is used in a **protasis** when proposed as **possible**, the *imperfect* when assumed as *unreal*, § 431.

LX. The **subjunctive** may be used in a **concessive** clause, § 432.

LXI. The **subjunctive** is used in clauses expressing **purpose**, § 433.

LXII. The **subjunctive** may express a **result**, § 434.

LXIII. The **potential** expresses **power**, liberty, permission, necessity, or duty, § 435.

LXIV. The **imperative** is used in **commands**, § 444.

XLV. The **infinitive** is construed as a **neuter noun**, § 446.

XLVI. The **gerund** after the **copula** expresses what *must*, *may*, or *should* be done, § 451.

LXVII. The **gerund** is sometimes used to describe or define a **noun**, § 452.

LXVIII. The **gerund** may be used as a **final object** to express an act **on** the first object, § 453.

LXIX. The **gerund** is used to denote the **purpose** of motion, § 454.

LXX. The **gerund** with an **adjective** may express an act for which any thing is *ready*, or in respect to which any thing is *pleasant*, *unpleasant*, *easy*, *worthy*, § 454.

LXXI. A **participle** agrees with its **substantive** in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, § 456.

LXXII. A **participle** may **govern the case** of its verb, § 456.

INTERJECTIONS.

LXXIII. The **interjection** has the syntax of a **clause**, § 461.

CONJUNCTIONS.

LXXIV. **Co-ordinate** conjunctions connect **sentences** or **like parts** of a sentence, § 462.

LXXV. A **subordinate conjunction** connects a **subordinate clause** and the **word** with which it combines, § 467.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES.

483. **General rules** for the arrangement of words and clauses are found in every language.

The Latin order is, 1. subject; 2. attributives; 3. adverbial factors; 4. objective factors; 5. verb.

The German is, 1. attributives; 2. subject; 3. adverbial factors; 4. objective factors; 5. verb.

The Anglo-Saxon is, 1. attributives; 2. subject; 3. verb; 4. objective factors; 5. adverbial.

Deviation from the general rules is frequent in all languages. This is either **rhetorical** or **poetical**, for perspicuity, emphasis, or euphony, or **historical**, preserving relics of old habits of the language. When any word is removed from its normal place, its **attraction** may take other words from their places.

(*a.*) These deviations are generally freest in the early literature of early nations. Objects are there presented concretely with many attributes picturesquely grouped, and inverted constructions and unusual combinations are sought as part of the art of the poet and orator. There is hardly a conceivable collocation of which examples may not be found in the Anglo-Saxon poetry, and the artificial meters and ornate periods of the Greeks and Romans. Very much of this freedom is still retained by the English poets and ornate prose writers. But the tendency of advancing speech is to an analysis of objects of thought, and to the use of simple clauses, orderly arranged.

The inflected languages allow more freedom in the placing of adjectives. In other combinations, the separable signs of inversion and of specific relations, possessed by the later analytic languages, would seem to leave them freer.

(*b.*) The additions of Alfred to Orosius, and his prefaces, have been specially studied as models of natural arrangement in Anglo-Saxon.

Predicative Combinations.

484.—1. The subject precedes the predicate.

(*a.*) So throughout the Indo-European tongues; in the Semitic the verb leads.
(*b.*) The rule holds for quasi-clauses, § 281.

2. The copulative verb or auxiliary precedes the predicative noun or verb.

485. *Exceptions.*

1. Declarative clauses.

(*a.*) **Emphasis.** The verb or predicative noun may begin a clause for emphasis: (verb very common in poetry, rare in prose) *stôd se þrâda boda*, stood the fell envoy (C., 686); *pæs se feônd ful neâh*, was the fiend full nigh (C., 688);—(noun, not very common even in poetry) *mycel is se fæder*, great is the father (St. Bas. 6); *þarâ pêron six stæl-hrânâs*, of these were six decoy deers (Oros., 1, 1, 15).

(*b.*) **Attraction.** When an object or adverbial factor begins a clause, the predicate is *often* drawn before the subject: (direct object) *fela spellâ him sædon þâ Beormâs*, many tales to him told the Beorms (Oros., 1, 1, 14);—

(dative) *and him pæs â pid sæ̂*, to him was always a wide sea (1, 1, 13);—(adverb) *ne mette hê ær nân gebûn land*, not met he before any inhabited land (1, 1, 13); *þâ fôr hê norðrihte*, then went he northward (1, 1, 13); *þær sceal beôn gedrinc*, there shall be drinking (1, 1, 21); *þær is mid Êstum þeâp*, there is among the Esthonians a custom (1, 1, 21); *on þâm môrum eardiað Finnâs*, in the moors dwell Finns (1, 1, 16).

(*c.*) **Inserted clauses** are often inverted: *ic þât, cpæð Orosius*, I know, quoth Orosius (5, 1, 1, and often; but in Alfred's own narration, *hê cpæð*, 1, 1, 16). See also correlatives, § 485, 5, *a*.

2. Interrogative clauses.

In interrogative clauses the verb regularly precedes the subject, unless the subject contains the interrogative pronoun (so in other tongues): *lufâst þû mê*, lovest thou me? (John, xxi, 15); but with an interrogative particle there is often no inversion. See, for examples, §§ 397–399. Questions of suggestion with no interrogative particle occur: *oððe þê ôðres sceolon abidan*, or we for another shall look? (Matt., xi, 3).

3. Exclamatory clauses.

Exclamations with interrogative words often have the verb before the subject: *eâ lâ! hû unprêst is pela*, alas! how unstable is wealth (Chr., 1087); often: *eâ lâ, hû egeslic þeôs stôp is*, how awful this place is (Gen., xxviii, 17); so in other tongues, § 421, 4.

4. Imperative clauses.

In imperative clauses the verb precedes the subject (so in other tongues): *hâl þæs þû*, be thou whole (Matt., xxvii, 29); *purðe gôd se ende*, may the end be good (Chr., 1066). The subject sometimes precedes a subjunctive form: *sib si mid eôpic*, peace be with you (Ex., 282, 25); for other examples, see § 421, 3.

5. Co-ordinate clauses.

The verb often follows next to the conjunction: *and licgað pilde môrâs piðˊ eâstan*, and lie wild moors eastward (Oros., 1, 1, 16); *and beraðˊ þâ Cpênâs hyrâ scypu ofer land*, and the Cwens bear their ships over land (1, 1, 17); *ac him pæs pêste land*, but to him was waste land (1, 1, 13). Compare § 485, *b*.

(*a.*) **Correlatives** often have the second clause inverted: *ponne his gestreôn beôðˊ þus eal âspended, ponne byrðˊ man hine ût*, when his wealth is thus all spent, then beareth one him out (1, 1, 22). **Parallelism** is a marked feature of poetry; the second clause is often inverted: *gârsecg hlynede, beôton brimstreâmâs*, ocean roared, beat the sea waves (An., 239).

6. Subordinate clauses.

(*a.*) **Substantive** clauses generally have the subject first, even though an interrogative (in *oratio obliqua*): *hê âxôde hû þære þeôde nama pære*, he asked what the people's name might be (Hom., 2, 120).

(*b.*) **Adjective** clauses are inverted when the relative is governed by a preposition: *eal flǽsc, on þam þe is lifes gâst*, all flesh in which is the breath of life (Gen., vi, 17);—sometimes with no preposition: *ǽnne, þam pæs Iudas nama*, one, to whom was Judas a name (El., 584).

(*c.*) **Adverbial** clauses of **place** and **time** are rarely inverted: *þonne þǽr biđ man deâd, hê liđ*, when there is one dead, he lieth (Oros., 1, 1, 21); —**modal** sometimes: *spâ stôd se deofol spâ spâ dêđ se blinde*, so stood the devil as doth the blind man (Hom., 2, 446);—**conditional** and **concessive**, if without sign: *biđ se tor þyrel*, be the door opened (Jul., 402); *næfde hê næfre spâ mycel yfel gedôn*, had he never so much evil done (=though he had) (Chr., 1087);—sometimes with: *næfde hê peâh*, he had not though (Oros., 1, 1, 15).

7. Quasi-clauses.

(*a.*) **Participles** sometimes precede their subjects: *ealle niht spincende pê*, all night toiling, we (took nothing) (Luc., v, 5);—absolute: *rixiendum Eâdbaldum*, Eadbald ruling, (Mellitus departed) (Chr., 616).

(*b.*) **Factitives** sometimes precede for emphasis: *bearnleâsne gê habbađ mê gedônne*, childless ye have made me (Gen., xlii, 36).

486. Exceptions to the second rule are frequent, § 484, 2.

Gefaren hæfdon, they had gone (Bêd., 1, 23); *hê gyldan pille*, he will pay (B., 1184); *oferseôn mǽge*, may look over (Oros., 1, 1, 18); *eal þæt his man erian mæg*, all that his man may till (1, 1, 16); *þǽr hit smalôst pǽre*, wherever it smallest were (1, 1, 16); *ođđe hyt eal âlêd biđ*, till it all laid is (1, 1, 22); *polde hyne genemnedne beôn*, wished him to be named (Luc., i, 62). So in the old French and other early Romanic tongues (Diez, 3, 439).

Attributive Combinations.

487. Attributive adjectives or genitives stand next before their substantive, appositives or prepositions with their cases next after.

So in the Teutonic tongues. In Latin, attributives generally follow their substantive. The Greek is freer. The old Romanic were free, the new have different habits for different words (Diez, 3, 433).

1. **Before.** Descriptives: *pilde morâs*, wild moors (Oros., 1, 1, 16); *hpæles bâne*, whale's bone (1, 1, 15);—definitives, pronominal: *on sumum stôpum*, in some places (1, 1, 16); *heorâ spêdâ*, their wealth (1, 1, 15);—numerals: *tpâm pucum*, in two weeks (1, 1, 16).
2. **After.** Appositive: *his hlâforde Ælfrêde*, (said to) his lord, Alfred (1, 1, 13); *Sidroc, se geonga*, Sidroc, the young (Chr., 871), so in Romanic (Diez, 3, 431);—with preposition: *reâf of hǽrum*, garment of hair (Matt., iii, 4).

488. A definitive precedes a descriptive.

Se betsta hpæl-huntaƀ, the best whale hunting (Oros., 1, 1, 14); *þâ pildan hrânâs*, the wild rein-deer (1, 1, 15); *ân mycel eâ*, a great river (1, 1, 13); *þone ylcan sæs earm*, (they have) the same sea's arm (1, 1, 12); *fram his âgnum hâme*, from his own home (1, 1, 13). So in other tongues.

489. Of definitives, quantitatives precede demonstratives, which precede possessives, which precede articles, which precede numerals.

Quantitatives: *eal þeôs poruld*, all this world (C., 604); *ealle his spêdâ*, all his goods (Oros., 1, 1, 22); *ealle þâ men*, all the men (1, 1, 22); *butu þâ scypu*, both the ships (Luc., v, 7); *healfne þone speoran*, half the neck (Jud., 105; Mc., vi, 23); *sume þâ bôcerâs*, some of the scribes (Matt., ix, 3); *mid feâpum þâm getrŷpestum mannum*, with a few of the truest men (Ap., 6); *ænig ôƀer þing*, any other thing (John, x, 29). So in Romanic (Diez, 3, 438).

Demonstratives: *þâs mine pord*, these my words (Matt., vii, 24).

Possessives: *min se gecorena sunu*, my (the) chosen son (Matt., iii, 17).

Articles: *on þære ânre mile*, in the one mile (Oros., 1, 1, 22); *on þæm ôƀrum þrîm dagum*, in the second three days (Oros., 1, 1, 13; Chr., 897). So in Romanic (Diez, 3, 436).

(*a.*) *Forma* (first) and *ôƀer* (second, other) are sometimes used in the plural describing a class, and are then arranged as descriptives, § 488: *þâ þreô forman gebedu*, the three first prayers (Hom., 1, 270); *þegen ôƀre mânfulle*, two other malefactors (Luc., xxiii, 32), so in other languages: ἑπτὰ τὰς ἐσχάτας, Lat. *septem novissimas*, the *seven last* (plagues) (English Bible, Rev., xv, 1; xxi, 9); I read to Albert *the three first* cantos of the Lay of the Last Minstrel (Queen Victoria, Life in the Highlands, p. 46); our *two eldest* children (Same, 76, 234); *two other* keepers (Same, 70); *in den sechs ersten conjugationen* (J. Grimm, D. G., 1, 1038); *les onze premiers chapitres*, the eleven first chapters (Renan, Hist. Sem. Lang., 1, 27); *las dos primeras partes* (Don Carlos, quoted in Motley, R. D. R., iii, 193); *las cuatro primeras* (Don Quijote, 352); *i dieci primi libri* (Diez, 3, 436).

(*b.*) The English *a*, *an*, after *many*, *such*, *half*, *too* (great), *so* (great), *how* (great), *as* (great), etc., is in the Old English, but not in Anglo-Saxon: *manig burh*, many (a) town (Oros., 1, 1, 20), etc.

490. *Exceptions.*

1. **Descriptive** adjectives sometimes follow.

(*a.*) **Two** descriptives the substantive often stands **between** (so in the Romanic tongues [Diez, 3, 435]): *spiƀe micle merâs fersce*, very large seas fresh (Oros., 1, 1, 17); *tamrâ deôrâ unbebohtrâ*, tame deer unbought (1, 1, 15);—often with a conjunction: *gôd man and clæne*, good man and pure (Chr., 1056);—sometimes both precede: *þam fægerestan reâdan hipe*, of

the fairest red hue (Gt. G., 1); *for þêm mistlicum and manigfealdum þeoruld-bisgum*, for the various and manifold secular occupations (Boet., Pref.);—sometimes both follow: *ealrâ þingâ, gesepenlîcrâ and ungesepenlicrâ*, of all things seen and unseen (Hom., 1, 274).

(*b.*) In poetry: *glêd-egesa grim*, fire-fear grim (B., 2650); *magopegn módig*, hero spirited (B., 2757); *mihtig* (1519), etc. Poetic inversion is used in all languages (Diez, 3, 430).

2. **Definitives** often follow.

(*a.*) Quantitatives: *þêr bid medo genôh*, there is mead enough (Oros., 1, 1, 20); *þâs land eal hýraþ*, those lands all belong (to Denmark) (1, 1, 20); *land eal*, all lands (Sal., 185); *ûre ealrâ môder*, mother of us all (Bas. Hex., 11); *magodriht micel*, great youth-throng (B., 67); *manig* (B., 838); *heorâ begrâ eâgan*, eyes of them both (Gen., iii, 7);—(*b.*) possessives, in poetry often: *þeôden min*, master mine (B., 365); *hlâford þinne*, lord thine (B., 267); *sinne*, his (B., 2789); *ûserne*, our (B., 3107); *eôperne*, your (B., 2889);—(*c.*) numerals, rare (*þâm æðelestum ceastrum ânes þana þrittigum*, with the noblest towns, thirty less one (Bêd., 1, 1). So sometimes Romanic derivatives of *totus, tantus, talis*, and possessives (Diez, 3, 436, 437).

3. **Genitives** partitive and characteristic freely follow.

Numerals (regularly): *tþêntig sceâpâ*, twenty of sheep (Oros., 1, 1, 15);—other words (occasionally): *on ôðre healfe þæs môres*, on the other side of the moor (1, 1, 17); *nân þing grênes*, nothing green (Exod., x, 15); *feôper circulâs hpites hipes*, four circles of white hue (Chr., 1104);—possessive and other genitives may sometimes follow, §§ 310–313.

4. **Appositives** in the genitive are often separated by a governing word: *Aldpulfes dôhtor þæs cyninges*, daughter of Aldwulf the king (St. G., 18): this was common as late as the Morte d'Arthure.

5. Any attributive may be separated by words which modify it, from its subject. Poetry allows the interposition of parenthetic clauses even, between the adjective and noun.

6. For **participles** and **adjectives** in quasi-predicative combinations, see 484, *b*.

491. Objective Combinations.

1. **Objects** follow the *verb* or *predicate adjective*.

2. A *genitive* follows a *dative* which follows an *accusative*.

For the factitive object, see §§ 484, *b*; 485, 7, *b*.

Hi brohton sume þæm cyninge, they brought some to the king (Oros., 1, 1, 14); *benæman nergendne Crist roderâ rices*, to deprive the Savior Christ of heaven's kingdom (C., 286, 3); *ondrêd hê him þæs*, he took dread to himself at that (John, xix, 8). A dative and genitive are seldom found after the same verb, § 492, 3. See after adjectives, §§ 315–319.

492. *Exceptions.*

1. **Emphasis.** An object often begins a clause for emphasis: *þâ deôr hî hâtaþ hrânâs*, those deer they call rein-deer (Oros., 1, 1, 15); sometimes

a repeating pronoun follows: *þâ têđ hi brohton sume þæm cyninge*, these teeth they brought some (of) to the king (1, 1, 15).

(*a*.) So the *interrogative* regularly: *hpæt gôdes dô ic*, what good must I do? (Matt., xix, 16).

2. **Relics.** In German objects precede their verb, and their order is (1) *dative*, (2) *accusative*, (3) *genitive*.

(*a*.) A **genitive** object very often immediately precedes the verb or adjective. For examples, see §§ 315–319.

(*b*.) The **dative** of the personal pronoun generally precedes impersonals and copulatives: *him þuhte*, it seemed to him (Oros., 1, 1, 14); *him pæs*, to him was (=he had) (1, 1, 13).

(*c*.) A **direct object** often stands between the subject and verb: *þê hit piton*, we it knew (Oros., 1, 1, 11); *þe spyfteste hors habbađ*, who swiftest horses have (1, 1, 22).

(*d*.) An **object** often stands between the auxiliary and verb: *Hi mâgon cyle gepyrcan*, they can cold produce (Oros., 1, 1, 23).

3. **Attraction.** Inversion of one part of the predicate draws others. Two objects very often precede the verb: *fela spellâ him sæ̂don*, many tales to him told (they) (Oros., 1, 1, 14). See more examples, §§ 297, *a*, 315, *a*, *b*.

(*a*.) The relative is regularly attracted to the beginning of its clause: *gârsecg, þe man Cpên-sæ̂ hæ̂t*, the sea, which one calls Cwen-sea (Oros., 1, 1, 11); *gafole, þe þâ Finnâs him gyldađ*, tribute, which the Finns to them pay (1, 1, 15).

493. Adverbial Combinations.

1. An **adverb** follows its *verb*, but precedes its *adjective* or *adverb*.

2. A **preposition** with its following (attributives+) **noun** follows next the word to which it shows the relation.

494. *Exceptions.*

1. **Emphasis.** Any adverbial factor may begin its clause for emphasis. *On þæm landum eardôdon Engle*, in those lands dwelt Angles (Oros., 1, 1, 19); *Eâsteperd hit mæg biôn syxtig milâ brâd*, eastward it may be sixty miles broad (1, 1, 16); *Ne mette hê*, he met not (1, 1, 13).

(*a*.) Adverbs of **time, place, order,** very often begin a clause: *þâ fôr hê*, then went he (1, 1, 13); *þyder, hê cpæđ*, thither, he said (1, 1, 18); *þonne ærnađ hi ealle*, next run they all (1, 1, 22).

(*b*.) **Interrogatives** regularly begin their clause: *hpær is heorâ God*, where is their God? (Psa., cxiii, 10).

2. **Perspicuity.** When two or more adverbial factors modify the same word, their order is free. They are usually some before and some after the word: *þâ hê þiderpeard seglôde fram Sciringes heale*, when he

thither sailed from Sciringsheal (Oros., 1, 1, 19); *ealle þâ hpîle hê sceal seglian be lande*, all the while he must sail along the land (1, 1, 18).

(a.) In German the order is (1) *time*, (2) *place*, (3) *cause*, (4) *co-existence*, (5) *modality* or negation, (6) *manner*, all before the verb. There is more or less approach to the same order in Anglo-Saxon.

3. **Old habits.** (*a.*) Adverbial factors are very often found **between** the *subject* and *verb*: *þâ hpæl-huntan fyrrest faraḍ*, the whale hunters furthest go (Oros., 1, 1, 13); *hê fram his âgnum hâme fôr*, he from his own home went (1, 1, 13); so regularly the negative: *hŷ ne dorston*, they durst not (1, 1, 13).

(*b.*) Adverbial factors are very often found **between** an *auxiliary* and its *verb*, or the *copula* and *predicate*: *hê mihte on feôper dagum geseglian*, he might in four days sail (1, 1, 13, and everywhere); *þæt land is eâstepeard brâdôst*, the land is eastward broadest (1, 1, 16).

(*c.*) The **adverb** before its adjective or adverb is regular: *hyrâ hŷd biḍ spiḍe gôd*, their hide is very good (1, 1, 14).

(*d.*) The **preposition** is sometimes separated from its case to take the place of an adverb: *Se here him fleâh beforan*, the army him flee before (Chr., 1016); *þe hê on bûde*, which he dwelt on (Oros., 1, 1, 18); *þe heorâ spêdâ on beôd*, which their riches are in (1, 1, 15; 1, 1, 22). Sometimes it follows its case: *hi pyrcaḍ þone cyle hine on*, they produce cold on him (1, 1, 23); *ne dorstòn þêr on cuman*, they durst not there on come (1, 1, 13).

4. **Attraction.** Relative adverbs begin their clause: *hûs, þanon ic eôde*, house whence I went (Matt., xii, 44). For other cases, see § 485, *b*, and examples in § 494, 2.

495. Arrangement of Clauses.

1. **Co-ordinate** clauses are free to follow the order of thought.

(*a.*) **Courtesy.**—Copulate subjects of different persons should have the first person follow the third, and the third follow the second.

A royal speaker may perhaps be an exception: "I and the girls," "I and Alice" (Queen Vict., Life in Highlands, 173).

Subordinate Clauses.

1. **Substantive** clauses regularly follow their leading clause. For examples, see § 468.
2. **Adjective** clauses regularly follow the word they describe. For examples, see § 470, and sections there referred to.
3. **Adverbial** clauses freely take any place in the sentence according to the demands of emphasis, perspicuity, or euphony. They incline to the order of adverbial factors of a clause, §§ 493, 494.

(*a.*) **Conditional** and **concessive** clauses oftenest precede. Examples, §§ 431, 432.

(*b.*) **Insertion.**—Leading clauses are sometimes inserted in subordinates: *and norðepeard, hê cpæð, þǽr hit smalôst pære, þæt hit mihte beôn*, etc., and northward, he said, where it was narrowest, that it might be (three miles broad) (Oros., 1, 1, 16).

(*c.*) **Variations** are found with substantive and adjective clauses after the analogy of substantives and adjectives, §§ 485–490.

PART IV.

PROSODY.

496. **Prosody** treats of the *rhythm* of Poetry.

497. **Rhythm** is an orderly succession of beats of sound.

This beat is called an *ictus* or **arsis**, and the syllable on which it falls is also called the *arsis*. The alternate remission of voice, and the syllables so uttered, are called the **thesis**.

498. **Feet** are the elementary combinations of syllables in verse.

(a.) Feet are named from the order and make of their arsis and thesis. A monosyllabic *arsis*+a monosyllabic *thesis* is a *trochee*; +a dissyllabic *thesis* is a *dactyle*, etc.

Stress. In Anglo-Saxon these depend on the *accented* syllables, which are determined by the stress they would, if the passage were prose, receive to distinguish them from other syllables of the same word, or from other words in the sentence.

Accent is therefore verbal, syntactical, or rhetorical. An unemphatic dissyllable may count as two unaccented syllables, like the second part of a compound. Secondary accents may take the arsis.

1. A **tonic** is a single accented syllable+a pause.
2. A **trochee** is an accented+an unaccented syllable.
3. A **dactyle** is an accented+two unaccented syllables.
4. A **pæon** is an accented+three unaccented syllables.
5. A **pyrrhic** is two unaccented syllables; a **spondee** is two accented; an **iambus** is an unaccented+an accented; an **anapæst** is two unaccented+an accented; a **tribrach** is three unaccented; a single unaccented syllable is called an **atonic**; and unaccented syllables preliminary to the normal feet of a line are called an **anacrusis** (striking up) or *base*.

(b.) **Time.** The time from each ictus to the next is the same in any section. It is not always filled up with sound. More time is given to an accented than an unaccented syllable.

(c.) **Pitch.** The English and most other Indo-Europeans raise the pitch with the verbal accent; the Scots lower it. With the rhetorical accent the pitch varies every way.

(d.) **Expression.** Feet of two syllables are most conversational; those of three are more ornate; those of one syllable are emphatic, like a *thud* or the blows of a hammer. The trochee, dactyle, and pæon, in which the accented syllable precedes, have more ease, grace, and vivacity. Those feet in which the accented syllable comes last have more decision, emphasis, and strength (Crosby, § 695). The Anglo-Saxon meters are trochaic and dactylic; the English oftener iambic and anapæstic.

499. A **verse** is an elementary division of a poem.

It has a twofold nature; it is a series of feet, and also a series of words.

(*a.*) As a series of feet, it is a sing-song of regular ups and downs, such as children sometimes give in repeating rhymes.

As a series of words, each word and pause would be the same as if it were prose, as persons who do not catch the meter often read poetry.

The cantilation never is the same as the prose utterance; lines in which it should be would be prosaic.

The art of versification consists in so arranging the prose speech in the ideal framework of the line that the reader may adjust one to the other without obscuring either, and with continual happy variety.

(*b.*) The manner of adapting the *arsis* and *thesis* to the prose pronunciation is different in different languages. In Sanskrit, and classical Greek and Latin, the *arsis* was laid on syllables having a *long sound*, and variety was found in the play of the prose accent. In other languages, including modern Greek and Latin, the *arsis* is made to fall on *accented* syllables, and free play is given to long and short vowel sounds, and combinations of consonants. The Sanskrit and Greek varied farther from prose speech in the recitation of poetry than modern habits and ears allow. The Hindoos still repeat Sanskrit poetry in recitative.

500. Verses are named from the prevailing foot *trochaic*, *dactylic*, *iambic*, and *anapæstic*, etc.

Verses are named from the number of feet. A **monometer** is a verse of one foot; a **dimeter** of two; a **trimeter** of three; a **tetrameter** of four; a **pentameter** of five; a **hexameter** of six; a **heptameter** of seven; an **octometer** of eight.

(*a.*) A verse is *catalectic* when it wants a syllable, *acatalectic* when complete, *hypercatalectic* when redundant.

501. **Cæsura.**—Anglo-Saxon verses are made in two *sections* or **hemistichs**. The pause between these sections is called the **cæsura**. A *foot cæsura* is made by the cutting of a *foot* by the end of a *word*.

(*a.*) **Expression.** The character of versification depends much on the management of the cæsuras. When the weight of a verse precedes the cæsura, the movement has more vivacity; when it follows, more gravity.

502. **Rime.**—Rime is the rhythmical repetition of letters.

Nations who unite arsis and prose accent need to mark off their verses plainly. They do it by rime. Other nations shun rime.

1. When the riming letters begin their words, it is called **alliteration.**
2. When the accented vowels and following letters are alike, it is called **perfect rime** (=rhyme).
3. When only the consonants are alike, it is called **half rime.**
4. When the accented syllable is final, the rime is *single;* when one unaccented syllable follows, the rime is double; when two, it is *triple.*

(*a.*) **Line-rime** is between two words in the same section. **Final-rime** between the last words of two sections or verses.

503. **Alliteration** is the recurrence of the same initial sound in the first accented syllables of words.

1. **Consonants.**—The first initial consonant of alliterating syllables must be the same, the other consonants of a combination need not be:

Beópulf: *breme*::*blæd* (B., 18); *Caines* : *cynne*::*cpealm* (107); *Cristenrâ*::*Cyriacus* (El., 1069); *cûðe*::*cniht* (B., 372); *funden*::*frôfre* (7); *frætpum* : *flet* (2054); *geong* : *geardum*::*God* (13); *geôgoðe*:: *gleâpôst* (C., 221, 1); *grimma* : *gæst* (B., 102); *heofenum* : *hlæste* (52); *hæleðâ* : *hryre*::*hpate* (2052); *hnîtan*::*hringum* (Rid., 87, 4): *sôdlice*::*speotolan* (B., 141); *scearp* : *scyld*::*scâd* (288); *scriðende*:: *sceapum* (Trav., 135); *Scottâ*::*scip* (Chr., 938); *peôd*::*þrym* (B., 2); *pên* : *plenco*::*prâc* (338).

2. **Vowels.**—A perfect vowel alliteration demands different vowels: *isig* : *ûtfûs*::*æðelinges* (B., 33);—sometimes the same vowels repeat: *eorlâ* : *eorðan*::*eôper* (B., 248).

(*a.*) **sc**, **sp**, or **st** seldom alliterate without repeating the whole combination; but: *scyppend*::*scrifen* (B., 106); *spere* : *sprengde*::*sprang* (By., 137); *strælâ* : *storm*::*strengum* (B., 3117).

(*b.*) Words in **ia-**, **iŏ-**, **iu-**, **Hie-**, alliterate with those in **g-**. They are mostly foreign proper names. See §§ 28, 34.

Iacobes::*gôde* (Psa., lxxxvi, 1, and often); *Iafeð* : *gumrincum* (C., 1552); *Iordane*::*grêne* (C., 1921); *Iôbes*::*God* (Met., 26, 47); *gôda* : *geâsne* ::*Iudas* (El., 924); *Iudêâ*::*God* (El., 209); *gleâp* : *Gode*::*Iuliana* (Jul., 131, and often); *gomen* : *geardum*::*iu* (B., 2459), so frequently *iu*=*geô*, *giô* (formerly) and its compounds; *Hierusolme*::*God* (Ps. C., 50, 134); *gongað* : *gegnunga*::*Hierusalem* (Gûth., 785); written *gold* : *Gerusalem*::*Iudêâ* (C., 260, 11).

(*c.*) It is said that *þ* may alliterate with *s* by Dietrich (Haupt Zeit., x, 323, 362). No sure examples found. C., 287, 23, is a defective line.

504. A perfect Anglo-Saxon verse has three alliterating syllables, two in the first section, the other in the second.

F*rum'*|*sceaft*` | **F***ir'*|*â*` ‖ **F***eorr'*|*an*` | *recc'*|*an*` (B., 91).
the origin of men from far relate.

(*a.*) The repeated letter is called the *rime-letter*; the one in the second couplet the *chief-letter*, the others the *sub-letters*. The **F** of *feorran* in the line above is the *chief-letter*; the **F** in *frumsceaft* and *firâ* the *sub-letters*.

(*b.*) One of the *sub-letters* is often wanting.

(*c.*) Four or more rime-letters are sometimes found.

Le*ânes* . . **Le***ôhte* . . ‖ . . **Lê***te* . . **L***ange* (C., 258).

In pairs: *þæt' hê* | *God'e* | *pold'*|*e*` ‖ *geong'*|*ra*` | *peorð'*|*an*`,
that hé to God would a vassal be (C., 277), where *g* and *p* both rime, and so often.

505. The Anglo-Saxons used line-rime and final-rime as an occasional grace of verse. See § 511.

506. Verse in which alliteration is essential, and other rime ornamental, is the prevailing form in Anglo-Saxon, Icelandic, Old Saxon. Specimens are found in Old High

German. Alliteration in these languages even ran into prose, and is one of the causes of the thoroughness with which the shifting of the initial consonants has affected the whole speech, § 41, B.

507. Verse with final rime, and with alliteration as an occasional grace, is the common form in English and the modern Germanic and Romanic languages. It is common in the Low-Latin verses of the Anglo-Saxon poets, and it is by many supposed to have spread from the Celtic.

Common Narrative Verse.

508. Beda says of rhythm: "It is a modulated composition of words, not according to the laws of meter, but adapted in the number of its syllables to the judgment of the ear, as are the verses of our vulgar poets. * * * Yet, for the most part, you may find, by a sort of chance, some rule in rhythm; but this is not from an artificial government of the syllables. It arises because the sound and the modulation lead to it. The vulgar poets effect this rustically, the skilful attain it by their skill."—Bêd., 1, 57. These remarks on the native poets are doubtless applicable to their Anglo-Saxon verses as well as their Latin; and whatever general rules we may find running through these poems, we may expect to find many exceptional lines, which belong in their places only because they can be recited with a cadence somewhat like the verses around them.

509. The common narrative verse has four feet in each section.

A. 1. **An arsis** *falls* on every prose accent, § 15, and the last syllable of every section. But note contractions below, 7.

2. At least one arsis on a primary accent, or two on other syllables follow the chief alliterating letter, § 504.

3. An arsis *should* fall on the former of two unaccented syllables after an accented long (the vowel long or followed by two consonants), and on the latter after an accented short.

sc*yld'|um`* *bi*|sc*er'e|de`*, ‖ sc*ynd'|an`* *ge*|*ner'e|de`* (Rime Song, 84).

4. An arsis *should not* fall on an unaccented proper prefix (*â-*, *be-*, *ge-*, etc., § 15), or proclitic monosyllables (*be*, *se*, *þe*, etc.), or short endings of dissyllabic particles (*nefne*, *oððe*, *þonne*, etc.), or short tense-endings between two accented shorts in the same section.

5. An arsis *may* fall on a long, on a short between two accents (after a long frequent, after a short, less so), on the former of two unaccented shorts.

g*rorn'* | *torn'* | g*ræf'|eð`*, ‖ g*ræft'* | *ræft'* *hæf'|eð`* (Rime Song, 66).
spylc'e | g*i'* | *gant`* | *âs`* ‖ *þâ'* *þid* | G*od'e* | *punn'* | *on`* (B., 113).
n*ip'|e`* | n*iht'-|peard`* ‖ n*yd'|e`* | *sceol'|de`* (C., 185, 1).
pord' *purð'|i`* | *an`*. ‖ *Veôl'* | *him'* *on* | *inn'* | *an`* (C., 353).
burh' | *tim'|bre`* | *de`* (C., 2840). Rare with short penult of trisyllable.

B. 6. **The thesis** is mute or monosyllabic; but syncope, elision, synizesis, or synalœpha is often needed to reduce two syllables.

7. **An anacrusis** may introduce any section. It is of one syllable, rarely two, sometimes apparently three, with the same contractions as the thesis.

Lêt'on | *þ(â) of'er* | *fif'el* | *þæg'* ‖ *fâm'|i`ge* | *scrið`|an`* (El., 237).
puld'or|-cyn'ing|es`* | *pord'* ‖ *ge)peot'an* | *þâ'* *þâ* | *þît'(i)gan* | *þrŷ` (An., 802).
sp*ic'ôd|(e)* *ymb'* *þâ* | s*âp'|le`* ‖ *þe)* *hir'e* | *êr'* *þâ* | s*ien'(e)* *on|lâh'* (C., 607).

Synizesis of *-anne*, *-lîc*, *-scipe*, *þenden*, and the like. *Synalœpha* of *ge-*, *þe*, and the like.

sorh' *is* | *mê' tô* | **secg'**|*anne'* ‖ *on'* | **sef'an** | *mîn'*|*um'* (B., 473).
prætlîc'ne | *pund'or*|*-maðð'*|*um'* ‖ (B., 2174).
fyrd'|*-sear'o* | **fús'** | *lîcu'* ‖ (B., 232).
eaht'|*ô'don* | **eorl'**|*-scipe'* ‖ (B., 3174).
pes'an | *þend'en ic* | *pcald'*|*e'* ‖ (B., 1859).
þegn'âs | *synd'on ge*|*-þþǣr'*|*e'* ‖ (B., 1230).
þâr'â þe | *pið' spâ* | *mic'*|*lum'* ‖ (C., 2095).
þæt nǣfre)**Grend'**|*el' spâ* | *fel'*|*a'* ‖ **gry'**|*râ' ge*|*frem'e* | *de'* (B., 591).

So we find *hpæðere* (B., 573), dissyllabic; *hine* (B., 688), *ofer* (B., 1273), monosyllabic; and many anomalous slurs in the thesis or anacrusis.

8. The order of the feet is free, varying with the sense. In later poetry, as more particles are used, the fuller thesis grows more common.

9. The Anglo-Saxons like to end a sentence at the cæsura. So Chaucer and his French masters stop at the end of the first line of a rhyming couplet. So Milton says that "true musical delight" is to be found in having the sense "variously drawn out from one verse into another."

10. The two alliterating feet in the first section, and the corresponding pair in the second section, are chief feet. Some read all the rest as thesis.

510. Irregular sections are found with three feet, or two.

1. Sections with contracted words where the full form would complete the four feet.

heân hûses=*heâ'*|*han'* | *hû'*|*ses'* (B., 116).
deâðpic seôn=*deâð'*|*pic'* | *seo'*|*han'* (B., 1275).

2. Sections with three feet and a thesis:

prym' | *(ge)*|*-frun'*|*on'* (B., 2).
lif' | *eâc'* | *(ge)*|*sceôp'* (B., 97).

Heyne finds in Beowulf feet of this kind with *â-*, *æt-*, *be-*, *for-*, *ge-*, *of-*, *on-*, *to-*, *þurh-*. Similar sections with proclitic particles are found: *men'* | *(ne)*|*cunn'*|*on'* (B., 50); *(be)*|*ŷð'*|*lâf'*|*e'* (B., 566); *Lêt'* | *(se)*|*heard'*|*a'* (B., 2977); *(þe)*|*him'* | *þæt'* | *pif'* (C., 707).

3. Sections with Proper Names. Foreign Names are irregular:

Sem' | *and'* | *Cham'* | (C., 1551), and so often.

4. Sections with two feet and a thesis:

man' | *(ge)*|*þeôn'* (B., 25). *Loth'* | *(on)*|*fôn'* (C., 1938).

511. Rhyme is found occasionally in most Anglo-Saxon poems. A few contain rhyming passages of some length. One has been found which is plainly a Task Poem to display riming skill. All sorts of rimes are crowded together in it. It has eighty-seven verses.

LINE-RIME.

Half-rime: **sâr'** | *and'* | **sor'**|*ge'*; ‖ *sûsl'* | *þrôp'*|*ed'*|*on'*,
pain and sorrow; sulphur suffered they (C., 75).

Perfect-rime:

Single: *flâh' | mâh' | flît'|eđ', ‖ flân' | mân' | hpît'|eđ',* [62).
foul fiend fighteth, darts the devil whetteth (Rime-song,
gâst'|â' | peard'|um'. ‖ Hæfđ'|on' | gleâm' and | dreâm',
They had light and joy (C.,
Double: *frôđ'|ne' and | gôđ'|ne' ‖ fæđ'er | Un'|pên'|es',* [12).
wise and good father of Unwen (Trav., 114).
Triple: *fer'|ed|e' and | ner'e|de'. ‖ Fif'|tên'|a' | stôđ'—,*
(God) led and saved (C., 1397).

FINAL-RIME.

Half-rime: *spâ' | lîf' | spâ' | deâđ', ‖ spâ' him | leôf'|re' | bîđ'.*
either life or death, as to him liefer be (Ex., 37, 20; Crist., 596, and a riming passage).

Perfect-rime:

Single: *nê' | forst'|es' | fnæst', ‖ nê' | fŷr'|es' blæst',*
no frost's rage, nor fire's blast,
Double: *ne) hægl'|es' | hryr'|e', ‖ ne) hrîm'|es' | dryr'|e',*
nor hail's fall, nor rime's descent (Phœnix, 15, 16; Ex., 198, 25, where see more).
Triple: *hlûd'|e' | hlyn'e|de'; ‖ hleôđ'|or' | dyn'e|de',*
(The harp) loud sounded; the sound dinned (Rime-song, 28).

LONG NARRATIVE VERSE.

512. The common narrative verse is varied by occasional passages in longer verses. The alliteration and general structure of the long verse is the same as of the common; but the length of the section is six feet. Feet are oftenest added between the two alliterating syllables of the first section, and before the alliterating syllable of the second section.

Spâ' | cpæđ' | snott'|or on | môđ'|e', ‖
ge) sæt' | him' | sund'|or' æt | rûn'|e'. ‖
Til' bid | se'pe his | treôp'|e' ge|heald'|ed': ‖
ne) sceal' | nêf're his | torn' tô | ryc'e|ne'
beorn' | of' his | breôst'|um' â|cŷđ'|an',
nemđ'e hê | êr' pâ | bôt'|e' | cunn'|e',
eorl' | miđ' | eln'|ê' ge|fremm'|an':
pel' bid | pam' pe him | âr'|e' | sêc'|eđ',
frôf're' tô | Fæđ'|er' on | heof'on|um',
pêr' | ûs' | eal' seô | læst'nung | stond'|eđ' (Wanderer, 111+).

(*a.*) Sometimes a section of four feet is coupled with one of six:
ge) pinn'|es' | piđ' | heor'â | pald'|end' ‖ pît'|e' | pol'|iad' (C., 323).

(*b.*) Four or more alliterative letters are found oftener than in common verse. Three seldom fail. A secondary weak alliteration is sometimes found in one of the sections.

(*c.*) This verse is rather a variety of the Common Narrative than another kind.

513. The Common Narrative is the regular Old Germanic verse. Rules 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 7, of § 509, are rules of that verse. In the 5th the Anglo-Saxon uses greater freedom. It also corresponds with the Old Norse *fornyrdalag*. In it Old English alliterating poems are written.

In' a | som'er | ses'|on' ‖ whan) soft' | was' the | sonn'|e'
I) shop'e | me' in | shroud'|es' ‖ as) I' a | shep'e | wer'|e'
In) hab'ite | as' an | her'e|mite' ‖ un)hol'|y' of | work'|es'
Went' | wyd'e | in' þis | world' ‖ wond'|res' tô | her'|e'.
Ac) on' a | May' | morn'yng|e' ‖ on) Mal'|uern'e | hull'|es'
Me' by|fel' a | fer|ly' ‖ of) fair'|y' me | thouȝt'|e'.

Piers the Plowman, 1–6.

(*a.*) The *anacrusis* has a tendency to unite with the following accented syllable, and start an *iambic* or *anapæstic* movement. The change of inflection endings for prepositions and auxiliaries has also favored the same movement. In Old English it often runs through the verses. See Final perfect-rime, § 511.

Alliterative Prose.

514. Some of the Anglo-Saxon prose has a striking rhythm, and frequent alliteration, though not divided by it into verses. Some of the Homilies of Ælfric are so written (St. Cûđbert). Parts of the Chronicle have mixed line-rime and alliteration.

515. Verses with the same general form as the Anglo-Saxon continued to be written in English to the middle of the fifteenth century. Alliteration is still found as an ornament of our poetry, and the old dactylic cadence runs through all racy Anglo-Saxon English style.

So they went | up to the | Mountains ‖ to be|hold the | gardens and | orchards,
The | vineyards and | fountains of | water; ‖ where | also they | drank and | washed themselves,
And did | freely | eat of the | vineyards. ‖ Now there | were on the | tops of those | Mountains,
Shepherds feeding their flocks; and they stood by the highway side.
The pilgrims therefore went to them, and leaning upon their staffs,
As is common with weary pilgrims, when they stand to talk with any by the way,
They asked, Whose Delectable Mountains are these?
And whose be the sheep, that feed upon them?—Bunyan, *Pilgrim's Progress.*

INDEX OF WORDS.

For COMPOUNDS, look at the SIMPLES.

[The figures refer to SECTIONS. √ prefixed, marks a root; — prefixed, marks a suffix; — suffixed, marks a prefix; < or > is placed between two words when one is derived from the other, the angle pointing to the derived word; = means *equivalent to.*]

ANGLO-SAXON.

a, 14, 16, 23.
—<a, 228, 240, 268.
—a<an, 228, 240, 268.
—a<jan, 228.
—a, 246.
—a, 251.
â, 24.
—â, 251.
â—, 15, 254.
â, 129, 254.
abbudisse, 232, 268.
âbufan, 257, 334.
âbûtan, 341.
ac, 260, 262, 397, 465.
acan, 207.
ach, see *ac.*
âcsian, 292.
âctreð, 266.
âdûne, 258.
—ad, 228.
âder, 464.
âdsparing, 266.
af, 129.
âgan, 212.
âgegn, 258.
âgen, 366.
âgên, 341.
âgyldan, 297.
ah, see *ac.*
âh, 212.
âhsie, 35.
âht, 136.
âhte, 36, 212.
âhpæder, 186, 391.
—al, 228.
alan, 207.
âmang, 341.
—an, 251, 257.
an—, 15.
an, 254.
an<unnan, 212.
—ân, 247.
ân, 136, 138, 366, 386.
—ana, 175.
ancor, 270.
and—, 15, 254, 328, 330.
and, 138, 139, 262, 394, 463.
andlong, 259, 329, 330.
and nâ þê læs, 465.
andspar-ian, 15, 297; *—u*, 265.
ânedge, 266.
ânêged, 266.
ânhende, 266.
âno, 262.
Aprelis, 88.
ârfæst, 229, 243.
ârful, 229.
ârian, 297.
ârist, 233.
ârleas, 229.
arn<irnan.
aron, 213.
ârstæf, 229, 235.
ass-a, *—e*, 268.
âstellan, 189.
âp, 228.
âpa, 254.
âpacan, 267.
âpder, 136, 464.
âpiht, 136, 389.
axe, 35.

æ, 14, 16, 23.
æ, 24.
æ, 100.
æ, 129, 263.
æ—, 254.
æcer, 228.
ædeling, 228, 235.
Ædelpulfing, 237.
æf—, 129, 254.
æfre, 251.
æft, 331.
æftan, 252.
æftemest, 127.
æfter, 15, 126, 129, 255, 328, 331, 472, 473.
æftera, 127.
æfterpeardes, 251.
æg, *ægru*, 82, 228.
æg—, 254; *—hpâ*, *—hpæder*, etc., 186, 390, 391, 463.
ægder, 186, 463.
æl—, 259.
ælc, 136, 392.
ælf, *—en*, 268.
ælmeahtig, 266.
æne, 145.
ænig, 136, 387, 489.
ær, 126, 259, 332, 472.
ærest, 127, 129.
ærn, 229.
æt, 15, 254, 328, 333.
æt—, 257.
æt<etan.
ætforan, 333.

b, 27, 30.
bâ, 141.
bacan, 158, 191, 207.
bâd<bîdan.
bal(d)sam, 50, 270.
bannan, 208.
bât, 230.
bæc-ere, *—estre*, 268, 228.
bæclinga, 251.
bæd<biddan.
bæftan, 257, 334.
bær, 230.
—bêre, 229, 243.
bærfôt, 266.
bærn-et, *—ung*, 233.
be<bi.
beâcnian, 297.
beadu, 32, 90, 228.
beadulâc, 233.
beâh<bugan.
beâh, 230.
beald, 36.
bealu, 30, 32, 36; *—fûs*, 242.
bearn, 230, 234, 268.
beâtan, 208.
bebeâdan, 297.
becyme, 299.
be-eâstan, *—foran*, *—geondan*, *—healfe*, etc., 334.
begen, 141, 490.
be-heonan, *—hindan*, *—neodan*, 257, 334.
belgan, 208, 290.
bellan, 208.
bend, 228.
beô, 100.
beôdan, 206.
beôgan<bûgan.
beôn, 177–182, 213, 286, 298, 415.
beoran<beran.
beord, 230.
beorgan, 191, 204.
beornan, 204.
bepêcte, 189.
ber-an, 200, 319; *—e*, 228.
bere, 230.
bergan=beorgan.
bernan, 248.
berning, 233.
berstan, 192, 202.
beâtrgian, 297.
beôtdan, 258.
betra, *betst*, 129.
bêtte, 189.
betpêhs (*x*), *—tpêonum*, 258, 329, 334.
betpuxt, 49.

be þam þe, 466.
bê, bî, be, 15, 44, 254, 257; compounds at 334.
bîdan, 205, 315.
biddan, 199.
bi-g<bî.
bilhd, 35.
bindan, 192, 201.
binnan, 257, 334.
birhd—bergan.
birst, 35.
biscop, 43; **—stôl**, 235.
bît, 230.
bîtan, 205.
biter, 210.
bitor, 242.
blâwern, 229.
blandan, 208.
blâtan, 208.
blâpan, 208.
blêd, 269.
blêt, 35, 208.
blîcan, 205.
blîde, 321.
blind, 104, 105.
blinnan, 201.
blîss, 35.
bôdreâd, 266.
bôma, 234.
blôtan, 208.
blôpan, 208.
i bx<bacan.
bôc, 90, 100, 269.
bôcere, 228.
boga, 32, 230.
bôgan, bôd, 224.
bogen<bûgan.
bohte, 189.
bonnan<bannan.
bôn<bôgan.
bôsom, 50.
box, 270.
brædan, brædan, 202.
brêd<brêdan.
brêdan, 208.
brecan, 199, 200.
bredan, 202, 224.
bregdan, 202, 220, 224.
brengan, 209, 216.
brêdan, 206.
breomu, 77.
brêtan, 206.
brêpan, 206.
brimo, 77.
bringan, 201.
brinnan, 201, 204.
brôc, 91, 100.
brocen<brecan.
brocen<brûcan.
brôder, 41, 87, 100, 228, 252; **—hâd**, 229.
brohte<bringan.
brohtes, 166.
brûcan, 206, 300.
bu, 366, 463.
bûfan, 257, 334.
bûgan, 206.
bûgian, bûgan, bûian, bûpian, bûn, bûen, 221, 224.
bulluca, 236.
burg, 100, 101.
bûtan, 45, 257, 334, 393, 431, 465.
butu, 366; **bâ**, 489.
bycgan, 211.
bŷgan, 248.
bygels, 232.
byrd<beran.
byre, 84, 86.
byrnan<beornan.

c, 27, 28.
—c—, 250.
can, 176, 212, 437.
carcern, 229.
carl—, —cat, —fugol, etc., 269.
câsern, 268.
cat, 268.
cealf, 82.
cear-ful, —leds, 243, 266.
ceds, 35.
ceaster, 33, 90, 101, 270.
cêde, 189.
cennan, cende, 188, 189.
ceorfan, 204.
ceôsan, 197, 206, 290.
ceôpan, 206.
ctdan, 205, 297.
cild, child, 84, 41, 82, 268; **—hâd**, 235; **—isc**, 228, 241.
clâ, 100.
clûnheort, 266.
cleôfan, 206.
clŷ, 269.
clŷfan, 205.
climban, 201.
clingan, 201.
clipie, 189.
clynnan, 188.
clype, 98.
cnâpan, 208.
cnedan, 199.
cnebdan, 206.
cnyssan, 188.
com, 35.
coren<ceôsan.
gecoren(n)e, 119, 197.
corfen<ceorfan.
crâpan, 208.
cræft, 229, 269.
creda, 270.
crebdan, 206.
crepan, 191, 206.
crincan, 201.
cringan, (cg), 201.
crŷppb, 194.
cû, 91, 100.
cûd, 297.
cûde, 37, 176, 212.
cudes, 166.
cuman, 191, 200.
—cund, 229, 241.
cunnan, 212.
curon, 35, 197.
cpædon, 197.
cpealde, 189.
cpealm, 234.
cpeartern, 229.
cpeccan, 209.
cpeden<cpedan.
cpedan, 192, 199, 397.
cpehte<cpeccan.
cpelan, 200.
cpellan, 209.
ge-cpêman, 297.
cpên, 228, 268.
cpiman, 200.
cpincan, 201.
cpist, 35.
cpom gefered, 458.
cycen, 236.
cycene, 239.
cydde<cydan, 297.
cymen<cuman.
cyn, 101, 229.
gecynd, 235.
cynerice, 229, 235.
cyning, 268; **—dôm**, 229.
cyrde, 268.
cyrnel, 256.
cyssan, 188.
cŷst, 35.
cyste, 35, 189.

d, 27, 29.
—d, noun, 228.
—d, comp., 255.
—d, verb, 455.
dafan, 207.
ge-dafenad, 299.
dar=dear.
dæd, 90, 231.
ge-dæde<dôn.
dæg, 71, 229; **—es**, 251.
dægesêge, 265.
deâd, 228, 234.
deâf<dûfan.
deâg, (h)<dûgan.
dear, 176, 212, 439.
dearnunga, 251.
delfan, 203.
dêman, 297.
dêm —a, —end, —ere, 232.
ge-dênrâ>dôn.
deofolcund, 229, 241.
deôg<deâgan.
deôpe, 251.
deôr, 41.
deorcunga, 251.
deorfan, 204.
—der, 228, 252, 255.
derian, 188, 297.
dîde, (y)<dôn.
dippan, 188.
—dl, 228.
dohte<dugan.
dôhtor, 100; **—ru**, 93.
—dôm, 229.
dônnern, 229.
dôn, 160, 168, 177, 213, 225, 297, 406.
dorste<durran.
dragan, 207.
dranc<drincan.
drâf, 230.
drêdan, 208, 218.
drêfan, 248.
dreahte, 189.
dreccan, 209.
drencan, 248.
drencte, 189.
dreôgan, 206.
dreôpan, 206.
dreôrd<drêdan.
dreôsan, 206.
drepan, 191, 199, 220.
drîf-an, —t, 193, 205.
drînc, 231.
drînc-an, —þ, 194, 201.
dropen<drepan.
druncen, 455.
druron<dreôsan.
drŷ, 100.
dûfan, 206.
dugan, 212.
dûn, 101.
durâ, 93.
durran, 176, 212, 439.
dpealde<dpellan.
dpelan, 200.
dpellan, 209.
dpînan, 205.

dyde<*dôn*.
dypte, 189.
dyrstig, 454.

e, 14, 16, 23.
—*e*<*a*, 223.
—*e*<*a*, verb, 164.
—*e*<*ja*, 223, 243, 265.
—*e*<*i*, 265.
—*e*<*ia*, verb, 160.
—*é*, *e*, 251.
—*e*<*an*, 228, 240, 268.
eá, 100.
eá, oh, 263.
eác, 254, 262, 335, 394, 463.
eáde=*eáde*. *eáde*, 124.
eáge, 95.
eágsealf, 266.
eahta, 138, 139.
eal, 33, 136, 251, 259, 395, 490.
eá lá, 263.
eald, 124; —*fæder*, 265.
ealles, 251.
eallunga, 251.
ealne peg, 251.
ealofæt, 265.
ealspá, 463, 473.
eal þá, 489.
eam=*eom*.
ear, 269.
eardigean, 28.
eáre, 98.
earm, 33.
earn<*irnan*.
eart<*eom*.
eást, 251; —*an*, 252; —*emest*, 129; —*erne*, 228.
eáp, 263.
é:te, 189.
ed—, 15, 254; —*nipian*, 15.
—*ed*, 228, 243.
edda, 262.
é:tel, 101.
efen, 15, 259; —*peorcan*, 267; —*lácan*, 299.
efne, 263.
eft, 15.
egesa, 228.
éhte, 35, 189.
el—, 259.
—*el*, 228.
—*ele*, 228.
Elising, 228.
elles, 129, 262, 464; —*hpá*, 136.
—*els*, 228.
embe, 328, 360.
—*en*, 223, 268, 455.
—*ena*, 244.
ende, 269.
—*ende*, 228, 445, 460.
endleofan, 138.
Engl-e, 86, 238; —*isc*, 228, 238, 241.
eóde, 37, 213, 225.
eom, 168, 177, 213, 225, 266, 298, 314, 416, 451.
eornad<*irnan*.
eornóstlíce, 463.
eóp, 130, 366.
eóper, 132, 490.
eópic, 130, 366.
—*er*, compar., 122–129, 255.
—*er*, 228.
—*ere*, 228, 268.
—*erne*, 228, 245.
—*eru*, 228.
—*es*, gen., 62, 251.
—*es*, verb, 166, 225.
—*es*, 223.
—*esa*, 223.
—*esl*, 228.
esol, 41.
—*estre*, 228, 268.
—*et*, 228.
etan, 192, 199.
—*ettan*, 250.

f, 27, 30, 41.
fácenstæf, 229.
fáhan>*fón*.
fand<*findan*.
fangan, 216.
faran, 191, 207, 445.
farbu, 228.
fæder, 228, 232.
fægon<*feón*.
fær, 37.
fæst<*fón*.
—*fæst*, 229, 243.
fæsten, 269.
fæt, 73.
feáh<*feón*.
feald, 209.
—*feald*, 143, 229, 245.
fealdan, 208.
fealde, 189, 209.
fealh<*felgan*.
feallan, 191.
fealupe, 117.
feá(*pa*), 136, 395, 489.
feax, 36.
feccan<*feciaN*, 34.
fecgan, 199.
féd(*ed*), 190.
fédels, 228, 232.
fég-an, —*ean*, 247.
fela, 129, 136, 251.
feld, 269.
feldá, 93.
feld, 36.
felgan, 203.
fellan, 209.
féng<*fón*.
feó, 37.
feóh, 100.
feohan, 199.
feohtan, 204.
feohtlác, 229.
feól<*feallan*.
feól, 25.
feóld<*fealdan*.
feón<*feohan*, 199, 247, 297.
feón<*feogan*, weak.
feónd, 87, 100.
feor, 124, 129, 251, 254, 260, 336.
feorran, 252.
feóper, 47, 138+.
fíran, 243, 297.
físt, *fíl*<*fón*.
fídel-ere, —*estre*, 268.
fíteru, 100.
fíf, 37, 138+.
findan, 201. 221.
firás, 100, 268.
fitan, 199.
fixen, 232, 268.
fleáh<*fleón*.
fleát<*fleótan*.
fleógan>*fleón*, 206.
fleóhan>*fleón*, 192, 206.
fleótan, 206.
fleóp<*flópan*.
flítan, 205.
flíón=*fleón*.
flópan, 208.
flugon, 206.
flýgan, 248.
fódor, 232.
fole, 101.
fón, 208, 216, 224, 247.
fond<*findan*.
for, 15, 254, 255, 328, 337.
for—, 15, 254, 255; —*beódan*, 297; —*gifan*, 297; —*gifendlíc*, 242; —*gítan*, 28; —*leósan*, 197; —*standan*, 299; —*sporen*, 455; —*pyrnan*, 297.
foran, 252, 257, 328.
fordá, 93.
ford, 15, 129.
fore, 15, 129, 254, 255, 328, 337.
fore-rinel, 232.
fore-peard, 129.
for hpam, 260.
for intingan, 337.
form-a, 126; —*est*, 127.
for þam þe, 466.
for þý, 466.
fót, 41, 84, 100.
fox, 268.
fram, 15, 254, 338, 402.
frá, 254, 255.
frætpe, 100.
frætpian, 224.
fremian, 297.
fremman, 188.
freógan>*freón*, 47.
freógan=*freón*, weak<*frí*.
freónd, 87, 100; —*ráden*, 229, 235; —*scipe*, 229.
freósan, 197.
fretan, 199.
frí, 115.
fricgan, 199, 215.
frídan (Grein)?
frignan, 202, 217.
frinan, 202, 224.
fringan, 35, 201.
from=*fram*, 15.
ge-frugen (*i*), 199.
fruma, 129, 140.
fugol, 79; *carl-fugol*, 268.
ful, 15, 259; —*fyllan*, 267.
—*ful*, 229, 243.
fundon<*findan*.
furdór, 129.
—*fús*, 242.
fylde, 189.
fylgian, 297.
fylstan, 297.
fyrra, 129.
fýs-an, —*de*, 189.

g, 28, 34, 503.
—*g*—, 250.
gá, 208, 415.
gaf<*gifan*.
galan, 207.
gán, 208, 213, 225, 247, 266, 445.
gandra, 268.
gangan, 208, 213, 214, 216.
gárleác, 266.
gát, 268.
gád, 208.
gæst, 85; —*ern*, 229.
gát, 268.
ge—, 15, 254, 262, 463; —*bródru*, 77, 100; —*cynd*, 235; —*hende*, 259, 339; —*hpá*, 136; —*hpæder*, 391; —*hpilc*, 136; —*líc*, 299; —*líce*, 463, 473;

—*lícnes*, 235; —*litlian*, 249; —*long*, 259; —*lỹfed*, 298; —*miclian*, 249; —*mong*, 258; —*néotan*, 37; —*sihd*, 269; —*soht*, 190; —*sprecen*, 455; —*speoru*, 100; —*speostru*, 93, 100; —*tímbru*, 100; —*þingd*, 235; —*þoht*, 228, 234; —*þuht*, 409; —*þíht*, 235; —*þít*, 298. For other words in *ge*—, drop *ge*—, and look for the rest.
gé, 24, 28, 37, 130, 366.
geá, 261, 399.
geaf<*gifan*.
gealp<*gilpan*.
gealn, 15.
gearp<*geþpan*.
gearr, 28; —*dæg*, 229, 239.
gearrá, 28, 251.
gearpe, 100, 454.
geat, 28.
geatpan<*geatpe*, 100.
gegn, 15.
gellan=*gillan*.
gén, 15.
géna, 251.
géng, 213.
génóh, 490.
geó, 252.
geóc, 28.
geógud, 28, 235.
geól, 28.
geond, 15, 28, 133, 255, 328, 340.
geondan, 257.
geong, 28, 124, 228.
geóng<*gangan*.
geongan, 201.
geongling, 228, 236.
geópan, 206.
georran, 204.
geótan, 206.
gér, 28.
geze, 28, 261, 399.
geta, 251.
gie, 225.
gielan, 203.
giéng, 213.
gif, 260, 262, 469, 475.
gifan (*ie*, *eo*, *io*, *y*), 28, 199, 297.
giftá, 100.
gifu, 88, 228, 231.
gildan (*ie*, *y*), 203, 297.
gillan, 203.
gilpan (*ie*, *y*), 203.
giltan, weak.
ginan, 205.
ginnan, 201.
giónge<*gangan*.
gipan, 199.
girran=*georran*.
girpan, 224.
gist, 28.
git, 28, 465.
git, pron., 130, 287, 366.
gitan (*ie*, *y*), 129.
glád<*glídan*.
glæd, 106, 126.
gleóman, 229.
glídan, 205.
gnagan, 207.
gnídan, 205.
gód, 129; —*nes*, 228.
god-cund, 229; —*léas*, 229; —*líc*, 229, 266; —*spel*, 266.
goldfæt, 313.
goldsmíd, 266.
gongan=*gangan*.
gós, 37, 91, 100, 268.
Gotan, 238.
grafan, 207.
grauen, 224.
grǽdan, *to cry*, should be perhaps in 208.
grǽdig, 228, 315.
grǽf, 230.
grǽs, 51.
grǽtan, 208.
greósan, 206.
greótan, 206.
grcóp<*grópan*.
grétte, 35, 189.
grimman, 201.
grindan, 201.
gringan, 201.
grípan, 205.
grísan, 205.
grúf, 230.
grópan, 191, 208.
grund, 230.
grundan, weak.
grýrehpil, 265.
gulpon<*gilpan*.
guma, 41, 268.
gum-cyn, 265; —*man*, 268; —*þegn*, 268.
gurron<*girran*.
gy+, see *gi*+.
gyden, 228, 268.
gylden, 244, 313.
gýmelýst, 235.
gyrde, 189.
gyt, 262.

h, 14, 27, 28, 31, 38, 65+.
—*h*, 228.
ha, *há*, 263.
habban, 37, 168, 222.
—*hád*, 229.
haldan, 208.
halettan, 250.
hám, 71, 101, 251.
hám-peard, 229, 251; —*peardes*, 251.
hana, 95, 231, 268.
hand, 92, 228, 267; —*gepeorc*, 266; —*sellan*, 267.
hangan, 208, 216, 224.
hás, 50, 57.
hátan, 208, 286.
hátian, 249.
hátte, 219.
hæbbe, 168, 169, 415, 416, 453.
hæfde, 168, 417.
hæfte, 189.
hæle, 86.
hælu, 269.
hæst<*hón*.
hætan, 249.
hætu, 235.
hé, 24, 130.
heáfan, 208.
heafod, 41, 79; —*man*, 266.
heáge, 251.
heáh, 118, 124.
healdan, 208.
healf, 147, 394.
healfne þone, 489.
healp<*helpan*.
heán>*heáh*, pp. *to exalt* (weak).
—*heard*, 229, 243.
hearp-ere, —*estre*, 268.
heauod, 30.
heápan, 208.
hebban, 207.
hefed, 207.
hefigtýme, 229.
hegian, 188.
héht, 159, 218.
helan, 200.
helian, 188.
helpan, 82, 203, 297.
hen, 268.
henep, 41.
héng<*hangan*, *hón*.
heó, 37, 130.
heó dæge, 251.
heófe<*heáfan*.
heófen, 234.
heóld<*healdan*.
heonan, 252.
heorcnian, 297.
heorte, 269.
heóp<*heápan*.
hér, 252.
here, 269.
herian, 224.
herpan, 224.
hést<*hón*.
hí, 366.
hicgan (*y*), 211.
hider, 15, 252=*hider*, 126.
Hie—, 503.
hig=*hí*, 28.
hig, 263.
hindan, 252, 255.
hindema, 126.
hinder, 129.
hirde, 83, 231.
hírêd, 229, 235.
his, 367.
hit, 130, 287, 366.
hladan, 207.
hláf-dige, —*ord*, 268.
hleahtor, 33, 57.
hleápan, 208.
hleát<*hleótan*.
hlehhan (*i*, *y*) (*ó*, *a*), 207.
hleódrede, 298.
hleón<*hleópan*, warm.
hleótan, 206.
hlést, 35.
hliccan, 199.
hlídan, 205.
hlígan, weak.
hlimman, 201.
hlópan, 208.
hluton, 206.
hlýsbére, 243.
hlystan, 297.
hnátan, 208.
hneápan, 208.
hnígan, 205, 297.
hnipan, 199.
hnítan, 205.
hogóde, 211, 222.
hóh, 100.
hón, 208, 216, 224.
hoppestre, 268.
horsern, 229, 239.
hósu, 37.
hrade, 454.
hrán<*hrínan*.
hráp, 100.
hræd, 125.
hreás<*hreósan*.
hreddan, 188, 189.
hreódan, *hreóden*, 206.
hreófan, 206.
hreósan, 197, 206.
hreópan, 206.

hrêpan, 208.
hrînan, 205, 293.
hrindan, 201.
hrôpan, 208.
hroren<*hreôsan*.
hruron<*hreôsan*.
hrûtan, 206.
hrŷman, 248.
hû, 252, 260, 262, 397, 468, 469.
hû, interj., 263.
hûdan, *hudon*, 206.
—*hûgu*, 136.
hultc, 135.
hulpon<*helpan*.
hund, 138+.
hunt-ad, —*dt*, —*nad*, 233.
hûsincle, 228.
hûsl, 37.
hpá, 135, 377, 382, 390.
—*hpá*, 136, 390.
hpanan, 252, 260, 469.
hpanne, 252, 469.
hpæder, 126, 135, 260, 378, 464, 469.
hpêr, 252, 260, 469.
hpæt, 125.
hpæt, 135, 263, 377, 382.
hpæt gôdes, 312.
hpæthugu, 136, 390.
hpelan, 200.
hpeorfan, 204.
hpetan, 199.
hpetstân, 266.
hpî, 135, 252, 260.
hpider, 252, 260, 262, 469.
hpîle, 262.
hpîlum, 251, 262, 472.
hpînan, 205.
hpon, 135, 395.
hpôpan, 208.
hpurfon<*hpeorfan*.
hpylc, 135, 378, 382.
hycgan, 211, 222.
hyge, 86; —*sceaft*, 229, 235.
hyldan, 248.
hŷnan, 248.
hŷran, 183, 189, 297.
hyrcnian, 250.
ge-hyrned, 243.
ge-hŷrsum-ian, 297.
hyrte, 189.
hyse-cild, 268.

i, 23.
î, 24.
—<*î*, 228, 240, 268.
—<*ja*, 228.
ia=*ea*, 33.
—*ia*, 246, 247.
ia—, 503.
ia, 261.
iâ, 25.
ic, 41, 130, 366.
idæges, 251.
ides, 101.
—*id*, 164.
iê=*eâ*, *eô*, 25.
—*ie*>*aja*, 228.
—*ig*, 228, 243.
—*ige*, 268.
—*ih*, 228.
—*iht*, 228, 243.
in, 15, 254, 328, 341.
inc, *incer*, *incit*, 130, 132.
—*ing* (verbal), 228, 460.
—*ing*, 228, 237.
in middum, 258.
innan, 252, 257, 328, 329, 341.
inne, 252.
innema, 126.
innera, 129.
innian, 57.
intô, 341.
inpeardlîce, 15.
io=*eo*, 33.
io—, 503.
iô, 25.
irnan, 204.
is<*eom*.
—*isc*, 228, 241.
isgicel, 266.
iu—, 503.
iu, 252, 396.
iuk, 228.
iung, 28.

l, 27, 29, 33, 35.
—*l*<*ra*, 228.
lâ, 260, 263, 397.
—*lâc*, 229.
lâcan, 191, 208.
lâd<*lîdan*.
lâgon<*licgan*.
laguflôd, 265.
lâh<*lîhan*.
lamb, 82, 268.
lamp<*limpan*.
land, 101; —*man*, 266; —*sceap*, 229, 235; —*scipe*, 88, 235.
lang, 124.
langaat, 297.
lâcan, 250.
lâce-cræft, —*cyn*, —*dôm*, 235.
lâdan, 248.
læg<*licgan*.
lâhte<*lâcan*.
lânan, 297.
lâran, 292.
læs, 259, 342, 393.
læssa, 127, 129.
lâstes, 166.
læt, 128.
lætan (*ê*), 208.
lætema, 126.
leâg<*leôgan*, 88.
leahan, 207.
leân, 207.
leânian, 297.
—*leâs*, 229, 243, 400.
leât<*lûtan*.
leccan, 209.
lecgan, 188, 209, 248.
lêde, 189, 209, 224.
legde, 189.
lendenu, 100.
leôdan, 206.
leôde, 86.
leôf, 297.
leôfan, 206.
leofad, 222.
leofen, 228, 232.
leôgan, 192, 194, 206.
leohte, 189, 209.
leôlc, 159, 208, 218.
leômâ, 77.
leôrt, 159, 208, 218.
for-leôsan, 197, 206.
leôt, 208.
lesan, 192.
lêt, 208.
lêtan, 208.
libban, 222.
lîc, 269.
—*lîc*, 133, 136, 229, 241, 242, 392.
—*lîce*, 251.
ge-lîce and, 473.
lîcôde, 299.
licgan (*licgean*), 192, 199, 248, 286.
lîdan, 205.
lîdon, 197.
lid, 37.
lîdan, 205.
lîfan, 205.
lifian, 222.
liget<*licgan*, 193.
+*lîhan*, 205, 297.
lilie, 270.
limpan, 201.
—*ling*, 228.
b-linnan, 201.
litlian, 249.
litlum, 251.
lôfsum, 242.
lomp<*limpan*.
lûcan, 206.
lufede, 88.
luf-ian, 183; —*igean*, 36.
luf-sum, 242; —*tŷme*, 229, 242.
Lundenisc, 241.
lunge, 97.
lunnon<*linnan*.
lûs, 91, 100.
lust, 269; —*bære*, 229.
lûtan, 206.
lyccan (Grein)?
gelŷfan, 297.
lyste, 290.
lyt, 129, 136, 395.
lytel, 129.
lŷsde, 189.
lŷxte, 189.

m, 27, 30, 33, 35, 44.
—*m*<*ma*, 228.
—*ma*<*man*, 228.
mâ, 129, 251.
macian, 286.
mâdm, *maddum*, 290.
mâg-a, —*e*, 268.
magan, 212.
mâgon, 212.
magu, 231.
man, 84, 100, 101, 136, 389; —*cild*, 268; —*cyn*, 229; —*cpelere*, 266; —*esne*, 268.
ge-man, 212.
—*man*, 229.
manig, 136, 395, 489, 490; —*feald*, 229, 266.
mâra, 129.
mâpan, 208.
mæden-cild, —*fæmme*, —*man*, 269; —*hâd*, 229.
mæg, 176, 212, 436.
mæg, 268.
mægden, 228, 236.
mægd, 228.
mægenheard, 229, 243.
mægrêden, 229.
—*mæl*, 229.
mærsian, 250.
mæst, 129.
ge-mêtan, 290.
mê, 24, 37, 130, 366.
meahte, 176, 212.
mearh, 33, 80, 268.
mec, 130, 366.
medema, 126.
melcan, 203.
meltan, 203.

mennen, 268.
meodo, 88.
meoluc, 32, 50.
meornan, 204.
meôple, 236.
merde, 189.
mere, 38.
mer-e, —*ige*, —*ihe*, 203.
merige, 268.
metan, 199.
meter, 50.
mêtte, 189.
mê pincþ, 297.
micel, 129, 394, 493.
miclê mâ, 251.
miclian, 249.
miclum, 251.
mid, 15, 254, 255, 323, 343, 472.
midd, 228.
midde, 114.
mid-dæg, 206.
midlen, 239.
mîdan, 205.
mîgan, 205.
mîhte, 212.
mildheortnes, 235.
ge-miltsian, 297.
mîn, 130, 132, 367, 490.
mîn se, 489.
mis, 15, 254, 259.
misdôn, 267.
môd, 269.
môdor, 100.
mon=*man*.
Mônandæg, 265.
morgen, 100.
môste, 36, 176, 212.
môtan, 176, 212, 433.
mûd, 24, 37.
mugan (*a*), 212.
munec, —*en*, 263.
murdra, 228.
mûs, 90, 100.
mynd, 228.
mynte, 139.
myre, 232.

n, 27, 28, 29, 35, 42–51.
n—, 254.
—*n*—, 250.
n<*na*, 228.
n<*ni*, 228.
—*na*, 175, 228.
nâ, 261, 399, 400.
nabban, 45.
—*nad*, 228.
nâgan, 212.
nâhte, 212.
nalæs, 261, 400.
nam, 166.
nama, 228.
nâme, 171.
nâmon, 166.
—*nan*, 252.
nân, 45, 261, 387.
ge-nâpan, 208.
nâpiht, 261, 389, 400.
nædl, 223, 232.
nêh, 344.
nênig, 136, 387.
nærende, 213.
nære pæt, 475.
næs, 45, 213, 261.
—*nd*, 455.
ne, 261, 262, 397, 399, 400.
—*ne*, 251.
ne—, 254.
nê, 463.
neâh, 124, 251, 259, 344.
be-neah, 212.
neâhbûr, 266.
neâhhand, 259.
neâhlêhte, 299.
neahtes, 251.
nealles, 261.
neân, 252.
neâr, 344.
nearpe, 251.
nêdes, 251.
ge-nêalan, 37.
nef-a, —*e*, 263.
nefne, 259, 345.
nêh, *nêhst*, 344.
nellan=*nillan*.
nemde, 189, 286.
nemlice, 468.
nemne, 35, 259, 431.
neodan, 252, 257, 346.
neôtan, 206, 300.
ner-e, —*ede*, —*gan*, —*ian*, —*ie*, —*igan*, —*igean*, 28, 36, 160, 165, 193, 247.
—*nes*, 223.
ge-nesan, 199.
nese, 261, 399.
netele, 232.
nide, 129.
nidema, 126.
nider, 15, 255.
nigan (Grein)?
nigon, 188+.
nihtegale, 267.
niht-hræfen, 266.
nillan, 212.
nim, 172, 298.
niman, 173, 200, 246.
nimanne, 173.
nime, 164, 170.
nimende, 173.
niôtan, 206.
nipan, 205.
nitan (*e*, *y*), 212.
nô, 261.
nôht, 261, 400.
nohte<*neah*, 212.
nolde<*nillan*.
nom=*nam*.
nôn, 270.
nord, 129; —*erne*, 245; —*peard*, 245.
—*nu*, 228.
nu, **nû**, 24, 252, 262, 466, 472.
numen, 173.
nymde, 431.
nytan, 212.

o, 23.
—*o*<*u*, 265.
—*o*<*va*, 223.
—*o*<*vjâ*, 228.
ô, 24.
—*ô*<*aja*, 228, 247.
ô—, 254.
—*oc*, 228.
ôc<*acan*.
—*od*, 228.
od, 15, 254, 328, 347, 472.
—*od*, 228.
odde, 35, 262, 464.
—*ôde*, 245.
ôder, 37, 126, 136, 140, 142.
ôdŷpan, 297.
of, 15, 254, 329, 348, 472.
ofer, 15, 126, 252, 255, 328, 349.
ofercuman, 267.
ofrian, 35.
oft, 251.
of-þuhte, 297.
—*ol*, 228.
ôl<*alan*.
ôleccan, 297.
on<*unnan*.
on, 15, 254, 257, 328, 341, 350; —*bæc*, 251; *bûtan*, 257, 328, 341; —*drêd*, 298; —*ef(e)n*, 258, 341, 473; —*foran*, 328, 341; —*fôn*, 299; —*gean*, 251; —*gegn*, 258, 328, 341; —*gemong*, 258, 328, 341; —*innan*, 257, 341; —*lîhan*, 297; —*lyfte*, 258; —*mang*, 341, 472; —*middan*, 341; —*sundron*, 251; —*ufan*, 257, 341; —*uppan*, 257, 328, 341; —*þæg*, 251.
—*ôn*, 247.
ond, 262.
ono, 262, 465.
ono nu; **ono gif**, 475.
or—, 15, 254.
—*or*, 228, 242.
ortgeard, 266.
ôstre, 270.
—*ot*, 228.
oxa, 97.
Oxenâford, 265.

p, 27, 30.
palant, 270.
persuc, 270.
pistol, 43, 270.
pluma; 41.
prôfian, 286.

r, 27, 29.
—*r*<*ra*, 228.
—*r*<*ri*, 252.
—*ra*, compar., 126, 255.
râd<*rîdan*.
rafan, 207.
ran<*rinnan*.
râpincle, 236.
râs<*rîsan*.
rêdan, 208, 297, 300.
rêdels, 228.
—*rêden*, 229.
rêg-a, —*e*, 263.
rêpte, 189.
rêran, 248.
rêsde, 189.
reahte<*reccan*.
rêc, 85.
rêcan, 189, 210.
reccan, 209.
—*rêd* (*æ*), 229.
red (*æ*)<*rêdrd*.
rêdestre, 268.
regol, 270.
rêocan, 206.
rêodan, 206.
rêofan, 206.
reôn<*rêopon*, 208.
rêord, 159, 206.
rêotan, 206.
reste, 189.
—*rice*, 229.
rice, 88, 101, adj., 128.
rîdan, 205.
rihte, 189.
rihtpis, 229, 242.
+*rimpan*, 201.

rinnan, 51, 201.
rîpan, 205.
rîsan, 205.
ge-rîsed, 299.
rôhte<*récan*.
Rômâne, 86.
Rômânisc, 241.
Rômpare, 229, 238.
rôpan, 208.

s, 27, 29.
—s—, 250.
sacan, 207.
sagian, 222.
sâh<*sîhan*.
sâl, 269.
sam, 254, 262, 463, 464.
sâm, 129.
sâm—, 254, 259.
same, 133.
samod, 255, 262, 350, 463.
sang<*singan*.
sang, 230.
sang-ere, *—estre*, 232, 268.
sâpan, 208.
sâpon, 197.
sæ, 24, 100.
sæcan, 210.
sæce, 88.
sæcgean, 209.
sæd, 269.
sæde, 37, 209, 224.
sægde, 209, 224.
sægon, 197.
sæld, 36.
sæt, 199, 248, 298.
Sæternesdæg, 265.
scacan>*sceacan*.
scâdan, 208.
scafan, 207.
scân, 38, 205.
scânan, 208.
scapan>*sceapan*.
scæcen, 207.
scænan, weak.
scær<*sceran*.
sceacan, 207.
sceâdan, 208.
sceadan, 207.
—sceaft, 229.
sceal, 212, 415, 441.
scealt, 166, 167.
sceân<*scînan*.
sceamôde, 297.
ge-sceapan, 236.
sceâtan, 208.
scebd<*sceadan*.
scebde<*scebn*.
scenlde, 176, 441.
scebn, weak.
sceoran, 200.
sceorp, 269.
sceort, 124.
sceortlîce, 251.
scebtan, 206.
sceppan, 207.
sceran, 200.
scerian, 188.
scilde, 189.
scînan, 205.
sciolde, 212.
sciônon<*scînan*.
scip, 70.
—scipe, 229.
scôc<*scacan*.
scôp, 230.
scoren, 200.
scridon<*scrîdan*.
scrîdan, 205.
scrîdend(n)e, 119.
scrîfan, 205.
scrincan, 201.
scûfan, 191, 206.
sculan, 212.
scŷde<*sceôn*.
scyle, 169.
scyppan, 207.
se, 133, 134, 368+.
se þe pille, 475.
—se, 261.
sê, 132.
seâc, 38.
seâd<*seôdan*.
seah, 199.
seald, 190.
sealdes, 166.
sealfie, 165.
sealfôde, 160, 247.
sealm, 33.
seâmestre, 268.
sêc(c)an, 37, 45, 210.
sêcean, 188.
seegan, 209, 297, 397.
séfte, 114.
sêl, 128.
seldum, 251.
sele, 86.
selen, 234.
self, 131, 133, 366, 376.
sellan, 188, 189, 209.
sencan, caus. of *sincan*.
sende, 189.
send(ed), 190.
seô, pupil, 100.
seô>she, 133, 368+.
seô, see, 199.
seô, verb, 205, 206.
seô, be, 169.
seôcan<*sûcan*.
seôdan, 206.
seofun, 32, 138+.
seohe, 199.
seôn, 197, 199, 286.
seôn, 220, 205, 206.
serede<*serpan*.
serpan, 224.
set, 190.
seted, 190.
setl, 228, 232.
settan, 188, 189, 248.
ge-settan, 236.
sepen, 197.
sep-te, *—de*, 169.
sî, 169, 213.
nîû=seô, 133.
sîcan, 205.
sîd, 37, 128, 259, 472.
sîddan, 472.
sîdema, 126.
sîz, 213.
sîgan, 205.
sigerîce, 229.
sîhan, 205.
silfren, 228.
sin—, 254, 259.
sîn, 131, 132, 367, 490.
sincan, 201.
sind(on), 213.
singan, 201.
sinnan, 201.
sinneahtes, 251.
sint, 213.
sîle, 199.
sittan, 199, 248.
sîx, 138+.
slagen (*æ*, *e*), 207.
slæpan (*â*, *æ*), 208.
slæpern, 229.
sled, 192.
sleahe, 207.
sleân, 33, 192, 197, 207, 247.
slîdan, 205.
slîdan, 205.
slîfan, 205.
slîpan, 205.
slîtan, 205.
slôg(on), 35, 197, 207.
slôh, 35.
slûpan, 206.
smeâdon<*smeagdon*<*smeân*.
smeagan, 247.
smeân, 247.
smebcan, 206.
+smid, 229.
smîtan, 205.
smûgan, 206.
snadan, *snôd*, ? B., 1944.
snâp hpît, 266.
snîcan, 205.
snîdan, 205.
snîpd, weak, 366.
socen<*sûcan*.
sôd, 37.
sôdlîce, 261, 463.
sôfte, 37, 124.
ge-sôht, 190.
sôhte, 35, 36, 189, 210.
sôna, 24, 251, 472.
sônes, 251.
song, 230.
spanan, 207.
spannan, 208.
specan<*sprecan*.
spebn<*spannan*.
speornan, 204.
spereheals, 269.
spilde, 189.
spindlheals, 263.
spinnan, 201.
spîpan, 205.
spôpan, 208.
sprecan, 199.
sprecan, 199.
sprecol, 242.
springan, 201.
spyrrian, 188.
st, 57.
stâh (*g*)>*stîgan*.
standan, 207, 216, 236.
stân-ig, *—iht*, 243.
stânpeal, 266.
stapan, 207.
stædefæst, 229.
+stæf, 229.
stæfcræft, 229.
stænen, 243.
stæniht, 228.
stealdan, 208.
stealde<*stellan*.
stelan, 200.
stellan, 209.
stemn, 35.
stênt, 36.
stêntst, 35.
steorfan, 204.
steppan, 207.
stêpte, 35.
stîgan, 205.
stîhd, 205.
stîlde, 189.
stillan, 297.

stincan, 201.
stingan, 201.
stintan, 201.
stôd, 207, 298.
stonde, 207.
stôp, 207.
strâdan, 208.
strang, 124.
stranglice, 251.
streccan, 209.
stredan, 202.
stregdan, 202.
strehte, 209.
strengd, 235.
strenge, 114, 124.
strengu, 235.
strîcan, 205.
strîdan, 205.
strûdan, 206.
stupian, 297.
styccemælum, 229, 251.
stylte, 189.
stynt<*standan*.
stỹran, 297.
sûcan, 206.
sudon, 197.
sûdemest, 129.
sûderne, 245.
sûdman, 235.
sûdpeard, 245.
sûgan, 206.
sûgôde<*splgian*.
sum, 136, 148, 388.
—*sum*, 229, 242.
sume þa, 489.
sumne dæl, 251.
sumorð, 93.
sumorlæcan, 250.
sunu, 92, 228.
sûpan, 206.
spâ, 134, 252, 262, 380, 430, 434, 463, 473, 476.
spâ-hpâ-spâ, 136, 382, 475.
spâ hpâr spâ, 471.
spâ hpider spâ, 471.
spâ hpile spâ, 136, 382.
spâ spâ, 287.
spâpan, 208.
spâfan, 208.
spêfan, weak.
spefan, 199.
spefn, 228.
speger, 268.
spelan, 200.
spelgan, 203, 220.
spellan, 203.
speltan, 203.
speor, 268.
speorcan, 204.
speorfan, 204.
speostor, 100, 232.
sperian, 207.
splan<*splgian*, 224.
splcan, 205.
splð, 37, 123.
splfan, 205.
splgian, 224.
spile (*y*), 138, 375.
spilce, 262, 380, 392, 473, 463.
spimman, 201.
spincan, 201.
spindan, 201.
spingan, 201.
spingel, —*e*, 233.
spôgan, 208.
splgian=*splgian*.
spylc=*spilc*.
sŷ=*sle*=*seð*.
sylf, 290.
syllan, 188.
syllan, 209, 297.
syngian, 250.
synt=*sind*.
syrpan, 224.

t, 27, 34, 41, 56.
—*t*, 228.
—*t*<*tpa*, 130.
—*ta*, 126, 228.
tâ, 95.
tacan, 207.
tâh<*tlhan*.
talian, 222.
—*tama*, 126, 223.
—*tara*, 126, 228.
—*tata*, 126, 228.
tæcan, 248, 292.
tæhte, 189.
tær<*teran*.
teâh<*teðn*.
tealde, 209.
teâm, 230.
teâr, 269.
tela, 251.
be-teldan, 203.
tellan, 188, 189, 209, 222, 286.
—*tême*, 229.
tên, 138+.
—*teðda*, 140.
teðn<*tlhan*.
teðn, 206, 247.
teðn, weak.
—*ter*, 255.
teran, 200.
tîdan, 299.
tîdian, 297.
—*tig*, 245.
tigen, 205.
—*tigðda*, 140.
tlhan, 205, 220.
tlhð<*tlhan*.
til, 259, 351.
timber, 50.
timpan, 270.
tô, 15, 254, 328, 329, 352, 463, 472, 473.
tô—, 254.
tô-dæge, 251.
tô-eâcan, 251, 258, 352.
tô-ealdre, 251.
tô-foran, 257, 352.
tô-gædere, 251.
tô-gegnes, 258, 352.
tô-middes, 251, 258, 329, 352.
tô-nihte, 251.
tô-peard, 259, 352.
tô-pidere, 255, 352.
tôc<*tacan*.
tôð, 37, 41, 86, 100.
toga, 230.
togen<*teðn*, 206.
træd, 199, 298.
tredan, 199.
treðp, 100.
treðpcyn, 229.
treðpian, 297.
treðpsian, 297.
trides (*ie*, *y*), 199.
ge-trŷpe, 297.
—*tu*, 228.
tuge, 197, 206.
tunge, 95, 231.
turf, 100, 269.
tpa, 138+.
þegen, 138+.
þelf, 138+.
þêntig, 138+.
þig, 269.
þlpa, 145.
þŷhð, 206.
þyht, 230.
—*tŷme*, 229, 242.
tŷn, 138+.
—*tŷne*, 138+.

þ, *ð*, 10, 14, 27, 29, 194.
—*þ*, *ð*, 194, 228.
þâ, 252, 262, 466, 472.
þâ þreb forman, 489.
þah<*þiegan*.
þâh (*g*)<*þlhan*.
þanan, 252, 262.
þances, 251.
þancian, 297.
þand<*þindan*, 201.
þanne, 252.
þarf, 212, 442.
þâs mine, 489.
þêh<*þlhan*.
þêm ðrum þrîm, 489.
þêr, 252, 262, 397, 471, 475.
þærsc<*þersc an*.
þæs, 252, 262, 328.
þæt, 133, 134, 287, 368–380, 434, 468, 473, 477.
þæt is, 468.
þætte, 468.
þe, rel., 134, 380.
þe, conj., 262, 464.
þê, 24, 37, 366.
þêah<*þiegan*.
þeâh, 262, 476.
þeâh<*þeðn*.
þeahte<*þeccan*.
þearf, 212, 442.
þec, 37, 130, 366.
þeccan, 209.
þêgon<*þicgan*.
þên, 37.
þenc(e)an, 209, 216.
þenden, 262.
þênian, 297.
ge-þeoht, 228.
þeðn, 206, 220.
þeðn<*þeðpan*.
þeðs, 374.
þeðtan, 206.
þeðp, —*a*, —*e*, —*en*, 268.
þeðpan (*ŷ*, *ê*, *ê*), weak.
þeðp-boren, 266; —*hâd*, 235.
þeðpian, 297.
—*der*, 228.
þerscan, 202.
þes, 133, 374.
þicg(e)an, 199.
þider, 252, 262, 471.
þigen, 199.
þignen, 268.
þihan, 205, 220.
þîn, 37, 132.
þincan, 211.
þindan, 201.
þing, 287.
þingan, 201.
þiðn=*þeðn*, 206.
þis, 133, 374.
þisse, 35.
þohte<*þencan*.
þonne, 262, 466, 473.
þorfte, 212.

þrâpan, 208.
þreâ, 100.
þreâdes<*þreâgan*.
þreâgan>*þreân*, *þreâpie*, 35, weak.
þreô<*þrî*.
þreôtan, 206.
þreô-tŷne, 138, 141, 266.
þreôp<*þrâpan*.
þreôpan, 206.
þrî, 41, 138, 139, 141.
þrîfyldan, 248.
þrindan=*þrintan*.
þringan, 201.
þrintan, 201.
þrîpa, 145.
þruen<*þperan*.
þû, 24, 130.
þuhte<*þyncan*.
þunder, 50.
þunian, 188.
þuren<*þperan*.
þurfan, 212.
þurh, 15, 254, 328, 329, 353, 409.
þus, 252.
þûsend, 138+.
þpeahan>*þpeân*, 207.
þpegen<*þpeân*.
þpehd<*þpeahan*.
þpeorhtéme, 229.
þpeoton<*þptan*.
þperan, 200, 224.
þpinge, 201.
þptan, 205.
þpôh(g)<*þpeân*.
þporen<*þperan*.
þŷ, 133, 262, 374, 466, 473.
þŷ læs þe, 477.
þyder, 471.
þylc, 133, 375.
þylen, 268.
þýlîc, 136.
þyllîc, 133, 375.
þyncan, 211, 216, 286.
þyringâs, 238.
þyslîc, 136.
þŷpan=*þeôpan*.

u, 14, 22, 23, 32, 35, 50.
—*u* (*o*), 223, 265.
—*u*, 228.
—<*u*, 223.
—*u*<*â*, 228, 240.
—*u*<*vjâ*, 228.
û, 24, 32.
—*uc*, 228.
—*ud*, 228.
ûde, 37, 212.
ufan, 252, 257, 354.
ufane, 252.
—*ul*, 228.
—*um*, 251.
un, 15, 242, 254, 400, 456.
unc, 130, 287, 366.
uncer, 132.
unclæne, 266.
under, 15, 126, 255, 328, 355.
underneodan, 257, 355.
undernmæl, 229, 239.
—*ung*, 228, 460.
ge-unnan, 212, 297.
untreôpd, 265.
unpîs, 265.
up, 15, 254.
uppan, 257, 328, 356.
—*ur*, 228.
ûre, 130, 132.
ûs, 130, 366.
ûser, 37, 130, 132.
ûserne, 490.
ûsic, 130, 366.
út, 15, 254; —*an*, 252, 257, 329, 357; —*e*, 252; —*ema*, 126.
utan, 205, 224, 443.
útepeard, 129.
útian, 57.
uton=*utan*.

þ, 10, 14, 27, 30, 31, 35, 2, *a*.
—*þ*<*va*, 228.
—*þ*<*vjâ*, 228.
—*þa*<*o*, 223.
þâ, 263, 298.
þacan, 207.
þacian, 248.
þadan, 207.
þâgon<*þegan*.
þalla, 225.
þan<*þinnan*.
þan—, 259.
þana, 107, 259, 328, 358, 393.
—*þare*, 86, 101, 229.
þaxan=*þaxan*, 207.
þât<*þîtan*.
þârune<*þâþan*, 208, 224, *d*.
þædla, 107.
þæf<*þefan*.
þên, 37.
þêpned (*þêpen*—, *þêþ*—) —*man*, —*cild*, etc., 268, 269.
þær, 125.
þêre, 169<*þesan*.
þæs<*þesan*, 168, 417.
þæstm, 234; —*bêre*, 243.
þæt-a, —*e*, 228.
þê, 37, 130, 366.
þeâ, 263.
þe(a)hte<*þeccan*.
þealcan, 208.
þealdan, 208, 300.
þeallan, 208.
—*þeard*, 229, 245, 259, 359.
þeard<*þeordan*.
þearm, 228.
þearmian, 249.
þearnung, 228.
þeaxan, 207, 298.
þebb-a, —*e*, —*ere*, —*estre*, 268.
þeccan, 189, 209.
þedlâc, 229.
þefan, 199.
þeg lâ, 263.
þegan, 199.
þehte<*þeccan*.
þel, 251, 259, 263, 298.
þelâôn, 267.
þelerûs, 100.
þelig, 243.
þemde, 189.
þende, 298.
þeôlc<*þealcan*.
þeôp<*þêpan*.
þeor, 129.
þeorc(e)an, 211.
þeordan, 204, 286, 415.
þeorpan, 204.
þeorruldâ, 93.
þêpan, 208.
þercan<*þyrcan*.
þergan, 45.
þer-polf, 266.
þesan, 197, 199, 213, 225, 286.
þest, 251; —*an*, 252; —*emest*, 129; *þêsten*, 269.
þexþ<*þeaxan*.
þîc, 101.
þîcan, 205.
þicc-a, —*e*, 268.
þîde, 251.
þîdgil, 38.
þid, 15, 254, 255, 328, 329, 350, compounds, —*xftan*, —*foran*, etc., 257, 328, 329, 359; —*sacan*, 297; —*standan*, 299; —*pinnan*, 299.
þider, 15, 255.
þif, 268; —*freôndi*, 268; —*lâc*, 233; —*lîc*, 241; —*man*, 229, 266; —*þegn*, 268.
þîfestre, 268.
þigan, 205.
þigsmîd, 229, 232.
(ge)þiht, 136, 235, 269, 389, 400.
þile, 298.
þillan, 167, 212, 415, 440.
þimman, 268.
þîn, 269.
þindan, 201.
þine, 86, 100, 232.
þinnan, 201.
þintrâ, 93.
þircan, 211.
—*þis*, 229, 242.
þisdôm, 235.
þisse, 35, 212.
þiste, 35, 212, 298.
þit, 287.
þitan, 212.
þîtan, 205, 212.
þîtleâst, 235.
þîtnian, 250.
þitodlîce, 261, 463.
þlîtan, *þlât*, 205.
þôc<*þacan*.
þoldes, 176.
þôp, 57.
þord, 73.
þorden<*þeordan*.
þor(u)hte<*þyrcan*.
þræc<*þrecan*.
þræcca, 107.
þræce, 88.
þreâh<*þreôn*.
þrecan, 199.
þreccan, 209.
þrehte<*þreccan*.
þreôn, 206, 220.
þrîdan, 205.
þrîdon, 36.
þrîdan, 205.
þrîhan, 205, 220.
þringan, 201.
þrîtan, 205.
þrîtbôc, 265.
þrôtan, 208.
—*þu*, 228.
þudup-e, 35; —*a*, 268.
þulf, 70, 268.
þundrum, 251.
þunian, 286.
þurpe<*þeorpan*.
þut-an, —*on*, —*un*, 170, 224.
þylf, 268.
þyllan=*þillan*.
þym, 91, 231.
þynsum, 229.
þyrcan, 211, 224, 243.
þyrde, 243.
þyrman, 248, 249.
þyrnan, 297.
þyrs, 129.

ƿ, 14, 23, 52.
ƿ, 24, 52.
ƿcan, 189.
ƿd, 87, 124.
ƿfel, 129.
ƿhte<*ƿcan*.
ƿle, 188, 136, 375.
ƿldan, 248.
ƿmb(e), 15, 254, 292, 328, 360; —*stan*, 257, 360.
ƿmn, 43.
ƿppan, 57, 248.
ƿrman, 248.
ƿrnan<*eornan*.
ƿtan, 248.

GOTHIC.

a, 18.
—*a*, 71, 72, 228.
—*a*<—*d* or —*ba*, 251.
—*a*>A.-Sax. —*e*, 252.
—*a*—, 267.
af (*af*), 254, 348.
afar (*after*), 331.
aftumista, 127.
agis, 228.
ahtáu, 139.
ahtudan, 123.
ai, 18, 33.
—*ái*, 160.
ái, 18, 24, 158, 159.
áinlif, 139.
áins, 139.
áir (*ær*), 332.
aip-þau, 262.
áiv, 254, 261.
áivs, 228.
ak, 262.
akrs, 228.
an, 262.
ana (*on*), 254, 341.
and, 254, 330, 347.
ansts, declined, 89.
anþara—, 126.
—*arja*, 228.
at (*æt*), 254, 333.
au, 18, 33.
—*au*—, 211.
áu, 18, 25, 93, 158, 159.
áuk (*eác*), 254, 335.
azgô, 51.

b, 19.
—*ba*, 251.
baira(*da*), 219, 228.
balþs, 36.
band, 158.
bandi, 228.
barn, 228.
barnisks, 228.
báuan, 213.
báug, 158.
bi, 254, 334.
biugan, 158.
blinds, declined, 107.
bôkareis, 228.
brôthar, 228.
bugum, 158.
bundum, 158.

d, 19.
—*da*, 219.
dad, 168.
dags, 229.
dáirsan, 212.
daursta, 212.
dáuthus, 228.
dida, inflected, 168.
dis—, 254.
—*drê*, 252.
du (*tô*), 254, 352.

é, 18, 24, 26, 71, 158, 160.
ei, 18, 158.
eis, 130.

f, 19.
fadar, 228.
fairra (*feor*), 129, 251, 254, 336.
falþs, 229.
faran, 248.
farjan, 248.
faúr (*for*), 254, 337.
faúra (*fore*), 129, 254, 337.
fidvor, 47, 139.
fimf, 139.
fra—, 254.
fram, 254.
fruma, 126.
—*ft*, 194.
fulls, 229.

g, 19.
gg=*n*(*g*), 19, 28.
ga—, 254.
gaggan, 213.
galan, 248.
gards, 34.
gib-a, —*ái*, —*ôs*, 23, 223; declined, 88.
gôljan, 248.
grêdags, 228.
gudjinassus, 228.

h, 19, 33.
háihâit, 159.
háihald, 159.
háim, 24.
hairdeis, declined, 83, 231.
háitada, 219.
háitan, 159.
haldan, 159.
hana, declined, 95.
handu, 228.
hardus, 110, 229.
harjis, declined, 83.
háuhs, 118.
hêr, 252.
hêþrô, 252.
hidrê, 252.
hindana, 252.
hinduma, 126.
hva, 135.
hvadrê, 71, 252.
hváiva, 252.
hvan, 252.
hvar, 252.
hvas, 135.
hvaþ, —*rô*, 252.
hvaþara, 126.
hvê, 71.
hvô, 135.

i, 18, 33, 158.
i>*ái*, 159.
iba, 262.
id—, 254.
iddja, 213.
igqar, 132.
igq-ara, —*is*, 130.
ija, 130.
ik, declined, 130.
ikei, 331.
im, inflected, 213.
in, 254, 341.
innana, 252.
is, declined, 130.
is, verb, 213.
ita, declined, 130.
iþ, 262.
iu, 18, 158.
iup, 254; —*a*, 356.
—*iza*, 228; *izei*, 331.
izvar, 132.
izv-ara, —*is*, 130.

j, 19.
ja, 261.
jabái, 262.
jah, 262.
jái, 261.
jáins, 133, 255.
juggs, 28.
juks, 228.
jus, 130.
jut, 130.
juþan, 262.

k, 19.
—*k*, 130.
kunds, 229.
kuni, declined, 83.
kunþa, 212.
kvêna, 228.

l, 19.
—*l*, 236.
láian, 159.
láikan, 159.
láiks, 229.
láiláik, 159.
láilô, 159.
láilôt, 159.
lasivs, 129.
—*láus*, 229.
—*leiks*, 229.
lêtan, 159.
libaini, 228.

m, 19.
má-ists, —*iza*, 123.
mana, 229.
marei, 38.
meina, 130.
meins, 132.
—*mêl*, 229.
midjis, 114.
midjis, 114, 228.
mik, 130.
mis, 130.
missa—, *missô*, 254.
miþ (*mid*), 254, 343.
munþs, 24, 228.

n, 19.
nam, inflected, 166.
namô, 228.
nasida, inflected, 168.
nasiþ(*a*)*s*, 175.
nasja, inflected, 165.
nas-jan, —*ida*, —*idêdum*, 160.
nê áiv, 261.
nêhv (*neáh*), 344.
nêhva, 251.
nêmjáu, inflected, 171.
nêþla, 228.
ni, 254.
nim, inflected, 174.
nima, inflected, 165.
niman, 175.

nimanul(a)s, 175.
nimiu, inflected, 170.
niujis, 139.
niun, 139.
numans, 175.

ô, 18, 24, 95, 158, 159.
—ô, 251.
—ôr, 123.
—ôst, 123.

p, 19, 30.
paitrus, declined, 101.

q=kv.

r, 19, 33.
ráirôþ, 159.
razn, 229.
rêdan, 159.
—reiks, 229.

s, 19, 123.
—s<—th<—t, 166.
sa, declined, 104.
sa—, 24.
saihs, 139.
saihvan, 197.
salbô-n, *—da*, *—dêdum*, 160.
salbô, inflected, 165.
sama, 133, 254.
samaþ, 252, 350.
sat, 158.
satjan, 248.
sé, 132.
seins, 132.
sêtum, 158.
si, declined, 130.
sibun, 35, 139.
sibuntêhund, 139.
sijau, 213.
silba, 181.
silubr, 26.
silubreins, 228.
sind, 213.
sinteins, 254.
sitan, 158, 248.
sitls, 228.
sô, declined, 103.
—st, 194.
stáistáut, 159.
stáutan, 159.
steinaha, 228.
sunus, declined, 93, 226.
svah, 252.
svaihra, 268.
své, 71, 252.
svêleiks, 133.

t, 19.
—t<—tha, 166.
taih, *—um*, 158.
taihun, 139.
táiknš, 248.
têhund, 139.
teihan, 158, 248.
til, 351.
timrjan, 50.
triva, 25, 35.
—ts, 165.
tvái, 139; *—tigjus*, 139.
tvalif, 139; *—têhund*, 139.

þ, 19.
—þ, 194.
þadei, 252.
þairh (*þurh*), 254, 353.
þan, verb, 158.
þan, 252.
þandê, 262.
þar, 252.
þata, declined, 103.
þatei, 468.
þaþrô, 252.
þauh, 262.
þé, 71.
þeina, 130.
þeins, 132.
þénum, 158.
þik, 130.
þis, 130.
þreis, 139; *—tigjus*, 139.
þrijataihun, 139.
þu, declined, 130.
þuei, 381.
þuhtus, 228.
þûsundi, 139.

u, 18, 23, 158.
—u—, 166.
û, 18.
ufar (*ofer*), 252, 349.
ufta, 251.
ugkar, 132.
ugk-ara, *—is*, 130.
—uh, 133.
un—, 254.
undar, 355.
uns, *—ara*, *—is*, 130.
unsar, 132.
unþa, not found, 212.
us—, 254.
út, 63, 254.
útana, 252, 357.

v, 19.
vahsjan, 158.
váí, 268.
vaila, 251.
vair, 229.
vairþs, 229
váit, 158.
valdan, 300.
vans, 358.
varm, 228.
—vas>—ôs, 165.
vatô, 228.
veis, 130.
vilda, 212.
viljáu, 212.
vil, 130.
vitum, 158.
viþra, 254, 359.
vôhs, *—um*, 158.
vulfs, declined, 70.

OLD SAXON.

—a, 251, 252.
â—, 254.
â=ê, 170.
ac, 262.
âdar, 126.
af, 254.
aftar, 331.
ahtô, 139.
an, 254.
and, 254.
andi, 262.
angimang, 341.
anst, declined, 90.
ant, 254.
ant-sibunta, *—têhunta*, *—tuelifta*, 139.
at, 254; *handum*, 339.

b>f, 30.
be, 254.
bi, 254.
bist, 213.
bium, 213.
blind, declined, 107.
bôci, 91.

—d=—th, 194.
dag, 229.
darnungô, 251.
dôn, 213.

ê=â, 170.
ef, 262.
ellif, 139.
ên, 139.
ês, 254.
ettha, 262.

f<b, 30.
far, 254.
fer, 254.
fif, 139.
fiwar, 139.
fora, 254.
formo, 126.
fram, 254.
—ful, 229.
furi, 254.

gân, 213.
gê, 130.
gêba, declined, 88.
gi, 130.
gi—, 254.
ginerid, 175.
git, 130.

(at)handum, 339.
hano, declined, 95.
hêr, 252.
herod, 252.
hirdi, declined, 83.
hinan, 252.
huanan, 252.
huar, 252.
huarod, 252.
huat, 135.
hue, 135.
hueder, 126.
hund, 139.

—i<—itha, 166.
ia, 261.
ic, declined, 130.
idur, 254.
inc, 130.
inca, 132.
inna, 254.
ira, 130.
is, inflected, 213.
iu, 130.
iwa, 132.
iwar, 130.

ja, 262.
jac, 262.

—kraft, 229.
kunni, 229.

—lôs, 229.

—mahal, 229.

—man, 229.
mêro, 123.
mêst, 123.
mî, 130.
mid, 254.
mik (*mic*), 123, 130.
mîn, 130, 132.
mis—, 254.

nam, inflected, 166.
nâmi, inflected, 171.
ne, 254.
nerida, inflected, 168.
ner-jan, —ida, —idun, 160.
nerju, inflected, 165.
ni, 254.
nigun, 139.
nim, inflected, 174.
niman, 175.
nimand, 175.
nimanniaz, 175.
nimê, inflected, 170.
nimu, inflected, 165.
numan, 175.

—o, 251.
obhar, 252.
ôk, 254.
—ôr, 123.
—ôst, 123.

radur, 23.

s, 213.
sâm—, 254.
sama, 133, 254.
—scaft, 229.
scawô-da, —dun, 160.
scawôn, 160; inflected, 165.
—scepi, 229.
sê, 132.
sehs, 139.
settian, 248.
siâ, 137.
sibun, 139.
(ant)sibunta, 139.
sin—, 254.
sîn, 132.
sind, 213.
sindum, 213.
sittian, 248.
sunu, declined, 93.

te, 254.
te—, 254.
tehan, 139.
tô, 254.
tuelif, 139.
(ant)tuelifta, 139.
tuêna, 139.
tuêntig, 139.

þ=th.

—th=—d, 194.
thanan, 252.
thar, —od, 252.
thes-e, —u, declined, 133.
thî, 130.
thîc, 130.
thîn, 130.
thît, declined, 133.
thôh, 262.
thria, 139.
thrittig, 139.
thu, declined, 130.
thurh, 254.
thûsundig, 139.

—u, neuter, 72.
umbi, 254, 360.
un—, 254.

unc, 130.
unca, 132.
uncer, —o, 130.
undar, 355.
unt, 254.
ûp, 254.
ûs, 130.
ûsa, 132.
ûser, 130.
ût, 254.

wê, 263.
wê, pronoun, 130.
wer, 229.
wêt, inflected, 212.
wî, 130.
wid, 254.
—wîst, 229.
wît, 130.
wulf, declined, 70.
wunnia, 231.

OLD FRIESIC.

b>f, 30.
blind, declension, 107.

—e<—ja, 83.

flak, declined, 70.

hona, declined, 95.
hornar, 82.
hwa, hwet, 135.

jef, 262.
jeve, declined, 88.

kindera, 82.

nêd, declined, 80.

sunu, declined, 93.

—tigôsta, 140.

—u, neuter, 72.

OLD NORSE.

—a, adv., 251.
â, 254.
ae, 254.
af, 254.
and, 254.
annar, 126.
—ar, 123.
—ast, 123.
âst, declined, 89.
at, 254.
âtta, 139.
auk, 254.

b>f, 30.
bær, 229.
blind, declined, 107.

dagr, 229.
—dômr, 229

eda, 260.
einn, 139.
ek, declined, 130.
ellifu, 139.
—enne>—ende, 175.
eptir, 331.
er, 130.
er—, 254.

—faldr, 229.
—faetr, 229.
fiarri, 254.
fimm, 139.
fiörir, 139.
for—, 254.
fram, 254.
frum, 126.
—fullr, 229.
fûa, 242.
fyri, 254.

g—, 254.
giöf, declined, 88.

hani, declined, 95.
hardr, 229.
hedan, 252.
hedra, 252.
hêr, 252.
herr, declined, 83.
hundrad, 139.
hvadan, 252.
hvar, 135, 252.
hvârr, 126.
hvat, 135.
hvert, 252.

—i, adv., 252.
i, 254.
ia, 261.
id—, 254.
inn, 254.
it, 130.

kalla, 160; inflected, 165.
kallada, 160.
kölludum, 160.
kynni, 229.

—laus, 229.
lêgr, 229.
leikr, 229.
likr, 229.

—madr, 229.
—mâl, 229.
med, 254.
meiri, 123.
meistr, 123.
mer, 130.
mik>mei, 123.
mik, 130.
mîn, 130.
minn, 132.
miss—, 254.

nam, inflected, 166.
nêmi, inflected, 171.
ne, 254.
nedan, 346.
nem, inflected, 165.
nem, imperative, 174.
nema, 175.
nemandi, 175.
nemi, inflected, 170.
nîu, 139.
numinn, 175.

ok, 262.
okkar, 130, 132.
okkr, 130.
ôr, 254.
ôss, 130.

—râd, 229.
rann, 229.
—rêkr, 229.

sâ, declined, 133.
sam—, 254.
samr, 133, 229.
scapr, 229.
setia, 248.
sex, 139.
sî, 254.
siau, 139.
sinn, 132.
siðtigi, 139.
sitia, 248.
smidr, 229.
sonr, declined, 93.
—stafr, 229.
sû, declined, 133.

talda, 160; inflected, 168.
taldr, 175.
tel, inflected, 165.
telja, 160.
til, 351.
tîu, 139; *—tîu*, 139.
tôldum, 160.
tôlf, 139; *—tîu*, 139.
tugasti, 140.
tuttugu, 139.
tveir, 139.

þaðan, 252.
þadra, 252.
þar, 252.
þat, declined, 133.
þer, 130.
þik, 130.
þîn, 130.
þinn, 132.
þit, 130.
þô, 260.
þrettian, 139.
þriatigi, 139.
þrîr, 139.
þû, declined, 130.
þûsund, 139.

û—, 254.
ûlfr, declined, 70.
um (*ymbe*), 254, 360.
undr, 355.
ûngr, 28.
unz, 254.
upd, 356.
upp, 254.
ur—, 254.
ût, 254.

vanr, 353.
vâr, 130.
vârr, 132.
ve, Swed., 263.
ver, 130.
vid, 254, 359.
—vîs, 229.
vit, 130.

yðar, 130, 132.
yðr, 130.
ykkar, 130, 132.
ykkr, 130.

HIGH GERMAN, MOSTLY OLD HIGH GERMAN.

—a, 251, 252.
â<*ar—*, 254.
aba, 254.
aftar, 331.
âhre, 269.
an, 262.
ana, 254.
andera, 126.
ant, 254.
anti, 262.
auh, 254.
az, 254.

bî, 25.
Badu—, 32.
balo, 32.
bezerroro, 127.
blatt, 269.
buch, 269.
buocheri, 228.

ch, see *k*.

danana, 252.
danta, 262.
dâr, 252.
dar-a; *—ôt*, 252.
daz, declined, 104.
daz, 468.
der, declined, 104.
dînêr, 132.
dîsêr, 133.
diu, declined, 104.
dô, 252.
doh, 262.
drî, 41.
dû, declined, 130.
durah, 254.

eddo, 262.
edilinc, 228.
eno, 262.
eô, 254.
eôgar, 254.
esilinchilin, 228.

fahs, 86.
—falt, 229.
far, 253.
fater unsêr, 881.
fer, 254.
feste, 269.
fîla, 25.
—fol, 229.
fora, 254.
fram, 254.
frumi, 126.
funs, 242.
fuotisal, 228.
fuoz, 41.
furi, 253.

ganerit, 175.
ganomanêr, 175.
gên, 213.
gesicht, 269.
giu, 252.
gruoni, 114.
gutin, 228.

haltan, 159.
hanaf, 41.
hano, declined, 95.

Q

—hart, 229.
heer, 269.
heialt, 159.
heil, 269.
heim, 24.
—heit, 229.
hera, 252.
herot, 252.
herr, 269.
hialt, 159.
hiar, 252.
hinana, 252.
hirti, declined, 83, *a*.
hoh, 118.
houpit, 41.
huieo, 252.
hwanana, 252.
hwâr, 252.
hwar-a; *—ot*, 252.
hwaz, 135.
hwedar, 126.
hwer, 135.

—i<*—itha*, 166.
ia, 261.
ibu, 262.
iezuo, 262.
ih, 41.
in, 254.
inu, 262.
ioh, 262.
—ira, 82, 223.
it—, 254.
iwarêr, 132.

ju, 252.
junq, 28.
junkilinc, 228.

ka—, 253.
kans, 37.
kelb, *—ir*, 82.
kind, 41.
klippe, 269.
komo, 41.
kraft (*chraft*), 229, 269.
chund, 229.
chunni, 229.
kunni, declined, 83, *a*.

—l, 236.
—laos, 229.
leiche, 269.
—leih, 229.
—lîh, 229.
—liche, 251.

magati, 228.
—mahal, 229.
—man, 229.
mâno, 24.
mari, 88.
miluc, 32.
mînêr, 132.
mis—, 254.
miti, 254.
muth, 269.

nam, inflected, 166.
nâmi, inflected, 171.
ne, 254.
neben, 258.
nein, 261.
neman, 175.
nemanti, 175.
neme, inflected, 170.
nerita, inflected, 168.

neri-ta, —*tumôs*, 160.
nerjan, 160.
nerju, inflected, 165.
ni, 254.
nîdar, 255.
niôo, 261.
nim, inflected, 174.
nimu, inflected, 165.
nu, 252, 262.

o, 251.
od—, 262.
oh, 262.
—*ôr*, 123.
—*ôst*, 123.
ôstrôni, 228.

pal-u, —*awes*, 81.
pâri, 229.
pî, 254.
pim, inflected, 213.
plint, declined, 107.

—*rât*, 229.
râtisôl, 228.
—*rîh*, 229.

saat, 209.
saljô-n, *ota*, —*tumôs*, 160.
—*sam*, 229.
sama, 254.
sami, 254.
samo, 133.
sân, 24.
sc=*sh*, 34.
scaft, 229.
scharpe, 263.
scil, 209.
senfti, 37.
sî, 213.
sin—, 254.
sînêr, 132.
—*smid*, 229.
so, 134.
—*stap*, 229.
steinohi, 228.
steoz, 159.
stêrôz, 159.
stioz, 159.
stozan, 159.
sunu, declined, 93.

tac, 229.
tarnunkûn, 251.
tat, 168.
teta, inflected, 168.
tior, 41.
torf, 269.
—*tuom*, 229.
tuon, 213.

û, 71.
ubar, 252.
ûf, 254.
ûfan, 256.
umpi, 254.
un—, 254.
unsarêr, 132.
unt—, 254.
untar, 255.
ur—, 254.
ûz, 254.

—*veste* (M. H. G.), 229.

w, 30.
waffe, 269.
warnunga, 228.
—*wart*, 229.
wê, 263.
wein, 269.
weiz, inflected, 212.
wela, 263.
—*wert*, 229.
wicht, 209.
widar, 254.
wise (M. H. G.), 229.
wulf, declined, 70.
wüste, 269.

zâhse, 269.
zand, 37, 41.
zar, 254.
zer, 254.
zî, 254.
zugôsto, 140.
zuo, 254.
zweig, 269.

LATIN.

a, 18, 38, 2.
—*a*, neuter, 64, 72.
—*a*<*d*, 223.
â, 18.
—*â*—, 160.
ab, 254.
abbatissa, 208
acus, 228.
ad, 254.
admir-e, —er, —ation, 37.
æ, 18.
ævo—, 223, 254.
age, 443.
agro—, 228.
ai, 18.
—*al*=*ar*, 36.
aliquis, 136.
allons (Fr.), 443.
alterus, 126.
amatum ire, 445.
amaturum esse, 445.
amâvi, 160.
amb—, 254.
an, 254.
an—, 254.
ancora (*ancor*), 270.
andiamo (Ital.), 443.
Andreâs, declined, 101.
—*âneo*—, 228.
anguis, 228.
ante, 254.
aper, 35.
aperio, 38.
Aprîlis, 38.
—*ar*=—*al*, 36.
—*ard* (O. Fr.), 229.
—*âri*+*io*, 228.
—*âs*, 101.
asinus, 41.
—*astro*—, 228.
au, 18.
audâvi, 160.

b, 19, 35.
balsamum (*balsam*), 270.
bellico—, 228.
—*bi*, 63, 254.
bibere dari, 453.
bibiturus sum, 415.
brevity, 37.
brief, —er, 37.
buxus, 270.

c, 19.
c=*t*, 27.
camera, 35.
cannabis, 41.
caput, 41.
carcer, 229.
castrum (*ceaster*), 33, 34, 270.
—*ce*, 133.
centum, 139.
centuria, 139.
Christus, declined, 101.
cineris, 35.
citro, 252.
civilis, 34.
—*o-l*, 236.
co—, 254.
—*co*, 228.
cælitus, 63.
cælum>cerulean, 36.
collum>*cou*, 41.
con, 63.
condemno, 33.
contra, 359.
correctum, 38.
credo (*creda*), 270.
cum, 254.
—*cunque*, 136.

d, 19.
damno, 38.
—*de*, 63.
decem, 139.
dentis, 37, 41.
dexter, 126.
dico, 158.
diligo, 38.
dingua, 139.
dis, 254.
docui, 160.
doctum ire, 445.
domo—, 228.
domunculo—, 228.
donum, 175.
dulcis, 41.
—*dum esse*, 445.
duo, 139.
duodecim, 139.
—*dus*, 451.

e, 18.
ê, 18.
—*ê*, ablative, 251.
eâmus, 443.
edônis, 228.
efficio, 38.
ego, 41; declined, 130.
ei, 18.
eme, inflected, 174.
emêm, inflected, 170.
emendo, 175.
mentis, 175.
êmî, inflected, 166.
emo, 165.
emptus, 175.
—*en*<—*an*, 228.
eô magis, 374.
episcopus, 43.
epistola (*pistol*), 43.
equus, declined, 70.
—*er*, 122, 129, 228.
—*er*<*as*, 228.
—*ern*, 229.
—*es*, 101.
espace (Fr.), 48.
est, 213.
et, 262.
ex, 254.
ex—, 48.

excludo, 48.
exsulto, 38.
externo—, 228.
extra, 228.
extrâneo—, 228.

f, 19, 35.
facio, 38.
facillimo—, 126.
fera, 41.
fero, 228.
—ferus, 229.
filius, declined, 63.
formo—, 228.
frâter, 38, 41, 228.
fraxino—, 228.
frĕgi, *—imus*, 158.
fructus, declined, 98.
fruor, 300.
fuga, 228.
fŭgi, *—imus*, 158.
fugio, 158.
fui, 160, 213.
fuisse habiturum, 445.

g, 19.
—gena, 229.
—gen-us, *—eris*, 34, 228, 229.
—ginti, 139.
(*g*)*nomen*, 228.

h, 19.
habeo, perfect, 458.
hæc dicere habeo, 453.
Hecuba, 35.
Hĕrŏdēs, declined, 101.
hic, 133, 252, 374.
hinc, 252.
hodie, 130.
homo, 41, 71; declined, 95.
huc, 252.
hymnus, 43.

i, 18, 228.
i<*jă*, 228.
ĭ, 18.
—ĭ—, 160; *—i—*, 267.
ignis, 228.
in, 254.
in—, 254.
—ĭna<*ânja*, 228.
inde, 68.
infero, 38.
insidia, 228.
inter, 126; *hæc*, 355.
—io<*ja*, 228.
—ion<*jan*, 228.
—ior, 123.
ire, 158.
—isco—, 228.
—issa, 232.
—issimo—, 126.
iste, declined, 103.
ita, 252.
iterum, 254.

j, 19.
jam, 252, 262.
jocus>*gioco*, 34.
Jove>*Giove*, 34.
jugo—, 228.
juratus, 455.
juvenis, 28.

l, 19, 35.
—l, 236.
—la, 228.
laterna, 229.
legionis, 228.
lego, 38.
legionis, 228.
liberal, 36.
librârio—, 228.
—lic, 229.
lilium (*lilie*), 270.
—limo—, 126.
lingua, 139.
literal, 36.
lucerna, 229.
lupus, 41.

m, 19, 35.
machina, 35.
maj-or, *—us*, 123.
manus, 228.
Massinissa, 35.
mĕ, 130.
mĕd>*mĕ*, 130.
medio—, 228.
mei, 130.
—men<*—man*, 228.
mentis, 228.
metrum, 50.
meus, 132.
mihi, 130.
millia, 139.
mirac-le, —ulous, 37.
—mo, 228.
modulationis, 34.
mulgeo, 50.
multus vir, 394.

n, 19.
nationis, 34.
natura, 34.
—nculo—, 228.
ne, 254.
ne—, 228.
nĕ, 254.
nebula, 35.
—ni, 228.
—no, 228.
nobis, 130.
nolo, auxil., 420.
(*g*)*nomen*, 228.
non, 261; *nisi*, 345.
nōna (*nôn*), 270.
nōs, 130.
noster, 132.
nostr-i, *—um*, 130.
nous (Fr.), 366.
novem, 139.
novus, 139.
—nu, 228.
—nu<*—na*, 228.
nunc, 252.

o, 18.
—o, noun, 228.
—o, verb, 228.
ŏ, 18.
—ŏ, ablative, 251.
ob+*fero*, 35.
oceanus, 34.
octo, 139.
oe, 18.
oi, 18.
oinos>*unus*, 139.
ōn<*—an*, 228.
opus est, 212.

p, 19, 35.
palatium (*palant*), 270.
pario, 38.
pater, 38, 228.
pecten, 228.
pedis, 41.
pensionis, 34.
per, 254.
per—, 254.
peren—, 254.
pergit lectum, 415.
persicus (*persuc*), 270.
Petrus, declined, 101.
planus>*piano*, 41.
plenus, 229.
poëtastre (Fr.), 228.
porro, 254.
potior, 300.
potus, 455.
præ, 40, 254.
primus, 126.
priusquam, 332.
pro, 254.
prunum, 41.
pulcherrimo—, 126.

q, 19.
quæ, 135.
qualisque>*quelque*, 143.
quarto—, 123.
quatuor, 139.
—que, 133.
questionis, 34.
qui, 379.
quinque, 139.
quis, 135, 379.
quisque, 133.
quoad, 333.
quod, 135, 468.
quomodo, 252.
quum, 252.

r, 19.
rapiendum esse, 445.
regina, 228.
regula (*regol*), 270.
rex, 228.
—ro, 228.
—rus, 451.

s, 19.
salto, 38.
Sarmatæ, 50.
scientia, 34.
scolymos, 50.
scutrisco—, 228.
sĕ, 63, 132.
secundum, 331.
*securus*p34.
sedeo, 158.
sĕd-ĭ, *—imus*, 158.
sella, 228.
sem(*per*), 254.
sĕmi, 41, 254.
septem, 139, 489.
septuaginta, 139.
septumus, 126.
sex, 139.
sĭ, 254.
sic, 252.
sim, 213.
similis, 133.
simul, 254.
sinister, 126.
socer, 268.
socrus, 268.
solar, 36.
solidarius, 34.
somnus, 228.
spatium, 48.

spatula, 35.
statua, 223.
stellar, 36.
sub, 254.
sum, inflected, 213.
super, 252, 254.
super-ne, —*no*—, 252.
surdastro—, 228.
sinus, 132.
Syriasco—, 228.

t, 19.
taberna, 229.
talis, 133, 490.
tam, 252.
tandem, 262.
tantus, 490.
tē, 130.
tēd>*tē*, 130.
—*ter*, 228.
tetini, —*mus*, 158.
thesaurus, 34.
—*ti*, 228.
tibi, 63, 130.
totus, 490.
trans, 254.
tredecim, 139.
tres, 41, 139.
triginta, 139.
—*tu* (Umbrian), 63.
—*tu*, —*don*, —*din*, 228.
tū, *declined*, 130.
tui—, 130.
tum, 252.
—*tum ire*, 445.
—*turum esse*, —*fuisse*, 445.
—*turus sum*, 415.
—*tus*, 63.
—*tuti*, 228.
tuus, 132.
tympanum (*timpane*), 270.

u, 18, 35.
u=*v*, 30.
—*u*, 454.
ū, 18.
—*ui*<*fui*, 160.
Ulysses, 139.
unde, 63.
undecim, 139.
unus, 386.
—*us*, 101, 228.
ut, 252, 468.
uterus, 126.

v, 19, 30.
ve, 254.
vertere, 229.
vester, 132.
vi, 254.
vi<*fui*, 160.
videlicet, 468.
vīdi, inflected, 212.
vīdimus, 158.
(*d*)*viginti*, 139.
vir, 229.
—*vo*<—*va*, 223.
vōbis, 130.
vōs, 130.
vōstr-i, —*um*, 130.
vu=*p*, 30.

GREEK.

α, 18
ἀ—, 254
—α, neuter, 64.
ἀ, 18, 38.
ἀγρός, 228.
αι, 18.
ᾳ, 18.
αἰϝεί, 254.
αἰϝών, 228.
—αινα, 228.
ἅμα, 254.
ἀμέλγω, 50.
ἀμφί, 254.
ἄν, 262.
ἀν—, 254.
ἀνά, 254.
ἀντί, 254.
ἀπό, 254, 348.
ἀστήρ, 48.
Fᾶστυ, 228.
ἀϋ, 18, 38.
αὖ(τις), 254.

β, 19.
βασίλιννα, 223.
βίβημι, 213.

γ, 19.
γε, 130.
—γενής, 229.
γένος, 228.
γλυκύς, 41.
γνώμονος, 228.

δ, 19.
—δε, 254.
δέδειχα, —μεν, 158.
δείκνυμι, 158.
δέκα, 139.
δή, 252, 262.
διά, 254.
δύο, 139.
(δF)εἴκοσι, 139.
δώδεκα, 139.

ε, 18.
—ε<—ας, 228.
ἕ, 63, 132.
ἕβδομος, 126.
ἑβδομήκοντα, 139.
ἐγένετο, 397.
ἐγώ, declined, 130.
ἔδρα, 228.
εε>ει, 24.
ἕζομαι, 157.
ει, 18, 24.
εἰ, 262.
εἶην, 213.
εἰκόνος, 228.
(δF)εἴκοσι, 139.
εἰμί, inflected, 213.
εἶμι, 158, 213.
εἰς<ἕνς, 139, 386.
Ἑκάβη, 35.
ἑκατόν, 139.
ἑκυρός, 268.
ἐμός, 132.
ἐμοῦ, 130.
ἐν, 254.
—εν, 228.
ἕνδεκα, 139.
ἕνεροι, 255.
ἔνθα, 252.
ἐνθάδε, 252.
ἔνθεν, 252.
ἐνί, 254.
ἐννέα, 139.
ἕνος, 254.
ἐξ, 254.
ἕξ, 139.
ἑπτά, 139.
ἐρρωγα, —μεν, 158.
ἐστί, 213.
ἕτερος, 126.
ἔτι, 262.
ἔχις, 228.
ευ, 18, 38.

ζ, 19.
ζυγόν, 228.

η, 18, 38.
—η, 228.
ᾐ, declined, 103, 63.
ᾗ, declined, 103.
η; ω, ω; η, 158.
ᾖ, 18.
ἡμεῖς, 130.
ἡμέτερος, 132.
ἡμι—, 41, 254.
—ηρο+ιο, 228.
ἥρως, 229.
ηυ, 18.

θ, 19.
θε>τίθημι, 160.
θέαινα, 228.
—θεν, 63.
θερμός, 228.
θήρ, 41.
θρῆνυς, 228.
(ὅ)θι, 254.

ι, 18.
—ι, 228.
ῐ, 18.
ἴανα, 468.
—ινυα, 228.
—ιο<*ja*, 228.
ἵππος, declined, 70.
Fίσμεν, 158.
—ισκο, 228.
—ισσα, 268.

κ, 19.
καμάρα, 35.
κέδρινος, 228.
—κο, 228.
κός, 135.
—κοντι, 139.
κότερος, 126.

λ, 19.
—λικ, 229.
λογικός, 228.
λύκος, 41.

μ, 19.
Μασανάσσης, 35.
μέγιστον, 123.
μείζον, 123.
μέσσον, 228.
μετά, 254.
μῆνις, 228.
μῆτις, 228.
μηχανή, 35.
—μο, 228.
—μον, 228.

νε, 228.
νέϝαν, 139.
νέκυς, declined, 93.
νέμε, inflected, 174.
νέμειν, 175.
νεμητός, 175.

νέμοιμι, inflected, 170.
νέμοντοτ, 175.
νέμω, —μι, inflected, 165.
νενέμηκα, inflected, 166.
νενεμ(ηκο)ιην, inflected, 171.
νέϝος, 139.
νεφέλη, 35.
νη—, 254.
—νι, 228.
νν<νϳ, 228.
—νο, 228.
—νυ, 228.
νῦν, 252.
νώ, 130.
νῶι, 130.
νωίτερος, 132.

ξύν, 254.

ο, 18, 38.
—ο—, 228, 267.
ὁ, ἡ, το, declined, 63, 103.
ὅ, declined, 103.
ὀά, 263.
ὀδοῦ, 322.
Ὀδυσσεύς, 139.
οι, 18.
Foῖδα, 158; inflected, 212.
ὁϝις, declined, 89.
Fόκ-ja, 228.
ὀκτώ, 139.
ὅμος, 133.
—ον, 228.
ὅπως, 468.
—ος, 101.
ὅς, ἥ, ὅ, declined, 103.
ὅς, 132.
ὅσσα, 228.
ὅτι, 468.
ου, 18.
ου<οο, 24.
οὐαί, 262.
ὀφρύς, 48.

π, 19.
παιδίον, 228.
παιδίσκος, 228.
παῖ(δ)ς, 228.
πάρ, 254.
παρά, 254, 333.
πάρος, 254.
πέντε, 139.
πέφευγα, —μεν, 158.
πέφωγα, —μεν, 158.
πέρα, 254.
πέραν, 254.
περί, 254.
πεύθομαι, 158.
πλέως, 229.
πόθεν, 252.
πόθι, 135.
ποῖ, 252.
ποιμέν, 71.
ποιμήν, declined, 95.
πός, 135.
πότε, 252.
ποῦ, 135, 252.
πρό, 254.
πρόμος, 126.
πρῶτο, 123.
πῶς, 252.

ρ, 19.
—ρα, 223.
Fρήγνυμι, 158.
—ρο, 228.

σ, 19.
σός, 132.
σπατάλη, 35.
σσ<κϳ, 228.
—σσο, 228.
σύ, declined, 130.
σύν, 63.
—συνη, 228.
σφώ, σφῶι, inflected, 130.
σφωίτερος, 132.

τ, 19.
—ται, 219.
—τατος, 127.
τέκνον, 175.
—τερ, 228.
τέρενος, 228.
τέτα(ν)κα, —μεν, 158.
τέτταρες, 139.
τηλικος, 133.
τῆς ὁδοῦ, 322.
—τι, 228.
τίθημι, 213.
τίμ-άομεν, —ῶμεν, 24.
τις, 148, 386.
τό, 63, 103.
—τορ, 228.
—τος, 175.
τότε, 252.
τρεῖς, 139.
τριάκοντα, 139.
τρισκαίδεκα, 139.
τύ, declined, 130.
—τυ, 228.
τώς, 252.

υ, 18.
—υ, 228.
ΰ, 18.
F, 18.
Fa, Foῖδα, etc. See ἀ, οἶδα, etc.
ὑμεις, declined, 130.
ὑμέτερος, 132.
ὑπέρ, 252, 254.
ὕπνος, 228.
ὑπό, 254, 348.
ὕστερος, 254.

φ, 19.
φέρεται, 219.
φέρω, 228.
φεύγω, 158.
φράτορος, 228.
φυγή, 228.
φύω, 213.
φώγω, 158.

χ, 19.
χίλιοι, 139.
χώρα, declined, 88.

ω, 18, 38.
ω, ablaut, 158.
ῳ, 18.
ὠκύς, 228.
—ως<—ωτ, 251.
ὠτ, 252, 468.

SANSKRIT AND INDO-EUROPEAN PARENT SPEECH.

[*Parent Speech in Roman.*]

a, a, 18, 41.
—a, neuter, 72.
—a, —a, 228.
a—, 254.
—ai>é, 18, 62.
√ak, 228.
√ag, 228.
agnî, 228.
√agh, 228.
ag'ra, 228.
—at, 62.
átas, 252.
átî, 262.
átra, 252.
átha, 262.
ádhi, 254.
an—, 254.
—an, 228.
aná, 254, 262.
aní>ní, 255.
an+ta, 163.
antará, 126.
*antár<*ana-tara, 255.
ápa, 254.
abhí, 254.
—am, 62.
ama, 63.
—ams, 62.
—aja, 228.
—arânja, 228.
áva, 254.
avâ'm, declined, 130.
ávis, declined, 89.
áçmâ, declined, 95.
áçvas, declined, 70.
áçvâ, declined, 88.
ashtán, 139.
—as, 228; *—as*, 62.
asmadî'ja, 132.
asmâ'kam, 130.
asmâ'n, 130.
ásmi, inflected, 213.
asmé', 130.
aha, 130.
ahám, declined, 130.
áhi, 228.
á, â, 18.
—á, 228.
—â, 62.
átmán, 131.
*—ánî<—*ânjâ, 228.
áviç, 254.
áçú, 228.

i, i, 18.
i>aina, 139.
√*i*, 158, 213, 228.
—i, 228.
itara, 254.
Indrânî', 228.
í, î, 18.
—i<—jâ, 228.

u, u, 18.
—u, 228.
ut, 63, 254.
udán, 228.
úpa, 254.
upárî, 252.
ú, û, 18.

*ṛ<*r, 19.

*é<*ai, 18.
é'ka, 139; *—daṣan*, 139.
éna, 139.
é'mi, 158, 213.
é'va, 228.
évas, 254.

ái, ái, 18.
ó<an, 18.
áu, áu, 18.

k, k, 19.
—k, 236.
kâ, 135.
—ka, 228.
kat, 135.
katará, 126.
katatar, 139.
√*kar*, 158, 160.
karô'mi, 158.
kas, 135.
kirâ'mi, 158.
kútas, *kútra*, 252.
kṛrmás, 158.
klíva, 64.

kh<k, 19.

g, g, 19,
—ga, 130.
√*gâ*>*g'igâmi*, 213.
√*gen*, 228.
gṛna, 38.
√gna, 228.
gnâ'man, 228.

gh<gh, 19.
—gha, 130.
√*ghar*, 228.
gharmá, 228.

ṅ, n, 19.

k'(=ch)<k, 19.
k'atvár, 139.
√*k'it*, 158.
k'ê'tâmi, 158.

k'h<*k'*<k, 19.

g'(English j)<g, 19.
gánas, 228.
g'igâmi, 213.

g'h<g, 91.

ñ<n.

ṭ, *ṭh*<t.

ḍ, *ḍh*<d.

ṇ<n.

t<t, 19,
—ta, 139, 163, 228.
tat, 63; declined, 104.
tata, 163.
taṭa'na, 158.
ta'-tas, *—tra*, 252.
tatinimá, 158.
√*tan*, 158.
—tama, 120.
tar, 139.
—tar, 228.
—tara, 126.
—tas, 165.
tasmâi, 104.
tasmin, 63.
tasja, 104.
tâdṛ'ks'a, 133.
táva, 130.
—ti, 228.
tirâ'mi, 158.
tirás, 254.
tissar, 139.
—tu, 228.
tuturjâ'm, 158.
tubhjam, 63, 130.
—tê, 219.
tê<ta, 104.
tê<tva, 130.
têna, 104.
têníma, 158.
têbhjas, 104.
têṣ'âm, 104.
—tra<*—trâ*, 252.
trajôdaçan, 139.
trí, 139.
√*trí*, 139.
trímçat, 139.
—tva>*—ta*, 163.
tvadî'ja, 132.
tvam, 130.
tvajâ, 130.
tvê, 130.

th<t, 10.
—thas, 165.

d, d, 19.
dakan, 139.
dakanta, 139.
dadhâmi, 213.
dáçan, 139.
dídiçima, 158.
dídê'ça, 158.
√*diç*, 158, 248.
diçâ'mi, 158.
drk, 229.
dêvî', 228.
dê'çaja, 158.
dêçájâmi, 248.
dva, 130, 139.
dvâ'daçan, 139.
(*d*)*vi*, 254.
(*d*)*vim*(*da*)*çáti*, 139.

dh<dh, 19.

n, n, 19.
na—, 254.
—na, 175, 228.
nanáma, inflected, 166.
nanamma, inflected, 166.
náma, inflected, 174.
námanâja, 175.
námanîja, 175.
námaní, 175.
nímâmi, inflected, 165.
namâmi, inflected, 165.
namaim, inflected, 170.
námêjam, inflected, 170.
na(*m*)*tá*, 175.
návan, 139.
navas, 139.
nas, 130.
nâu, 130.
—ni, 228, 255.
—nu, 228.
nu, 252.
nêmimá, inflected, 166.
nêmjâ'm, inflected, 171.

p, p, 19.
√*pa*, 228.
pañk'án, 139.
pára, 254.
páram, 254.
párâ, 254.
pári, 254.
√*pâr*, 248.
pârájâmi, 248.
pitâr, 228.
purás, 254.
pûr, 229.
pra, 254.
prathamá, 126.
ph<p, 19.
phalinâ, 228.

b, b, 19.
√*bandh*, 158.
babándha, 158.
babandhimá, 158.
√*budh*, 158.
bubhug'imá, 158.
bubhô'g'a, 158.
bô'dhâmi, 158.

bh, bh, 19.
√*bhag'*, 158.
bhavâmi, 213.
bhárati, 219.
bhárâmi, 228.
—bhi, 63.
bhis, 62.
bhugná, 175.
√*bhug'*, 158, 228, 248.
bhug'â', 228.
bhug'â'mi, 158.
bhô'g'aja, 158.
bhôg'ájâmi, 248.
bhjams, 63.
bhjâms, 63.
√*bhrag'*, 158.
bhrâ'tar, 228.

m, *ṁ*, m, 19.
ma, 130.
—ma, 163.
—ma, 126, 228.
—mata, 163.
máti, 228.
madî'ja, 132.
madhu, 38.
madhjâ', 228.
—man, 228.
√*man*, 228.
máma, 130.
máhis'î'ha, 123.
máhîjams, 123.
máhjam, 130.
mâ, 63, 130.
mâm, 63, 130.
mithás, 254.
mṛig', 50.
mê, 130.

j, j, 19.
ja, 252.
ja, 262.
—ja, 228.
jat, 463.
jathâ, 463.
jad, 104.
jad, 262.
—jan, 228.
japi, 262.
jas, 104.
ja, 104.
—jâ>*t*, 228.
jug'á, 228.
jujám, 130.
juvan, 28.
juvâ'm, declined, 130.
jus'madî'ja, 132.
jus'mê', declined, 130.

r, *ṛ*<r, 19.
—ra, 126, 228.

ḷ, l̥, 19.

v, v, 19.
va, 130.
√*vaks'*, 158.
váks'âmi, 158.
√*vad*, 228.
vâm, 130.
vajám, 130.
vaváks'a, 158.
vavaks'imá, 158.
vas, 130.
—vas, 165.
vi—, 254.
√*vid*, 158.
vidmá, inflected, 212.
vidjâ', 228.
(*d*)*vin*(*da*)*çati*, 139.
vividmá, 158.
vividmasi, 212.
vivaidmá, 212.
vivê'da, 158.
vîras, 229.
vê'da, inflected, 212.
vṛit, 229.
vṛiddhi, 38.
—vjâ, 228.

ç<k, 19.
—çatá, 139.
—çati, 139.
çvaçura, 268.
çvaçrû, 268.

s'=*sh*<s, 19.
s'as', 139.
s'as'ṭha, 123.

s, s, 19.
—s, 62.
sa, 63; declined, 104.
sa—, 63.
√*sad*, 158, 248.
sâdájâmi, 248.
sádra, 228.
saná', 254.
sapta(*daça*)*ṭi*, 139.
saptán, 139.
saptamá, 126.
sam, 63.
sama, 133.
samâ', 254.
—sas, 62.
sasáda, 158.
sahá, 63.
sahásra, 139.
sâ, 63, 104.
sâkám, 254.
sâmi—, 254.
—sâms, 62.
—sâs, 62.
Sindhu, *—ka*, 228.
sîdâ'mi, 158, 248.
sêdimá, 158.
√*su*, 228.
sûnus, declined, 93, 228.
√*sthâ*, 228; —tum, 228.
sma, 130.
smás, inflected, 213.
sjâm, 213.
sva, 63.
svadîja, 132.
√*svap*, 228.
svápna, 228.
—svas, 62.

h<gh, 19.

ENGLISH INDEX.

[The figures refer to pages.]

a, how made; rule for use of, history of, 11, 12, and see index of words.
a-group of letters, 7, 26.
a-stems, see *stem*.
a-umlaut, see *umlaut*.
â, history of, 12. See index of words.
â-stems, see *stem*.
abbreviations, 5.
ability, +infinitive, 197.
ablative, 35, 129, 148, 151, 152, 153, 154, 157.
ablaut, table, 7, 9, 28; hist. and comp. etym. 79–80; conjugations, 83, 99, 100, 102, 103, 105, 107; mixed, 116; stems from, 122.
above, 161.
abridged sentences, 140; clauses, 200.
absolute case, comp. syntax, 152, 201.
abstracts, gender of, 37; declension of, 45, 53.
acatalectic, 223.
accent, rules for; proof of, 6; variation from, 9; hist. of, in Sanskrit, Greek, etc., 30; kinds of, 30; in prosody, 222.
accents written, 5; with consonants, 19.
accompaniment, see *association*.
accusative, 34; syntax of, 145–148; ending, 35; predicate, 142, 147; +infinitive, 142, 147, 198; two accusatives, 146, 147; +genitive, 156; +dative, 151; in adverbial combinations, 148; after nearness, 150; compounds, 134; with prepositions, 148, 159; >dative, 175; arrangement of, 218.
accuse, syntax of, 156.
action, suffixes of, 124; with subjunctive, 192.
active voice, 77, 83+, 187.
address, with dative, 148.
adjective, 34; declension: definite, indefinite, 56; weak, strong, 56, 58, 59, 60, 173; paradigms, 56, 58, 59; hist. of, 57, 59; Northumbrian, 61; comparison, 62, 65; suffixes, 125, 126; prepositions and prefixes from, 132; equivalents of, 139; predicate, 142; appositive, 143; with dative, 149, 151; with genitive, 155, 156, 157; use of forms, 173; agreement of, and other syntax, 172–174; article with, 176; with gerund, 199; arrangement, 218, 219.
adjective clause, 140; subjunctive in, 193; conjunction in, 207; arrangement, 216, 220.
adjunct, 157.
advantage, with dative, 149.
adverbs, 34; comparison of, 62; numeral, 77, 182; from radicles, 33; derivation, 128, 129; correlative, comp. etymol., 129, 130; equivalents of, 139; syntax of, 182+; pred., attrib., interrog., demons., expletive, emphatic, 183; adverbial conjunctions, 184; negatives, 184; arrangement, 219, 220.
adverbial combination, defined, 137, 138, 149; accusative in, 148; dative in, 151, 152; genitive in, 158; arrangement of, 219, 220.
adverbial clauses, 140; mode in, 193+; conjunction in, 207, 208; arrangement, 216, 220.
adverbial compounds, 134.
adversative sentence, 141; —conjunctions, 202, 204, 205, 209.
æ, 11, and see other index.
æ̂, 13, and see other index.
Ælfric's futures, 197.
affirmation, particles of, 132, 184.
age, syntax of, 154, 157.
agent, forms to express the, 123; dative of, 151.
aggregation, syntax of, 154.
agreement, of case-endings, 142+; adjectives, 172; pronoun, 174; verb, 185, 186; participles, 200.
ai=i, 15.
aid, syntax of, 149.
alas, 133.
alder-, 154.
Alfred, 1.
alliteration, 223+; consonants, 223; vowels, 224; comp. hist. of, 224; in prose, 225, 228; of g<j, 17; affected shifting, 225; secondary, 227; in English, 228.
alphabet, 4.
am, 114, 115; as future sign, 189; as perf. and pluperf., 189; passive, 187, 189; periphrastic, 89.
an, history of, 180.
an-stems, see *stems*.
anacoluthon, 141, 143.
anacrusis, 222, 225.
anapæst, 222, 223.
anastrophe, 141.
Angles, 1.
Anglo-Norman, 1.
Anglo-Saxon, history of, 1+; classic, 11.

animals, gender, 135.
antecedent, 179, 180.
antimeria, 141.
aorist, 82.
aphæresis, 9, 30, 67.
apocope, 9, 18, 19, 31, 47, 57, 67.
apodosis, 141.
aposiopesis, 141.
apothesis, 9, 10, 53.
appetite, syntax of, 145.
appositive, 137, 142; rules, examples, and comp. syntax, 143, 144; compounds, 134; with vocative, 144; names, 154; article with, 176; arrangement, 216.
are, 114, 115.
arrangement of words, 214–220; —of clauses, 220, 221.
arsis, 222, 223, 225.
articles, 34; paradigms, 57, 69, 71; comp. etym., 69; syntax with adjective, 173; comp. syntax, 174; general syntax of the def. article, 176, 177; omission of, 176; indefinite, discussion of, 180; arrangement, 217.
as, relative, 179.
ask, syntax of, 146, 147, 156.
aspirates, 16; =rough, 7, 17.
assibilation, defined, 9, 20; history of, 21, 22.
assimilation, examples, 7, 39, 117; defined, 9, 22, 23, 24; labial, 20, 83, 109; guttural, 20; by *p*, 14, 18, 114, 102; *l*, 14, 18, 19, 80; *m*, 11, 12, 13, 18, 51, 80, 83, 87, 100; *n*, 11, 12, 13, 107, 108; *r*, 20, 80; *s*, 24, 67, 70; with progression, 27; ecthlipsis, 31; in imperfects, 95; in presents, 96, 97; shifting stopped by, 41.
association, with dative, 150.
asyndeton, 141.
atonic, 222.
attraction, 179, 191; in arrangement, 214, 219, 220.
attributive combination, defined, 137, 140, 142; nominative, 144; genitive, 153; article with, 176; participles, 200; arrangement of, 216, 218, 219; compounds, 134.
augment, 82.
author, genitive of, 153; present tense, 188.
auxiliaries, 84, 86, 87, 89, 195; arrangement of, 214, 216, 219, 220; relation to verse, 225.

b, how made, 15; hist. of, 18, 30, and see index of words.
backlings, 128.
Bactrian, 3.
base=*anacrusis*.
bb=ff, 16.
be, dative after, 150; omitted, 186.
bee, 136.
begin+infinitive, 197; +participle, 201.
betwixte, 161.
bh>*m*, 39, 45, 49.
bid+infinitive, 198.
bifurcation, 28, 123.
brachylogy, 141.
braggart, 122.
breaking, defined, 9, 14; enumerated, 20; cases of, 11, 18, 66, 75, 95, 97, 99, 100, 102, 103, 107, 108, 111, 112, 114; stems from, 123.
brotherhood, 121.
Bulgarian, 3.

c, described, 15, 16, 18; theme in, 111, and see other index.
cæsura, 223.
Caffirs, 36.
can, 195.
cardinals, 73, 74, 75, 76; syntax, 181, 217.
case, 34; hist. of endings, 35, 39, 55; summary, 55; adverbs from, 128+; agreement of, 142+; cases mixed, 175.
catalectic, 223.
causal bases, 79; compounds, 134; sentences, 141; participles, 201; conjunctions, 205, 207, 209.
causative verbs, 127, 186.
cause, dative of, 151.
cease, syntax of, 157.
Celtic, 1, 3; rime in, 225.
cg, 16, 110.
ch, 16, 18.
changes of sound, table of, 9; laws of, 10, and see the names of the several changes.
characteristic, 125, 154.
Chaucer, 1, 55, 65, 72, 118, 167, 225.
chief letter, 224.
chords, vocal, 11.
circumflex, use of, in this book, 13.
cities, names of, declined, 55.
classic speech ideal, 11.
clause, defined, 139; principal, co-ordinate, subordinate, quasi-clauses, 139, 140, 145, 172, 184, 216; arrangement of, 220, 221.
clean, syntax of, 157.
close vowels, 6.
coalescence, 119, 134.
coexistence, 141, 201.
cognate letters, 29; accusative, 146; dative, 151; genitive, 154.
cognition, with subjunctive, 192; with infinitive, 198; with participle, 201.
collectives, 134, 173, 185.
combinations of letters, 7, 16, 17; of words, 137, and see *adverbial*, *attributive*, *objective*, *predicative*.
command, 196.
comparative, 62+, 173.
comparison, 62+; double, 64; defective, 64, 65; endings of, in prepositions, 131, 132; syntax in, 152.
compensation (compensative gemination), 9, 10, 13, 14, 25, 47, 60, 67, 80, 85, 94, 97, 99, 110, 111, 114.
complete sentence, 141; composition, 158.
complex sentence, 139, 140.
composition, 78, 118, 119; —defined, 134; nouns, 134; verbs, 134, 135, 158; in tense, 81, 82; with *un-*, 200.
compounds, gender of, 37; defined, 118.
compound sentence, 139, 140, 141; subject, 185.
concessive clauses, 174, 194, 201, 208, 216, 220.
conditional clauses, 194, 216, 220; mode, 89; conjunction, 208.
conformation, 9, 28, 47, 75, 83, 85, 87.
Congoes, 36.
conjugation, 78; first, 82+, 99+, 113, 122, 127; second, 103, 113, 123, 127; third, 105, 113, 127; fourth, 107, 114, 123, 127; fifth, 108; sixth, 110; Grimm's, 78; Sanskrit, 79.
conjunctions, 34; etym., 133; syntax, 184; co-ordinate, 202–205; subordinate, 205–208; omitted, 208, 209.
connecting vowel, 85, 114, 115.
consecutive clauses, 194, 195.
consonants, tables of, 7, 8; description of, 15+, and see names of classes of consonants, changes, and stems.
contention, 150.
continuous consonants, 7, 10, 15, 24, 95.
contraction, 6, 10, 13, 14, 32, 50, 53, 78, 97; related to ablaut, 80, 81.
co-ordinate letters, 29; clauses, 139, 191, 215; conjunctions, 202–205.
copula, 137, 198, 214, 220.
copulate, nouns, 142, 173, 176, 185, 220.
copulative verbs, 137, 142, 186; sentences, 141; conjunctions, 202–204, 208.
correlatives, adverbs, 129, 130; repeated, 176; arrangement, 215.
countries, names of, declined, 54.
crasis, 10, 32.
crime, syntax of, 157.
cryptoclites, 52, 53.
customs, syntax of, 188.

d, 15, 17, 19, 30, 75, 95, and see other index.
dactyle, 222, 225; in English, 228.
Danes, 2.
darkling, 128.
dative, 34, 35; in *—d*, 41; compounds, 134; object, 138; syntax of, 148–153; of influence, 148; +genitive, 149, 156; of interest, 149; possessor, 150; reflexive, 150; ethical, 150; expletive, 150; nearness, 150; use, mastery, 150; separation, 151; adverbial, 151, 153; with preposition, 152, 159; absolute,

152; for accusative, 175; after interjection, 202; arrangement of, 218, 219, and see under each *declension*.
decay, phonetic, 36, 55, 65, 72.
declarative sentence, 139, 191; arrangement of, 214; conjunction, 206.
declension, table of substantive, 37; first, 38+, 49; second, 44+, 49; third, 48+, 49; fourth, 50+; proper names, 54+; adjectives, 56+; demonstrative and article, 57; participles, 61; infinitive, 61, 88; pronouns, 66+; Northumbrian, 49, 51, 61; English, 55, 65, 72.
deer, 136.
defective nouns, 52; verbs, 112+.
definite declension, 56; see *article*.
definitive, 143; object, 146, 216, 217, 218.
demonstrative pronouns, 57, 69, 70, 72, 173, 176, 217; adverb, 183.
denominatives, 118, 127, 128.
dental, 7, 15, 17, 19, 29; =lingual of many grammars.
derivation, nouns, 118+, 135; adjectives, 125+; verbs, 126+; adverbs, 128+; prepositions and prefixes, 130+; particles, 132; conjuctions, 133; interjections, 133.
descriptives, 143; arrangement of, 216, 217; compounds, 134.
determinatives, 134.
dh=*d*, 17; >d, 19, 29; >s, 19.
dialects, 1, 17+.
dimeter, 223.
diminutives, 124, 125.
dimorphism, 28.
diphthong, 6, 14.
direct object, 138, 197, 201; arrangement of, 214, 218.
disjunctive, 141, 183, 204, 209.
disposition, suffix of, 125.
dissimilated gemination, 16, 66, 75, 83, 117.
dissimilation, 9, 24, 95.
distributives, 77, 143.
do, 89.
dog, 136.
—dōm, 121.
double object, 146.
drunkard, 122.
dual, 34+, 66+, 82, 83; appositive with, 143, 144; other syntax, 174.
duty, syntax of, 197.
Dutch, 3.

e, 11, 12; =*æ*, ea, 12; >y, 12.
é, 13, 15.
ea, >l, 12; >e, 12; >y, 12, 20; =eo, 15.
eà, 14.
easy, syntax with, 199.
ecthlipsis, 9, 10, 18, 19, 31, 51, 57, 117.
eftsoons, 128, 160.
ei, 15.
Egyptian numerals, 75.
elision, 9, 31.
ellipsis, 141.
else, 128.
emotion+genitive, 155; +infinitive, 197; +participle, 201.
emphasis, arrangement for, 214, 218, 219.
emphatic verb, 186.
empty+genitive, 157.
enallage, 141.
enclitic, 13.
end, +infinitive, 197; +participle, 201.
endings, see *case*, *inflection*, *stem*, *tense*.
Englisc, 1.
English, 1; relation to Anglo-Saxon, 1, 17; assibilation, 21; precession in, 27; compensation, 26; case-endings in, 55; comparison, 64; declension of adjective, 65; pronouns, 72; ablaut, 99, 100, 102, 103, 105, 107; contracted reduplication, 108, 109, 110; weak verb, 111, 112; diminutive, 125; future, 189; verbals, 201; verse 225, 228.
eo>y, 12.
eó, 14, 15.
epenthesis, 9, 11, 19, 31, 45, 57.
epicene, 38, 136.
epithesis, 9, 11, 31, 57.
equivalents, grammatical, 139.
—ern, 121.
ethical dative, 150.
etymology, 33+.
Etymology, comparative. (At each reference are discussed the forms in Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, Gothic, Old Saxon, Old Norse, Old High German.) The letters, 8; **Nouns,** a-stems, 39; ia-stems, 42; â-stems, 44; i-stems, 45+; u-stems, 48; an-stems, 50, 51; **Adjectives,** 57, 59; comparison, 62-64; **Pronoun,** personal, 66, 67; possessive, 69; demonstrative, 70, 57; article, 57; interrogative, 71; **Numerals,** 74+; **Verb,** ablaut, 79; contracted imperfect, 81; compound imperfect, 81; active ind. present, 83; (im)perfect, 85; subjunctive present, 87; (im)perfect, 87; imperative, infinitive, gerund, participles, 88; præterite verbs, 112; substantive verb, 114; passive, 116; **Suffixes,** 119-122; diminutives, 125; **Adverbs,** 129, 130; **Prepositions** and prefixes, 130-132; **Conjunctions,** 133; **Interjections,** 133; **Composition,** 135.
eu, 15.
euphonic variation, 9.
every, 181.
exciting object, 155, 156, 201.
exclamatory sentence, 139, 191, 215.
expletive *þær*, 183; dative, 150.
explosive consonants, 7.
expression in verse, 222, 223.
f, 8, 15, 18, 19, 20, 23.
factitive object, 138, 139, 140, 142, 144, 147, 168, 176; arrangement of, 216; verb, 186.
—fast, 121.
fear, with dative, 150; with subjunctive, 192.
feeling, with genitive, 149, 155; dative, 149.
feet in verse, 222; order of, 226.
feminine, see *gender*.
figuration, 9, 30.
final clause, 194, 208; object, 198, 199, 201.
fitness, syntax with, 125, 192.
Flemish, 2.
—fold, 121.
foreign proper names, 54+.
forget, syntax with, 156.
French, appositive, 144; verse, 225; see *Norman*.
friendship, 122.
(Old) Friesic, 3, 8, 18; comp. etym., 39, 41, 42, 44, 45, 49, 50, 59; pron., 69, 71; num., 76, verb, 80, 81, 83, 85, 87, 88; conj., 133.
Froissart, 179.
—ft, origin of, 97.
—full, 121.
fullness, syntax with, 157.
future, 78, 84, 85, 86; auxiliaries, 188; for imperative, 189; syntax, 188, 189; passive, 197.
future perfect, 189.

g, 15, 16; <l, 17; <h, *p*, 18, 19, breaking, 20; shifting, 29+.
gg=ng, 17; cg, 16.
gemination, 7, 16; rule for, 10; examples, 25, 30, 31, 41, 46, 57, 60, 95, 97, 100; quasi-gem., 43, 53, 75, 83; see *dissimilated*.
gender, 35; history of, 36; femines<neuters, 36; rules for, 37; comparative, 136; forms to express, 135; derivatives, 136; of appositives, 144.
genitive, 34, 35, 37, compounds, 134; object, 138; syntax, general discussion, 153-158; attributive, 153, 154; predicative, 155; objective, 155, 156, 157; adverbial, 158; for dative, 149; dative+gen., 149, 156; nearness, 150; separation, 151, absolute, 152; subjective, 153; objective, 154; partitive, 143, 154, 156; with prepositions, 159; adjective with, 173; possessive for, 175; article omitted, 176; arrangement, 218, 219, and see under each *declension*.
gentile derivatives, 125.
German, 3; printing of Anglo-Saxon, 4; Old High, letters, 8; *w*, 18; umlaut, 19; assibilation, 21; shifting, 29; n>aw, 41; neuter *-era*, 41; abstracts in -in, 45; rime in, 224, 225, 227, and see *etymology, comparative*, and *syntax, comparative*.

(Low) Ger., 3, 29, 125.
gerund, 78, 88, 89; syntax, 197, 198, 199.
gesture, with dative, 148.
give+dative, 148; +gerund, 199; omitted, 186.
gleeman, 122.
go, with dative, 150; as future sign, 189.
goat, 136.
godless, *godly*, 122.
Gothic (Mœso-), 3; letters, 8; breaking, 20; shifting, 29; *r*-stems, *na*-stems, 43; abstracts in -ein, 45; au<u, 49; proper names, 54; reflexives, 68; dual, 82, 83; law of final consonants, 97, and see *etymology*, *comparative*, and *syntax*, *comparative*.
grant, with dat. and gen., 149, 156.
gravitation, 9, 26, 30, 36, 45, 47, 49, 51, 83, 114.
Greek, 3; letters, 8; accent, 30; neuters, 36; proper names, 54; versification, 223, and see *etymology*, *comparative*, and *syntax*, *comparative*.
Grimm's law, 8, 29; weak adjectives, 59; conjugation, 78.
gu<*p*, 18.
guna, 9, 27.
gutturals, 6, 7, 15, 16, 23, 112.

h, 17; >g, *p*, 18, 117; breaking, 20, 103; shifting, 29, 30.
habit+infinitive, 197.
have, sign for future, perfect, pluperf., 189, 201; +gerund, 199; +participle, 201.
—head, 121.
headlong, 123.
healf, with numerals, 77, 182.
Hebrew, 66, 68, 75.
Hellenic, 3, 8.
help+genitive, 156.
hemistich, 223.
hen, 136.
hendiadis, 141.
heptameter, 223.
her, 69, 175; *hern*, *heorun*, 175.
heteroclites, 52, 64.
heterogeneous, 52.
hexameter, 223.
Heyse, 59.
hight, 180.
his, 69, 175.
hit, it, syntax, 174, 143.
home, 128; *-ward*, 122.
—hood, 121.
horse, 136.
how often, 77.
—ht, origin of, 97, 112.
hundred, the great, 76.
hypallage, 141.
hyperbaton, 141.
hypercatalectic, 223.
hypothetic relative, 193; clause, 197.
hysteron proteron, 141.

i, how made, 11; >*ea*, y, 12; umlaut, 19; breaking, 20, 75; consonant, 15, 17; shifting, 30; change with *g*, *p*, 117.
i-stems, *ia*-stems, see *stem*.
i-umlaut, see *umlaut*.
i, 13.
ia=ea.
iá, 14.
iambus, 222, 223.
Icelandic verse, 224.
ictus, 222.
ié, 14.
i-group of letters, 7, 26.
illative conjunction, 205, 209.
imitation+dative, 150.
imperative, 77, 78; ia-stem, 99, 108, 110; sentence, 139; syntax, 174, 188, 197; indicative for, 189, 190; subjunctive for, 191; arrangement of, 215.
imperfect, 78; ablaut, 80; contract, 81; compound, 81; inflection indic., 84, 85, 90, 92, 95, 98; subjunctive, 86, 87, 91, 93; potential, 89, 91; syncopated, 95; irregulars, 112+; 2d sing. in *-es*, 110; syntax, 187, 188, 190, 194.
impersonals+accusative, 145; +dative, 150; +genitive+dative, 156; subject of, 185, 187.
incorporation of relative, 180.
indeclinable nouns, 52.
indefinite declension, 56+; pronoun, 71, 72, 174, 180; suffixes, 123, 125; adjective, 172; article, 174, 180; numeral, 182; verb, 185, 193.
independent nominative, 144; particles, 184.
Indic, 3, 8.
indicative, 77; strong active, 82–85; passive, 90; weak active, 83; form of potential, 89, 91; syntax, tenses of, 188+; mode, 190.
indirect object, 138; assertion, 192; question, 192; command, 197.
Indo-European, 3; vowel system, consonant system, 8.
infinitive, 78, 88; in *-ean*, 94; syntax, 139, 140; accusative+, 142, 147; general discussion, 197+; adjective with, 172.
inflection, by vowel changes, 79–82; mode suffixes, 82; personal endings, 82+; indic. present, 83, 84; imperf., 84, 85; strong verb, 82–91; weak verb, 92–95; variation in present, 96, 97; in imperfect, 98; tables of variation, 97–118; irregular, 112–118; Northumbrian, 117; decay of endings, English, 118; relation to versification, 228.
influence, object of, 148, 149.
inseparable prefixes, 6.
inserted clauses, arrangement in, 215.
instrument, suffix of, 123.
instrumental case, 35, 38, 39, 129; syntax of, 148, 150–154, 173.
intellectual states, syntax with, 156. See *cognition*.
interest, object of, 149.
interjection, 34, 133; syntax, 139, 178, 202.
interrogative pronoun, 70, 71, 72, 132; adverbs, 183, 184; syntax, 178, 179; sentence, 139, 191; conjunction, 207; object in, 219; arrangement, 215, 219.
intransitive verb, 138; perf., pluperf., 86, 201; syntax, 157, 186, 189.
io=eo.
ió, 14.
Iranic, 3.
Irish, 29, 64.
irregular nouns, 52; verbs, 112+.
it, *its*, 68, 69; syntax, 174.
Italic, 3, 8.
iteratives, see *how often*.

j, peculiar character for, 4; and see i-consonant.
Jutes, 1.

—kind, 121.
kindred, 192.
knowledge, 122.

l, 7, 15, 16, 18; *ul*<*il*, 15; metathesis, 19; <*d*, 30, 75.
labial, 6, 7, 15, 18, 23, 29, 39, 103.
landscape, 122.
lantern, 121.
Latin, 2; *vu*=*p*, 18; assibilation, 21; accent, 30; neuters>feminines, 36; proper names, 54; perfects, 82; ablatives, 129; arsis and thesis, 223; rime in Low Latin, 225; verses of Anglo-Saxon poets, 225; and see *etymology*, *comparative*, and *syntax*, *comparative*.
laugh, syntax with, 156.
lautverschiebung=shifting.
Layamon, declension in, 55; adjective, 65; comparison, 65; pronouns, 72; verbs, 99, 118; prepositions, 161, 170; *who*, 179; *hpylc*, 179; *everych*, 181; verbals, 201.
less, syntax with, 165.
let, 196, 198.
letters, 4; sounds of, 5.
like (*—lic*), 70, 122, 181.
likeness, syntax with, 150.
lingual, 7, 23.
liquid, 7.
listen, syntax with, 156.
Lithuanic, 3; instrumental, 39; weak adjective, 59; thousand, 76.
local, see *place*.
locative case, 35, 39, 45, 49, 50, 57, 67, 143, 150, 152, 153.
logical subject; predicate, 159.
long vowels, 6; nature, origin, 12; proof of, 13; monosyllables, 13, 41. See *progression*, *compensation*, and the vowels.
—ly, 129.

m, 7, 8, 11, 15, 83; <bh, 45, 49.
make, syntax with, 147, 198.
man, 136.

man, 34, 42, 53, 71, 181.
manner, adverbs of, 130; syntax of, 151, 158; subjunctive in clauses of, 193; connectives, 208; arrangement, 216.
masculine, 37. See *gender*.
mastery, syntax with, 150, 151.
material, suffix of, 126; compounds of, 134; syntax of, 154, 157.
may (*mæg*), 195.
means, suffix of, 123; syntax, 151, 158.
measure, syntax of, 152, 154, 157.
meet, syntax with, 150.
mental action, syntax with, 155. See *cognition, feeling*.
metaplast, 52.
metathesis, 9, 11, 18, 19, 30, 32, 41, 67, 103, 117.
meter, 223.
middle mutes, 7, 8, 29; voice, 146, 150, 187.
Milton, verse, 148, 226.
mimetic variation, 9, 28.
miss, syntax with, 157.
mode, 77, 82; syntax, 190–202.
Mœso-Gothic, see *Gothic*.
monometer, 223.
monosyllables, long, 13, 41.
mót, 195.
move, syntax with, 150, 201.
multiplicatives, 77.
multitude, noun of, 142.
mutes, 7, 24, 29, 95.

n, 7, 8, 15; >*d*, 16; >*l*, *m*, 29; stops umlaut and shifting, 102.
name, appositive of, 154; syntax with, 147.
narrative, syntax with, 188. See *verse*.
nasals, 7, 15, 24; nasalizing, 45, 49, 100, 111.
nc, 17.
-nd<-nt, 75.
nd-stems, see *stem*.
nearness, syntax with, 150.
need, syntax with, 157.
needs, 128.
negation, particles of, 132; gen'r'l, particular, strengthened, 183, 184; repeated, 184; condition, 194; article with, 176.
neuter, 36, 39; strengthened by *-er*, 41; weak, 50; *-t*, 57; >feminine, 36.
nominative, 35; syntax of, 144; yields, 175.
normal sentence, 141.
Norman *gu*<*p*, 18; *—s*, 51.
(Old) Norse, b>f, 18; umlaut, 19, and see *etymology, comparative*, and *syntax, comparative*.
Northumbrian, 1; vowel sounds, 14; gutturals, 18; dentals, 99; ecthlipsis, metathesis, epenthesis, prosthesis, 19; labials, 19; declension, strong, 49; weak, 51; irregularities, 51; pronoun, 66; possessive, 68; article, 69; demonstrative, 70; interrogative, 71; verb, 117; indic. present, 83; imperf., 85.
noseling, 128.
notional, 33, 119, 186.
noun, 34, 134; of multitude, 142; understood, 172. See *strong nouns, weak nouns, substantive, adjective*.
number, 34, 78, 143.
numerals, 73–77; syntax, 154, 177, 181, 185; arrangement, 216, 218.

o, 11, 12.
ó, 13.
obey, syntax with, 148.
object, direct, 145, 197, 201; definitive, 146, 201; double, 146; of influence, 148, 149; interest, 149; genitive (exciting), 156, 201; partitive, 156; separation, 156, 157; with passives, 187; of cognition, 192; desire, 192; final, 198; arrangement, 218, 219. See *factitive*.
objective combinations, 137, 138, 140, 145, 148, 155, 218; compounds, 134; verb, 138; genitive, 154; participle, 201.
officers, syntax of, 153.
oi, 15.
omission of substantive, 172, 186; article, 176; relative, 180; verb, 186, 195; conjunction, 208, 209.
one, 59, 71.
onomatope, 34.
open vowels, 6.
opposition (contention), 150.
optative, 82, 87.
ordinals, 73, 76, 77; syntax, 182.
Ormulum, declension in, 55; adjective, 65; comparison, 65; pronouns, 72; numerals, 73; conjugation, strong, 99, 105; weak, 111; endings, 118; prepositions, 161, 167, 170; *whatt*, 178; *who*, 179.
orthography, 4.
ox, 136; *oxen*, 51.

p, 15, 18, 29.
pæon, 222, 225.
palatal, 6, 7. See *guttural*.
paragoge, 9.
parallelism, 215.
parasitic sounds, 20, 30; *g*, *p*, 18; *i*, *u*, 20; *h*, 29.
parasyntheta, 6, 134.
Parent Speech, 3, 8; case-endings, 35; gender, 36; Tentonic, 56; declension of *jis, ja, jata*, 56; comparison in, 62, 63, 64; pronouns in, 66, 67, 68; numerals, 75, 76; tense stems in, 82; paradigm of indic. present, 83; of imperfect, 85; subjunctive pres., 87; passive, 116; derivation in, 118+.
parts of speech, 34.
participles, 78, 88, 95; syntax, 139, 140, 185, 200, 201, 216.
particles of interrogation, negation, etc., 132.
particular interrog., 183; negation, 184.
partitive appositive, 143; genitive, 154, 156; =adjective, 173.
passive voice, 90, 91, 116, 187, 188+; origin of form, 201.
patrial adjective, 125.
patronymics, 125.
pentameter, 223.
people's names declined, 54.
perfect, 78, 82; transitive, 84, 85, 86; intrans., 84, 86; syntax, 189; origin of form, 201.
periphrastic perf., 82; conditional, 89; future, 198.
person, 78; endings of, 82; proper names, 54.
personal pronouns, see *pronouns*; object, 188.
perspicuity affecting arrangement, 219.
phonetic decay, 36, 82.
phonology, 6–32.
pitch, 222.
place, nouns of, 125; adjectives of, 126; adverbs, correlative, 129; in compounds, 134; syntax, accusative of, 148; dat. of, 152; gen., 157, 158; mode, 193; connectives of, 207; arrangement, 216, 219, and see *locative*.
Platt Deutsch, 3.
pleasant, syntax of, 199.
pleonasm, 141.
pluperfect, 78, 84, 85, 86; syntax, 188, 189, origin of form, 201.
plural endings, 36, 52; for singular, 174.
polysyndeton, 141.
possessive, 68, 69; compounds, 134; arrangement, 218.
possessor, dative of, 150; genitive of, 153.
potential mode, 78, 88, 89; syntax, 195, 197.
Prâkrit, 67.
pray, syntax of, 156.
precession, 6, 9, 26, 27; examples, 45, 57, 67, 75, 83, 85, 114, 131, etc.
predicate, 137; grammatical, logical, 139; agreement of, 142; nominative, 144, 176; accusative, 147; genitive, 155; adverb, 183.
predicative combination, defined, 137, 139; agreement in, 142; participles, 200; arrangement, 214; quasi—, 137, 142, 152, 155.
prefixes, 6, 130+.
preposition, 33, 34, 130+; syntax, 158–172; article after, 176; arrangement of, 216, 219, 220; relation to verse, 225.
present, 78; active indic., 83; subjunctive, 86, 87; weak, 94, 96, 97; reduplicate, 115; forms of, 187+.
preteritive verb, 85, 112–114.
price, syntax of, 151, 157.
principal parts of verb, 78.
proclitics, 13.

progression, 6, 9, 23, 78, 103, 107, 108, 109, 111, 112, 114.
progressive forms, 188+, 197; origin of, 201.
pronomen reverentiæ, 174.
pronouns, 33, 34, 174; personal, 66, 72, 174, 175, 179; possessive, 68, 69, 72, 173, 175, and see *demonstrative, relative, interrogative, indefinite.*
proper names, 54.
prosody, 222–228.
prosthesis, 9, 30.
protasis, 194.
prothesis, 9, 18, 19, 31.
punctuation, 5.
purpose, 134; syntax with, 199.
pyrrhic, 222.

qu=*cp*, 5.
quality, 12, 13; suffix of, 124; syntax, 153, 154.
quantity, 12, 13, 222, 223.
quantitatives, 217, 218.
quasi-clauses, quasi feet, quasi-predicative, quasi-suffixes, see *clause, feet*, etc.
questions, 183, 184; strengthened by *cpedan, secgan*, etc., 183; indirect, 192. See *interrogatives.*

r, 7, 8, 15, 16, 18. See *breaking, stem.*
radicle, 33; in pronouns, 66; numerals, 75; derivation, 118; suffixes, 119.
ready, syntax, 199.
reality, 190.
receive, syntax, 150.
reciprocals, 175.
reduplication, 6; contracted, 13, 14, 33; in numerals, 75; verbs, 82, 85, 108, 109; presents, 115, 116; in derivation, 118.
reflexive, 68; syntax, 146, 150, 156, 174, 175, 186.
refuse, syntax, 149, 156.
regard, syntax, 147.
relational, 33, 129; genitive, 153; verb, 186.
relative pronoun, 70, 72; syntax, —personal as, 175, 179, 178–180; demonstrative as, 178; interrog., 179; incorporation, 180; omission, 180; order, 219, 220.
relative clauses, adverbs in, 184; subjunctive in, 193.
relics, 49, 53, 63, 116.
remain, syntax, 150.
remember, 156.
repeated subject, 144, 174.
repetition, 152.
respect of, 151, 199.
result, suffix, 124; mode, 193, 195. See *consecutive.*
Rhyming Poem, 226.
rnythm, 222, 225.
rhythmical accent, 30.
righteous, 122.
rime (rhyme), 223; letters, 224.
Roman populace, 15.
Romanic, 156, 216, 218, 225.
roots, 33, 34; mixed, 64; in —*h*, 97; —*a*—, 100; liquid, 100; nasal, 100; two consonants, 102, 103, 108; —*i*—, 103; —*u*—, 105, —*ā*—, —*ǣ*—, 107, 108, 109; —*ā*—, —*eā*—, —*ǣ*—, —*ē*—, —*ō*—, —*a*—, 109, 110; —*ō*—, 111; —*u*—, 112; in derivation, 118.
rough mutes, 7.
rückumlaut, see *umlaut.*
runes, 4, 18.

s, 5, 8, 15; <*d*, 19, 30, 83; >r, 30; >st, 83; =x, 18.
—*s*, Norman, 51.
same, 70.
Sandwich Islanders, 15.
Sanskrit, 3; letters, 8; accent in, 30; *u*>*av*, 41; reflexive, 68; conjugation classes, 79, 114–116; beginnings of ablaut, 79+; assimilation by *m, n, l, r*, 80; periphrastic perfect in *kar*, 82; dual, 82, 85; causative, 79, 127; versification, 223; and see *etymology, comparative*, and *syntax, comparative.*
Saxon, 1, 3; Old Saxon, 2, 3; vowels, 8; labials, 18; abstracts (=Goth. -eins), 45; verse, 224, 227. See *etymology, comparative*, and *syntax, comparative.* See also *Semi-Saxon, West Saxon, Anglo-Saxon.*
sc, 16, 21+; breaking, 20.
Scandinavian, 3, 29. See *Icelandic, Norse.*
section, in verse, 223.
seldom, 128.
self, 70, 177.
Semi-Saxon, 1, 4; j, 4; and see *Layamon, Ormulum.*
Semitic, 75; vowel change in inflection, 80; syntax, 214; and see *Hebrew.*
semi-vowel (*i, g; u, p*), gemination, 47, 61.
sensation, syntax of, 145.
sentence, kinds of, 139; abridged, 140; and see *clause.*
separation, syntax of, 151, 156, 157.
sex, 136.
Shakespeare, double comparison, 64; adjective endings, 65; verb endings, 118; prefix *ge-*, 118.
shall, 189, 196.
sharing, syntax of, 156.
she, 68, 177.
sheep, 136.
shifting (*lautverschiebung*), defined, 9, 28, 29; vowels > vowels, 28; *a*>*æ*, 11, 27, 41, 45, 58, 60, 63, 97, 99, 197; *a*>*æ*>*e*, 100, 102; *a*>*o*, 27; *a*>*i*, 67; *á*>*æ*>*é*, 27, 60, 103, 110; *eá*>*é*, 13, 14, 105; *eó*>*é*, 14, 15, 105, 108, 109; *y*>*i*, 112; vowels>consonants, 29; i>g, 30; u>v, 41; consonants >vowels, 28, 29; consonants >co-ordinate consonants, 29; consonants to cognate consonants (Grimm's law), 29, 67, 75, 83, 85, 87, 88; *b*>*f*>*v*, 30, 117; *d*>*l*, 30, 75; *g*>*h*, 30; *k*>*f*, 75; *m*>*v*, 67; *bh*>*m*, 45, 49; *d*>*s, z*, 19, 30, 83; *s*>*r*, 30.
short vowels, 6, 8, 11.
sideling, 128.
simple words, 118; sentences, 139; subject, 185.
simulation, 9, 28, 131.
singular, 78, 142, 185.
size, syntax of, 154.
Slavonic, 3; assibilation, 21; instrumental, 89; weak adjective, 59; thousand, 76.
smooth mutes, 7.
some (sum), with numerals, 77; syntax, 148, 181; *some deal*, 128.
sonants, 7, 15, 23; rules for change of, 10.
source, syntax of, 163, 166.
space, syntax of, 148, 157, 159. See *place.*
specification (adjunct), 151, 157.
spirant, 7.
spondee, 222.
—st, law for, 97.
steadfast, 121.
stem (nouns), defined, 34; endings, 36; in *-a*, 39+, 57; *-ia*, 41, 42, 43, 47, 60; *-ga*, 41; *-ha*, 41, 61; *-pa*, 41, 61; *-da*, 44, 45; *-i*, 42–47, 57; *-u*, 48, 49, 60, 54, 47; *-an*, 50, 51, 59; *-r*, 43, 53; *-nd*, 43, 53; relics of other consonant stems, 53. Verb-stems, 78; with gemination, 97; in *-ia*, 99, 108, 115; tense stems, 82; *n* inserted, 116; reduplicated, 115, 116; relational adverbial, 129. See *theme.*
strengthening *s* to *st*, 83; stems by *-er*, 41; pronouns, 175; negatives, interrogatives, 183.
stress, 222.
strong nouns, 36, 49; adjectives, 56; syntax, 173; verbs, 78, 83+, 98, 126.
subject, 137; grammatical, logical, 139; repeated, 143; nominative, 144; accusative, 147; simple, 185; compound, copulate, 185; omitted, 186; arrangement of, 214, 220.
subjective verb, 138; genitive, 153.
subjunctive, 77; present, imperfect, 86, 87; endings in auxiliaries, 87; potential, 89, syntax, 190+; in leading clauses, 191; in subordinate substantive, 192; adjective, 193; adverb, 193–195; for imperative, 197.
sub-letters, 224.
subordinate clause, 139; questions in, 184; subjunctive in, 192–195; arrangement of, 215, 220; conjunctions, 205–208.
substantives, equivalents of, 139; clauses, 140, 192, 206; arrangement of, 215, 220. See *noun.*
such, 70.

suffering object, 138.
suffixes, relational, 33; of comparison, 62+; mode, 82; derivation, 121, 122, 123-128.
superlative, 62-64; in numerals, 75, 76; prepositions and prefixes, 132; syntax, 154, 176.
supremacy, syntax of, 157.
surd, 7, 15, 23; rules for change, 10; roots, 95.
swearing, syntax of, 152.
swine, 136.
synæresis, 10, 11, 32.
synalepha, 10, 32.
syncope, 9, 30, 31, 41, 47, 60, 70; in imperfects and p.-part., 95.
synesis, 141, 142, 144, 173, 185+.
synizesis, 10, 32.
syntax, 137-221; figures of, 141.
syntax, comparative, **apositive** (Sansk., Lat., Ger., O. H. G., O. Nor., Fr.), 143, 144; **Nominative,** factitive (Sansk., Gr., Goth., M. H. G.), 144; **Vocative,** (Sansk., Lat., Fr.), 144, 145; **Accusative** reflexive (Sansk., Gr., Goth.), 146; cognate (Sansk., Gr., Ger., Eng.); double object (Sansk., Gr., Lat., Goth., O. H. G.), 146, 147; with infinitive (Sansk., Gr., Lat.), 147; factitive (Sansk.), 147; in adverbial combinations (Sansk., Greek, Lat., Goth.), 148; **Dative,** of influence (Sansk., Greek, Lat., Goth., O. H. G.), 149; of possessor (Sansk., Greek, Lat.), 150; nearness (Sansk., Gr., Lat., Goth.), 150; mastery, use (Lat., Goth., O. Sax., O. Norse, O. H. G., M. H. G.), 151; separation (Lat., Gr.), 151; adverbial (Sansk., Gr., Latin), 151; agent (Sansk., Gr., Lat.), 151; after comparatives (Sansk., Gr., Lat., Teutonic), 152; absolute (Sanskrit, Gr., Lat., Teut.), 152; **Instrumental** (Sansk., Gr., Lat., Goth., O. Sax., O. H. Ger.), 153; **Genitive,** general (Sanskr.), 153; cognate (O. Norse), 154; aggregation (Sansk.), 154; characteristic (Sansk., Gr., Lat.), 154; of name (Gr., Lat., Fr., Semi-Sax.), 155; predicative (Gr., Lat.), 155; exciting object (Sansk., Gr., Lat., Teut.), 156; partitive (Romanic), 156; **Prepositions** (Goth., O. H. G., O. Norse, O. Sax., Lat., Greek, Layamon, Orm., Chaucer, Wycliffe, Spenser), 159-172; **Adjective** (Goth., H. Ger.), 174; **Pronoun** (Norman, O. H. G., O. Norse), 174, 144; possessive (Layamon, English), 175; demonstr. and article (Goth., O. H. G., Lat., Ger.), 176, 177; interrog. (Orm., Lat.), 178; relative (Sansk., Gr., Lat., Goth., O. H. G., Ger., Semi-Sax., Engl.), 178, 179; article (Gr., Lat., Goth., Ger., O. Norse), 180; **Adverbs** (Gr., Lat., Teut.), 183, 184; **Verb,** subject of (Lat., Gr., Engl., etc.), 185, 186; voice (Sansk., Greek, Lat., Goth., Teut.), 77, 146, 150, 187; tense (Lat., Engl.), 189, 190; mode (Gr., Latin), 190-201; **Arrangement** of words (Lat., Ger.), 214; predicative comb. (Indo-Europ., Semitic), 214, (French, Romanic) 216; attrib. comb. (Gr., Lat., Teut., Romanic), 216, (Gr., Lat., Engl., Ger., Fr., Span., It.), 217, (Romanic) 218; objective comb. (Germanic), 219; adverbial comb. (Germanic), 220.
t, 7, 8, 15, 29; <d, 19; Gothic, 97.
—t, neuter ending, 37, 57.
take, syntax, 150.
tavern, 121.
teach, syntax, 146, 147, 198.
tenses, 78; stems in Parent Speech, 82; syntax, 187; progressive, 188; sequence, 190.
tetrameter, 223.
Teutonic, 3, 29, 30, 76, 129, 152.
th=*þ*, 17; *d*, 97.
thank, syntax, 149, 156.
the more, 177.
theme, 34; of **nouns** in *-ad, -ed, -els, -sc*, 41; plurals in *-er*, 41; *-ung*, 47; *i, eô, p*>*u*>*o*, h, 61. **verb,** 78; in *-cc, -ll, -c*, 111; nasal, 111; guttural, 112.
thesis, 222, 223, 225.
they, their, them, 68, 69, 177.
thousand, 76.
till, 167.
time, suffix of, 125; adverbs, 130; compounds, 134; syntax, 152, 157, 158, 201, 207; subjunctive in clauses of, 193; arrangement, 216; in verse, 222; and see *tense*.
to, 167+; with the infinitive, 197; *-day*, 128.
tonic, 222, 225.
touch, syntax, 156.
transitive verbs, 138, 145, 156, 186; perfect, pluperfect, 86, 201. See *direct object*.
tribrach, 222.
trills, 16.
trimeter, 223.
trochee, 222, 223, 225.
truth, 188.
u, 5, 6, 7, 8, 11, 12; >*y*, 12; *eô*, 14; =*v*, 18; >*av, up*, 41, 47.
u-declension for Latin, Greek a-decl., 54.
u-group, 7, 26.
umlaut, 6, 19, 23; rule, 10; in verbs, 96+; stems from, 123; concealed, rückumlaut, 95; stopped by *n*, 102; *a*-umlaut, examples, 12, 19, 83, 97, 99, 100, 102, 103, 105, 114; *i*-umlaut, 11, 12, 13, 14, 19, 43, 45, 47, 60, 62, 97, 100, 105, 107, 108, 109, 110, 111, 112; *u*-umlaut, 11, 12, 20, 41.
underneath, 170.
use, syntax, 150, 151, 157.

v=u, 18.
value, syntax, 154.
variation, 9, 97, 98; table of, in verbs, 99-103, 117.
verb, 34, 77; conjugation, see; preteritive, see; irregular, 114-118; the substantive, 114; derivation, 118; compound, 134; syntax, 185-201; kinds of, 186; agreement, 185, 186; omission, 186; arrangement, 214, 218.
verbal, in *-ung, -ing, -ende*, 201; syntax, 153, 201; accent, 222.
verse, 222, 223; common narrative, 225; long, 227.
vocal chords, 11; utterance, 11.
vocative, 34, 35; syntax, 139, 144, 145, 173.
voice, 77; middle, 146, 150, 187; syntax, 187.
vowels, 6; Indo-European table, 8; groups, 6, 7; Anglo-Saxon, 11-15; changes, 19-32. See each vowel.
vriddhi, 27.

w<*p*, 18, 19.
want=*need*, 157.
watch, syntax, 156.
way, syntax, 158.
weak nouns, 36, 50; adjectives, 56, 59, 60, 173; verbs, 78, 83, 85, 92+, 94; mixed, irreg., 116, 117, 126, 127.
wealth, syntax, 153.
weathering of endings, 36, 55, 65, 72, 118, 131.
wedlock, 122.
weight, syntax, 154.
weladay, 183.
West Saxons, 1.
what, 178.
whilom, 128.
who, 179.
whole, see *partitive*.
will, 189, 196.
winsome, 122.
wish, syntax, 150.
woman, 122.
word, 33.
worthy, syntax, 199.
Wycliffite, 1, 179.

x, 5, 7, 17.

y, 11; <u, ea, eo, i, e, æ, 12.
ȳ, 14.
ylc, 70.
yon, 59.
of *yore*, 128.

z, 7, 18, 19.
zeugma, 141.

THE END.

BODLEIANA BIBLIOTHECA